



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



The glories of the Catholic Church

Richard Challoner, Henry Athanasius Brann (D.D.), John
Gilmary Shea, John Ireland (abp. of St. Paul.), Pope Leo XIII

PRESENTED
TO
BY

WY WY
WY WY
WY WY
WY WY

THE
GLORIES OF THE CATHOLIC CHURCH

THE CATHOLIC CHRISTIAN INSTRUCTED IN DEFENCE OF HIS FAITH

*A COMPLETE EXPOSITION OF THE CATHOLIC DOCTRINE, TOGETHER WITH A FULL
EXPLANATION OF THE HOLY SACRIFICE OF THE MASS*

INCLUDING

THE TRIUMPHS OF THE CHURCH IN EVERY AGE

BY

THE REV. HENRY A. BRANN, D. D.

THE SPREAD OF THE GOSPEL THROUGHOUT THE WORLD

THE CHURCH IN AMERICA

BY

JOHN GILMARY SHEA, L. L. D.

THE DUTY AND VALUE OF PATRIOTISM

BY

ARCHBISHOP IRELAND

THE ENCYCLICAL LETTERS ON THE STUDY OF THE HOLY SCRIPTURES TO

THE DEFENDERS OF OUR FAITH

AND THE RULERS OF THE WORLD

BY

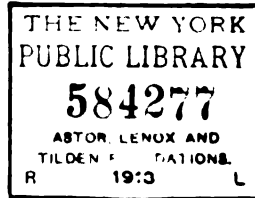
HIS HOLINESS, POPE LEO XIII.

LAVISHLY ILLUSTRATED WITH EXQUISITELY ENGRAVED ILLUSTRATIONS

VOLUME ONE

New York:

JOHN DUFFY, PUBLISHER.

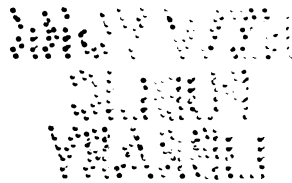


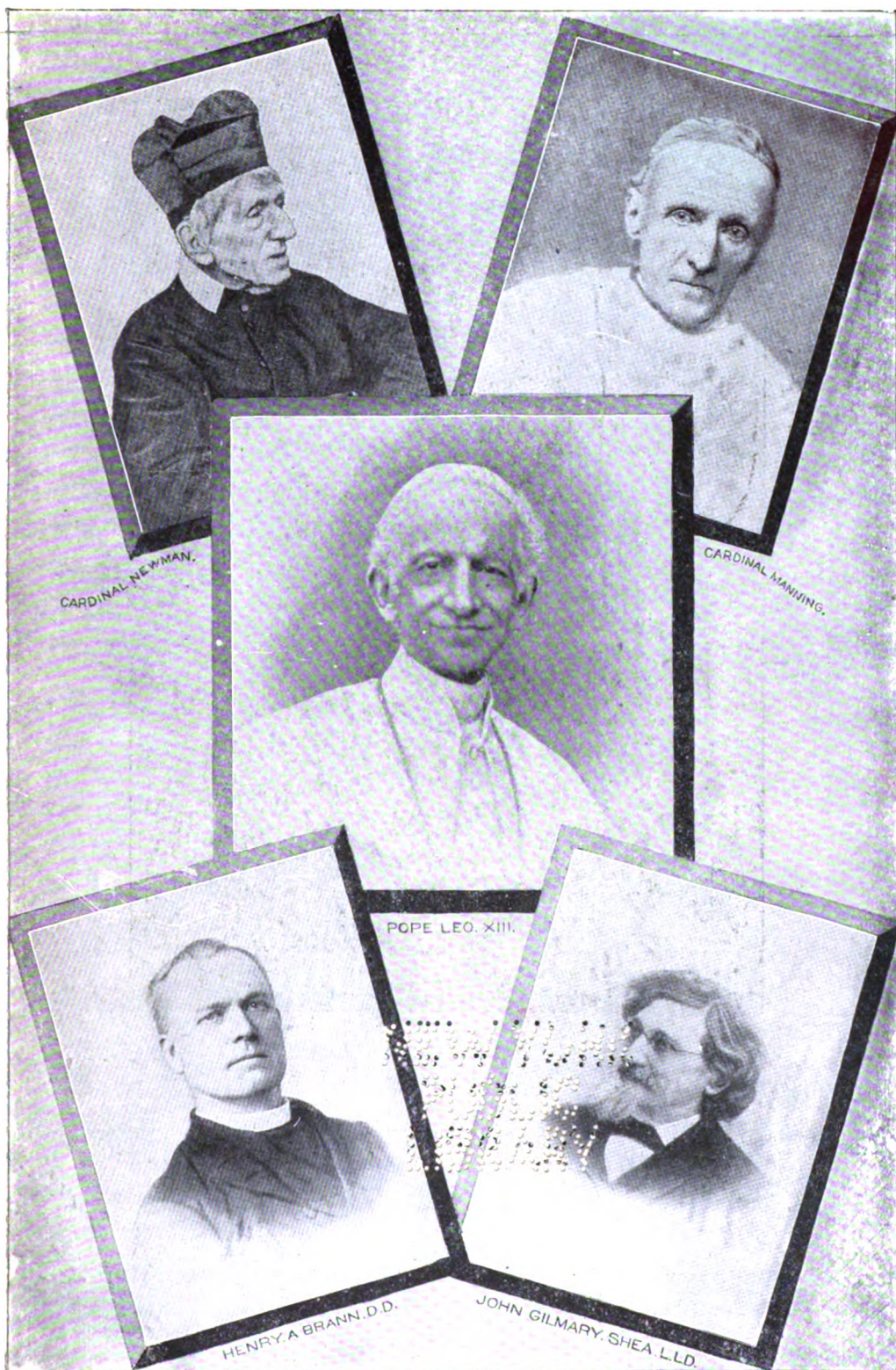
Copyright, 1894, by THOMAS KELLY

Copyright, 1895, by THOMAS KELLY.

Entered at Stationers' Hall, London, England.

(All rights reserved.)





SOME OF THE CONTRIBUTORS.

APPROBATIONS.



REV. DENIS J. MCMAHON, D. D.,
THEOLOGICAL CENSOR OF THE DIOCESE OF NEW YORK.

Dear Mr. Kelly
I enclose letter to His Grace which
when presented will obtain the Impisination.

Respy
D. McMahon

Mich 13/95 -

APPROBATIONS.



**MOST REV. MICHAEL AUGUSTINE CORRIGAN, D. D.,
ARCHBISHOP OF NEW YORK.**

*The Triumphs and Glories of the Church
Published by Mrs. Kelly New York*

**452 MADISON AVE.,
NEW YORK.**

APR 4 1896

IMPRIMATUR,

**MICHAEL AUGUSTINE,
ARCHBISHOP OF NEW YORK**

(Ordinary 47)



APPROBATIONS.

Opinions and Endorsements of the Highest Authorities of the Catholic Church.



Apostolic Delegation,

United States of America.

Washington, D. C., April 20, 1895.

MR. THOMAS KELLY,
Dear Sir:

His Excellency Francis Satolli, D.D.

Mgr. Satolli has received your letter of April 19th, in which you advise him of the forwarding to him of your book, "The Glories of the Catholic Church." He desires me to thank you in his name, and to express to you his pleasure at your zeal in propagating good Catholic literature. . . . The volume itself has just arrived in good condition, and Mgr. Satolli has looked carefully over it. He is very much pleased with it. He admires the beauty of its make-up, and is agreeably surprised by its comprehensiveness. The information it contains is most useful and well selected. With sentiments of sincere esteem, I remain,

Most truly yours,

Frederick J. Rooker,
Secretary

ARCHDIOCESE OF BALTIMORE
CHANCERY OFFICE,
408 N. CHARLES STREET.



His Eminence
James Cardinal Gibbons, D.D.

BALTIMORE, MD., April 17, 1895

MR. THOMAS KELLY,
Dear Sir:

His Eminence begs leave to thank you for a copy of "The Glories of the Catholic Church." He feels sure that it will be a source of instruction and edification to those who read it, and entertains the hope that it will have a wide circulation.

Yours very truly -
Wm. A. Reardon -
Chancellor -

APPROBATIONS.



Archdiocese of New Orleans.

New Orleans, April 26, 1895

DEAR SIR:

The book, elegantly bound and well illustrated, "The Glories of the Catholic Church," which you kindly sent me, contains a compendium of Catholic doctrine and worship, of Christian virtues and practices of devotion, and will be most useful in every Christian family. I regret that Challoner's beautiful "Christian Instructed," in the article on the Holy See, is not completed by an exposition of the Pope's infallibility; and that in the treatise on "Original Sin" the dogma of Mary's Immaculate Conception has not been expounded.



Most Rev. Francis Janssens, D.D.

Yours truly in Christ
+ Francis Janssens
Archbishop

Diocese of Green Bay, Wis.

Green Bay, Wis., April 18th, 1895

MR. THOS. KELLY, Publisher, New York.

Dear Sir:

The complimentary copy of your new publication, "The Glories of the Catholic Church," has been received, with thanks. But as regards approbation, I made it a rule of mine not to approve any books, except those published by priests or laymen of our own diocese, or those of extraordinary and original merit.



Rt. Rev. Sebastian G. Messmer, D.D.

I remain, dear Sir,
respectfully yours
+ S. G. Messmer
Bp.

APPROBATIONS.

St. Mary's Cathedral
1100 FRANKLIN STREET.

San Francisco, Cal., April 25th, 1895.



Most Rev. Patrick W. Riordan, D.D.

MR. THOMAS KELLY,
Dear Sir :

I am in receipt of the work, "The Glories of the Catholic Church," for which please accept my sincere thanks. I hope that so valuable a work will have a large circulation among our people.

Sincerely Yours
+ P. W. Riordan

St. Michael's Cathedral.

Springfield, Mass. April 22nd, 1895



Rt. Rev. Bishop Beaven, D.D.

THOS. KELLY, Esq.
Dear Sir :

The Rt. Rev. Bishop desires me to state that approval of His Grace, Archbishop Corrigan, is sufficient.

Respectfully yours,
E. J. Fitzgerald
Sec'y

Bishop's House,
607 Capitol Square.

Nashville, Tenn., April 19, 1895.



Rt. Rev. Thomas S. Byrne, D.D.

MR. THOMAS KELLY,
Dear Sir :

I beg to acknowledge the receipt of a copy of "The Glories of the Catholic Church," and to express my grateful appreciation of your kindness. I have only had time to look at the table of contents and turn over the leaves of portions of it. From what I can glean in so cursory a glance, the work seems a most useful and convenient manual for the laity, and the cuts are unusually good. I trust it may be widely spread and read.

Faithfully yours -
+ Thomas S. Byrne
Bp. of Nashville -

APPROBATIONS.

SETON HALL COLLEGE,
SOUTH ORANGE,

NEW JERSEY, April 22, 1895.

MR. THOMAS KELLY,
Dear Sir:



R. Rev. Winand M. Wigger, D.D.

I have received the copy of the book, "The Glories of the Catholic Church," which you had the kindness to send me. I have carefully read over the list of subjects treated, and have also read some of the articles. I have no hesitation in stating that the book is not only a very interesting one, but also very useful and instructive. The book is calculated to do much good in Catholic and non-Catholic families. I would be pleased to know that many families in this Diocese got a copy of it.

*Yours very sincerely,
+ Wm. Wigger,
Bp. of Newark*

Bishop's House,

NO. 630 EAST SEVENTH STREET.

Davenport, Iowa, April 18th, 1895.

MR. THOMAS KELLY,
Dear Sir:



Rt. Rev. Henry Cosgrove, D.D.

I have just now received by express the beautifully bound copy of the book, "The Glories of the Catholic Church," for which please accept my sincere thanks. Being very busy in preparing to leave home for my visit to Rome, I have not time to examine the work, but I most willingly endorse the approval of the Most Rev. Archbishop Corrigan.

*Very sincerely,
Yours
+ Henry Cosgrove
Bp. of Dorr*

Bishop's House,

608 South 11th Street.

La Crosse, Wis., April 19, 1895.

MR. THOMAS KELLY,
Dear Sir:



Rt. Rev. James Schwebach, D.D.

Accept my thanks for the copy of that splendid work, "The Glories of the Catholic Church." This book is a Catholic Library in itself, and it ought to be in every Catholic family of the land.

*Very sincerely,
Yours in Chr.
+ James Schwebach
Bishop of La Crosse.*

APPROBATIONS.

BISHOP'S HOUSE,
GRENTON, NEW JERSEY.

April 20th, 1895.

MY DEAR MR. KELLY:

I have examined the volume entitled "The Triumphs and Glories of the Catholic Church," and I have found it a very valuable and instructive work. It is well adapted for reading in Catholic families.

I trust your enterprise will be rewarded by an extensive patronage on the part of the public.



Right Rev. James A. McFaul, D.D.

*Very sincerely yours etc.,
James Augustine McFaul,
Bishop of Trenton.*

Bishop's House,
1025 Delaware Avenue,
BUFFALO, N. Y.

April 23, '95.

THOMAS KELLY, ESQ., Publisher.

Dear Sir:

I have looked over your large and handsomely bound volume, "The Glories of the Catholic Church." It contains a large amount of useful information, historical, ascetical, and doctrinal; and that it is safe reading, the Imprimatur of the Archbishop of New York is a sufficient guarantee. I commend it to the Catholic public, and hope that it will have a wide circulation.



Rt. Rev. Stephen Vincent Ryan, D.D.

*I am, Sir,
+ Wm. Ryan
Bp. of Buffalo.*

Chancery Office.

Union Park Street, Boston.

April 18, '95.

MR. THOMAS KELLY, Publisher, New York.

Dear Sir:

The Most Reverend Archbishop has rec'd the book you kindly sent him, and your note asking his approval of the same.



Most Rev. John Jos. Williams, D.D.

*Very truly yours,
R. Keagle,
Cham.*

APPROBATIONS.

St. Mary's Cathedral.

Bishop's House,

Ogdenburg, April 20th, 1895



Right Rev. Henry Gabriels, D.D.

MR. THOMAS KELLY,

Dear Sir :

"The Glories of the Catholic Church," which I received from you, is a book that I hope you will succeed in placing in many Catholic families. It is truly a religious library, dogmatic, moral, historical, devotional, and controversial, condensed into one volume, and its contents are correct and edifying. I give to it my full approbation.

*+ H. Gabriels
Bp of Ogdenburg.*

**DIOCESE OF
MANCHESTER.**

MANCHESTER, N. H., April 17, 1895

Dear Sir :

The volume, "The Glories of the Catholic Church," kindly forwarded by you, has been received. I am very grateful therefor.



Rev. Denis M. Bradley, D.D.

*Yours respectfully,
+ Denis M. Bradley
Bishop of Manchester*

MR. THOMAS KELLY.

**CATHEDRAL OF THE
Immaculate Conception.**

Burlington, Vermont, 19 April, 1895.

THOMAS KELLY, Publisher, New York.

Dear Sir :

Be pleased to accept my thanks for your valuable present. "The Glories of the Catholic Church" I consider to be a most useful work.

Respectfully yours

*+ Louis De Goesbriand
Bp of Burlington*



Right Rev. Louis De Goesbriand, D.D.

APPROBATIONS.

St. Paul's Cathedral.

Pittsburgh, Pa., April 22, 1895

MR. THOMAS KELLY,

Dear Sir:

I beg to thank you very much for the beautiful copy of "The Glories of the Catholic Church," which you were kind enough to send me.

It is an excellent compilation, containing an immense fund of useful and instructive information for all classes. The Catholic who is familiar with its contents is well equipped for the practice of the duties and the defence of the teachings of our holy Religion.

The press-work and print are such as to make it a pleasure to read it. I wish it a most extensive circulation in my Diocese.

*Yours truly in Xt
+ R. Phelan
Bp. of Pittsburgh*



Right Rev. Richard Phelan, D.D.

The Cathedral.

Kansas City, Mo.,

April 22nd, 1895.

MR. THOMAS KELLY,

Dear Sir:

I beg to acknowledge receipt of your compilation, entitled "The Glories of the Catholic Church." I see it has the "Imprimatur" of the Most. Rev. Archbishop of New York, and therefore requires no further commendation on the score of Catholicity. The subject matter appears to be judiciously selected, and the binding is artistic and durable. . . . It ought to find many Catholic purchasers.

*Yours in Christ.
John J. Glennon O.S.B.
Arch. Vicar*



Right Rev. John Joseph Hogan, D.D.

Cathedral, Denver.

235 So. EVANS, April 22, '95.

MR. THOMAS KELLY,

Dear Sir:

I have examined your beautiful book called "The Glories of the Catholic Church." I am happy to be able to say that it is a regular encyclopedia of useful and needful Catholic information, a book that should adorn the library of every Catholic home. Thanking you very sincerely for this timely publication, and hoping that it may find its way into every Catholic household,

*I am gratefully yours
+ N. C. Mats
Bp. of Denver*



Right Rev. Nicholas C. Mats, D.D.

APPROBATIONS.

Episcopal Residence.

Cleveland, O. May 3, 1895



Rt. Rev. Ignatius F. Horstman, D.D.

MR. THOMAS KELLY,

Dear Sir:

I have received your book, "The Glories of the Catholic Church." Most of the works therein contained have the best of all sanctions, viz., the constant use of the faithful. The selection makes an excellent household volume for Christian families.

Yours truly in Christ
+ Ign. F. Horstman
Bp. of Cleveland

St. Mary's Cathedral.

Peoria, April 30, 1895.



Right Rev. John L. Spalding, D.D.

DEAR SIR:

I have looked through your book, "The Glories of the Catholic Church," and heartily give it my approval. It will be a treasure in any Catholic family.

Yours very truly
John L. Spalding
Peoria

Bishop's House.

INDIANAPOLIS, IND.,
May 7th, 1895.



Right Rev. F. S. Chatard, D.D.

MR. THOMAS KELLY,

Dear Sir:

The other day being for a few hours at the Cathedral of Vincennes, where I do not reside, I found the book, "The Glories of the Catholic Church." From the brief examination I gave it, I am sure it will be very useful for the instruction and edification of our Catholic people. With thanks for the volume,

Yours truly in C.
+ F. S. Chatard
Bp. Vinc.

THE HIGHEST DIGNITARIES OF THE CHURCH.

COPIES OF THIS VALUABLE AND INSTRUCTIVE WORK HAVE BEEN FORWARDED TO THE FOLLOWING MOST REV. AND RIGHT REV. BISHOPS FOR EXAMINATION AND APPROVAL.

For copies of a few of the many testimonial letters received by the publisher, speaking in the highest terms of the value of such a publication in the homes of Catholic families, see approbation pages.

HIS EXCELLENCY, FRANCIS SATOLLI, D. D., Apostolic Delegate, Washington, D. C.

HIS EMINENCE, JAMES CARDINAL GIBBONS, D. D., Archbishop of Baltimore, Md.

MOST REVEREND MICHAEL AUGUSTINE CORRIGAN, D. D., Archbishop of New York

“ “ **WILLIAM HENRY ELDER, D. D.,** Archbishop of Cincinnati, O.

“ “ **PATRICK A. FEEHAN, D. D.,** Archbishop of Chicago, Ill.

“ “ **WILLIAM H. GROSS, D. D.,** Archbishop of Portland, Ore.

“ “ **JOHN HENNESSY, D. D.,** Archbishop of Dubuque, Ia.

“ “ **JOHN IRELAND, D. D.,** Archbishop of St. Paul, Minn.

“ “ **FRANCIS JANSSENS, D. D.,** Archbishop of New Orleans, La.

“ “ **PETER RICHARD KENDRICK, D. D.,** Archbishop of St. Louis, Mo.

“ “ **FREDERIC X. KATZER, D. D.,** Archbishop of Milwaukee, Wis.

“ “ **PATRICK JOHN RYAN, D. D., LL. D.,** Archbishop of Philadelphia, Pa.

“ “ **PATRICK WM. RIORDAN, D. D.,** Archbishop of San Francisco, Cal.

“ “ **PLACIDE LOUIS CHAPELLE, D. D.,** Archbishop of Santa Fe, N. M.

“ “ **JOHN JOSEPH WILLIAMS, D. D.,** Archbishop of Boston, Mass.

RIGHT REVEREND DENIS M. BRADLEY, D. D., Bishop of Manchester, N. H.

“ “ **THOMAS S. BYRNE, D. D.,** Bishop of Nashville, Tenn.

“ “ **THOMAS A. BECKER, D. D.,** Bishop of Savannah, Ga.

“ “ **THOMAS M. A. BURKE, D. D.,** Bishop of Albany, N. Y.

“ “ **THOMAS D. BEAVEN, D. D.,** Bishop of Springfield, Mass.

“ “ **ALFRED A. CURTIS, D. D.,** Bishop of Wilmington, Del.

“ “ **HENRY COSGROVE, D. D.,** Bishop of Davenport, Ia.

“ “ **FRANCIS SILAS CHATARD, D. D.,** Bishop of Vincennes, Ind.

“ “ **EDWARD JOSEPH DUNNE, D. D.,** Bishop of Dallas, Tex.

“ “ **LOUIS DE GOESBRIAND, D. D.,** Bishop of Burlington, Vt.

“ “ **EDWARD FITZGERALD, D. D.,** Bishop of Little Rock, Ark.

THE HIGHEST DIGNITARIES OF THE CHURCH.

RIGHT REVEREND JOHN S. FOLEY, D. D., Bishop of Detroit, Mich.

- " " **HENRY GABRIELS, D. D., Bishop of Ogdensburg, N. Y.**
- " " **NICHOLAS A. GALLAGHER, D. D., Bishop of Galveston, Tex.**
- " " **MATTHEW HARKINS, D. D., Bishop of Providence, R. I.**
- " " **JOHN JOSEPH HOGAN, D. D., Bishop of Kansas City, Mo.**
- " " **IGNATIUS F. HORSTMANN, D. D., Bishop of Cleveland, O.**
- " " **JAMES AUGUSTINE HEALY, D. D., Bishop of Portland, Me.**
- " " **JOHN JOSEPH KAIN, D. D., Bishop of Wheeling, W. Va.**
- " " **PATRICK A. LUDDEN, D. D., Bishop of Syracuse, N. Y.**
- " " **SEBASTIAN GEBHARD MESSMER, D. D., Bishop of Green Bay, Wis.**
- " " **CAMILLUS PAUL MAES, D. D., Bishop of Covington, Ky.**
- " " **TOBIAS MULLEN, D. D., Bishop of Erie, Pa.**
- " " **NICHOLAS CHRYSOSTOME MATZ, D. D., Bishop of Denver, Col.**
- " " **THOMAS McGOVERN, D. D., Bishop of Harrisburg, Pa.**
- " " **WILLIAM GEORGE McCLOSKEY, D. D., Bishop of Louisville, Ky.**
- " " **JAMES A. McFAUL, D. D., Bishop of Trenton, N. J.**
- " " **CHARLES E. McDONNELL, D. D., Bishop of Brooklyn, N. Y.**
- " " **PATRICK MANOGUE, D. D., Bishop of Sacramento, Cal.**
- " " **BERNARD J. McQUAID, D. D., Bishop of Rochester, N. Y.**
- " " **HENRY P. NORTHROP, D. D., Bishop of Charleston, S. C.**
- " " **WILLIAM O'HARA, D. D., Bishop of Scranton, Pa.**
- " " **RICHARD PHELAN, D. D., Bishop of Pittsburgh, Pa.**
- " " **HENRY JOSEPH RICHTER, D. D., Bishop of Grand Rapids, Mich.**
- " " **STEPHEN VINCENT RYAN, D. D., Bishop of Buffalo, N. Y.**
- " " **JOSEPH RADEMACHER, D. D., Bishop of Fort Wayne, Ind.**
- " " **RICHARD SCANNELL, D. D., Bishop of Omaha, Neb.**
- " " **JOHN L. SPALDING, D. D., Bishop of Peoria, Ill.**
- " " **JAMES SCHWEBACH, D. D., Bishop of La Crosse, Wis.**
- " " **MICHAEL TIERNEY, D. D., Bishop of Hartford, Conn.**
- " " **A. VAN DE VYVER, D. D., Bishop of Richmond, Va.**
- " " **JOHN AMBROSE WATTERSON, D. D., Bishop of Columbus, O.**
- " " **WINAND MICHAEL WIGGER, D. D., Bishop of Newark, N. J.**

INTRODUCTION.

THE reading public has been amply supplied for years with devotional books of every description, but the present volume may be said to occupy a field peculiarly its own, as the people have never been furnished with a publication embracing in a single volume such a quantity of religious information, and treating the dogmas of the Church in a lucid, instructive and agreeable manner.

It has been the aim of the Publisher to produce a work that will become a standard authority on the matters it contains, and no labor or expense has been spared to make it the most attractive and useful book of its kind ever published. The illustrations are new, artistic, appropriate, and original ; while the literary features have been made entertaining as well as instructive. The Publisher feels confident, therefore, that the book will meet with the great success it deserves, and that there is no home in the land where the introduction of the "Glories of the Catholic Church" will not be welcomed as a cause of immediate gratification and a source of lasting pleasure.

No subject can be more instructive, important and interesting to Catholics than the Glories of their Church, the way, the truth, and the life. The sure way, which we must follow ; the infallible truth, which we must believe ; and the blessed life, which we hope to obtain hereafter. What is all the boasted learning of all the ancient or modern philosophers, if compared with that divine philosophy which Jesus brought from heaven ? a philosophy which does not relate to the perishable things of this life, but to the attainment of eternal felicity in the next. If a treatise on botany, on the method of improving a farm, or preserving health, be found so interesting, how much more important ought we deem the sacred book of the Gospel, which regards our nearest and dearest interests, which offers to all a reward infinitely superior to earthly riches ; which has God for its author, salvation for its end ; and truth, without any mixture of error, for its subject. If biography be at all time inviting and instructive, how much more when it records the life and actions of a God-man ! who descended from heaven to be a propitiation for our sins, to enlighten us by the purest doctrine, and to animate us by His own example, to the practice of every virtue.

"I have given you an example," says He, "that as I have done, so you do also."

Hence, His whole life, as St. Austin observes, is a continual instruction for the regulation of our manners, and we sin only in proportion as our conduct is a deviation from what He proposes to our imitation. Since, therefore, "God, who at sundry times past spake to the fathers by the prophets, hath last of all spoken to us by His son;" since by a voice from heaven he has expressly commanded us to "hear Him;" let us listen to this divine Master with respect and docility; let us learn His saving truths, and looking on Him as the author and finisher of our faith; let us imitate His life and manners, that we may be duly enlightened and delivered from all blindness of heart.

The following work is intended to comprise a full and complete history of our Church: this is given in the words of the Gospel, the narration being a compound text of the four evangelists with such observations as tend to elucidate what is obscure, to ascertain the time and place of every transaction, to establish the series of facts, and to reconcile seeming contradictions. The gospels have ever been esteemed the most excellent part of the sacred writings, because what the law and the prophets only foretold, the gospels, says St. Austin, plainly demonstrates to have been accomplished. It is here Christ teaches us, not by His prophets, but by His own divine mouth, the great lessons of faith, and of eternal life; and the history of His life is set before us as the most perfect pattern of sanctity for our imitation, being delivered by the sacred penman with a certain dignity and simplicity not to be found in profane authors. The dispassionate, simple, yet dignified manner in which the evangelists speak of their divine Master, and of the most sublime mysteries, without any pomp of diction, is admitted by unbelievers themselves, and is justly to be considered as having in it something more than human. Like the mysterious pillar which conducted the Israelites in the desert, it diffuses its cheering light upon the truly humble of heart, while to the vain and presumptuous it turns its dark side in punishment of their depraved dispositions. To the judgment, therefore, of the Catholic Church, which is "the pillar and ground of truth," the compiler professes the most humble submission. As it is from the Catholic Church we received the Gospel pure and entire, so from the same source we must receive its true and genuine sense.

The Catholic Church, according to the words of Christ, "Go and teach all nations," has at all times joined instruction with the offering of the Holy Sacrifice. But the words of the preacher often pass away like smoke in air; preaching and spiritual reading should therefore support each other. By this means instruction will be the more deeply impressed

on the heart and bring forth more salutary fruits in the life. Much that we lose by neglect may thus be regained. For these reasons the reading of spiritual books is recommended by all enlightened teachers, as a means of properly keeping Sundays and holy days. What a beautiful sight it is to see the father begin this reading on days sanctified to God, while the members of his family sit around and listen to him!

No exercise of our lives is more salutary than meditation on the life, death, doctrines, and example of our Divine Saviour. It is milk to the children, nourishing food to the adults, medicine to the sick, salvation to sinners, consolation to them of little faith, strength to the penitent, counsel to the just. To the perfect it opens secret mysteries, and gives to the faithful grace in time and happiness in eternity.

Many cannot assist at the community mass, or other divine services; and often from just causes—as when attending the sick. But by the help of a spiritual book like this, they are enabled devoutly to arrange their family devotions.

The Latin language has been reserved by the Catholic Church for its Divine Services, in order that an inviolable conformity and unity may be preserved, and all innovations prevented. In this book, however, the Catholic will find the Introits of the Mass, the Prayers of the Church, and explanations of the ceremonies used in celebrating the mysteries of our salvation.

As the Catholic Church is the true and proper interpreter of Scripture (a truth denied only by sectarists), so those seem best qualified for expounding the sacred text whom she reckons among her fathers and defenders, or who tread, at least, in their footsteps, and adhere to their doctrine.

The contributors are certainly men of distinguished virtue, genius, and learning: they were raised up by God for the protection of His Church; and, therefore, they are proposed to us as the best and safest guides for interpreting the holy Scripture in the same spirit in which it was written.

To read to advantage, therefore, we must observe the following rules, which are recommended to us by spiritual writers: In the first place, we should never fail to elevate our mind to God, to beg His grace that our reading may become fruitful; that it may penetrate our hearts, and take such root there, as to render us more fervent in virtue, more guarded against the illusions of the world, and more constant in whatever may promote our spiritual advancement and perfection.

Would that this book might come into the hands of many; that they might read it with care on Sundays and holy days; and that what they read might not only be deeply impressed on their understanding and memory, but also upon their hearts, to the glory of God, and the temporal and eternal welfare of the faithful.

CONTENTS

VOLUME I.

THE GLORIES OF THE CATHOLIC CHURCH.

PART I.

	PAGE
DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS.....	5

SECTION SECOND.

CHAPTER			
I.	The Progress of the Gospel throughout the World—JOHN GILMARY SHEA, LL. D...	13	
II.	The Church in America—JOHN GILMARY SHEA, LL. D.....	20	
III.	The Triumphs of the Catholic Church prove her a Divine Institution—BY REV. HENRY A. BRANN, D. D.....	24	

SECTION THIRD.

BY THE VERY REV. JOSEPH FAA DI BRUNO, D. D.

Catholic Belief, or a Short and Simple Exposition of Catholic Doctrine.

I.	Introduction.....	50
II.	Of the Creator.....	51
III.	Of the Most Holy Trinity.....	51
IV.	Original Sin.....	53
V.	The Incarnation of God the Son.....	55
VI.	Jesus our only Mediator of Redemption.....	56
VII.	The Holy Bible.....	57
VIII.	The Unwritten Word of God, called by St. Peter "the Word of the Lord that endureth forever".....	60
IX.	The Interpretation and the Reading of Holy Scripture.....	66
X.	Infallibility of the Church and the Pope.....	73
XI.	Justification—How Christ's Redemption is Applied to Men.....	82
XII.	The Holy Sacraments—Holy baptism.....	86
XIII.	On Sin—Nature and Consequences of Sin.....	88
XIV.	The Sacrament of Penance.....	93
XV.	The Holy Eucharist.....	95
XVI.	The Holy Sacrifice of the Mass—The Holy Sacrifice of the Mass Serves to Apply Christ's Redemption to Men.....	97
XVII.	Ceremonies and Ritual of the Church.....	102
XVIII.	Benediction of the Blessed Sacrament.....	109
XIX.	Confirmation—Extreme unction—Holy orders—Matrimony.....	113

CHAPTER	PAGE
XX. Only one true Church—First mark: Oneness of Faith, of Worship, of Sacraments, and of Supreme Ruler.....	118
XXI. The Supremacy of the Bishop of Rome.....	120
XXII. List of all the General Councils held in the Church of God from the time of the Apostles to A. D. 1880.....	129
XXIII. Second Mark: Holiness.....	134
XXIV. Third Mark: Catholicity.....	139
XXV. Fourth Mark: Apostolicity.....	144
XXVI. List of the Sovereign Pontiffs who, in a Direct line, have Succeeded St. Peter in the see of Rome.....	146
XXVII. The Sign of the Cross.....	151
XXVIII. On Prayer.....	153
XXIX. Works of Penance—On Indulgences.....	156
XXX. On Purgatory.....	159
XXXI. On Reverence to, and the Invocation of, the Angels and Saints.....	163
XXXII. The Blessed Virgin Mary justly called Mother of God—Honor and Devotion to the Blessed Virgin Mary.....	165
XXXIII. The Immaculate Conception of the Blessed Virgin Mary.....	169
XXXIV. Reverence to Relics and other Religious Objects.....	173
XXXV. On the Use of the Latin Language.....	176
XXXVI. Some Things that Catholics do not Believe.....	178
XXXVII. Conclusion.....	182

PART II.

Practical Directions to a Protestant before and after Being Received into the Catholic Church.

No.	PAGE
1—Answers to some Difficulties, and to some Questions that a Person earnestly seeking the true Religion might wish to ask—The "Confiteor" or Confession.....	185
2—The Apostles' Creed—Creed of Pope Pius IV.—A Shorter Form of Profession of Faith—Mode of Reception—A very short Form of Profession of Faith, to be used only in cases of very grave and urgent necessity.....	194
3—Conversion of Victorinus.....	199
4—Some Distinguished Converts of North America.....	203
5—Earnest Appeal to Protestants, Suggested by the Affecting Words of St. Augustine, Bishop of Hippo, to the Donatists.....	204
6—A Choice of Prayers—The Hail Mary—Gloria Patri—A Daily Prayer—Rosary of the Blessed Virgin—Joyful Mysteries—Sorrowful Mysteries—Glorious Mysteries—The Angelus—Prayers for the Dying—The Divine Praises—Act of Resignation to the Will of God—Prayer in our Last Agony.....	205
7—A Prayer for a Good Death.....	208
8—Stations (or Way) of the Cross—A Prayer to our Crucified Lord—Aspirations to Jesus—Pious Offering—A Prayer in Sickness or Affliction—A Prayer for our Holy Father, the Pope—The Fourth Penitential Psalm—The Sixth Penitential Psalm—Prayer for Another's Conversion—For a Friend in Distress—For the Sick—Prayer for a Bishop or Priest—For the Dead—Prayer for a Departed Father and Mother—Other Prayers for the Dead—A Prayer for the Faithful Departed—On the Day of a Person's Decease or Burial—For the Patronage of St. Joseph.....	210
9—Hymns—Hymns to the Holy Ghost—Adeste, Fideles—The Stabat Mater.....	216
10—Te Deum Laudamus.....	219
11—Observations on Faith, by Cardinal Newman.....	220

No.	PAGE
12—Acts of Faith, Hope, Charity, and Contrition—An Act of Faith—An Act of Hope—An Act of Charity—An Act of Contrition—Short Acts of Faith, Hope, Love, and Contrition	221
13—The Mass not a Mere Form of Words.....	222
14—A Short Method of Hearing Mass.....	224
15—Method of Confession—Sins more directly against God—Sins against our Neighbor—Sins against Ourselves—Second, Be Heartily Sorry—Special Act of Contrition—Third, Make a Firm Resolution never to Sin again—Fourth, Make a Candid and Humble Confession.....	227
16—The Ten Commandments of God—The Commandments of the Church—The Seven Deadly Sins, and the opposite Virtues—The Seven Spiritual Works of Mercy—The Seven Corporal Works of Mercy—The Seven Gifts of the Holy Spirit—The Eight Beatitudes.....	235

PART III.

Miscellaneous Subjects.

1—St. Peter in Rome—St. Peter went to Rome and first taught Christianity there—St. Peter was Bishop of Rome 25 years—St. Peter died in Rome.....	239
2—The Truth About Cusa, Copernicus, Galileo, and Kepler.....	250
3—The Transmission of the Sin of Adam to his Children Considered.....	255
4—Communion in One Kind.....	259
5—Predestination	272
6—Justification by "Faith Alone" Considered.....	276
7—List of the Chief Fathers of the Church and of some other noted Ecclesiastical Writers...	292
8—Canonized Founders of Orders and Congregations in the Church.....	296
9—Chief Heresies.....	297
10—Cardinal Manning on Total Abstinence—Five Good Reasons for Total Abstinence..	300
11—Lines on the Blessed Virgin by the American Poet Longfellow.....	301
12—Census of Religions in the World.....	302
13—Census of Catholics in the World.....	303
14—Difficulties of Private Interpretation, by Father G. Bampfield, B. A., Oxon.....	304
15—List of Some Protestant Sects in the United States of America.....	307

PART IV.

A Christian's Rule of Life.

BY SAINT ALPHONSUS LIGUORI.

PREFACE	311
CHAPTER	
I. Of the Means of Preserving the Grace of God.....	315
II. Devout Exercises to be Practiced.....	319
1—Acts on Rising in the Morning.....	319
2—Method of Making Mental Prayer.....	320
3—Acts to be Made by Way of Preparation and Thanksgiving both for Confession and Communion	321
4—Method of Hearing Mass.....	325
5—Acts to be Made in Visiting the Most Holy Sacrament and the Divine Mother.....	326
6—Christian Acts, to be Made in the Evening Before Going to Bed	327
7—Devout Prayers to Jesus and Mary to Obtain the Graces Necessary to Salvation.....	329

CHAPTER	PAGE
III. The Practice of the Christian Virtues.....	343
1—The Practice of Humility.....	343
2—The Practice of Mortification.....	345
3—The Practice of Charity toward our Neighbor.....	347
4—The Practice of Patience.....	349
5—The Practice of Conformity to the Will of God.....	352
6—The Practice of Purity of Intention.....	354
7—Rules for Avoiding Tepidity.....	355
8—The Practice of Devotion toward the Great Mother of God....	356
9—On the Practice of Certain Means by which we May Acquire the Love of Jesus Christ.	357
An Epitome of the Virtues in which a Christian Soul, that Desires to Lead a Perfect Life and Become a Saint, Should Exercise Itself.....	366
Spiritual Maxims for a Christian.....	371
Plous Reflections to Excite in Us the Holy Love of God, and Devotion to Mary.....	372
Sure Signs by which we May Know whether We Have the Divine Love in Us.....	375
Twelve Short Ejaculations for the Twelve Greatest Solemnities in the Year—Seven of Our Lord and Five of the Blessed Virgin, which May be Used at Any Other Time and on Any Day, according to Each One's Devotion.....	379

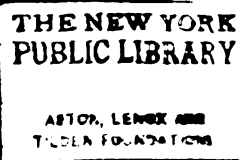
VOL. I.

***COLUMBUS DISCOVERS AMERICA.
THE SPREAD OF THE GOSPEL.
THE TRIUMPHS OF THE CHURCH.
CATHOLIC BELIEF.
RULE OF LIFE.***



Planting of the Cross.

THE LANDING OF COLUMBUS.



DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS.

HE PLANTS THE CROSS ON AMERICA'S SHORES.—HIS TRIALS AND TRIUMPHS.

MORE than four hundred years ago, there stood near a small town on the coast of Spain an ancient convent. It still stands there, on a height above the sea, surrounded by a forest of pine trees.

A stranger, traveling on foot, with a little boy, one day stopped at the gate of the convent, and asked the porter to give him a little bread and water for his child. Poor and friendless though he was, when he stood at the convent gate, he afterwards became one of the most famous of men. That stranger was the great Christopher Columbus; and the little boy was his son Diego.

His discovery of America was not the result of accident—else, Columbus had been but an unwilling instrument. But it was the result of a process of reason; a vast conception, executed with almost peerless efforts.

Columbus was born in Genoa, about 1435, of a good Catholic family. The family name in Italian is Colombo; and in Spanish history he is known as Christoval Colon. Of his early life, but little is known. He was sent to Pavia, the chief Italian seat of learning, to prosecute his studies, and although he remained at school but a short time, he made rapid progress, especially in geometry, astronomy and cosmography. He commenced his naval career at an early age; took part in a naval expedition fitted out at Genoa, by John of Anjou, Duke of Calabria, in 1459, against Naples; and in 1474, was captain of several Genoese ships, in the service of Louis XI., of France. He subsequently went to Lisbon, where his brother Bartholomew found a profitable occupation in constructing sailing charts for navigators.

At this time the government of Portugal encouraged navigation and maritime discovery. Columbus soon embarked on an arduous voyage to the north. He made several other voyages to England and to the islands possessed by Spain and Portugal in the western ocean. In consequence, he soon became the most experienced navigator of his time. He

took notes of everything he saw, and kept his mind intently fixed upon the studies in which he was destined to effect so great a revolution.

While a resident of Lisbon, Columbus married the daughter of Palestrello, an Italian cavalier, who had been one of the most distinguished navigators under Prince Henry of Portugal, and had colonized and governed the island of Porto Santo. By this marriage, he obtained access to the charts and papers of Palestrello, and of other experienced navigators connected with his wife's family. The passage round the Cape of Good Hope had not yet been discovered. The great object, at this time, was to discover the shortest route to the East Indies, whose wealth enriched the cities of the Mediterranean. In his conversations with the geographers and pilots whom he found in Lisbon, Columbus consulted them on the possibility of a western passage to the countries of Cathay and Zipangu, described by Marco Polo. By this means he became acquainted with a number of facts which confirmed a theory he had already formed.

Pedro Forrea, his wife's relation, had found on the coast of Porto Santo, pieces of carved wood, evidently not cut with a knife, and which had been carried thither by strong westerly winds. Other navigators had picked up in the Atlantic, canes of an extraordinary size, and many plants not apparently belonging to the Old World. The bodies of men were found, thrown by the waves on the shores of the Azores, who had features differing essentially from those of Africans or Europeans, and who had evidently come from the west.

These facts gave additional force to the reasonings which Columbus founded on his thorough knowledge of the existing cosmographical science of his time ; and he was finally induced to attempt the discovery. Not having the means of fitting out a suitable expedition at his own expense, he obtained an audience of John II., King of Portugal, and fully unfolded to that monarch his plan. He proposed, in case the king would furnish him with ships and men, to undertake a shorter and more direct route to India, than any which had yet been attempted, by sailing directly to the west, across the Atlantic. The councillors and men of learning were directed to examine the project ; and the king was advised to fit out an expedition to undertake the discovery without the knowledge of its projector.

A caravel was dispatched, with the ostensible purpose of carrying provisions to the Cape de Verd islands ; but with secret orders to pursue the route laid down in the papers of Columbus. But Providence interfered on behalf of justice. The caravel stood westward from the islands for several days, and then the weather grew stormy and the pilots afraid. They put back to Lisbon, and covered their own want of courage by ridiculing the project of Columbus.

With a just indignation at this attempt to defraud him of the results

of his labors, Columbus abandoned Portugal, toward the end of the year 1484, and arrived at the port of Palos, in Spain. Here he experienced the fate of most men whose projects are grand or startling. Ferdinand and Isabella were at this time engaged in a war with the Moors of Granada; and although they listened to Columbus's proposals, they were too much occupied to give him the aid necessary for carrying out his great enterprise. Wearied out by years of fruitless solicitation, he had determined to abandon the country, and had actually left the court for France, when his friends, St. Angel and Quintanilla, a good monk, by their earnest and eloquent intercessions, induced Queen Isabella to recall him. The queen, now fully convinced of the importance of the enterprise, displayed her zeal for its success by offering to pledge her jewels to raise the required funds. This was not necessary, however, and arrangements were speedily made for fitting out the expedition.

On April 17, 1492, were signed the articles of agreement, by which Columbus received from the sovereigns the hereditary titles of Admiral and Viceroy of all the seas, islands, and countries he should discover. He was entitled to reserve for himself one-tenth of all pearls, precious stones, gold, silver, spices, and other articles of merchandise in whatever manner found, bought, bartered or gained within his admiralty, the costs being first deducted; and he was permitted to contribute an eighth part of the expense of the expedition, and to receive an eighth part of the profits.

The vessels were prepared for the voyage, in the port of Palos. The largest, which was decked, was called the *Santa Maria* (Holy Mary), and on board of this ship Columbus hoisted his flag. The second, called the *Pinta*, was commanded by Martin Alonzo Pinzon. The third, called the *Nina*, had latine sails, and was commanded by Vicente Yanes Pinzon. About one hundred and twenty persons embarked on the expedition.

On Friday, Aug. 3, 1492, the adventurers sailed. They directed their course to the Canary Islands, where they were delayed for some time in consequence of an injury done to the rudder of the *Pinta*. On Sept. 6th they left the Canaries; and that may be regarded as the first day of the most memorable voyage which has ever been undertaken. The winds were at first light, and little way was made; the second day, the fleet lost sight of land. The companions of Columbus, who were now advancing over the ocean, unable to conjecture the termination of their voyage, began to feel astonished at the boldness of the enterprise. Many of them shed tears and broke into loud lamentations, believing that they should never return. Columbus endeavored to console them and inspire them with new courage.

Columbus had taken the precaution of keeping secret the true reckon-

ing of the distance passed over, while he kept a false reckoning for the inspection of his companions, which made the distance considerably less ; but, notwithstanding this deception, his people were now growing extremely uneasy at the length of the voyage. The admiral endeavored in every way to soothe their rising fears, sometimes by arguments and expostulations, sometimes by awakening fresh hopes, and pointing out new signs of land. Light breezes from the southwest springing up on Sept. 20th, had a cheering effect on the people, as they proved that the wind did not always prevail in the same direction. Three days later a whale was observed, heaving up his huge form at a distance, which Columbus pointed out as an indication of the proximity of land. The prevalence of calms, however, and the great quantities of sea-weed which they encountered, retarding the course of the ships, occasioned fresh alarm. Columbus reasoned, expostulated, and promised in vain. The men were too much under the influence of terror to listen to reason. The more Columbus argued the more boisterous became their murmurs, until there came a heavy swell of the sea unaccompanied by wind. This, fortunately, dispelled the terrors occasioned by the previous dead calm.

On Sept. 25th while Columbus, with his officers, were studying a map, and endeavoring to make out from it their position, they were aroused by a shout from the *Pinta*, and, looking up, beheld Martin Alonzo Pinzon, mounted on the stern of his vessel, who cried with a loud voice, "Land! land! Señor, I claim my reward!" * pointing at the same time to the south-west, where there was indeed an appearance of land, at about twenty-five leagues distance. Columbus threw himself upon his knees, and returned thanks to God, and Martin Alonzo repeated the *Gloria in Excelsis*, in which he was loudly joined by the crews of the ships. They changed their course, and sailed all night in the same direction. At daylight all eyes were turned in that quarter ; but the supposed land, which had caused so much joy, had disappeared, and they found that they had been deceived by the appearance of clouds in the horizon. The direct course to the west was again resumed.

The crews soon relapsed into their former despondency. Nevertheless, the multitude of birds which they saw continually flying about the ships, the pieces of wood which they picked up, and many other symptoms of land, prevented them from giving themselves wholly up to despair. Columbus, in the midst of so much uneasiness and dejection, remained calm and self-possessed.

On Oct. 11th the indications of land became more and more certain. A reed quite green floated by, fish, such as abound near rocks, were seen, the trunk of a bamboo, and a plank, rudely carved, were picked

* A pension of 30 crowns had been promised by the sovereign to the first man who should discover land.



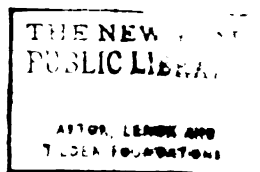
Pinta.

Santa Maria.

Nina.

Columbus Before Ferdinand and Isabella.

COLUMBUS DISCOVERS LAND.



up by the people of the *Nina*, and those in the *Pinta* saw a branch of a tree with berries on it. They sounded at sunset and found bottom. The wind was now unequal ; and this last circumstance completely satisfied the mind of Columbus that land was not far off. The crew assembled, as usual, for evening prayer. As soon as the service was over, Columbus desired the people to return thanks to God for having preserved them in so long and dangerous a voyage, and assured them that the indications of land were now too certain to be doubted. He recommended them to look out carefully during the night, for that they should surely discover land before the morning ; and he promised a doublet of velvet to whomsoever should first descry it, in addition to the pension to be given by the sovereigns. About ten o'clock at night, while Columbus was sitting on the top of the castle or cabin on the high poop of his vessel, he thought he beheld a glimmering light at a distance. Fearing that his hopes might deceive him, he called Pedro Gutierrez, and inquired whether he saw a light in that direction ; the latter replied in the affirmative. He then called Roderigo Sanchez, of Segovia ; but before he came it had disappeared ; they saw it, nevertheless, twice afterward, in sudden gleams, as if it were a torch in the bark of a fisherman, rising and sinking with the waves, or in the hands of some person on shore, borne up and down as he walked. Columbus considered this appearance as a certain sign of land, and, moreover, that the land was inhabited.

At two in the morning a gun from the *Pinta*, which was ahead, gave the joyful signal of land. It was in the night of Oct. 11th 1492, after a voyage of thirty-five days, that the New World was discovered. The crews longed for the return of day, that they might feast their eyes on the long-desired sight. At length day broke, and they enjoyed the prospect of hills and valleys, clothed in delicious verdure. The three vessels steered toward it at sunrise. The crew of the *Pinta*, which, as usual, was in advance, commenced chanting the *Te Deum* ; and all sincerely thanked heaven for the success of their voyage. They saw, as they approached, the inhabitants issuing from the woods, and running from all parts to the shore, where they stood gazing at the ships. They were all quite naked, and from their attitudes and gestures appeared to be lost in astonishment. Columbus gave the signal to anchor, and ordered the boats to be manned and armed. He entered his own boat, richly attired in scarlet, and bearing the royal standard ; whilst Martin Alonzo Pinzon, and Vicente Yanez, his brother, put off in company in their boats. As they approached the shore they were delighted with the luxuriance of the tropical vegetation with which it was adorned, with the pure, fresh atmosphere, and the crystal transparency of the sea. No sooner did Columbus land than he threw himself upon his knees, kissed the earth, and

returned thanks to God with tears of joy. His example was followed by the rest, who were penetrated with the same sentiments of gratitude. Columbus, then rising, drew his sword, displayed the royal standard, and took solemn possession on behalf of the Castilian sovereigns, giving the island the name of San Salvador. He then exacted from his followers the oath of obedience to him as admiral and viceroy, representing the persons of the sovereigns.

The natives who, at their first landing, had fled to the woods, finding that there was no attempt to pursue or molest them, gradually recovered from their terror, and approached their new visitors with great awe, frequently prostrating themselves, and making signs of adoration. When they had still further recovered from their fear, they approached the Spaniards, touched their beards, and examined their hands and faces, admiring their whiteness. Columbus treated them with kindness; they supposed that the ships had sailed out of the firmament which bounded their horizon, or that they had descended from above, and that these strange beings were inhabitants of the skies.

The island which the Spaniards had discovered was called by the natives Guanahana; but it has since retained the name of San Salvador; the English call it Cat Island. It is one of the Bahama group, between Florida and Hispaniola.

When the admiral returned to his vessel, some of the natives swam after him, others paddled in their canoes, and the caravel was quite surrounded with them. They were ignorant of the use of iron, and some of them, catching hold of the Spanish swords by the blades, received slight wounds. On the morrow, they came off to the fleet to exchange balls of cotton for beads, hawks' bells, and other trinkets. They had appended to their ears little plates of gold, which soon caught the eyes of the Spaniards. On being asked where they had obtained them, they always pointed toward the south. Columbus determined to go in search of the country thus indicated, always hoping speedily to arrive at Cathay and Zipangu. In pursuit of these countries, he prosecuted his researches until he discovered Cuba. The interpreters whom he had brought from San Salvador, learned here that some gold was found in Cuba, but that it was much more abundant in another country farther to the east.

The prospect of obtaining gold inflamed the cupidity of the Spaniards, and Alonzo Pinzon, the commander of the *Pinta*, which was the best sailer in the fleet, wishing to arrive first at the land where the precious metal abounded, crowded all sail, and was soon out of sight.

On Dec. 5th, Columbus, with the remaining ships, sailed from the eastern point of Cuba, and soon arrived at the rich country of which he had received such a glowing description. It was called by the natives

Haiti; Columbus gave it the name of *Hispaniola*. They anchored first at Port St. Nicholas, and shortly after at a little distance from Cape François. The natives took to flight at the appearance of the ships; but kind treatment to one of their number, who accidentally fell into the hands of the Spaniards by the upsetting of his canoe, gave them confidence; and they came in multitudes to the ships, exchanging fruits, provisions, and gold for bits of porcelain, beads, and hawks' bells. Guanacanagari, the prince of the country, or *Cacique*, as he was called by his people, received Columbus with much kindness, and in return was treated by him with great distinction. They contracted a friendship, which continued ever afterward undiminished. He was loaded with ornaments of gold, which, he informed the Spaniards, came from a country farther to the east, called *Cibao*. Columbus, deceived by the resemblance of the names, believed at first that it was Zipangu; but he afterward learned that *Cibao* was the name of a mountain in the centre of the island.

The fleet now proceeded to the east, for the purpose of approaching the gold mines of *Cibao*. On the night of Dec. 24th, Columbus's vessel, the *Santa Maria*, struck upon a reef, and he was compelled to abandon her, and take refuge, with his crew, on board the *Nina*. The cacique and his people assisted the Spaniards in saving their effects, and consented to their erecting a fort with the timber of the wreck. It was named *La Navidad*, and garrisoned with thirty-eight men, the first colony in Spanish America. The admiral left provisions in the fort, articles to barter with the natives, and whatever was necessary for its defence. He then took leave of the friendly cacique, with the promise to return soon.

On Jan. 4, 1493, Columbus set sail, proceeding to the east, in order to complete the examination of the north coast of the island, and on his way met the *Pinta*, near Monte Christo. He affected to be satisfied with the excuses made by Alonzo Pinzon, to explain his parting company. At length, on the 16th, the two ships directed their course for Spain. The weather was favorable at the commencement of the voyage; but heavy gales came on when the ships were near the Azores, and the *Pinta* was a second time lost sight of. The admiral's vessel was in such imminent danger that he despaired of ever reaching land. He was fearful that the knowledge of his discovery would perish with him; and to prevent this, he wrote a brief account of his voyage on two leaves of parchment, and put each of these leaves into a tight cask. One of these casks was thrown overboard immediately; the other was allowed to remain on deck to await the foundering of the vessel. But Providence interposed to save so valuable a life; the storm subsided. They arrived at the Azores on Feb. 15th, and at Palos on Mar. 15th, seven months and a half after their departure from the same port. Alonzo Pinzon arrived

about the same time at a northern port in Spain, and died a few days after.

Columbus's return was a perfect triumph. He was received at Palos with enthusiastic joy. Ringing of bells and processions of magistrates welcomed him to Barcelona, where the sovereigns were at that time holding their court. He made a public entry into the city; the whole population came out to meet him; he walked in the midst of the Indians whom he had brought with him, and had dressed for the occasion in their native costume. The rich productions of the New World were borne in open baskets before him, as he proceeded through an immense crowd to the palace, where Ferdinand and Isabella were seated on the throne, awaiting his arrival. As soon as he appeared with his train, they rose up. Columbus threw himself upon his knees; but they commanded him to be seated in their presence; "a rare honor in this proud and punctilious court." He then gave an account of his voyage, and of the discoveries he had made, and showed the various products of the New World, which he had brought, and the Indians who attended him. Ferdinand, delighted with the success of this great enterprise, confirmed to Columbus all his privileges, and permitted him to join to the arms of his own family, those of the kingdoms of Castile and Leon, with the emblems of his discoveries and of the dignities resulting from them.

Such was the reception of Columbus in Spain, after his return from his glorious enterprise. The object of his life had been attained. His subsequent career was a practical illustration of the influence of envy and of the ingratitude of men. By his own genius and perseverance Columbus had achieved one of the most grand and brilliant enterprises which history has recorded. In endeavoring to obtain the means of prosecuting it, he had met with every obstacle which envy and ridicule could create. After the feat was accomplished, his glory excited the ambition and the malice of those who could not really rival him. For awhile, even the truth of the discovery was denied. This, however, innumerable proofs silenced. Then detraction insinuated that Columbus had learned it all from the books of older navigators. Finally the work was consummated by the removal of the old navigator from all his offices, and by sending him home in chains. Miltiades was victor at Marathon, yet was banished from the country he had saved. Themistocles won at Salamis; and he, too, was banished by the ungrateful Athenians. But this was the "unkindest cut of all." Columbus gave a new world to the sway of Spain, yet died in disgrace. His memory, however, is cherished by the world, while his detractors are forgotten. Columbus deserves to rank among those truly great men—"the stars in the heaven of fame"—who have raised themselves to renown by their vast achievements.

TRIUMPHS AND GLORIES' OF THE CATHOLIC CHURCH.

Chapter 1.

The Progress of the Gospel throughout the World.

THE spread of the kingdom of God over the whole earth from the day of Pentecost to the end of time is the fulfilment of the prophecies of the Old and New Testaments. Our Lord is King, but his kingdom is not of this world, though in this world. He sent his Apostles with power, not to gain a few proselytes in this land or that, but to teach the nations: "Go teach all nations, teaching them to observe whatsoever I have commanded you." (St. Matt. xxix. 19.) The nations were to sit as pupils. And the Church applies to them the prophecy of David: "Their sound hath gone forth into all the earth, and their words unto the ends of the world." (Ps. xviii. 5.)

Men of many lands were among the converts on the day of Pentecost; and the synagogues at Jerusalem, representing various countries, gave proselytes to the faith.

After the martyrdom of St. Stephen, A. D. 33, the disciples were scattered, and St. Philip, the deacon, preached in Samaria and converted so

many that St. Peter and St. John went down to confirm them. Through the eunuch of Queen Candace, St. Philip was the instrument of introducing Christianity into Abyssinia, the first home of the faith in Africa. In the year 42 and thereafter St. Paul spread the Church through Arabia, Asia Minor, Cyprus, and in 51 preached the gospel in Macedon and other parts of Greece.

The twelve chosen Apostles, according to the uniform tradition, took different lands. St. Peter planted his see at Antioch, and preaching far and near at last made Rome the scene of his labors and of his glorious death with St. Paul in that city.

That St. Thomas carried the cross to India is attested by a constant tradition, and his body rests near Goa. St. Matthew evangelized Persia; St. Andrew announced the Word of God in southern Russia and in Achaia, where he received the crown of martyrdom. St. Bartholomew had preached the faith in Armenia, founding the faith in the land where the ark rested after the flood and the dove brought the olive branch of hope. St. Jude made the name of Jesus known in the land of Mesopotamia, whence Abraham was called by God to the Land of Promise; St. Philip in Phrygia, St. Matthias in Colchis.

In Africa St. Simon preached the Word of God in Libya, and St. Philip the deacon opened the innermost parts of Africa to the Word of God.

The disciples of our Lord, the earliest associates of the Apostles, were the founders of many churches. St. Mark the Evangelist carried the faith to Egypt, and was the first bishop of Alexandria, whence the faith spread to Upper Egypt and Libya. Carthage and Numidia received the truth at an early period, and here apparently the Holy Scriptures were first translated into Latin, the Greek language not prevailing there.

After St. Peter and St. Paul established the Church at Rome, and sealed its triumph by their blood, churches were founded by their immediate followers in many cities of Italy, such as Milan, Ravenna, Bologna, Naples and Palermo.

²⁰¹ The knowledge of Christ reached Spain in the days of the Apostles, and St. Paul proposed to visit the Christians there. Leon, Astorga and Saragossa claim that their ancient churches were founded by disciples of the Apostles, and the records of the martyrs and of the early councils combine to show that the faith had taken root there, and the Church been fully organized.

Gaul was the land where the religion of the Druids prevailed, extending also to Britain and Ireland. The idolatry of Rome had been planted in the Roman colonies or military settlements, but had not overthrown the national faith in Gaul and Britain. Marseilles, which was to a great

extent a Greek city, received Christian teachers from Asia Minor; Lazarus with Mary and Martha being, according to tradition, early pioneers of the faith, and soon alike the worshippers of Jupiter and the votaries of the Druids listened to the Word of God; and the cathedrals of Arles, Narbonne, Paris, Lyons and Vienna claim to represent sees founded almost in the days of the Apostles.

Where the Roman power extended into Germany beyond the Rhine, the Alps and the Danube, Christianity entered, and there are traces of bishops in early days at Cologne, Mentz, Spire and Sirmium. The cathedrals of those cities are really monuments of the early establishment of the faith.

Britain gave the first Christian king in the person of King Lucius who obtained bishops before the end of the second century.

Justin Martyr and Tertullian mention the spread of the gospel through Asia Minor, Armenia, Mesopotamia, Persia, Egypt and Mauritania, Spain, Gaul, Britain, Germany and parts to which the Roman arms had never been able to penetrate. In the spread of the gospel every Christian was a missionary.

The vast extent of the Roman Empire made the diffusion of the gospel in the first centuries rapid, as means of communication between Rome and all the different countries under the imperial sway were frequent and well known.

Everywhere the Apostles and their coadjutors established the same Church, one in faith, one in its teaching, one in its sacrifice, the Mass, one in its priesthood and in its sacraments, one in union with its head, St. Peter, revered by all as the one who, confirmed by God, was to confirm his brethren. The New Testament was not all written when their labors began, and the Church spread more rapidly than the written Word.

During this first period occurred the first general persecution under Nero, A. D. 67, and under Domitian, A. D. 95, in the latter of which St. Andrew was put to death and St. John the Evangelist was thrown into a caldron of boiling oil, and then banished to Patmos. These persecutions caused many Christians to seek a residence in country parts, where they made known the faith. At Rome they made the Catacombs the place of their meetings for divine worship, and often, when the fury of its tyranny raged, their abode, and the burial place of the martyrs, thousands of whose bodies, attested by inscriptions and evidences of martyrdom, still lie in those revered monuments of the primitive Christians.

Persecutions could not exterminate Christianity. The followers of Christ permeated the whole empire. "We are but of yesterday," says Tertullian, "yet we fill all that belongs to you: we leave to you only your temples. Should we withdraw from you into some foreign land,

the loss of so many citizens would weaken your power. You would shudder over the desolation, the silence of a world in some sort extinct ; you would seek in vain for subjects to rule over."

When Constantine embraced the faith Rome had forty churches. Bishops were scattered all over Italy. Northern Africa was divided into bishoprics. A council of nineteen bishops was held in Spain in 306; eight sees were represented at that of Arles in Gaul in 314. There were bishops in Austria, Bavaria, the Tyrol, at Augsburg, Trent, London, York, and in the east in the cities of Greece, Asia Minor, Armenia, Syria, Palestine, Arabia, Mesopotamia, Chaldæa, Egypt. Sapor, king of Persia in 326, announced that from his kingdom to China churches abounded and thousands were embracing the faith. The Iberians on the Black Sea, learning of the faith from the example and miracles of a captive Christian girl, sent to Constantine for missionaries. Frumentius, shipwrecked on Abyssinia, became its apostle to revive the faith, which had become extinct in that country.

Meanwhile the Church, free to pursue her course, rapidly won over the pagan remnant in the Roman Empire and reclaimed many from heresy, although Arius, by his impiety, plunged thousands once more into all the mazes and delusions of error. In this schism of the Church the Arians were soon supported by some of the emperors, and others inaugurated the Iconoclast heresy.

The Roman Empire had done its appointed work, and began to crumble away. Hordes of fierce warriors from the pagan northland of Europe and the steppes of Asia moved in all directions on the doomed empire. The successors of Constantine tried to employ some against the others. The Goths from Scandinavia crossed the Alps ; the Vandals, Suevi, and Alans, overran Gaul. Alaric the Goth at last took Rome itself, and the Visigoths and Vandals then invaded Spain, the latter nation passing into Africa, where they desolated the whole land. Some of these tribes adopted to some extent the creed of Arius, but whether Arian or heathen they destroyed Catholic churches and institutions, and slaughtered the ministers of God. The southern part of the island of Britain was invaded by the still pagan tribes in Ireland and Scotland, and sought assistance from the heathen Saxons. Never had the cause of the Church seemed so desperate ; but at this very moment, when her enemies might exult over her, we see Pope St. Leo confronting Attila, and by his majesty arresting that heathen devastator of the earth.

The reconquest of the world was begun again. A Briton boy, carried a prisoner to Ireland, escaped to return to it a missionary invested with the episcopal office by Pope Celestine (432). He made the whole island Christian, and missionaries soon thence bore the faith to Scotland, Eng-

land, the Faroe Islands, Iceland, and the continent. In Gaul the Franks, after the conversion of King Clovis (481) were rapidly won to the faith. The Suevi, in Spain, and subsequently the Goths, became Catholic. The reconquest of England was completed by St. Augustine, who was sent by the Pope to that island (596), and who planted his see at Canterbury.

When Charlemagne had established his empire, he brought much of Germany to the faith, and missionaries from Ireland and England bore the faith from the Alps and the Danube to the frozen north. The Arian heresy was gradually suppressed, and Catholicity again prevailed. In the east the faith gained Georgia, several provinces of Persia, India, and Abyssinia.

But a heavy punishment awaited nations that had spurned fidelity to the seat of Catholic unity. Mohammedanism arose (622) in Arabia, and ere long Egypt, northern Africa, and Spain, Syria, Asia Minor, Persia, Armenia, and Mesopotamia were lost to the Church and to Christianity. Arianism had so sapped away the vivifying element in the hearts of the people that they yielded almost without a struggle; the faithful perished, the weak succumbed and renounced Christianity. Constantinople was spared for a time, as though God gave the Eastern Empire a last opportunity for repentance.

Mohammedanism was not to be overcome by argument. Their only argument was the sword; and the Church nerved the hands of Latin Christendom to check its power. From a mere foothold in the mountains of Asturias, the Catholic Spaniard, encouraged by the crushing defeat which befel the Moslem on the field of Poitiers (732), in France, fought steadily on for centuries till he had recovered the peninsula from the followers of the prophet. In the east successive crusades met the armies of the Saracens in Syria and Egypt, and though they did not recover the Holy Land, they saved Europe.

Meanwhile Catholicity was forming the nations in the lands it had recovered, and Christian life showed itself in the churches, monasteries, and schools of learning, in the development of architecture, arts and sciences. Throughout the Moslem world it was nurturing in hope whatever scanty remnants of the faithful could be found. The remaining nations in Germany and Scandinavia were won, and in the ninth century the Bulgarians received the faith and sent their submission to Rome.

In the tenth century Denmark became permanently Christian by the conversion of Sweyn, an apostate and persecutor: and the Russians beheld their winterland illumined by the light of Catholic faith. Vladimir, their duke, receiving in marriage the hand of Anna, a Greek princess, destroyed all the idols on his states and received baptism: but Russia embraced the new schism which had originated at Constantinople, and

keeping it from Catholic unity, prepared it for its overthrow. For it is a remarkable spectacle to behold on one side of Europe the Spanish nation, faithful to the Church, wrest its heritage back from the grasp of the Mohammedan, and on the other the Greeks, revolting from the see of unity, fall under Mohammedan sway almost at the same time, and fall utterly, completely, and helplessly.

As there were still parts of Europe where paganism lingered, the Popes formed bodies of apostolic men for the foreign mission. Otho, bishop of Bamberg, converted Pomerania (1124); the natives of the island of Rugen received baptism from Bishop Absalom of Roskild, in 1168. About the same time Livonia was permanently gained to the Church by Meinhard, a canon from Holstein. During the pontificate of Innocent III., Christian, a Cistercian monk, became the apostle and first bishop of Prussia.

The crusades had opened to the knowledge of Europe new regions, of which the Christian nations knew little. Contemporaneously arose the great missionary orders, the Franciscans and Dominicans.

The Franciscans sought to regain Moorish Spain and Morocco, but the pioneers won the crown of martyrdom in Morocco in 1220. Others followed to renew their labors and share their fate the next year. Dominicans entered the same field, and so many were gained that a bishop was appointed. Other fathers of these two orders revived the faith of the Christian remnant in Syria, and won many from the Mohammedan folly. St. Hyacinth converted thousands in the north, in Russia, and extended his labors even to Thibet and China. Bosnia, Servia, Wallachia, were similarly regained in part at this time, and the body of the faithful in these countries still exists. Missions were also begun among the Tartars, where Friar du Plancarpin labored zealously. Others extended the field to include China, and a see was founded at Pekin, by Father John de Montecorvin (1307), where blessed Oderic, with an Irish friar, converted many.

Jordan Catalani revived the faith of the Christians of St. Thomas in India (1330), and won many disciples of Bramah to Christianity. While the Church was thus extending her influence through Asia, and seeking to regain what had been wrested from her by the followers of Mahomet, the enemy of truth sought to weaken her authority in Europe. Heresies, of which the Albigensian was the chief, in the middle of the twelfth century sprang up and ravaged the south of France and the chief cities of Germany. They condemned marriage, and all civil and ecclesiastical authority. St. Bernard, Peter the Venerable, and subsequently St. Dominic, labored to regain the provinces which received these heresies. In the fourteenth century John Wickliffe in England taught that all things

are God, that no one in sin has any authority in Church or State; he denied the doctrines of the holy Eucharist, penance and orders, and maintained that private judgment should interpret Scripture. His doctrine found many adherents and weakened the faith in England. They were taken up early in the next century by John Huss and Jerome of Prague, and their numerous followers took up arms, captured Prague, and ravaged Germany, destroying churches, convents, clergy and all signs of religion. To bring back to the fold the souls led astray by these false shepherds was now a work for the Church. St. John Capistran is among those whose labors were blessed by Heaven.

The Greek Empire was won for a time from schism by the Council of Florence, but, again rejecting the precious blessing of unity with the holy see, fell a victim to the Turks, and Mohammedanism spread over the Eastern Empire and Christianity almost faded away in what became known as Turkey in Europe and Turkey in Asia. While the votaries of the Greek, Armenian, Syriac and Coptic schism gradually sank lower and lower in point of education and sacred learning, those who adhered to Rome, supported and guided by Franciscan and other missionaries, rose even amid their condition of slavery.

Meanwhile the impulse given to navigation by the crusades led to voyages on the Atlantic south of Gibraltar. The Canary Islands were discovered, and Albert de las Casas, appointed as bishop by Pope Innocent VII., labored with zealous Franciscans to win the natives to the faith. As the Portuguese soon took the lead in voyages of discovery, and coasting along Africa reached the Cape of Good Hope, missions were established at various points, and western Africa for the first time received the light of the Gospel. These missions date from 1462 when Pope Pius II. commissioned a body of Franciscan missionaries under Alfonso Bolognino. Ambassadors from Congo were baptized in Portugal: the king of the country showed every inclination to embrace the faith, which his uncle embraced. Some Dominican fathers completed the good work and Congo soon had a Christian ruler.

The Portuguese, continuing their discoveries, opened eastern Africa, India, China, and Japan to the faith. The establishment of the Society of Jesus gave new apostolical laborers, who preached in Congo, Angola, Monomotapa, and Abyssinia. St. Francis Xavier evangelized southern India, especially the fishery coast; and proceeding thence to Malacca, Amboyno, Ternate. While the Franciscans were winning Ceylon, where Catholicity is to this day so strong, St. Francis, in 1549, sailed to Japan, and began the wonderful conversion of thousands in that empire. In no heathen nation in modern times had the faith been received with such earnestness. Fearful persecutions followed, rivaling those of the primi-

tive Christians, but, though nearly exterminated, the little remnant of Catholics has persevered to our day, when the empire was again open to the teaching of truth.

Chapter II.

The Church in America.

IN 1492 Columbus discovered America for Spain, and zealous missionaries came to plant the cross and instruct the natives of the West Indies, Mexico, Guatemala, Peru, Venezuela, and Chile.

The various religious orders—the Dominicans, Franciscans, Augustinians, and Jesuits—took part in these labors. At this day the mass of the people in Spanish America are Catholics of Indian origin, descendants from the converts of the early missionaries. The Spanish missions extended from the Straits of Magellan to Chesapeake Bay and the branches of the Mississippi. The greatest of their triumphs was in Paraguay, where a whole nation was converted and civilized by the Jesuit fathers.

But while a new world was thus opened for the conquest of the Church, she beheld many countries of Europe torn from the bosom of Christ by heresy and schism, and once more bent her energies to reclaim the erring and save the weak. The heresy of Luther (15) reviving those of Wickliffe and Huss, swept from Catholicity much of Germany, Denmark, Norway, and Sweden, covetous kings and nobles adopting his views to seize ecclesiastical property and throw off all the restraints of religion. The heresy of John Calvin overran Switzerland, the Low Countries, the south of France and Scotland. England fell into schism through the lust of her king, Henry VIII., and during the minority of his infant son unprincipled men established a new faith, new clergy, and new worship. In all the north, Ireland alone remained faithful. In all these countries the Catholic religion was suppressed, the clergy slain or expelled, the religious houses and schools destroyed, the churches pillaged and given to the new religion, or turned to profane uses. In France the Calvinists for a time threatened to obtain the upper hand, many of the nobles joining the heresy, and even Henry, king of Navarre, the heir to the French throne. Catholicity triumphed, but the land was drenched in blood and covered with ruins. Belgium, under Spanish rule, retained the faith, although Holland fell away.

The Church at once sent forth a new race of clergy, full of learning, piety, and zeal. In this new war for the reconquest of Europe the Jesu-

its led the way. They checked heresy in Germany, and saved many of the states. St. Vincent de Paul, the Ven. Mgr. Olier, Cardinal de Berulle, with religious of various orders filled the French clergy with zeal, confuted the Calvinists, and won thousands back to the faith, as the holy doctor St. Francis de Sales did in Savoy and Switzerland.

The heresy of Luther, Calvin and Henry made its conquests in the first fifty years. Since then the Church has steadily regained ground, while Protestantism, weakened by divisions, has lost all doctrinal standard, and has in many parts become a mere nominal form of Christianity without spiritual life. The faith in Ireland was kept alive by seminaries at Rome and in the Catholic countries; and similar institutions sent out priests who feared God and feared not man, who with the scaffold before their eyes, confirmed the faith of the Catholics, and won back Protestants in England, Scotland and Wales. Penal laws, persecutions, hanging, drawing and quartering of priests and bishops failed utterly to exterminate Catholicity. Ireland is still Catholic, and in Great Britain the Church has the English and Scotch hierarchies, with thousands of priests, religious of both sexes, colleges, schools, and works of mercy. In Holland the Catholic body has steadily increased, and is now barely in a minority. In Denmark, Norway and Sweden, long closed to the faith, the Church is again progressing. Germany in our time has seen a crafty persecution by which the Catholic bishops and clergy have been exiled till nearly all the dioceses are without bishops, and thousands of parishes without priests; but this has served only to make the Catholics more earnest in their faith, and bind them more firmly to Rome, the centre of unity, banishing from among them the laxer views which prevailed in the last century.

As the discovery of America opened a field for all the maritime powers of Europe, not only Spain but Portugal, England, France, Holland and Sweden planted colonies in America. Portugal settled Brazil after driving off a Protestant French colony, and Catholicity soon converted thousands of Indians to the faith, the Ven. Father Anchieta being their great apostle. France planted the colony of Canada on a truly Catholic basis, and so imbued the people with the faith, that though now for more than a century under Protestant rule their attachment to religion is unshaken; and there are religious establishments, convents and churches coeval with the settlement. Missionaries, both Franciscan and Jesuit, traversed the whole northern and central parts of North America, converting whole tribes to the faith, and in others weakening superstition and gaining many whose descendants are to this day Catholic.

Holland and Sweden planted colonies on the Hudson and Delaware, which afterwards fell into the hands of England, and the latter country

settled all the rest of the North American coast, from Nova Scotia to Florida, planting Protestantism in all the colonies except Maryland, which, settled mainly by Catholics under Catholic influence, was the first home of Catholicity. Thence it spread; growing more rapidly than the great republic, which ultimately arose there, till, towards the close of the nineteenth century, it numbered a hierarchy of nearly seventy archbishops and bishops, and seven million of Catholics.

The Church gained in a similar manner in Australia, and to a less degree in the British West Indies and Guianas.

But while the Church, ever active and unconquered, thus labored to recall to the faith the nations which had been deluded from her fold by the crafty persuasions of the old enemy, promising to make them like gods, a new danger arose. Deism, presented in an attractive form in England, was taken up in France, and the whole doctrine of Christianity, and even the existence of God, was assailed. Infidelity invaded all classes in France. A war was begun upon the Jesuits. They were driven from France, Spain and Portugal, and Pope Clement XIV. was at last forced to disband the order, without a single member being arraigned or even accused of any crime or misdemeanors. Infidelity emboldened by this triumph burst all bounds. The king of France died on the scaffold, priests and bishops were slaughtered, the Christian religion was abolished, and a goddess of Reason was worshipped in the cathedral at Paris. The French republic propagated its doctrines by the sword, the German Empire fell, the kings of Spain, Portugal, Naples, were driven from their thrones. The ideas of the French Revolution were infused into most of Europe. Pope Pius VI. died a prisoner in the hands of the French, and his successor, Pius VII., was elected at Venice, where the cardinals at last gathered. Infidel and Protestant alike exulted that the papacy was crushed forever, and the Catholic religion crushed.

But in a few years religion was restored in France, and the Church began in that and other countries to work against the new infidel ideas. France, Spain, Portugal and Italy remained nominally Catholic, but their governments were more and more swayed by unbelievers. The same was the case with Brazil and new Spanish American republics. In all the action of the State was constantly hostile to the Church. Religious orders were especially hateful to these men. Fearful of the influence of Catholic teaching in all these countries the government sought to control the education of the young, and either exclude all religion, or fill the tender minds with doubts and distrust of religion. In France and Belgium, the Catholic party resolutely fought for its natural rights; but in Spain and Spanish America, religion suffered. Brazil fell completely into the hands of infidels and the adherents of secret societies, who by stratagem con-

trolled even the confraternities in the Churches. Though they did not butcher bishops and priests they succeeded in sending two holy bishops to prison as felons. In Italy the king of Sardinia put himself at the head of the enemies of religion, and after driving Austria out of Italy by the aid of France, seized Tuscany, Parma, Modena, and the kingdom of Naples with much of the territory which, under the name of St. Peter's Patrimony, had been for centuries the States of the Church. France maintained the Pope in Rome, but becoming involved in a war with Prussia, withdrew, and Victor Emmanuel seized the holy city, and set himself up as above God, stabling his horses in churches, and turning chapels into ballrooms. The head of the Church became a prisoner in the Vatican. Convents, colleges, monasteries, asylums were suppressed. Churches and ecclesiastical property were seized and sold ; religion was insulted and crushed, and every liberty given to error ; so that under connivance of government the most vile and wicked books and papers were sold, and every means taken to destroy all religion and morality.

Against this new torrent of vice the Church is now struggling. She is Catholic, her faithful being in all lands from Lapland and the Esquimaux to Terra del Fuego and the Cape of Good Hope, and the islands of the Pacific. Every nation under heaven has had the gospel preached to it ; has had the Church of Jesus Christ and His Apostles presented to it ; has had many cleansed in the sacred waters of baptism, nurtured by the divine bread of the Eucharist in life and death. Never has the Church had so many children in all lands, never so many bishops closely united to their head ; never has she been so united in her doctrine, her discipline, her firm front against the enemies of man's salvation.

JOHN GILMARY SHEA, LL. D.

Chapter III.

The Triumphs of the Catholic Church prove her a Divine Institution.

BY REV. HENRY A. BRANN, D. D.

THE triumphs of the Church in every age have been miraculous and prophetic, and consequently prove her divine origin by the double force of a miracle and of a prophecy. Our Lord promised that His Church would be universal,* and He commissioned His apostles to preach the gospel everywhere, promising to be with them to the end of time. They were to be witnesses to the truth of His teaching in every land under the sun.† His Church was to last forever, for she was to be founded on a rock, which the powers of hell should never be able to destroy.‡ He predicted even the difficulties which she was to encounter in her progress through the world. The apostles and disciples were to be dragged before the courts of justice as criminals, to be beaten in the synagogues, to be summoned before kings and other rulers to answer to the charge of preaching the doctrine of Christ, and on His account the preachers of His creed were to be hated of all men.§ Peter, the head of the Church, was to be crucified ;|| the rest were to be betrayed by friends and relatives, and put to death for no other reason than that of being Christians. Yet He would always be near them and protect them. They were not to be solicitous as to what they should say. He would put words of wisdom into their mouths when the occasion called for their defense ;¶ and these words their enemies would not be able to answer. Miracles were to prove their authority. In the name of Christ they were to cast out devils, speak with various tongues, take up serpents without the danger of being poisoned, drink poison without being affected by it, and to have, moreover, the power of healing the sick.** The Holy

* St. Matt. viii. 11; St. Luke xxiv. 26, *et seq.*; St. Matt. xxviii. 19.
† Acts i. 8.

‡ St. Matt. xvi. 18.
§ St. Matt. x.
|| St. John xxi.

¶ St. Luke xxi. 14.
** St. Mark xvi.

Ghost, the third person of the divine Trinity, was to be sent to protect, to guide, and to comfort them after Christ had ascended into heaven. This Holy Spirit would teach them all truth. He would be their comforter.* After these promises Jesus Christ sent His apostles into the whole world to teach and baptize all nations in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. The apostles were to teach mankind all things which they had heard from the divine Master, who was to remain with them all days, even to the end of the world.† He promised them also success in their mission, in spite of all the difficulties which they were to meet in accomplishing it. The gates of hell were never to prevail against them.

Every one of these promises was accomplished. On the very day of Pentecost, after the descent of the Holy Ghost, Peter preached two sermons with such fruitful result as to convert eight thousand men to the Christian faith.‡ If we add to these the number of women and children who must have embraced Christianity with their husbands, fathers and brothers, the number of converts must have been fully fifteen or twenty thousand. After this event St. Luke tells us that the number of believers steadily increased. A persecution followed this wonderful conversion; but the persecution only promoted instead of impeding the spread of the gospel. The Christians were scattered through Judea and Samaria, everywhere making converts and spreading the seeds of divine grace. Thus Philip converted a whole city of Samaria.§ He also converted the powerful eunuch in the service of Candace, queen of Ethiopia, and traveled, evangelizing Azotus and all the neighboring towns, till he stopped at Cæsarea. Peter and John, sent to confirm those who had been baptized in Samaria, returned to Jerusalem, and then evangelized many places in Samaria. Within a year after the descent of the Holy Ghost Judea and Samaria were filled with believers in Christ.

The wonderful growth of the Church was not confined to those regions. Ten years after the death of Jesus Christ Peter wrote from Rome a letter to the faithful scattered through Pontus, Cappadocia, Asia and Bithynia. John, in the reign of Domitian, wrote to the seven large and flourishing churches which were in Asia, namely, Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamus, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia and Laodicea. Paul traveled over Asia and parts of Europe, founding so many churches that twenty years after our Lord's death he could write in the Epistle to the Romans that their faith was known in the whole world.¶ Thus, even in the lifetime of the apostles, the number of Christians was immense. St. Clement, of Rome, in his first epistle to the Corinthians, writes, that by the ministry

* St. John xiv.

† St. Matt. xxviii. 18.

‡ Acts ii. 41.

§ Acts viii.

¶ Rom. i. 8.

of Peter and Paul, an immense number of converts was made, who suffered martyrdom and cruel torments, leaving to posterity illustrious examples of fortitude and patience. St. Ignatius the martyr writes to the Philadelphians that the Church of Christ was spread from one end of the earth to the other. St. Justin the martyr, who lived about the middle of the second century, bears testimony that there was no race, whether of barbarians or of Greeks, or of any other kind of men, no matter by what name known, whether they live in tents or wander homeless, who did not recite prayers and offer thanksgiving to the Father and Creator of all, in the name of Jesus Christ crucified. St. Irenæus, who follows a little later, confirms this testimony, by enumerating among the churches Germany, Gaul, Spain, Egypt and Libya, illuminated by the same faith as the whole earth is illumined by the same sun.

The well-known testimony of the eloquent Tertullian, who died A.D. 245, confirms all these. "We are but of yesterday," says he, "yet we have filled all your places, your cities, islands, towns, assemblies, camps, tribes, palaces, the senate and the forum; we have left to you only your temples."* The same writer again says: "In whom else have all the nations believed, except in Jesus Christ, who has already come? In Him all believe, Parthians, Medes, Elamites, the inhabitants of Mesopotamia, of Armenia, Phrygia, Cappadocia, the inhabitants of Pontus and Asia and Pamphylia; those who dwell in Egypt, and the region of Africa, even beyond Cyrene; Romans and natives; and the Jews in Jerusalem, and other peoples; and the different tribes of the Getuli, as well as the Moors; the whole of Spain and the different tribes of Gaul; even the recesses of Britain, inaccessible to the Roman arms, acknowledge Christ. The Sarmatians and the Draci, the Germans and the Scythians, the most remote peoples, so numerous that we cannot name them all, adore His name. He reigns among them. All gates are open to Him, and none are closed at His approach. Before Him iron barriers break down, and brazen gates are opened."†

Tacitus and other pagan writers bear similar testimony to the wonderful propagation of Christianity. He says, speaking of the days of Nero, "An immense number of Christians was found."‡ Seneca, confounding Christians and Jews together, says that they were spread everywhere, and that, although conquered, they gave laws to their conquerors. This was an allusion to the moral influence exercised on their persecutors by the Christian victims. Pliny the younger, writing to Trajan, speaks of the great number of Christians in his province. "They were," he said, "of every age, of every order, and of both sexes, not only in the large

* Apology, chap. 37.

† Against the Jews, chap. 7.

‡ Annals L. 15, chap. 14.

cities, but in the small towns and rural districts. The pagans were few, and their temples deserted and pagan rites neglected."*

The fact that the Catholic religion was thus wonderfully spread over the whole world in a very short time is clearly shown from all these authorities ; the fact that it has been wonderfully preserved is equally certain. It is still universal. From the rising to the setting of the sun the name of Christ is known, and His Church is engaged in spreading the gospel. There are over four hundred millions of Christians in the world, and of these over two hundred millions belong to the Catholic Church. Her hierarchy, her patriarchs or archbishops, bishops, vicars apostolic and priests, are in every part of the world, civilized or barbarian. The consideration of this fact alone should make the infidel a believer. St. Augustine, even in his remote age, could appeal to the universality of the Church as an argument to prove her divine origin. He beautifully says : "The Church can say to her enemies, 'Look at me ; you can see me even if you do not want to see me.' Those who lived long ago in Judea became believers because they knew of the miraculous birth of Christ from a virgin, His passion, death, resurrection and ascension, and the wonderful deeds which He performed, and His prophecies, which were fulfilled. You did not see these things, therefore you will not believe. Consider, therefore, what you can see and what you do see. Is it not a wonderful thing that the whole human race should adore a crucified man ? You did not see that He was born of a virgin ; but you do see that the promise of God to Abraham has been fulfilled, 'In thy seed all the nations of the earth shall be blessed.'" Certainly what was true in St. Augustine's time, and could be used by him as a valid argument to prove the divine origin of the Church, has equal, if not greater, force in our age, when so many new conquests have been added to her former triumphs.

Nor can any human cause give an adequate explanation of this progress, or of these victories. The work of Christian conversion transcends all other achievements recorded in history. "No king, no legislator, no philosopher, whether Greek or barbarian," says Eusebius of Cæsarea, "ever dreamed of conquering the world with such means as Christ employed." Even the greatest philosophers considered themselves successful if they could get a hearing and an acceptance of their teaching in a city or in one nation. Christ sent His disciples to all the nations. "Go teach all nations," was His command ; "teach them piety, change their religions, make them accept my doctrine. They will believe." And all this was said to simple, unarmed apostles, protected by no human power. "Others have tried to conquer the world," says Tertullian, "but who ever

succeeded but Christ ?" Solomon reigned, but only from Dan to Bersabee. Darius ruled, but only the Babylonians and the Persians. He never could subdue all nations. Pharaoh and his successors governed Egypt, but Egypt alone. Nabuchadonosor ruled from Judea to Ethiopia. Alexander the Macedonian, though he conquered the whole of Asia, could not keep his conquest. The Germans are bounded by their own territories. The Britons are limited by the seas. The Mauri and the Getuli are kept back by Roman arms. Even the conquering Romans are limited by the barriers erected on the frontiers to guard the empire from invasion. But the name and kingdom of Christ are universal. In Him all nations believe, and His kingdom extends beyond the limits of civilization. The barbarian adores Him as well as the cultured king. The name of Christ is spoken in the court and in the peasant's hut, and by all revered, honored and adored. Hostile races and nations unite in adoring Christ.

This wonderful growth of Christianity took place in spite of every form of human opposition. Every prejudice in human nature opposed the spread of the gospel, and still opposes its preservation and propagation. In the language of St. Paul, the apostles "preached Christ crucified, to the Jews a scandal, and to the Gentiles foolishness." The Jews were a despised race, spurned by the Roman people, and the death penalty of crucifixion was considered infamous. Cicero tells us that this form of punishment was abhorrent to the Romans, and considered fit to be inflicted only on the lowest and the worst criminals. Hence St. Chrysostom asks, "Was it easy to persuade men to accept the gospel of Christ ?" Certainly not. The apostles taught that a crucified man should be adored as God ; and the Gentiles were to believe that one born of a Jewish woman was the true God. How could the Gentiles believe this, unless the grace of God impelled them ? All knew that He had been crucified, and that He was dead and buried ; but, except the apostles, none had seen Him risen from the dead and ascending into heaven.

The doctrines of Christianity were contrary to all the received opinions of men. Christianity taught them to adore one God in three persons ; that the Son of God had become incarnate ; that there was an original sin whose taint had infected all mankind ; that there would be a resurrection of the body, even though it had dissolved into the earth after burial, or into the air after cremation ; that there was a sacrament in which the body and blood, soul and divinity of the incarnate God were daily present on the Christian altar ; and a sacrifice of the Mass in which a miracle daily took place in the transubstantiation of bread and wine into the body and blood of the Redeemer. All these mysteries were contrary to the creed of paganism, above the grasp of human intelligence, and impervious to its attempts to comprehend them. Was it not hard

for proud human reason to accept them? They were incomprehensible. They required the submission of intellectual pride, so hard to all, but especially to philosophers and men of learning. Yet these were among the first to become Christian converts.

The practices of Christianity were even harder to accept than its creed. Considering the habits and customs of the pagan nations contemporaneous with our Lord, the polytheism of their religion which peopled the woods and streams with divinities; their literature, impregnated with errors and obscenities; the low condition of their morals—polygamy, slavery and despotism everywhere—how could the faith of Christ make progress, if human means alone were used? That faith made war on everything which men had cherished. It was opposed to every passion and to every vice. To the avaricious it said, "Do not lay up treasures on earth;" to the luxurious it said, "For he that soweth in his flesh, of the flesh also shall reap corruption; but he that soweth in the spirit, of the spirit shall reap life everlasting."* To the proud it preached humility; to the irascible it said, "When you have received a blow, offer the other cheek;" to the vindictive it preached forgiveness of injuries, and taught men even to love those who had done them an injury; to all it said, "Detach yourselves from this world; do not love the world, nor the things of this world, for all that is in the world is the concupiscence of the flesh, concupiscence of the eyes and the pride of life."† Yet, in spite of all this opposition to human frailty, pride, prejudice, passion and vice, the doctrines of Christ were accepted by the whole world, and millions in every age have followed His teaching, His precepts and His counsels in their lives and conduct. God alone could have brought about such a result. God alone could have brought rebellious human nature into subjection to the religion of mortification and self-denial.

Consider, further, the extrinsic difficulties that opposed the spread of the gospel. Paganism was rooted in the very hearts and minds of the people by their education and family traditions. How hard it is to convert one prejudiced man; how much more difficult to convert the whole prejudiced Jewish and pagan world! The whole power of pagan Rome, with centuries of absolute control, could not make as many Jews give up their religion as Peter did in one sermon. Yet it was harder to convert Jews to Christianity than to convert Jews to paganism. The Jews were carnal, and looked only to this earth for happiness. They had a false notion of the Messiah as of a powerful temporal ruler, who was to restore the glory and prosperity of their race and nation, and free them from the domination of the Romans. Such a Messiah they expected, and consequently

* Gal. vi. : 8.

† Gal. xi. : 1.

‡ 1 St John ii. 16.

refused to accept Him in the person of the poor, humble and crucified Jesus of Nazareth. The Gentiles were, at the time, both in Greece and in Italy, cultured and educated ; but their morals were corrupt, for they were given up to every form of licentiousness. Their own writers tell the story of Roman and Grecian moral degradation. The Gentile mythology is shameful. The pagan gods and goddesses were libertines. Of Jupiter, the chief of them, Juvenal sarcastically writes, "*Quam multas matres fecerit ille deus*" (He was a seducer of women). St. Augustine, while he praises the Romans for many virtues which they practiced, nevertheless writes, "The ancient Romans, like other nations, except the Jews alone, worshiped false gods, and immolated victims, not to God, but to demons. The Romans were fond of praise, and hence liberal with money ; they longed for great glory and wealth ; these they craved for, for these they longed to live, and for these were willing even to die ; to these they made all other passions subservient." The pagan philosophers, like Socrates, Plato and Cicero, worshiped the divinities publicly, although privately despising them ; and insisted that whatever had been instituted as religious worship by the custom of the country, should remain unchanged ; that all innovations and new religions should be opposed. Seneca is quoted by St. Augustine as saying, "We worship, as a matter of outward form rather than as a reality, all this ignoble crowd of gods which ancient superstition has bequeathed to us."* Those philosophers denied the providence of God, and His influence in promoting virtue. Most of them doubted the immortality of the soul. Even Socrates doubted of this immortality, and before he died ordered a cock to be sacrificed to Esculapius—an act of base superstition by the greatest of the pagans. The ordinary people worshiped everything but the Creator of the universe. The Egyptians worshiped the leeks that grew in their gardens, as Juvenal tells us, "*O sanctas gentas, quibus hæc nascuntur in hortis Numina*" (O holy people, whose gods grow in your gardens) ! Horace exemplifies this base idolatry of his contemporaries by representing them as worshipping a god made of wood by a carpenter :

"Olim truncus eram ficulnus, inutile lignum;
Cum faber, incertus scamnum faceretne Priapum,
Maluit esse Deum, Deus inde ego."†

Like the modern Chinese, the old pagans worshipped a wooden Josh. Thus were all the pagans in error as to the primary truths of natural religion and natural morality.

The Gentile priests were bitterly hostile to the progress of Christianity. Their livelihood and their authority depended on the worship of the idols

* De Civ. Dei, Lib. 6, ch. 10.

† Lib. ii. Sat. 8.

which Christianity was endeavoring to overthrow. The Roman emperors also, who considered the prosperity of the empire dependent on paganism, opposed Christianity with the full force of their great power. These emperors were the high priests of paganism, as well as the political chiefs of the state. Their cruel and inhuman persecutions of the Christians forms a black stain on the pages of history: Every form of torture was used throughout the whole Roman empire, every influence, political and religious, employed to suppress the Church of Christ. Calumny was the common weapon of her enemies. Tacitus tells us that Nero, to divert suspicion from himself, the true criminal, spread the rumor that it was the Christians, "detested by the people for their wickedness," who had set fire to Rome. They were, says Tacitus, put to death, not so much on account of the conflagration as for being enemies of the human race. The same charge was made against them which has been made in modern times, that they were the enemies of the political institutions of the country, the deadly foes of the empire. They were accused of being traitors, disloyal to the emperor, because they would not worship the false gods.

Countless were the numbers put to death for the faith during ten bloody persecutions. Their martyrdom was a moral miracle, nor can any natural cause be found adequate to its explanation. As the Church of Smyrna wrote in the second century, giving an account of the death of St. Polycarp: "The martyrdom of these Christians was universally admired. Their constancy and fortitude were the miracle of the age. Lacerated and tortured in every way—even to the very veins and arteries of their bodies—still they persisted and persevered, so that even their enemies pitied them, and wept. Not one of these martyrs cried out or groaned; such was their fortitude that they despised all the tortures of the flesh, and proved that the Lord Himself stood by them and conversed with them." St. Jerome, two centuries later, writes, that the Christian religion is proved to be true by the testimony of the martyrs who died for it. No one could behold the constancy of those martyrs under torture, exulting in the midst of suffering, without silently thinking that unless the gospel was true, they would never have defended it with their blood. For their profession of faith was not in a luxurious system favoring pleasure and riches, but in a creed that implied the penalty of the jail, of scourging, of persecutions, hunger, nakedness and thirst upon all who professed it. This constancy of the martyrs is the triumph of God. Both as a fact inexplicable on human grounds, and as a testimony, the martyrdom of these Christians proves the divinity of the cause for which they died.

Nor were the impediments to the progress of the Church merely external, confined to Jewish and Gentile opposition. Within the bosom of

THE TRIUMPHS OF THE CATHOLIC CHURCH

the Church other obstacles arose ; heresies and schisms. From the very beginning, half-converted Jews and pagans created divisions, and gave rise to the Gnostics and "the Judaizing," as they were called. The latter, in spite of the decrees of the Council of Jerusalem, persisted in mixing the rites of the Mosaic with those of the new law. The Gnostics denied the divinity of Jesus Christ, and the resurrection of the body. They rejected the Old Testament, and many of the books of the New. Their fundamental error consisted in denying that God created matter. Matter, they asserted, was eternal. The origin of evil was deduced from matter, which produced a series of spirits, or minor deities, who created and governed the visible world. Simon Magus is generally credited with being the father of Gnosticism, whose roots and branches spread through Christendom, and have left their poison in society to this day. Gnosticism was a mixture of false pagan philosophy and Christian truth. Simon and his paramour, Helen, a Phœnician woman, propagated their hybrid belief through Judea, and even in Rome, where a statue was erected to his honor.

Cerinthus, a Jew, who had studied philosophy in Alexandria, was another disturber of the peace of the Church. He is said to have been the instigator of the dispute at Antioch, of which mention is made in the Acts of the Apostles, regarding the necessity for Christian converts of observing the Mosaic law. He taught that Christ was different from Jesus that in Him there were two distinct persons, and that the observance of the Mosaic law was necessary to salvation. The Menandrians, who claimed a divine mission from their founder, Menander; the Ebionites, who denied the divinity of Christ, and insisted on the necessity of circumcision for salvation; the Nazarenes, mixed up in the city of Pella with the refugee Christians from Jerusalem, insisted on the concurrency of the Hebrew law with the Christian dispensation; the Nicolaites, who were founded by one of the first seven Christian deacons, and taught the lawfulness of promiscuous intercourse between the sexes; all these were used by the devil to bring discredit on the Christian name, and prevent the spread of the gospel.

The Gnostic sects were propagated like pestilential microbes through the East. The true Christians were held responsible for the crimes of the false ones; just as in our day the Church is accused of the crimes committed by her rebellious children. She is accused of the very things which she condemns and reprobates; and maliciously assailed with the same old calumnies. Saturninus at Antioch tried to corrupt the faith and morals of the people there. His errors spread throughout Syria. He condemned marriage as an invention of the devil, and asserted that Christ was not endued with real flesh, but only covered with its shadow. Basilides, about the same time, in the reign of the emperor Hadrian (A.D. 117),

sowed tares in the wheatfields of Christian Egypt. He disturbed the peace of Christian minds by teaching that seven eons or mysterious beings were begotten of the Supreme God, and that the princes of the angels were begotten of these eons. From the first angels sprang the first heaven and other angels; from these a second heaven, and other angels; and so on until, by continual propagation of angels, who of course were material, three hundred and sixty-five families were begotten. From Archon, the God of the Jews, and the chief of the seven angels of the lower heaven, was begotten this terrestrial globe. To free human souls from bodily chains, and restore them to the kingdom of light, the eon, Nun, or mind, was united to the man Jesus when He was baptized in the Jordan. But when Jesus died on the cross, Nun, or mind, returned to its origin, and left the man Jesus to His fate. Carpocrates of Alexandria, at the same time preached that Jesus Christ was a mere man, superior, however, to all others. His doctrine in this respect was nearly the same as that of the modern Unitarians. Another Gnostic heretic was Valentinus of Alexandria, a man skilled in Egyptian lore and Greek philosophy. He went to Rome about the year of our Lord 140, and died in the island of Cyprus A.D. 160. He taught that God was a compound of thirty eons, which constituted His divinity. From the last of these eons, Sophia (Wisdom), was procreated an unformed substance called Achamot, which, wandering through space, communicated vital force to matter, which Satan ruled; and from this communication arose spiritual, vital and material elements. From these elements arose a demi-urge, son of Achamot, and formed this visible world and man. All the eons sent Jesus to be a redeemer, and to bring back Achamot and all spiritual natures to the pleroma of the divinity. This son Jesus was united to the Messiah in the baptism of the Jordan. Besides all this almost incomprehensible nonsense, Valentinus taught immoral doctrines, and his followers were depraved. Nor should we wonder that many Christians were led astray by these ridiculous errors, when we consider the number in our enlightened age who have been carried off by the absurdities of modern pantheism, theosophy and Buddhism. Those Gnostic heretics of the early ages hampered the efforts of the Christian apostles to convert the world. The pagans could not always distinguish between the genuine and the counterfeit in the divisions which they saw among those who professed to revere Christ. The evil repute and corrupt morals of the heretics, whom the pagans confounded with the true Christians, was an additional obstacle to the spread of Christianity.

At the same time pagan philosophers began to write works and make charges against the religion of Christ. Celsus, an Epicurean philosopher, wrote a work in which he enumerates them. He attacks both Moses and our Lord, and, contrasting their teaching with that

of the pagan philosophers, ridicules the dogmas of Christianity. He admits the truth of the miracles of the New Testament, but attributes them to magic art. He specially charges the Christians with being disloyal to the emperor, because they were hostile to the gods and the idols. Thus the charge of disloyalty to the state, as we have already noticed, began at a very early period to be made against the followers of Christ. Prophyrius and others followed the lead of Celsus.

Then other heretics followed the early Gnostics. Cerdo and Marcion again preached the duality of God—one God the author of evil, another God the author of good. Marcion further rejected the whole of the Old Testament, and of the New accepted only the Gospel of St. Luke and some of the epistles of St. Paul: an early instance of Protestant willfulness in accepting or rejecting the Holy Scriptures. Other heretics followed. Tatian, toward the end of the second century, condemned marriage as adultery; forbade the eating of flesh-meat or the drinking of wine, and insisted that only water should be used in the sacrifice of the Mass. He also denied that the body of Christ was a real body. At the same time Bardesanes in Mesopotamia propagated similar errors. Montanus, with two women, Priscilla and Maximilla, taught new errors. He pretended that the Holy Ghost had descended on him to perfect Christianity, left incomplete by the apostles. He also condemned second marriage as unlawful. He pretended to great sanctity, and imposed three Lents on his followers, instead of the one imposed by custom and apostolical tradition. Many of the faithful were led away from the true Church by the seeming holiness of this heretic and his followers. They formed large churches in Asia Minor, in Africa, and in the city of Constantinople. They finally merged with the Novatians and the Donatists.

Schism and heresy invaded even the sacred precincts of the Eternal City. Blastus and Florinus, two bad priests, spread dissensions among the Christians of Rome. Blastus condemned the universal custom of the Church as to the time of celebrating Easter. Florinus taught that God is the author of all evil, even of sin, and propagated Gnostic errors in Italy.

Step by step heresy marched with the progress of the true faith and tried to prevent its triumph. At the close of the second century the great heresy which denied the divinity of Jesus Christ broke out with renewed force. Theodotus, a Byzantine, taught that Christ was a mere man, conceived, however, in a supernatural manner, a man above the common, holy and wise and superior to the prophets. Another Theodotus founded the sect called the Melchisedechites, who held that Melchisedech was superior to Christ. Praxeas and Noetus, about the year 236, also taught that Christ was only a man. They denied the doctrine of the Trinity, saying that the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost were not

three distinct persons, but only three names given to the same God, according to His different modes of existing and of acting. They said that God was called the Father because He created all things; the Son because He associated to Himself the human nature of Christ; the Holy Ghost because He excited sentiments of piety in the hearts of men. Since, therefore, they held that it was the same God who was born, who suffered and died, they were called Patripassians; men who believed that God the Father died on the cross. Catholic writers of the time, as Tertullian and St. Hippolytus, refuted these errors. Another heretic, Beryllus, denied that the Son existed before the incarnation. Him Origen refuted, and the bishops of the time, gathered in council, condemned. Sabellius, about the middle of the third century, denied the distinction of persons in the Holy Trinity. The Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost, according to him, were only three names of the same deity, who was called Father when He manifested Himself to the world; Son when He united Himself to Christ to redeem the world; and Holy Ghost when He sanctified the faithful. He exemplified his theory by the sun, which has a visible disk, an illuminating halo, and the power of giving heat.* Paul of Samosata at the same time denied all distinction of persons in God, and asserted His absolute unity of personality as well as of nature. St. Denis of Alexandria wrote against him and refuted his erroneous opinions.

The list of schisms and heresies grew longer day by day. In the middle of the third century broke out the famous Novatian schism. Novatian was a Roman priest, learned and eloquent, but ambitious and turbulent. He was jealous of Cornelius, who had been elected supreme pontiff. As the Roman Church treated with clemency those who had apostatized during the persecutions, but who had become afterward penitent, Novatian found fault with what he considered laxity of discipline. Many priests and people agreed with him, and went so far as to deny the right or the power of the priests or bishops of the Church to admit to the sacraments those who had offered incense to idols or betrayed the faith during the persecutions. "No sacramental absolution was to be given to such sinners," said Novatian. For this excessive severity he was excommunicated. Synods in Italy and Africa condemned his opinions. In revenge he and his followers spread calumnies against Pope Cornelius, in consequence of which three obscure, credulous, and ignorant bishops of Italy ordained Novatian Bishop of Rome, and made him the first anti-pope. He sent out letters to different churches, informing them of his election, but the true Pope exposed the plot and prevented the schism from spreading. It

* The Rev. O. B. Frothingham and other modern Unitarians use this same comparison to explain what they call their Trinity. There is nothing new under the sun. (See "Age of Unreason," by Rev. H. A. Brann, D.D.)

was on occasion of this schism that St. Cyprian wrote his admirable work on the unity of the Church, proving that unity of body and unity of head are essential to the society founded by Jesus Christ for the spiritual welfare of all mankind. The Novatians finally denied the power of the Church to absolve all grievous sinners as well as apostates, no matter how repentant they might be, and the sect which may be called, on account of its crafty methods and hypocritical spirit, the Jansenism of the third century, spread through Italy, Gaul, Spain, Egypt, and Asia, but finally disappeared about the seventh century. The controversies about the proper time of celebrating the Easter festival and the rebaptism of heretics, also marred the charity of Christendom.

Immediately after these scandals arose the great heresy of the Manichæans. Their founder was Manes, a Persian, who, mingling the teachings of Zoroaster with the heresies of the Gnostics, formed a new creed which was to take the place of Christianity. Manes taught with the Gnostics that there are two eternal principles, one good, the other bad; the good one is God, Lord of the kingdom of light, purest light Himself, but apprehensible only by reason; the evil principle, bad by nature and material, is called Satan, the lord of darkness, who strives to corrupt others. Each principle produces beings after its own kind, and distributes them through its kingdom. These made war on each other, during which the demons, products of the bad principle, carried away as prisoners many good and rational souls from the kingdom of light. Of these and the demons was born Adam, containing all the souls of men. As the element of light and goodness was in him, Satan sent his own daughter Eve to corrupt him. She succeeded. After he fell, Christ, the son of God, was sent by the good principle to redeem mankind, a race mixed with good and evil. But Christ is only a portion of heavenly light existing in the sun. The Holy Ghost is also a celestial substance, but inferior to the Son. Christ assumed not a real body, but the shadow of a body. He appeared to die on the cross, but did not die on it. Manes called himself the Holy Ghost promised by Christ to teach mankind the things which the apostles failed to teach. He denied the resurrection of the flesh.

In morals, he taught that the body, as formed by the evil principle, should be mortified by frequent fastings; that blasphemy, which consisted chiefly in speaking against his teaching, was to be abhorred; that children should not be procreated; and that no animals should be killed. He imitated the example of Christ in organizing the Manichæans into a society. He chose twelve apostles and seventy-two disciples, and appointed over them a supreme head. Their public worship was simple, consisting of prayers, hymns, and pious reading. They had neither sacrifice, nor altar, nor image, nor temple. Their assemblies were held in

private houses. They had, however, secret rites and ceremonies, which writers of veracity say were immoral and infamous. This dangerous heresy was widespread, and continued to live with varying fortune even in the middle ages. The Albigenses and the Waldenses held and propagated in the Middle Ages many of the false and immoral doctrines of the Manicheans and Gnostics.

The nearer the Church came to her final triumph over pagan and Jewish opposition, the more dangerous struggles she had to experience within her own fold. The schism of the Donatists and the Arian heresy arose just about the time that the political power of Rome passed from pagan to Christian hands. The devil, in his last effort to hold humanity captive, fought hardest against Christ. The ten bloody persecutions of the Roman emperors had scarcely ended, and the Christians had just begun to enjoy peace and prosperity under Constantine, when the Donatist schism broke out in Africa and spread over Italy. The election of Caecilian the archdeacon to the bishopric of Carthage, was the occasion of the dissension. The vote for Caecilian was unanimous, but two ambitious priests, Botrus and Celeusius, who had expected the mitre for themselves, rose against the new bishop. Other priests joined them, and a wealthy woman named Lucilla helped them with her purse. Her grievance against the bishop was that he had reproved her for kissing, before going to communion, the bones of a man whose martyrdom had not been authenticated. In the year 311 these conspirators accused Caecilian of having, while he was a deacon during the persecution, refused to supply food to the confessors in prison. They accused him also of being a *traditor*—a traitor who had given up the sacred Scriptures to the pagans to avoid persecution—and that he had been ordained by a bishop who was also a *traditor*. The calumnies were accredited by many, so that Secundus and other bishops called from Numidia by the seditious of Carthage, repudiated Caecilian, and consecrated and put in his place Majorinus the lector, a servant of Lucilla. This schism spread from Carthage to the whole of Northern Africa, to Numidia and Mauritiana. Majorinus died A. D. 313, and in his place was elected Donatus, from whom the schismatics were called Donatists. These appealed to the emperor Constantine for recognition, but he refused to touch the case, as one exclusively pertaining to the bishops. "Not daring to judge the case of a bishop," says St. Augustine, "the emperor left it to be examined and determined by the bishops."* In the year 313 Pope Melchiades convoked at Rome a synod in which were assembled, besides the bishops of Italy and Gaul, Caecilian and his adversaries in the East. For three days the questions between them were discussed, and finally decision rendered in favor of

* Epist. 162.

Caecilian. Donatus was condemned, and the bishops who had abetted his faction were permitted to retain their sees, provided they would communicate with Caecilian. The schismatics, however, despising the judgment of the Roman synod, complained to the emperor that they had not received a proper hearing, and that the number of bishops sitting in judgment was too small. Constantine, to prevent further dissensions, reluctantly called together another and more numerous council, at Arles, in Gaul, A. D. 314. Pope Sylvester presided over this council through his legates. About two hundred bishops were present, and the papal legates presiding were the priests Claudius and Vitus. The Donatists again repeated their charges before the fathers of the council, but failed to prove them against Caecilian, who was consequently declared innocent and his accusers condemned. Some of them again appealed from the decision of the council to the emperor. He heard their appeal at Milan, A. D. 316, but decided against them, and thus Caecilian was again vindicated. In spite of all these condemnations the schismatics would not acquiesce, but attacked the emperor himself, and persecuted the true Christians. The emperor then undertook to punish the schismatics who took up arms against the imperial decree of condemnation and thus became rebels to the State as well as to the Church. They gradually fell into numerous errors and heresies. They accused the Church of having erred in pardoning the traditors, and claimed to be the only true Church themselves, although they were only a small and insignificant sect like the modern Anglicans. They rebaptized, reconfirmed, and reordained all clerics who joined them.

Another schism at the same time broke out in Egypt. The author of it was an Egyptian bishop named Meletius who had been deposed for crime by Peter, the patriarch of Alexandria. Meletius refused to obey the sentence, and went so far as to usurp the patriarchal rights of Alexandria. He ordained priests, consecrated bishops, and prepared the way in that city for the great Arian heresy.

This, the most dangerous of all that had so far arisen, originated in Alexandria in Egypt. The devil's instrument was Arius, who, when a deacon, had favored the Meletian heresy, and in consequence had been excommunicated by the patriarch, Peter. But Achilles, the successor of Peter, restored him to communion and admitted him to the priesthood. He was a jealous and ambitious man, who wanted to become patriarch of Alexandria himself. So when Alexander, after the death of Achilles, became patriarch, Arius began to attack his orthodoxy. Alexander, soon after his election, made a discourse on the Trinity in an assembly of the priests and people. Arius took occasion to attack this discourse, and to teach that the divine Word or Son was not begotten of the substance of the Father, but created out

of nothing by the free will of the Father; that the Son was indeed produced before all other created things, but not eternal; that He was not the true God, but only the chief of creatures; that He was called the Son of God mainly because, as the workman and instrument of God in creating, He had been raised to a special participation and association with divine grace and glory. Hence it is clear that the controversy between Arius and his followers, and the Christians, was not about a mere subtlety or the meaning of words, but about the very corner stone of Christian faith, the divinity of the eternal Word, and of Jesus Christ. Arius, who was an eloquent man of ability, of pleasant manners, and skilled in logic, propagated his errors not only by preaching but by writing. He wrote a work called *Thalia* in defence of his opinions, and won over to his views many of the priests and people. He traveled through Palestine and Asia Minor, propagating his doctrine, and used such art that he won over even many of the bishops to his heresy. The chief of these was Eusebius of Nicodemia, in Bithynia. The whole eastern Church became tainted with his heresy. Clerics and laymen discussed the questions so frequently and with such violence, that the Christian religion became an object of ridicule in the public theatres controlled by the pagans. In vain were councils convened to suppress the false teachings of the Arians, and in vain did the great Athanasius write against them in defence of Christian orthodoxy. Even after the General Council of Nicaea, which was held A. D. 325, and in which three hundred and eighteen bishops, gathered together under the presidency of the papal legates Osius, bishop of Cordova, and the priests Vitus and Vincentius, solemnly condemned Arianism, it continued to advance, to trouble the minds of the orthodox, to make perverts, to create dissensions and even civil war, for centuries. The difference of a letter in a word, Homoiousios instead of Homousios, threw the whole world into confusion, for upon that difference depended the future of Christianity. If the eternal Word had not the same substance as the eternal Father, but only a similar substance, as the Arians and the Semi-Arians contended, then the eternal Word was not the true Son of God, and Jesus Christ was not divine. The consubstantiality of the Father and of the Holy Ghost was also denied by the Arians and the Semi-Arians. Sometimes they minimized their doctrines only to reassert them more crudely than before. They imposed on emperors or deceived them, misled many of the bishops, and in the year 359 succeeded in imposing on a whole council at Rimini. The history of this council is especially interesting. After the Council of Nicaea, when the emperor Constantius found that the Arian dissensions still continued to disturb the public peace, he called the bishops together at Rimini to judge what was expedient to be done for the sake of public order.

The Arians and the Semi-Arians had again and again changed the formulas of their faith, but always asserted their heresy. Constantius himself was a Semi-Arian. Four hundred bishops, of whom eighty were Arians, assembled at this council. These at first demanded the abolition of all the formulas of faith published since the Council of Nicaea, except the formula approved by the emperor Constantius, in which the Father and the Son were said to be in all things similar. But as in this formula the words "substance" and "consubstantial" were suppressed, the Catholic bishops refused to accept it, but, instead, confirmed the Nicene Creed and condemned the Arian sect and its adherents. Then they sent legates to the emperor to tell him what had been done and to ask permission to return to their sees. But several prominent and powerful Semi-Arians, Ursacius, Valens, and others, forestalled the arrival of the legates and induced Constantius to refuse to see them and to order them to remain at Rimini. In the meantime the Arian faction, openly abetted by the imperial power, tried by force and fraud to break the constancy of the Catholic bishops, so as to induce them to omit the word "substance" from the formula of faith. The crafty heretics, to gain their point, pretended not to be Arians at all, but rather to abhor the Arian blasphemies. The faith would be safe, said they, without the word "substance," a word not found in the Scriptures, a word that was disturbing the Church and destroying Christian unity. Craft won over simplicity. The Catholic bishops, suspecting no evil, subscribed the formula dictated by Valens and Ursacius. It did not indeed contain a heresy if the words alone be considered, but appeared to be orthodox, for it asserted that the Son of God was born of God, before all ages, before all things and all principles; that He was God of God like to His eternal Father, as the Scriptures declared. The bishops did not, therefore, really fall into heresy or accept heresy. But they ignored the Nicene formula and suppressed the words "substance" and "consubstantial" for the reasons of policy given by the Arian leaders; and these used this suppression as an argument to overthrow the faith defined by the fathers of the Council of Nicæa. The Catholic bishops were shocked when they found that their motives were misinterpreted, and that they were accused of favoring Arianism. At once they regretted their compliance, reaffirmed the doctrines defined at Nicæa, and again condemned the Arians. This action of the fathers did not, however, put an end to the heresy. It was favored by the Imperial Court of Constantinople. The whole eastern Church was torn by factions, by Arians, and by Semi-Arians, who insulted the true Christians and brought the true faith into contempt among the pagans. Even after the death of Constans these deplorable dissensions among the Christians continued, and new ones arose.

As Arius denied the divinity of the second person of the Trinity, so Macedonius denied the divinity of the third person, the Holy Ghost. His followers spread a new heresy. These and the subsequent heresies of the Nestorians, Eutychians, and Monothelites, probably did as much to mar the glory of Christianity and to impede its progress as all the persecutions of the pagan emperors. Yet the Church triumphed in spite of all.

If we, moreover, consider the heresies and false religions that have continued to make war on the Church ever since she ascended the throne of the Cesars with Constantine, the divine character of her triumph becomes still more striking. What human institution could have lived through the Greek schism, the "great schism of the West," and the Protestant revolt of the sixteenth century? Yet though the whole East revolted and though many nations of the West rebelled, the Church always preserved her unity and integrity intact. The Mohammedan hordes, which overran the Roman Empire, conquered Constantinople, and invaded the West, would have destroyed Christianity if it was a merely human creed. The northern barbarians who overspread Europe, instead of putting out the light of Christian faith, were illuminated by it after a few centuries of struggle. The persecutions of German emperors, French and English kings, all through the Middle Ages, only made the Church more persistent in defending the truth, and more tenacious of the doctrines of her divine founder. The persecutions of modern revolutions and of Protestantism resulted just as the persecutions of the pagans and of the Mohammedans had resulted, in the defeat of the enemies of Christ. The Church, in spite of all the heresies, schisms, and persecutions that have taken place since the Council of Nicæa, is still as young and unconquerable as ever. This is a fact which every eye can see. While the persecutors have died and the persecutions have failed, she pursues her beneficent course through the centuries, conquering every obstacle and always knowing how to suffer and how to wait.

If we further consider the means employed in the work of evangelizing the world, we see another proof of the divine character of the gospel. These means were humanly inadequate to the task. The disciples of Christ were few in number, yet they undertook to convert the whole world. They were not learned men. They had no natural attractions for those to whom they preached. On the contrary they were rude and illiterate. They were Jews belonging to a race despised and hated by those whom they undertook to convert. As St. Paul says, "The foolish things of the world hath God chosen, that He may confound the wise; and the weak things of the world hath God chosen, that He may confound the strong: And the mean things of the world, and the things

that are contemptible, hath God chosen, and the things that are not, that He might destroy the things that are." * St. Ambrose, speaking of the divine plan for the conversion of the world, says, "God did not choose philosophers, or noblemen, or men of wealth for the mission, but fishermen and publicans, lest it should seem that He had drawn men to His grace by the power of learning, or of wealth, or of rank." Eusebius of Cæsarea, commenting on the words of our Lord, "Go teach all nations," adds: "What if the disciples had answered their Master and said, 'How can we do what you command? How can we publicly teach the Romans? How can we venture to teach learned Egyptians? What tongue shall we, who know only the Syriac, use in addressing the Greeks? What language shall we use with the Persians? With the Armenians? With the Chaldeans? With the Scythians? With the inhabitants of India? And how can we learn the language of all the barbarous tribes in the world? We shall give offence to all of them. We must tell them to give up the gods of their country and worship one God alone, the Creator of all things. Where is the eloquence or power of speech to effect this purpose? What hope can we have of succeeding since we must undertake to impose laws on men, contrary to their own laws sanctioned for centuries by religion among all the nations to which we are sent? Where are we to get the money for our journey, or the supplies for our necessities?' All these objections the Apostles might have made. Perhaps they would have expressed them if Jesus Christ had not forestalled them by saying that they were to accomplish all things in His name. For when He told them to teach all nations, He added, '*in my name.*' This was sufficient. The divine name removed every objection and conquered every difficulty." †

The Apostles went forth to conquer with no arms but those of the spirit. "For the weapons of our warfare," says St. Paul, "are not carnal, but powerful through God." ‡ They were sent forth to battle in a new style of warfare; they wore only one garment, they had no shoes, no staff nor scrip, and they were to depend for their food on the hospitality of those who would receive them. They were to be patient, and meek as lambs before wolves. They were to go among the wolves. They were to have the simplicity of doves. But by the power of God, the lambs were to conquer the wolves, and "These lambs were only twelve," says St. Chrysostom, "while the whole world was full of wolves." Yet clemency and meekness won the fierce hearts and conquered the proud minds of Greeks and barbarians. Was not this success above the human? Can any human cause explain it?

* 1 Cor. i. 27.

† Dem. Evangel. i. 3.

‡ 2 Cor. x. 4.

Again, while the Apostles exacted from the new converts the performance of difficult tasks, even the giving up of life for the new faith, they could promise no present, or immediate, or temporal remuneration for the sacrifices made. They could promise only future and invisible rewards, which by their very nature do not attract men. "Difficult things had to be done here," says St. Chrysostom, "that advantages might be gained hereafter." The pagans said, "Where is the proof of the resurrection? Who has ever come back from the dead? Who, being buried, has ever risen again? While we know none of these things, we are asked to give up our life for one who was crucified." Yet the power of God made men believe in these wonderful truths. If the Apostles had been deceivers, instead of preaching them they would have done the contrary of what they did. Like Mohammed, they would have promised their followers rewards here, sensual delights and luxuries on earth and in paradise. Yet the Apostles never temporized, never minimized the truth or the severity of Christian morality; they never spared human passions, but attacked them in season and out of season, with a pertinacity and courage which cost them their lives. They made war on all the popular prejudices and religions of the time.

The effect of this preaching was miraculous and divine. It penetrated to the very vitals of humanity. It penetrated into the inner life of individuals and of society and changed the habits, thoughts, morals, and laws of mankind so that they worshiped what they had despised and they loved what formerly they had detested. Hence St. Augustine beautifully addresses the Christian religion: "Thou trainest children as children should be trained; thou teachest young men to be brave, the old ones to be quiet according to the age and condition of each one's body and soul; thou teachest wives to be subject to their husbands in a chaste and faithful obedience, not for the gratification of lust, but for the propagation of children and for the fellowship of the family; thou appointest husbands over their wives not to deceive the weaker sex, but to love them with sincere love; thou makest children subject to their parents, not as slaves to masters, but with a free service; thou placest parents over children to rule them piously; thou unitest brothers to brothers with the ties of religion stronger than the ties of blood; thou joinest together every form of relationship, of blood and of affinity, with mutual charity based on the laws of nature and of the human will; thou teachest servants not merely on account of their condition, but from love, to be faithful to their masters; thou teachest masters, the servants of the Lord God, by consideration of His supreme dominion, to be gentle to their servants, more ready to advise than to punish them; thou joinest together citizens to citizens, nations to nations, and men to men by the memory of their common ori-

gin from our first parents, not only in civil society, but in the bonds of a common brotherhood; thou teachest rulers to look after the welfare of their people, and the people to obey their rulers, showing that although all are not equal, to all charity is due, and to no one should an injury be done." * The change effected by the religion of Christ in society was rapid and striking. St. Justin, in his *Apology*, triumphantly calls attention to this change. He says, "The reign of lust has been succeeded by the reign of chastity; the superstitions of magic by the worship of the true God; the reign of avarice and of cupidity by generosity and benevolence which prompt us to provide for the wants of the poor and distressed; to hatreds, quarrels, and enmities have succeeded peace and forgiveness of injuries. Since Christ came, we live together in peace and associate with those whom formerly we despised, and with whom we refused to have any intercourse." "We appeal to your tribunals," says Tertullian, referring to the pure morals and virtuous lives of the early Christians, "and to the records of your criminal courts. Your pagan criminals fill the jails, or are sent to the mines, or are thrown to wild beasts, or crown the ranks of the gladiators. You find no Christian there, except for the sole crime of being a Christian." Tertullian again says, "that the pagans wondered when they heard of a Christian being guilty of any offense."

Contemporary pagan writers bore equal testimony to the reformation of morals brought about in society by Christian influence. Pliny the second, when proconsul of Bithynia, wrote to the emperor Trajan, that the Christians were guilty of no crime, that they were bound by oath to avoid crimes, to avoid stealing, robbery, adultery, not to break their word, and to be faithful to their pledges, and that their only offense consisted in assembling on a certain day in the week, before the dawn, to sing hymns to Christ, whom they worshiped as God. Julian the apostate was forced to bear similar testimony to the good character of the Christians, to their kindness to strangers, to their care in burying the dead, and "to the holiness which they feign. Is it not disgraceful to us pagans," said he, "that not one of the Jews begs, and the impious Galileans support not only their own, but our paupers?"

The Apostles not only converted the poorer classes, but imposed the faith on the learned, the noble, and the wealthy. We need name but a few of the early converts to prove this: Polycarp, Ignatius, Irenæus, Justin, Clement, Ammonius, Origen, Aristides, Apollinaris, Athenagoras, Quadratus, Apollonius, Glabrio, who was a magistrate under Trajan, Flavius Clement, a man of consular dignity, the cousin of the emperor Domitian, and Flavia Domitilla, of the imperial race of Augustus. Ter-

* De Moribus Eccl. C. 33.

tullian says that they filled the palace, the forum, and the senate, and Pliny says they were of every rank and condition in society. St. Jerome, in his preface to the catalogue of ecclesiastical writers, says, "Let Celsus, Porphyry, and Julian, those rabid dogs against Christ, learn; let their followers learn how great and how noble were the men who founded and built up the Church, and let them cease to call our faith rustic simplicity. Was there not, from the very beginning of the Church, a public school in the city of Alexandria, where the most learned men, Ammonius, Pantænus, Clement of Alexandria, Origen, and others flourished, and to which even the pagans flocked in crowds?" St. Jerome died in Bethlehem A. D. 420. St. John Chrysostom, who died A. D. 407, proposes an infidel objection common in his day—"the faithful were slaves, women, nurses, midwives, eunuchs"—to which he answers, "It is not true that the Church was composed of these alone as every one knows. But if such poor people accepted the faith, this is only another proof of the admirable preaching of the Apostles who, although they were but fishermen, a most unlearned class of men, were able to persuade their hearers to the immediate acceptance of dogmas which neither Plato nor the Platonists were able to understand. If the Apostles had convinced only the learned, we should not so much wonder. But the drawing of slaves, nurses, and eunuchs to such sublime philosophy and making them rivals to the angels is a very strong proof that it was the work of divine inspiration. If they had preached vile and low doctrines, we could easily understand their acceptance by the populace. But if they preached great and profound truths which required superior intelligence to be understood, truths which almost transcend the power of human nature; the more you try to show that those who accepted them were dull and stupid, the more forcibly you will prove that the Apostles who persuaded the masses were full of wisdom and of divine grace."

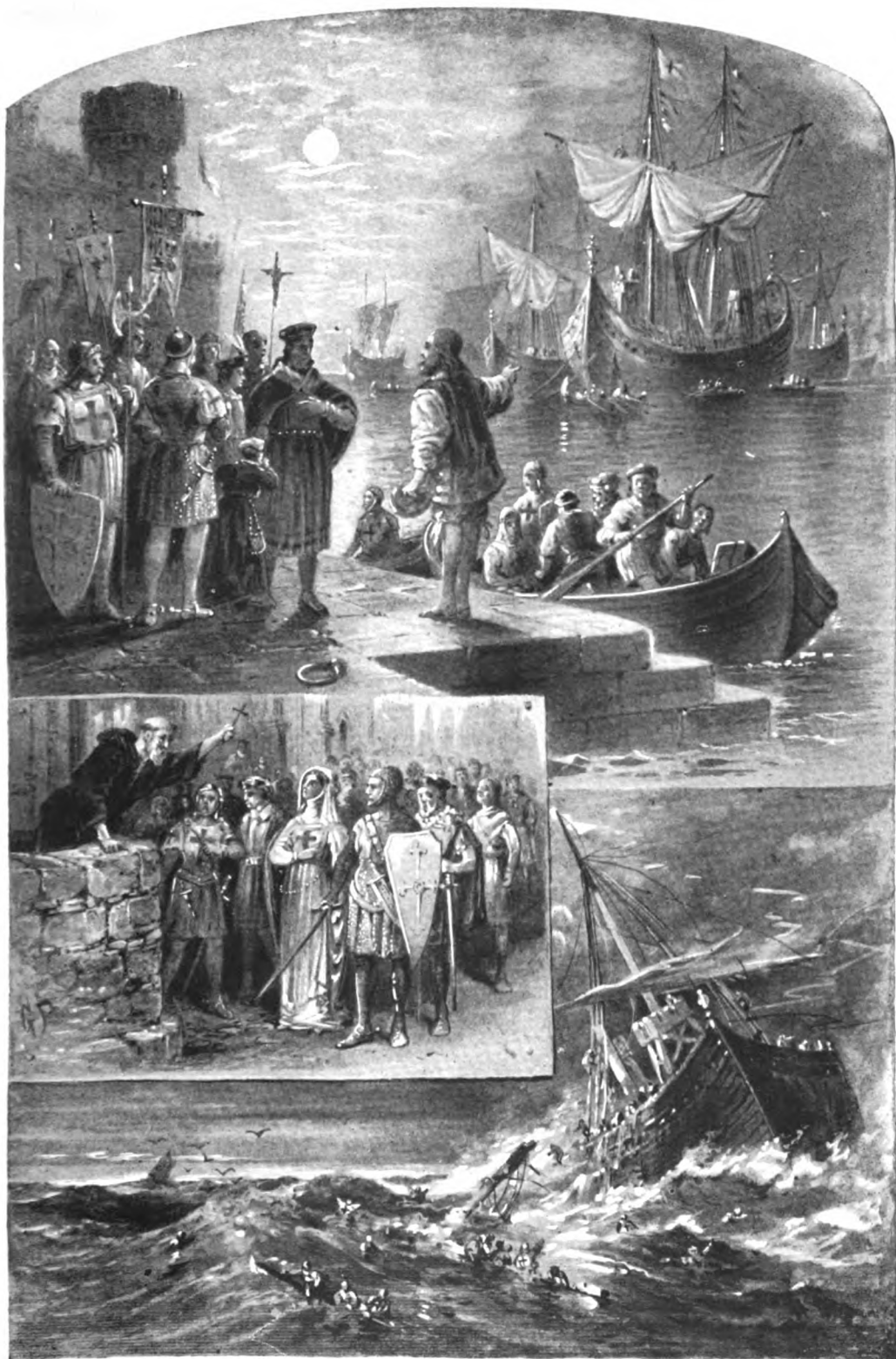
Nor was this fruit of apostolic zeal and preaching merely transitory. It has lasted until our days, and will last forever. "The Catholic Church," wrote Macaulay, "is still sending forth to the furthest ends of the world missionaries as zealous as those who landed in Kent with Augustine; and still confronting hostile kings with the same spirit with which she confronted Attila. The number of her children is greater than in any former age. Her acquisitions in the new world have more than compensated for what she has lost in the old. Her spiritual ascendancy extends over the vast countries which lie between the plains of the Missouri and Cape Horn."

Compare all human institutions, all religions and sects with the Catholic Church, and behold the difference! The history of philosophical systems is found in books; but those systems have done little or nothing

for the reformation of mankind. Some have even left no traces behind them. And what has become of the sects? They have decayed, or are dying, because they were and are all human. A man began them, a man made them, and the law of human institutions is the great law of decay and death. The Protestant sects, with all their waste of money, have never converted a nation. They scatter the Bible to the winds, but reap no fruit. Even their missions, extravagantly subsidized, are failures. The sects themselves, although pretending to owe their existence to the necessity of reforming the world, and boasting that they would reform it, and get rid of the vices and superstitions of the mother Church, have succeeded only in producing infidelity, civil war and immorality. Their loose notions on marriage, and their sanction of divorce, have demoralized the Christian nations. This was, from the very commencement of the so-called reformation, the consequence of the Protestant rebellion. Erasmus, in the sixteenth century, wrote: "Look around this new evangelical (Protestant) people, and see if they are less avaricious, or if they indulge less in lust and luxury than those whom they hate. Show me one drunkard whom these gospellers have made sober, one brawler whom they have made meek, one thief whom they have made honest, one blasphemer whom they have made reverent, one libertine whom they have made chaste. I can show you many who have been made worse by their change of religion." It is a well-known fact that the leaders in the Protestant revolt were chiefly men of loose character, like Luther, Calvin and Henry VIII., and that immorality instead of reform was the immediate consequence of the Protestant heresy. Of the Protestant reformers and missionaries we may well say what Tertullian said of the heretics of his time: "Their business seems to be, not to convert pagans, but to pervert our faithful people; they glory in destroying the faith of those who have it, rather than in imparting it to those who never had it; for the very work which they do is based on the destruction of truth. They dig up our foundations to build their own."*

No wonder, then, that St. Chrysostom, considering all these triumphs and victories of the Church, should eloquently cry out: "Nothing is equal to the Church. Not walls nor munitions of war; for they crumble away, while the Church never grows old. The barbarians demolish fortifications; but the very demons cannot conquer the Church. Facts prove that this is no empty boast. How many have assaulted the Church, yet all her enemies have perished. For the Church transcends the skies. Such is the greatness of the Church that she always conquers when attacked, breaks the snares set to impede her progress; shines more

* *De Præscrip.*, ch. 17.

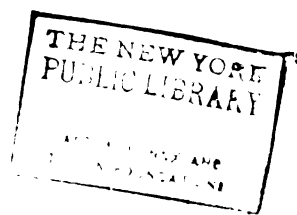


The Farewell.

The Departure.

The Wreck.

THE CRUSADES.



brightly the more she is calumniated ; receives wounds, but never succumbs to them ; is tossed on the waves, but never submerged ; is assailed by storms, but never shipwrecked ; struggles, but is never thrown ; gives battle, but is never conquered."

The same eloquent doctor of the Church thus argues : "If the infidel asks, How do you prove that Christ is God ? we shall not seek a proof from heaven, nor of that kind. For if I should say to him, Christ created the heavens, the earth and the sea, the infidel would not listen. If I say, Christ raised the dead to life, gave sight to the blind, put demons to flight, the infidel will not believe. If I say, Christ promised the kingdom of heaven to those who believe, or if I speak of the resurrection, the infidel will only laugh. How, therefore, can I produce proof to convince him ? From those things which we both hold and admit in common, as facts indisputable. What are these things which the infidel will admit with me that Christ did ? The infidel must admit that Christ founded Christianity, that He is the author of the Christian Church everywhere existing. From this fact we argue and prove that Christ is God. For we say that a mere man could never have accomplished such a work as the conquest of land and sea in so short a time ; such a work as the conversion of men from their passions and superstitions to the pure creed of the gospel. Christ liberated all mankind from vice and superstition. He converted not only the Romans, but the Persians, and all the barbarian tribes. This He accomplished, not by force of arms, or at great expense, or with armies, or in battles fought and won, but in the beginning through the preaching of eleven humble, ignorant, poor, shoeless, unarmed men, each of whom owned only one coat. He did more than this. He persuaded all nations to neglect the things of this life, and to think of the future ; to change all their national laws and customs, rooted for centuries in the political life of the people, and to accept a new, a stricter and a more severe code. Now, unless Christ was God, how could He do all this ? Consider also, that His followers, although persecuted in every way, steadily increased in numbers, while those who had crucified Him were cast out, lost their nationality, and wander to this day through the world, expatriated and exiled."

Against the arguments thus far produced to prove the divinity of Christianity from its triumphs, only one objection is ever seriously made. Let us hear and answer it.

Infidels say that the progress and preservation of the Church is, not more wonderful than the spread of Mohammedanism. But there can be no serious comparison made between the spread of the doctrines of Jesus Christ and the propagation of Mohammedanism. As St. Thomas observes, repeating what the fathers and other Christian apologists had long

ago remarked : " Christianity was propagated not by force of arms, nor by the promise of sensual pleasures, but flourished during the most cruel persecutions, during which not the learned alone, but the masses of the people flocked to the Church. Christianity taught doctrines above the ken of human intelligence, and a code of morals restricting the liberty of the will and repressing every human passion ; Christianity is a system of belief which teaches contempt for the pleasures and attractions of this world. It is a miracle that these doctrines should have been accepted by corrupt human nature. The conversion of the world to the faith of Christ is an exceptional event in history, and evidently the work of divine inspiration. Heresies, and notably the Mohammedan sect, were propagated by means directly opposite to those employed by Christ and His Apostles. Mohammedanism promised carnal delights to its followers, and made converts by the sword. Mohammed gave loose reins to licentiousness. Besides, the Koran, which he imposed on his followers, is full of fables, whose contradictions and monstrosities even a child can perceive. It is a work full of self-evident falsehoods. He worked no miracles ; his argument was the sword, the weapon of thieves and tyrants. No intelligent people accepted his teaching in the beginning. The brutal inhabitants of the desert, led by cupidity and licentiousness, were the first to flock to his standard, and these compelled others, at the point of the sword, to accept the absurd and immoral creed of the false prophet.

In conclusion, then, we may say, that the continual triumph of the Church over her persecutors in every age should recall to the minds of her enemies, when they again think of persecuting her, the words of Gamaliel (Acts v. 34, 35-38, 39), when the Jews debated whether they should imprison the Apostles or not, " Ye men of Israel, take heed to yourselves what you are about to do with those men. And now, therefore, I say to you, refrain from these men, and let them alone; for if this counsel or work be of men, it will come to nothing : But if it be of God, you cannot overthrow it ; lest perhaps you be found even to fight against God. And they agreed with him."

The result proved that the work was of God. The Catholic Church, to borrow the words of a French orator, is ever found to be " the anvil which breaks all the hammers of persecution." The gates of hell have never prevailed, and never can prevail, against her ; because she is divine in her origin, divine in her founder, divine in her doctrines and laws, and will always remain immediately under divine protection until the end of the world.

CATHOLIC BELIEF;

OR,

A SHORT AND SIMPLE EXPOSITION OF
CATHOLIC DOCTRINE.

CATHOLIC BELIEF.

Chapter 1.

Introduction.

ALL men readily admit that, to be in a position to judge fairly of any case, one should hear both sides.

As then, the honest mind naturally shrinks from passing a severe judgment on any one before hearing what he has to say for himself, so, no lover of truth and charity should hastily condemn, without a hearing, the largest body of Christians existing—the two hundred and twenty millions of Catholics who are living in communion with the See of Rome.

The greater number of those who differ from Catholics draw most of the information they possess about the Catholic Church from Protestant sources, thus hearing only one side.

It may be, then, that many will be glad of the opportunity this work affords, of learning from Catholics themselves what they really believe, and something of what they have to say in defence of their holy religion.

True Religion is that bond which unites finite to infinite, time to eternity, man to God. The good to be attained by Religion is the highest that can be conceived—the complete and perfect enjoyment of God. The means through which it leads men to that good are the noblest that can be imagined—truth and justice ! One therefore cannot remain indifferent between false and true Religion, for true Religion alone supplies all the proper means to obtain that supreme good.

Some persons, owing to the pressing calls of business, or other cares, may not have the inclination or time to read long works about religion, while a brief statement of Catholic doctrine may be read, or listened to, with interest, by all who love the truth, and long to meet with it.

Well, then, dear reader, deign to accept and read this short and simple exposition of what Catholics really do believe, written by one who feels it his greatest blessing to be a member of the Holy, Catholic, and Roman Church, and who cannot help most earnestly wishing that all men

possessed the same peace of mind and happiness which he enjoys in her communion.

The first duty of every man who desires to discover truth, is, as Lord Bacon of Verulam observes, to examine if he has any prejudice lurking in his mind, by which the admission of truth is obstructed; for, as this philosopher goes on to remark, the kingdom of men which is founded in knowledge, cannot be entered in any other manner than the Kingdom of God is entered, namely, by being in the condition of little children.

Let me beg, then, the honest inquirer, before reading this book, to place himself in a state of impartiality, and lay aside that settled feeling of self-confidence which leads him to take it for granted that Roman Catholics must be in the wrong.

May God grant you, dear reader, a spirit of humility, charity and justice in reading this book, and an earnest desire to know the truth. Do not omit to pray for this gentle and teachable spirit, feeling encouraged in so doing by those words of St. James (i. 5); "If any of you want wisdom, let him ask of God, who giveth to all men abundantly, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him;" and by what is said in Psalm xxiv. 9, "He will guide the mild in judgment; He will teach the meek His ways."

Chapter II.

Of the Creator.

THERE is but one God, the Creator of heaven and earth, the supreme, incorporeal, uncreated Being, who exists of Himself, and is infinite in all His attributes and perfections, such as holiness, goodness, power, wisdom, justice, mercy, and truth.

He always was, He is, and He always will be. He is everywhere present, knowing and seeing all things, even our most secret thoughts. From Him all creatures have and hold existence.

Chapter III.

Of the Most Holy Trinity.

THIS is a profound mystery, revealed to us by God. The Catholic Church teaches that in one God there are three *persons*; the *Father*,

the *Son*, and the *Holy Ghost*; really distinct one from the other, and equal in eternity, power, immensity, and all other perfections; because all the three *persons* have one and the same divine nature or essence.

It would be a contradiction to assert that there are *three Gods and one God*, or that there are *three persons and one person*; but it is no contradiction to affirm that God is one in essence and three in personality. A thing can be one in one respect, and three in another respect. Thus the human soul, though one, is threefold in its powers; namely, the understanding, the memory, and the will. Likewise a man is one human being, and threefold in his rational, animal, and vegetative life.

Comparisons, however, are necessarily imperfect upon such a subject as the blessed Trinity. It is a *great mystery*, surpassing all understanding, to be adoringly believed on earth, and to be understood only in heaven.

We are not able to understand *how* each of the three persons can be God, and yet that there is but one God. It should be borne in mind that many things exist also in nature which we cannot explain, or even comprehend, and yet know to be facts. Among such may be noted the nature of latent substance of bodies, the cause of gravitation, the attraction of the magnet, and the amazing power and swiftness of the electric current. Human reason cannot of itself discover or demonstrate that there are three persons in God, yet this revealed truth far from being repugnant to reason can be shown to agree with it. For God as an intelligent being of infinite perfection must naturally know Himself, and in Himself know all things. To this end He must form to Himself an inward word through which the comprehension of Himself is effected.

When we understand a thing, the interior word or image which our intellect forms within itself in order to comprehend a thing is not a thing subsisting in itself, but accidental and transient, and therefore not a person; but in God in whom reason shows that there can be no accident of any kind, this eternal self-comprehension, or word, is not an accidental, transient thing, but a thing identified with divine nature, and at the same time, perfectly distinct from the Father, who is that intellectual supreme Being, who by comprehending Himself generates this His Word, and therefore He is a distinct subsistence or person, because, although identified with the same nature of the Father, yet inasmuch as it is generated by the Father, it is perfectly distinct from Him, who is generator, and forms in Himself an individual, distinct and incommunicable subsistence, which is everything that is required for being truly a divine person, called in Holy Scripture the Word, and the Son of God; for by *person* is understood an intellectual individual substance.


Likewise God loves Himself in the Son, and is beloved in return by

the Son, and in Himself He loves all other things, and this eternal permanent act of mutual love is also, not a thing accidental and transient, as an act of love is in us, but is a thing identified with divine nature, eternal, permanent, subsisting, singular, incommunicable, perfectly distinct from the Father and the Son, from both of whom this divine act proceeds, and is also therefore a distinct person, called in Holy Scripture the Holy Ghost.

Therefore, to say that in one God there are three persons, is no more repugnant to reason than saying that the one God must of necessity be considered under three different respects:—1st, as a God who knows Himself, that is, as a subject; 2d, as a God who is known by Himself, that is, as an object of knowledge; and 3d, as a God who is loving Himself and beloved by Himself, as knowing and as known, that is, an object of mutual love. These remarkable self-subsistent eternal differences or relations are what constitute the three really distinct persons in the one God.

Chapter 10.

Original Sin.

 RIGINAL sin is distinguished from *actual*, or *personal* sin, because actual or personal sin is the sin which we *personally with our own free will* commit, whilst *original* sin is that sin which our human nature has committed *with the will of Adam*, in whom all our human nature was included, and with whom our human nature is united as a branch to a root, as a child to a parent, as men who partake with Adam the same nature which we have derived from him, and as members of the same human family of which Adam was the head. The difference that exists between original and personal sin is, that the latter is committed with the will physically our own, whilst original sin is committed with a will physically of another, and only morally our own, because it forms with that other (Adam), who is our head, one moral body.

If our hand strike a fellow-creature unjustly, though the hand has itself no will, yet it is considered guilty, not indeed as viewed separately by itself, but inasmuch as it is united to the rest of the body, and to the soul, forming one human being therewith, and thus sharing in the will of the soul with which it is connected.

Also the sin committed inwardly by the human will, by a bad desire, belongs to the whole human being.

Of the original sin in which we are born we are not personally guilty

with our own personal will, but our *nature* is guilty of it by the will of Adam our head, with whom we form one moral body through the human nature which we derive from him.

It is a point of Catholic faith that original sin does not consist in what is called concupiscence, which is a propensity to evil of the inferior part of the human soul.

Sin of any kind in order to be a sin, in the strict sense of the word, must be within the sphere of morality, that is, it must depend upon free-will ; and hence the noted principle in moral philosophy and theology, *that there is no sin where there is no will.*

Concupiscence, therefore, which is not will, but a blind involuntary inclination of our lower nature (and therefore an irresponsible tendency to evil), is not of itself sinful unless it be consented to by the human will, or rendered strong by bad and not retracted habit.

Concupiscence is indeed sometimes called sin in Holy Scripture (Romans vii. 7, Galatians v. 24), but it is called so, as the holy Council of Trent explains, not in a *strict*, but in a *wide* sense, that is, inasmuch as it is a *consequence* of original sin, and an *incentive* to actual sin.

This concupiscence, or inclination to evil, in fact, still remains in those in whom the guilt and stain of original sin has been entirely washed away by the sacrament of holy baptism. Moreover, strictly speaking, no one is regarded as a sinner merely because he feels tempted to sin. This miserable propensity to evil excites the compassion of God rather than His anger. God said to Noë : "I will no more curse the earth for the sake of man ; for the imagination and thought of man's heart are prone to evil from his youth." (Genesis viii. 21.)

The Catholic Church teaches that Adam by his sin has not only caused harm to himself, but to the whole human race ; that by it he lost the supernatural justice and holiness which he received gratuitously from God, and lost it, not only for himself, but also for all of us ; and that he, having stained himself with the sin of disobedience, has transmitted not only death and other bodily pains and infirmities to the whole human race, but *also sin, which is the death of the soul.*

The teaching of the Council of Trent (Session V.) is confirmed by these words of St. Paul : "Wherefore as by one man sin entered into this world, and by sin death ; and so death passed upon all men, in whom all have sinned." (Rom. v. 12.)

The Royal Psalmist in Psalm l. (li.) 7, says : "For behold I was conceived in iniquities, and in sins did my mother conceive me." (In the Hebrew text it is in singular, *i.e.*, "conceived me in sin.")

Upon this text St. Augustine says : "David was not born in adultery, for he was born from Jesse, a just man, and his wife. Why does he say that

he was conceived in iniquity unless because iniquity is derived from Adam?"

Surely the early Christians believed in original sin, as it can be gathered from what St. Augustine said to Pelagius, opposing him on the matter. "I did not invent original sin, which Catholic faith holds from ancient time; but thou, who deniest it, thou, without doubt, art a new heretic." (De nuptiis, lib. xi. c. 12.)

It may be said that this belief is as old as the human race, for traces of this ancient tradition are spread in all nations, insomuch that Voltaire had to confess that "The fall of man is the base of the theology of nearly all ancient people." (Philosophie de l'histoire, chapitre xvii.)

Besides the *guilt* of original sin, which is that habitual state of sinfulness in which we are born (because our human nature is justly considered to have consented in Adam to the rejection of original justice); there is also in man the *stain* of original sin, entailing the privation in the human soul of that supernatural lustre, which, had we been born in the state of original justice, we all should have had.*

As neither Adam nor any of his offspring could repair the evil done by his sin, we should ever have remained in the state of original sin and degradation in which we were born, and we should have been for ever shut out from the beatific vision of God in Heaven, had not God, in His infinite mercy, provided for us a Redeemer.

Chapter V.

The Incarnation of God the Son.

RESPECTING this great mystery, Catholics believe that the holy Trinity, out of infinite mercy, decreed to provide for us a Redeemer who could suffer, and suffer as an individual of the human race, and at the same time be in Himself so exalted as to be able to give infinite value to His sufferings; because sin, being an offence against the *infinite* majesty of God, could only be atoned for by an expiation of infinite value.

To accomplish this end, God the Son, the second person of the holy Trinity, the Eternal Word, chose the blessed Virgin Mary of Nazareth to become His mother, and on receiving her consent, He, by the supernatural agency of the Holy Spirit, took human flesh from her, and thus became man, and His holy name is Jesus Christ.

* About the way in which original sin is transmitted, see Part III. No. 3.

By becoming man the Eternal Word did not lay aside His divine nature, but, remaining what He had ever been from all eternity, took upon Himself human nature without a human personality, so that from the first moment of His incarnation there was in Him, and there ever will be, not one only but two natures, the divine and the human, *united* in His divine personality, the person of God the Son.

The divine nature of Jesus is one and the same as that of the Eternal Father and of the Holy Spirit, and His human nature is in all things like ours, sin and tendency to sin excepted. He is equal to the Father as to His Godhead, and less than the Father as to His manhood.

Our Lord Jesus Christ suffered and died in His human nature on Mount Calvary, and thereby effectually interposed His atonement between His Eternal Father and man, and thus made a plentiful expiation and paid a full ransom to the Eternal Justice for the sins of the whole world.

Chapter VI.

Jesus our only Mediator of Redemption.

CATHOLICS believe that our Lord *Jesus Christ* is alone the great centre of the Christian religion, the fountain of all grace, virtue, and merit, as in the natural world (if the comparison may be allowed), the sun is the centre and enlivening created source of light, heat, and growth.

This grand truth they believe to be the vital, essential part of Christianity, "For other foundation no man can lay but that which is laid; which is Christ Jesus." (1 Corinthians iii. 11.)

They hold that to be united to Jesus Christ is the highest and noblest aim of man, and that only the holy Catholic Church supplies the means for the closest union with Jesus Christ; and they are convinced that the yearning to possess this closer communion with Christ has, by divine attraction, drawn thousands of earnest minds to seek in the Catholic Church this the highest happiness to be enjoyed on earth.

They believe that Jesus Christ is our Redeemer, because He has redeemed us from the bondage of Satan, with the ransom of His most precious blood; that He alone is our Saviour because He saves us from the stain, the guilt, and the curse of sin; that He is our only mediator of redemption and salvation, because He alone, by His own merits, has efficiently interposed between God and man, to obtain the full pardon of our sins through the sacrifice of Himself: "There is one God, and one

mediator of God and men, the man Christ Jesus ; who gave himself a redemption for all." (1 St. Timothy ii. 5, 6.) "Neither is there salvation in any other. For there is no other name under heaven given to men, whereby we must be saved." (Acts iv. 12.)

They believe that Jesus died on the cross to purchase mercy, grace, and salvation for all men—"Who will have all men to be saved, and to come to the knowledge of the truth." (1 St. Timothy ii. 4.) And that since Adam's fall, mercy, grace, and salvation can be obtained by man only through the passion and death of Jesus Christ.

Believing that Jesus Christ is truly God, they hold that the homage of supreme adoration is due to Him, the God-man, as well as to God the Father, and to God the Holy Spirit.

Chapter VII.

The Holy Bible.

THAT part of divine revelation which has been committed to writing by persons inspired by the Holy Ghost, is called Holy Scripture, or the *Holy Bible ; the Book of Books*.

Holy Scripture is composed not only of all the books received by Protestants as divinely inspired, but also of some other books which were written after the Jewish list or *canon* of Scripture was made, but which nevertheless are held in great veneration by the Jewish Synagogue, and by many Protestants themselves.

Such are the books of Tobias, Judith, Esther, Wisdom, Ecclesiasticus (or the Son of Sirach), the Prophecy of Baruch, and the first two books of Machabees. These books, though not registered in the Jewish canon, were nevertheless held by many fathers of the early centuries as canonical and forming a part of the deposit of revealed truths entrusted to the Church.

In the schismatic Greek Church, and in other separated churches of the East, the canon, or authorized list of the books of Scripture, agrees with that of the Roman Catholic Church. The efforts made by early Protestants to induce the Greek Church to reject that inspired portion of Scripture, called by the Catholic Church deuterocanonical, and, by Protestants, the Apocrypha (that is, hidden), only served to call forth repeatedly from the Greeks assembled in council new synodical declarations that those books are inspired.

So long as the Church had not testified with her authority to the

divine inspiration of certain books, some of the fathers may have hesitated about the inspiration of them, and reasonably thought that such books could not be quoted to establish revealed truth, until the Church had first cleared away all doubts, by inserting them in the canon, and thus established the inspiration and canonical authority of those books.

This the Church did in the celebrated Council of Hippo in Africa, in the year 393, attended by all the bishops of Africa, at which also the great doctor and father of the Church, St. Augustine, was present.*

In Statute XXXVI. of this council (393) it was decreed †: "That nothing be read in the Church under the name of Divine Scripture, except the canonical Scriptures, and the canonical Scriptures are—

Genesis.	Daniel.
Exodus.	Tobias.
Leviticus.	Judith.
Numbers.	Esther.
Deuteronomy.	Two books of Esdra (Ezra and Nehemiah).
Josue.	Two books of Machabees.
Judges.	
Ruth.	
Four books of Kingdoms.	(AND OF THE NEW TESTAMENT.)
Two books of Paralipomenon.	Four books of the Gospel.
Job.	One book of the Acts of the Apostles.
The Psalter of David.	Thirteen letters of Paul the Apostle.
Five books of Solomon.	One letter of the same to the Hebrews.
The books of the Twelve (Minor) Prophets.	Two of Peter the Apostle.
Isaias.	Three of John.
Jeremias.	One of the Apostle Jude.
Ezechiel.	One of James.
	One book of the Apocalypse of John."

This list of canonical books issued by this great council agrees in substance with the list of divinely inspired books held by Catholics to the present day. This any one can see by comparing this list with that prefixed to the Catholic English Bible, called the Douay Bible, and with that of the old Latin Vulgate, or any other Catholic version of Holy Scripture, and likewise with the canon of Scripture given by the ecumenical councils of Florence and of Trent.

The Council of Hippo in 393, and the Third of Carthage in 397, was followed by the Sixth Council of Carthage in 419, attended by two hundred and eighteen bishops, and by two legates sent by the Roman pontiff.

* Possidius in the Life of St. Augustine, referring to this Council of Hippo, thus writes:—"About the same time Augustine, when yet only a priest, argued (*disputavit*) about Faith and the Creed in the presence of the bishops of all Africa gathered in council, being desired by them so to do." And this he did with such praise and admiration of all, that all wished him a bishop; and Valerius, for fear of losing him from his diocese, asked and obtained that he should be installed bishop of Hippo in his stead, though he was yet alive. This was done in the year 394.

† See Labbe, Vol. IV.

The list or canon of books of Scripture decreed in the 29th Decree of this council agrees with the list given by the two previous councils just mentioned, and ends with these words: "*Quia a Patribus ita accepimus in Ecclesia legendum.*" * (Because we have received from the fathers that these are the books to be read in the Church.)

These words should not be passed unnoticed by those who allow themselves to be led astray by the assertion that "in the name of Holy Scripture we do understand those books of whose authority there was never any doubt in the Church." † Let such persons reflect what an assumption it is to suppose that they themselves are, or that their leaders in the sixteenth century were, more competent to judge of the Tradition of the Church of the first four centuries than the Council of Hippo and the Third of Carthage, both held in the fourth century, and the Sixth Council of Carthage held in the beginning of the fifth century; and better judges than all the bishops of Christendom of that age; for the above list of canonical books sanctioned by these three councils was thenceforward received by the whole of Christendom.

Before the decision of these three councils was given, some of the fathers doubted the divine inspiration of the Epistle to the Hebrews, and of some other books of the New Testament. Protestants, however, hold them as canonical. For respecting these books they justly say: "This dissent of some of the fathers moves us not. This dissent of a few, before the canon of Scripture was finally settled, should not be taken into account, especially after the adoption of these books as divinely inspired by all Christendom in the end of the fourth century. The bishops of that time were in a better position to judge of the Tradition of the Church about these books."

This observation is just. Protestants, however, should be consistent, and apply the same reasoning to certain books of the Old Testament known by them under the name of Apocrypha. Although the inspiration of some of these books was held to be doubtful by a few of the fathers, previous to these two councils, the same fathers ceased to have any doubt upon it after the decision of these councils; so that, whilst some of the Apocrypha have been considered uninspired, as the 3rd and 4th of Esdras, and 3rd and 4th of Machabees, some other of these books have been recognized as inspired, and are called by Catholics deuterocanonical. These have, therefore, the very same sanction and authority that all the books of the New Testament have, in addition to the long-standing veneration of the Jewish Church for them.

* See the *Works* of Leo the Great, Vol. III., p. 643 or 635; see also Labbe, Vol. IV., p. 430, edition of Florence.

† See article VI. of the Established Church of England.

St. Jerome himself, before the said two councils of Carthage, seemed to doubt the inspiration of the books of the Old Testament not inserted in the Jewish canon; yet afterwards, when the declaration made by those two councils came to his knowledge, he ceased to doubt with regard to those apocryphal books which were by them declared inspired, and consequently called, no more apocryphal but deuterocanonical, and freely quoted from those same books to uphold Catholic doctrine.

About the importance, and, indeed, the necessity of a decision of the Catholic Church to establish the inspiration, canonicity, and authenticity of Holy Scripture, the saying of the great doctor of the Church, St. Augustine, Bishop of Hippo, is well known: "For my part, I should not believe the gospel [meaning the written gospel], were I not moved thereto by the authority of the Catholic Church." (*Ego vero evangelio non crederem nisi me Catholicæ Ecclesiæ commoveret auctoritas.*) (Against the Epistle of Manes, called Foundation, chapter v.)

Chapter VIII.

The Unwritten Word of God, called by St. Peter "the Word of the Lord that endureth forever."

BESIDES the written Word of God Catholics believe also the unwritten Word of God, called in Holy Scripture *The Word of God spoken* (Acts iv. 31); *The Word of Faith preached* (Romans x. 8); *The Gospel heard and preached* (Colossians i. 23); *The Word of God received, heard, believed* (1 Thessalonians ii. 13); *the Word of Christ heard.* (Romans x. 17.)

Whenever in the New Testament the Word of God revealed by Christ, or through His Apostles is spoken of before it was committed to writing, it always refers to the unwritten Word of God.

Even after the Word of God was in part committed to writing, some passages evidently refer to the Word of God *unwritten*; as, for instance, where St. Peter says: "But the word of the Lord endureth for ever, and this is the word which hath been preached unto you." (1 Ep. i. 25.) Therefore, whenever the Word of God, without any qualification, is mentioned in Holy Scripture, it should not be taken as referring exclusively to the written Word, for it generally refers both to the written and unwritten Word of God.

By Tradition we do not mean a mere report, a hearsay, wanting sufficient evidence to deserve belief; or a local tradition started by man.

and therefore merely human, as were those traditions of the Pharisees condemned by our Lord ; but we mean a Tradition first coming from God, continually taught, recorded, and in all desirable ways kept alive by a body of trustworthy men successively chosen in a divine, or divinely appointed manner, and well instructed, and who are, moreover, protected by God as a body from teaching what is wrong, or handing down unfaithfully to others the doctrine committed to them.

St. Paul gives us an idea of how this Tradition should proceed when he says : " For I delivered unto you first of all, which I also received." (1 Corinth. xv. 3.) And again, when writing to St. Timothy, he says : " The things which thou hast heard of me by many witnesses, the same commend to faithful men, who shall be fit to teach others also." (2 St. Timothy ii. 2.)

Holy Scripture and the Tradition just described are both the Word of God : the first, inspired by God to some chosen one, who wrote it out ; the other, taught by His own divine lips on earth, or inspired by the Holy Spirit in the mind of one man, or body of men, to be continually handed down and perpetuated successively under His divine protection to their legitimate successors ; neither therefore of these divine Words can be rejected without the guilt of unbelief.

St. Ephrem says : " Be firmly persuaded of this, not as an opinion but as a truth, that whatsoever has been transmitted, whether in writing only or by *word of mouth*, is directed to this end, that we may have life and may have it more abundantly." (Vol. iii. Sermon. lix.)

St. Basil says : " Of the dogmas and teachings preserved in the Church, we have some from the doctrine committed to writing, and some we have received transmitted to us in a secret manner from the Traditions of the Apostles ; *both these have the same force* in forming sound doctrine, and no one who has the least experience of ecclesiastical laws will gainsay either of these. For should we attempt to reject, as not having great authority, those *customs that are unwritten*, we should be betrayed into injuring the gospel even in primary matters, or rather in circumscribing the gospel into a mere name." (De Spiritu Sancto., Vol. iii. cxxvii.)

This divine Tradition is not liable to failure either from human fraud or infirmity, because it has the security of *divine guardianship*, that is to say, because those whose office it is to keep alive this tradition, are *divinely protected* from teaching what is false. This appears from that passage of Isaiah, which even Protestants admit refers to the Church, and in which God says : " This is my covenant with them. My Spirit that is in thee, and my words that I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, from henceforth and for ever." (lix. 21.) This appears also

from those passages of St. John, where it is recorded that Christ said : "And I will ask the Father, and he shall give you another Paraclete [or Comforter] that he may abide with you for ever, the Spirit of truth. . . . But when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will teach you all truth." (xiv. 16, 17; and xvi. 13.)

Hence St. Irenæus says: "For where the Church is, there is the Spirit of God, and where the Spirit of God is, there is the Church and all grace; and the Spirit of Truth." (Against Heresies, vol. iii. c. xxiv.)

The necessity of believing the *unwritten living Word of God* appears also from the fact that the fundamental virtue of faith, without which no adult is a Christian, is an assent to the Word of God preached by men sent by God, and charged by Him to preach the truths revealed to them by Him who is infinite knowledge, greatness, and truth, and who can neither deceive nor be deceived.

Hence St. Paul says: "Faith cometh by hearing" (Romans x. 17), and therefore by the Word of God preached by the Apostles, or by their legitimate successors to the persons who hear and believe it. Hence the same Apostle also says: "And how shall they hear without a preacher? and how shall they preach unless they be sent?" (Romans x. 14, 15.) And to be sent by legitimate, divinely established authority, is to be sent by God. (See Acts xiii. 4.)

So long as there are nations to be taught, the command of Christ to His Apostles to teach "all nations," indeed, "every creature," will never cease to be in force; and *divinely authorized teaching* will never cease to be the *Word of God*. Whether this Word is preached without being committed to inspired writing, as was the case during the twelve years which elapsed between the ascension of our Lord and the writing of the first Gospel, the Gospel of St. Matthew,—whether preached by the Apostles and their successors during the progressive formation of the New Testament up to the year of our Lord 99, when the Gospel of St. John, the last inspired book of the New Testament, was written,—whether preached after the death of St. John (101), that is, in the second, third, and fourth centuries, when only very few possessed all the books of the Old and of the New Testament, and the inspiration of some of them was uncertain (for the canon or *authorized list* of the inspired books of the Old and the New Testaments was only finally settled in the Council of Carthage in the year 397)—whether preached after the fourth century for the space of a thousand years, during which time no printed Bible existed, but only Bibles written by hand, which consequently were very voluminous, costly, and rare,—or whether preached after the year 1450, when the art of printing began to come into use, and printed Bibles could be obtained; that Word of Christ, I say, entrusted by Him with His own divine lips, or by inspira-

tion to the Apostles, and by the Apostles transmitted in a divinely appointed manner to the whole chain of their legitimate successors, is always the Word of God, firmly to be believed by every Christian.

Hence St. Paul, in his Second Epistle to the Thessalonians (ii. 14), could say: "Brethren, stand fast and hold the traditions [that is to say, the entrusted Word of God], which you have learnt whether by word [that is, by my preaching] or by our epistle" [that is, by my inspired writings].

When Jesus Christ said to the Apostles: "He that heareth you, heareth me" (St. Luke x. 16), He did not limit this duty of hearing the Apostles *even as Himself* to the time when the inspired writings of the New Testament did not exist, but extended it to subsequent times; and the duty of preaching applies not only to the twelve Apostles, but also to their legitimate successors, for through their successors alone were the Apostles to teach *all* nations, and their apostolic office was to last until the end of the world. This we see from the following words of Christ to the Apostles: "Go ye into the whole world and preach the gospel to every creature." (St. Mark xvi. 15.) "Going therefore teach ye all nations . . . teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you, and behold I am with you all days, even to the consummation of the world." (St. Matthew xxviii. 19, 20.) And no one is exempted from the duty of believing their teaching, for Christ subjoined: "He that believeth not, shall be condemned." (St. Mark xvi. 16.)

Hence any legitimate bishop upholding the Tradition of the Church could say what St. John the Evangelist said in his old age, when nearly all the books of the New Testament were written: "We are of God. He that knoweth God, heareth us. He that is not of God heareth us not. By this we know the spirit of truth and the spirit of error." (1 St. John iv. 6.)

And St. Irenæus could say, concerning the heretics of his time: "We challenge them to that Tradition which is from the Apostles, which is preserved in the churches through the succession of the presbyters." (Against Heresies, book iii. chap. ii.) And Origen said: "We are not . . . to believe otherwise than as the churches of God have by succession transmitted to us." (Commentary on St. Matthew, Book iii.)

St. Chrysostom gave out as an axiom: "It is a tradition [of the Church], seek nothing further." (Commentary on the passage, 2 Thessalonians ii. 14, book xi. homily 4.)

To suppose that Tradition has lost its authority from having been (in part) committed to writing, would be as unreasonable as to say that the natural law was made void from the moment that the Ten Commandments were laid down in writing on Mount Sinai.

Some might ask : Which of these two divine Words is the more useful to us ?

This question may be considered as answered by the fathers already quoted. I will, therefore, make only one more citation. The holy bishop of Hierapolis (Papias), the hearer of St. John and friend of St. Polycarp, referring to Tradition, says : "If any one came to me who had accompanied the elders, I questioned him concerning their words, what Andrew and Peter said ; for I did not think that what is in the books would aid me as much as what comes from the *living and abiding voice*." (Eusebius, b. iii., p. 39.)

I will here make a supposition which may perhaps enable the inquirer to see better the import of this answer.

Suppose two rivers run side by side, both abounding with precious stones, which persons standing on the banks of either river were most anxious to obtain and know the name and value of, that knowledge being of vital interest to them. On one of the rivers floats a noble ship, having on board trustworthy men, able and willing to impart this knowledge to these people. On the other river, however, we will suppose to be no such vessel, no such guide. The people who stand on the shores of this second river, who refuse to have recourse to the well-informed guides that are on the ship on the other river, and who in the valuation of the precious stones which they may find, only trust themselves, would be liable to make great mistakes in valuing each stone, and would have widely different opinions among themselves about them.

If some of those self-guided men should happen to set a right value on any of the jewels, it would only be by chance ; no one of them could feel sure of not being mistaken about it, whilst those who sought the experienced men on board the ship could easily learn with certainty the right value of each of the jewels found in both rivers.

Like two sacred rivers flowing from Paradise, the Holy Bible and divine Tradition both contain the Word of God ; both are full of the precious jewels of revealed truths.

Though these two divine streams are in themselves, on account of their divine origin, of equal sacredness, and are both full of revealed truths, still, of the two, Tradition is to us more clear and safe. And why ?

1st, Because Tradition can testify in its own behalf through the many authorized witnesses who carry this Tradition in themselves, whilst Holy Scripture cannot make good its authority without referring to Tradition to testify to its inspiration and preservation.

2d, Because a word may have two or more different meanings, and an expression may be true in one of these meanings and not in another. Again, as an expression may be true, for example, if taken

figuratively, and not true if taken literally; true if applied to some particular person, and not true if applied to all; true if taken in its plain sense, and not true if taken in a strained or fanciful sense; true if taken in a sense that does not exclude other things, and not true if taken in an exclusive sense; true if taken to act through the medium of other things, and not true if taken to act without a medium; true if taken to mean a counsel, and not true if regarded as a precept; true if taken permissively, and not true if regarded as the active cause of a thing; the Bible, which is a mere letter needing an interpreter, cannot by itself set the mistaken interpreter right.

But Tradition being a living word because carried in the mind and on the lips of divinely appointed living teachers, can say with regard to each of its own expressions, and also as to the expressions in Holy Writ itself, in what sense exactly those expressions are true, and in what sense they are not true; and, if wrongly interpreted by any one, Tradition can set that person right, and explain the true meaning of it; and all this it can do with an authority which, by a privilege granted to her by Christ, is infallible, and, owing to the unfailing promised assistance of the Holy Spirit dwelling in the Church, is divine.

The ark of old, when in the hands of the sacerdotal and Levitical order, and carried or preserved by them in the midst of the chosen people of God, was a source of blessings. If carried off to another nation, and kept in the hands of unauthorized or self-authorized persons, it was to them a source of scourges. (1 Kings vi.)

So likewise the Holy Scripture, when separated from Tradition, which is its support and lawful expounder, and thrown into the hands of unauthorized interpreters, instead of being a source of blessing, becomes a cause of endless contention and division, an occasion of doubt, fanaticism, and ceaseless wrangling, as sad experience proves.

Tradition, without Holy Scripture, Old or New, sufficed for many years, and could still suffice. But Holy Scripture has never sufficed by itself; it always stood in need of divine Tradition: for it is only by this divine *Tradition* that we learn that *Holy Scripture* is an inspired book. It is only *Tradition* that can give with authority and certainty the right meaning of Holy Scripture. Without *Tradition* the *Holy Scripture* may be made to speak in many discordant ways, thus destroying its authority altogether.

To use an illustration: A court of a never-interrupted body of judges, might, by the help of a living, well-known, and well-established tradition of orally enacted laws, suffice for the guidance and welfare of a people; but no code of written laws could suffice without a court to testify to the genuine nature of them, to their being still in vigor,

and to give with authority the right meaning of them in all cases of dispute.

St. Irenæus testifies that in his time many nations had salvation written in their own hearts without paper and ink, and were diligently guarding the ancient Tradition. (Book iii. chap. iv.)

After Tradition had been in full and successful operation for several years, God added the *written Word*, but it was not for the purpose of superseding *Tradition*, a thing which neither our Lord nor His Apostles ever said; but it was rather to strengthen *Tradition* itself; for in this very *written Word* He left recorded repeatedly and forcibly, as we have already seen, that *Tradition* or the successive oral teaching of the body of teachers instituted and empowered by Himself for that purpose, was to have its full authority and vigor whilst there existed a *nation*, or even one *creature* to be taught the gospel; that is, until the end of the world.

Hence the ancient and successive fathers of the Church always recognized the necessity of appealing to Tradition, the unwritten Word of God, in order to confute heresies, to settle controversies about religion, and to establish with authority and certainty what, according to the revelation of God, we ought to believe and to do in order to be saved.

The fathers of the Church plainly expressed their belief that the Written Word of God by itself, without the help of Tradition, would always leave disputes unsettled, points of belief and morals undetermined, and true religion a problem unsolved.

Chapter IX.

The Interpretation and the Reading of Holy Scripture.

THE Holy Scriptures are the Word of God. This I will assume as admitted by Protestants generally. But it is clear that if the Scriptures are wrongly interpreted, they become the word of man. For, as the Protestant Bishop Walton says: "The Word of God does not consist in mere letters, whether written or printed, but in the true sense of it."* This is what St. Jerome had said ages before: "Let us be persuaded that the gospel consists not in the words but in the sense. A wrong explanation turns the Word of God into the word of man, and, what is worse, into the word of the devil; for the devil

* Prolegomena (or Preface) of his Polyglot, chap. v.

himself could quote the text of Scripture ;" * and he did so when he tempted our Lord in the desert. (St. Matt. iv. 6.)

Protestants should consider well this point, especially those who so confidently and plausibly boast that *they stand by the Bible alone*, and imagine that to stand by the Bible alone means that they rely not upon human authority, but upon the Word of God.

Certainly nothing can be better than to stand by the Word of God, but whether what they call standing by the Bible alone be to stand by the Word of God, we shall see.

Let us observe, 1st, that the Bible, though divinely inspired, is but a *written document*, and a written document often so obscure, that St. Augustine, though so great a scholar, and a doctor of the Church, confessed that there were more things in the Bible he did not understand than those he did.

Let us consider, 2d, that the Bible, because a *written document*, would remain always silent unless interpreted, that is, unless some meaning is affixed to the words, by some one. It is clear that the Bible cannot speak and interpret itself,—you must take the Book in your hand, open it, read it, compare passages, and attach a certain meaning to those words which fall under your eyes.

Therefore, when a Protestant says : "I stand by the Bible alone," he does not mean that he stands by the Bible uninterpreted, for in such case the Bible is mute. He does not mean that he stands by the Bible as interpreted by the Church, for that would not be the Protestant but the Catholic principle. Nor does he mean that he stands by the Bible as interpreted by somebody else ; as that would be, according to his notion, to give up his right of private interpretation. But he means that he stands by the Bible alone as interpreted by himself, and that the sense in which he himself understands it *is the Word of God*.

And therefore a person who is guided by this principle comes to say this : "The Bible, interpreted by the fathers, may or may not be the Word of God ; the Bible interpreted by the Church may or may not be the Word of God ; the Bible interpreted by any one besides myself may or may not be the Word of God ; but the Bible interpreted by *me*, that is indeed the Word of God, my only teacher, my guide, my infallible authority."

To a Catholic who would rejoin : "What, my friend, if you were to understand some passage of Scripture in a wrong sense ?" The person who would still stick to that principle would have to reply : "That would be a great pity, but still, not acknowledging any other authority but my

* In his comments on the Epistle to the Galatians, speaking against the Luciferians.

own private judgment, I have a right to look upon that interpretation of *mine* as the Word of God."

And if a Catholic were to add: "Is it not reasonable to suppose that the interpretation of the Bible by the whole body of bishops of the Catholic Church, though disagreeing with your private interpretation, should be the right one, and therefore more likely the word of God?" the Protestant would be reduced to answer: "I do not agree, because that interpretation would not be *mine*." "If you argue so," the Catholic may justly reply, "I must say that with you, my friend, the *me* and the *mine* stand for all argument."

Let him who has eyes see what spirit is at the root of this boasted saying, and how shallow is the principle of standing *by the Bible alone*.

The Bible in the original language, or when truthfully translated, is indeed *in itself* the *Word of God*, and infallible; but the Bible is not the Word of God, nor infallible, *with regard to us*, unless *rightly* interpreted, that is, interpreted with authority, certainty, and infallibility. For if the interpretation be wrong, the Bible ceases to be, with regard to the reader, the Word of God; and if the interpretation be unauthorized, doubtful, fallible, the Bible becomes, with regard to the reader, unbinding, doubtful, fallible.

In the gospel, however, we are commanded, under pain of condemnation, to believe; that is, to hold without a doubt as true what is taught as divinely revealed, therefore there must be somewhere the rightful interpreter, and the right interpretation.

Again, the gospels and the epistles contain severe censures on the sin of schism and heresy. It is clear that all schism and all heresy must be essentially in opposition to truth; we must therefore necessarily know with certainty what is true, before we can know what is opposed to the truth: but by private interpretation, an undoubted belief or infallible knowledge of revealed truth is impossible, therefore no schism or heresy could be condemned contrary to Scripture and to all antiquity.

The words of Christ to the Pharisees, "Search the Scriptures, for you think in them to have life everlasting; and the same are they that give testimony of me" (St. John v. 39), cannot be taken as the *sole* means of salvation recommended, much less recommended *to all*, as to those who cannot read, or who cannot possess a Bible; much less still as a necessary *means* of salvation.

Nor can it be taken as though Christ thereby recommended *private* in disregard of *authoritative interpretation* of Scripture; 1st, because that is not stated nor implied in that passage; 2d, because He Himself, in that very place, interprets authoritatively the Scriptures, by saying: "They testify of me;" 3d, because in fact the Pharisees showed that

their private interpretation wrongly led them to look upon Christ as a breaker of the Sabbath (St. John v. 18), and consequently to reject Him as the Saviour; 4th, because from what our Saviour then said, it cannot be gathered that the Pharisees thought that life was to be had from Scripture *privately* interpreted, to the exclusion of *authoritative* interpretation; thus a person may piously read and interpret Scripture *privately* for his own learning and edification, and yet *respect, accept, and prefer* authoritative interpretation to his own, at least in those cases in which it can be had.

Thus, Catholics do think to have life in Holy Scriptures, but do not thereby exclude authoritative interpretation, but on the contrary take it for their guide.

But let us, for argument's sake, suppose that the Pharisees went by private interpretation of Scripture. Even in this supposition it would not follow that Jesus Christ, by that saying, meant to approve their conduct; for also Catholics do often say to Protestants who go by private interpretation: "Search the Scriptures, for you will find that they bear testimony to the divinity of Jesus, to the institution of the seven sacraments, to the unfailing authority of the Catholic Church;" and no one ever dreamt to affirm that by so saying Catholics mean to approve the Protestant principle of private interpretation.

Again, if that passage and the other in praise of the Bereans (Acts xvii. 11) were to be taken in the Protestant sense to establish the principle of private interpretation, two consequences, quite inadmissible, would follow, namely: 1st, that if the Pharisees or the Bereans had found by their private interpretation that the Old Testament (which was the only part of the written Word they had then) did not bear testimony to Christ, or that it bore testimony against Him, as many did imagine, they would have been justified in disbelieving Jesus Christ; 2d, that not believing in Christ until moved by *private* interpretation of Scripture was better than simply believing in Christ on the word of Christ, or of His Church, without consulting the Scriptures, as the Apostles and thousands of Jewish and pagan converts did.

To avoid these two inadmissible consequences, it remains that the above cited and similar passages must be understood in the Catholic sense just mentioned.

To the Apostles our Lord gave the charge to "teach all nations," and the faithful were commanded to hear and believe them. (St. Mark xvi. 16.) This commission was accompanied by a promise that He would be with them in this office of teaching to the *end of time*. (St. Matt. xxviii. 19, 20.) From these expressions it is clear that their lawful successors were also included in the commission and promise given to the Apostles,

It follows then that the *authoritative* interpretation of Scripture made by the *lawful successors* of the Apostles is the true one, and truly the Word of God ; a contradictory interpretation must therefore of necessity be false, and is not the Word of God ; because a thing under the same aspect cannot *be true* and *untrue* at the same time, for truth in all things is *one*, and the contradiction of it is error.

Hence St. Peter condemns private interpretation of Scripture, saying : "No prophecy [or explanation] of Scripture is made by private interpretation." (2 St. Peter i. 20.)* Those who refuse to hear and to follow the legitimate interpretation, and the faith of the Church, often, instead of the Word of God, that is, what God really meant in Holy Scripture, have only their own inventions and errors, and these they mistake for the Word of God.

These persons consequently fall into a maze of perplexities, and often change their interpretation. They are, as St. Paul expresses it : "tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine." (Ephesians iv. 14.) St. Peter warns us of this danger, when, referring especially to St. Paul's epistles, he says : "In which are certain things hard to be understood, which the unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other Scriptures, to their own destruction." (2 St. Peter iii. 16.)

Hence it appears how rash and dangerous is the principle of private interpretation, which emboldens every individual to prefer his own private view of any passage of Scripture to the solemn interpretation and decision of the whole body of Catholic bishops of past and present time united to the see of Peter. Persons actuated by such pride cannot expect to be led by God unto truth.

Objectors say that to submit to the teaching of the Church is to give up our reason. But if it could not be called a surrender of reason for the early Christians to submit to the teaching of the Apostles, because it was a submission to the messengers of Christ, to the witnesses and authorized expounders of revelation as long as the Apostles lived, surely it cannot be considered a surrender of reason, but a high exercise of reason and a most reasonable act for other Christians to conform themselves to the teaching of the Catholic Church, that is, to the body of the Catholic bishops with the Roman pontiff at their head, who are the lawful messengers of God, the legitimate successors of the Apostles, the witnesses and authorized expounders of revelation ; for they, in an uninterrupted succession, keep up that apostolic office, which, according to Christ's declaration, and through the promised special assistance of the Holy Spirit, was to last to the end of time.

Not a few Protestants think themselves authorized by St. Paul to follow their private interpretation of Scripture by those words, "Prove all

* See footnote on this passage in Catholic (Douay) Bible.

things," which occur in the First Epistle to the Thessalonians, chap. v. 21. 1st, It is hard to have to include in the words "all things" the Holy Scripture, as there is no allusion to it in that chapter; and, if admitted, it would prove too much: namely, not only the sense of a certain text, but whether the text "prove all things" is itself to be admitted or not. 2d, It would be absurd to suppose, that that direction was authorizing *each* Thessalonian in particular to follow his own private interpretation of Scripture; for, in that case, the dissensions, instead of decreasing, would have been increased, and the whole congregation turned into a little Babel. It is plain that that direction was given to the whole congregation as a body with their pastors, to whom in that very letter the lay people were recommended to pay deference (verse 12), were the principal part of it. Surely if the whole congregation of a town agrees with their legitimate pastors about admitting or not admitting a certain doctrine, and they both follow the Tradition, that is, the doctrine of the Apostles kept alive among them, as recommended to them by St. Paul himself (2 Thess. ii. 15), they would be sure to go right; but that would not be by the Protestant but by the Catholic system of interpretation.

Objectors also say that every one has the assistance of the Holy Spirit to interpret the Bible rightly. But if this were so, people would agree and would not contradict each other in their interpretation of Scripture; for no passage of the inspired Word of God, in its right meaning, can really contradict another passage in matters of faith, of morals, and of fact.

But numerous Protestant denominations often differ one from another and often contradict each other in vital points, and each assumes to prove his particular doctrine from Holy Scripture. I say *vital*, for, on account of these very points, they have thought themselves in duty bound to separate from some other community. This plainly shows that they are not inspired by the Holy Spirit, who being the spirit of unity and truth, cannot *create discord, teach error, cannot suggest a false meaning, and cannot contradict Himself.*

This principle of private interpretation of Holy Scripture, during the three centuries since Luther's time, has given rise to *hundreds* of sects among Protestants, and this *in spite* of the efforts of several of the civil governments to prevent such subdivisions. Had this principle been adopted in the beginning of Christianity, and gone on working throughout the Christian world for eighteen centuries unrestrained by the civil power, the sects would probably by this time have enormously increased.*

* According to a return of the English registrar-general on the 1st October, 1882, the number of Protestant sects having places registered for the performance of religious worship in England and Wales exceeds 180, and in Ireland, where Protestants, as compared with Catholics, are few, there are nearly 150. In the United States of America Protestant denominations are also numerous. (See Part III. No. 17.) Cardinal Hosius enumerated 270 different sects of Protestants in the sixteenth century as then existing.

The Bible without an authorized, that is, divinely given, interpreter could not condemn any heresy, nor could any of the Christian sects adjudge any individual or any other sect as guilty of heresy, without abdicating its own principle of *private interpretation for all*. Even Tertullian, a father of the second century, could say : "Wherefore the Scriptures cannot be the test [speaking of controversy] nor can they decide the conflict ; since, with regard to them, the victory must remain in suspense." (Tertul. Book on Prescription, chapter xix.) In all centuries those persons who maintained and taught their own private interpretation *in opposition* to that of the Church, have been regarded by all the fathers, saints, and doctors of the Church as heretics, and were condemned as such by the Church.*

Catholics do well to read and study the Holy Scriptures for their greater instruction and edification, but always in a spirit of submission to the Catholic Church, so as never to *prefer* their own *private* view to the *known* interpretation and teaching of "the Church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth." (1 St. Timothy iii. 15.)

Before Luther's innovations the Catholic Church did not forbid the Scriptures in the vulgar tongue to the laity, except in France in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. It was the unheard-of system of private interpretation, brought in by the reformers in disparagement of that of the Church, and so, liable to abuse, that caused her to put, in general, some restrictions to private reading.

The approved Catholic versions of the Holy Scriptures in English or any other tongue, with notes, although not indiscriminately circulated, is not withheld from the faithful ; and the reverent reading of it is encouraged by the Church. It is well known that new and cheap editions of Holy Scripture are frequently issued, both in the United Kingdom and abroad, by Catholic booksellers with the approval of the bishops. To most editions is prefixed a letter of Pope Pius VI. in the year 1778, to the Most Rev. Antony Martini of Turin, archbishop of Florence, in which his Holiness praises him for opportunely "publishing the Sacred Writings in the language of his country suitable to every one's capacity," and encourages the pious reading and studying of Holy Scripture by the faithful.

The pious reading of Holy Scripture will not induce Catholics to become Protestants, but rather lead sincere, dispassionate Protestants to become Catholics, as has often been the case. Listen to what a distinguished convert says of himself on this subject :

* "They who solicitously seek for truth, ready to own their error as soon as the truth is discovered, are by no means to be numbered among heretics," says St. Augustine. (Epistle 43 to Donat.) This is also the opinion of all Catholic theologians. Such persons are *material*, not *formal*, heretics.

"The first remote cause of my conversion I have always considered to be the delight which I have taken from my youth up in the study of Holy Scripture.

"As a boy at school I read and re-read it, and learned much by heart ; and as a clergyman of the Church of England, I read aloud in church, for five years and more, four chapters nearly every day. And as I read, I became more and more convinced that the doctrines of the Catholic Church were also the doctrines of Scripture.

"This will surprise many, and many will not believe me ; for the lesson which every Protestant English child learns about Catholics is, that they dread the Scriptures because their religion is unscriptural.

"Never was lesson more false. I cannot find language strong enough in which to declare my conviction that the Catholic Church alone honors and loves the Scriptures with real honor and love ; and that the faith of the Catholic Church, and that alone, agrees in a wondrous harmony with every syllable of the Word of God." *

Chapter X.

Infallibility of the Church and of the Pope.

GOD has imparted truths to men, some of which they could not possibly have known by their unassisted reason, and some, only few men could discover by mere reasoning and know them with certainty. These truths imparted to men by God we call divine revelation ; and God requires that, in order to obtain salvation, men should believe these revealed truths on His divine authority.

Such revelation having been given, it follows that there must be some way in which these truths can be communicated to us in their purity, and in such a manner as to render us certain of possessing them.

To say that God has merely given to men forms of words which admit of different and contradictory interpretation, and has left no authority on earth to declare which is the one true interpretation intended, amounts to a denial of revelation altogether. A law which would admit of several inconsistent explanations would not have the nature of law if there were not a court of justice to declare the true sense. The same

* *St. Andrew's Magazine* (Barnet), April, 1879, page 65. By the Rev. Fr. George Bampfield, B.A., Oxon. (See "Difficulties of Private Interpretation," by the same, Part III. No. 16 of this book.)

might be said of a revelation capable of several discordant interpretations.

The Holy Scriptures do in themselves admit of conflicting interpretations on a great number of questions. There are many subjects on which texts may be produced with a meaning apparently opposed to other texts ; and in these cases, it is clear that one or more of the texts must be taken in a sense consistent with the statement of other parts of Scripture.

If there is an authority to declare the right sense of these passages, then all is simple enough ; but without such an authority, it cannot be denied that in the case supposed, Holy Scripture admits of contradictory interpretations, and consequently on such questions it would cease to be a revelation. There must, therefore, be some living authority on earth commissioned by God to decide the meaning of the revelation which God has given us.

Such an authority *must* be infallible. Its infallibility is contained in its very commission. We cannot conceive that God has appointed some one to teach us His revelation, and *commanded us to listen to it and believe it*, and yet that He would at the same time allow this guide to teach it incorrectly, and to lead us astray. God, who is the very truth, *could not command us to believe false teaching*. Without such infallibility there would be no certainty of faith. On any point "heresy" might be conceivably right and the Church wrong.

Cardinal Newman, when yet a Protestant, in one of his Oxford Tracts had the following: "It would be foolish to say that the Church has authority to declare dogmatical points, and yet that she can err. How can the Church have authority if she is not certainly true in her declarations? Should we say that she has authority to tell a lie? Dogmatical matters are not like things of earthly interest grounded on material expediency which is to be determined by discretion. Dogmatical matters appeal to conscience, and conscience is only subject to truth in matters of belief. To say that the Church has authority, and yet that she may err in her declarations, would be to destroy authority of conscience which every one should hold sacred ; it would be to substitute something else besides truth as sovereign lord of conscience, which would be tyranny. If the Church has authority in dogmatical matters she must be the organ and representative of truth ; her teaching must be identified with truth ; in one word, the Church must be infallible."

Catholics believe that in the bosom of the Roman Catholic Church there exists such an infallible authority, and that it rests on the whole body of the episcopate united with the Roman pontiff. They also believe that this unfailing protection from teaching error is assured by

God in a special manner to the Roman pontiff himself when he speaks *ex cathedrâ*, as visible head of the Church and legitimate successor of St. Peter.

INFALLIBILITY OF THE CHURCH.

That this infallibility belongs to the whole body of bishops united to the Roman pontiff is plain from those texts which prove the infallible teaching of the Apostles united to St. Peter, their chief, and which apply also to their successors.

The teaching Church is called by St. Paul "the pillar and ground of the truth." (1 St. Timothy iii. 15.) Our Lord promises that "the gates of hell shall not prevail" against His Church (St. Matt. xvi. 18); that He will always be with His Church (St. Matt. xxviii. 20); that the Holy Spirit shall abide with her for ever for the express purpose of guiding her into all truth: "I will ask the Father and He shall give you another Paraclete, that He may abide with you for ever." (St. John xiv. 16.)

Our Lord Jesus Christ put the Apostles *in His place* in His divine mission upon earth, and in the office of teaching. "As my Father hath sent me, I also send you." (St. John xx. 21.) "He that heareth you heareth me, and he that despiseth you, despiseth me." (St. Luke x. 16.) And immediately after giving to His Apostles the commission to preach the gospel to every creature, He added: "He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be condemned." (St. Mark xvi. 16.) All these texts, which demand from the faithful their full acceptance of what the Church teaches, show that it is impossible that the true Church can teach what is false in matters of faith and of morals.

This infallibility does not depend upon the learning which exists in the whole body of the episcopate united to the Pope when discussing and deciding points of faith or of morals, but on the promised aid of the Holy Ghost who enlightens their minds and guides their counsels. Thus the decision of the first council at Jerusalem was communicated to the faithful in the following apostolic declaration: "It hath seemed good to the Holy Ghost, and to us, to lay no further burden upon you than these necessary things." (Acts xv. 28.)

By this divine assistance the bishops in union with the Bishop of Rome do not become the medium of a new revelation, but are divinely assisted and enlightened, according to the unfailing promise of God, to understand clearly what has been revealed, and to declare rightly the true meaning of that revelation.

From this doctrine it does not follow that the Church arrogates to herself to be more than the Scriptures, as she has been accused of doing,

but that she claims a higher authority than those private persons who take upon themselves to expound the Scriptures.

INFALLIBILITY OF THE POPE.

Besides this infallibility possessed by the Church, that is, by the body of the bishops together with the Pope, Catholics believe that the Pope also alone, as chief pastor and visible head of the Church, is divinely protected from teaching error; but only when he teaches *ex cathedrâ*, that is, when, not as a private teacher, but as exercising his office of supreme pastor and teacher of the whole Church, he defines any doctrine of faith or of morals as true, or condemns any doctrine of faith or of morals as false.

The infallibility of St. Peter and his successors is plainly seen from the following texts of Holy Scripture. First from St. Luke (xxii. 32), where we read that our Saviour addressed St. Peter in presence of the other Apostles thus: "Simon, Simon, behold Satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat. But I have prayed for thee that thy faith fail not: and thou being once converted, confirm thy brethren."

Here Jesus Christ provides against the danger to which His Apostles and their successors would always have been exposed of falling from the faith through the frailty and evil passions of men, and through the instigation and fraud of the devil. And in what way does He provide? By praying in a special manner for *one* of them *that his faith should not fail*, and by commanding him *to confirm his brethren*; thus giving all the other Apostles to understand that they all were bound to adhere to that one, and follow his directions, and that thus they would possess the privilege of being themselves infallible guides.

St. Peter is the one for whom Christ specially prayed, and in the person of Peter his successors are of necessity included; for Jesus Christ was providing for the good of His Church, which was to last not for the lifetime of St. Peter only, but to the end of time, against the attacks of the enemy, which would be unceasing.

Were it possible that the Pope *in his capacity of supreme pastor of the Church, speaking ex cathedrâ*, could teach error, it might be argued: 1st, That the prayer of our Lord for St. Peter was not granted; 2d, That the special provision which Jesus Christ made for securing His Church from error, instead of preserving it from erring in faith or in morals, would, at least in certain cases, only serve to draw the whole Church into error, and be an advantage for Satan, not a means of defence to the Church against him.

Another proof is gathered from the words addressed to Simon by our blessed Lord after having changed Simon's name into that of Peter

(*Kephas*, Rock): "Thou art Peter; and upon this rock I will build my Church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it." (St. Matt. xvi. 18.)

As the Church of Christ was to last beyond the lifetime of St. Peter, even to the end of the world, and as the Church is not a lifeless, material building, but a living body of men requiring a living head to rule them and to be like a foundation of that great society, this promise of Christ, of making Peter a rock, was meant not only for Peter but also for his successors. There must be proportion between the building and its foundation. The building, namely, the visible Church, being a living successive body of men, the *foundation* also, that is, the visible ruling power which sustains the whole superstructure, must be successive. Therefore the successors of St. Peter, as the supreme visible rulers of the Church, are each, like St. Peter, the rock or the visible foundation of it.

If *rocks*, they must stand immovable as teachers of truth; if *foundations* of the Church of Christ, against which "the gates of hell shall not prevail," it follows that much less can the gates of hell prevail against the *foundation* itself; for the house receives solidity from the foundation, not the foundation from the house.

If the foundation could be overturned, the house or church built upon it also could. But the gates of hell (or the powers of evil) cannot prevail against the Church, therefore they cannot prevail against the foundation, which is the support of the Church, and which was made by our Saviour solid as a rock for the very purpose of rendering the Church indestructible. If some one were to maintain that the Church, and not the Pope, is infallible, there would follow the strange anomaly that the Pope has to be rendered safe by the Church in what he teaches, that is to say, that it is not the rock that imparts solidity to the building, but the building that imparts solidity to the rock upon which it rests; and that the sheep and lambs have to guide the shepherd, and not to be guided by him into safe pastures.

The official personal infallibility of the Pope is therefore by this text fully established; and the fathers understood it in this sense. Among these, Origen, in his commentary on this text, says: "It is manifest, though it is not expressed, that the gates of hell will not be able to prevail either against the Church, or against Peter, because if they should prevail against the rock upon which the Church is based, they would also prevail against the Church,"

A third argument is drawn from those words of Jesus Christ addressed to St. Peter, "Feed my lambs . . . feed my lambs . . . feed my sheep." (St. John xxi. 15-17.)

Under the name of lambs who follow the mother-sheep and are fed

by them, the fathers of the Church have understood the lay Christian people ; and under the name of sheep which feed the lambs that follow them, and whose mothers they are, they understood the bishops and other pastors (or shepherds) of the Church. The fathers had no doubt that under that very significant and touching similitude, Jesus Christ meant to commit to St. Peter, and in his person to those who should inherit Peter's office, the care of His own flock, both the faithful lay people and pastors, the lambs and sheep, the two parts alone of which the flock of Christ, the whole visible Church on earth, is composed.

From this divine charge to St. Peter, there arises the corresponding duty on the part of all other bishops and of all the faithful throughout the world to submit themselves to the guidance of the sovereign pontiff, the successor of St. Peter, and allow themselves to be fed by him with the spiritual food of his wholesome teaching.

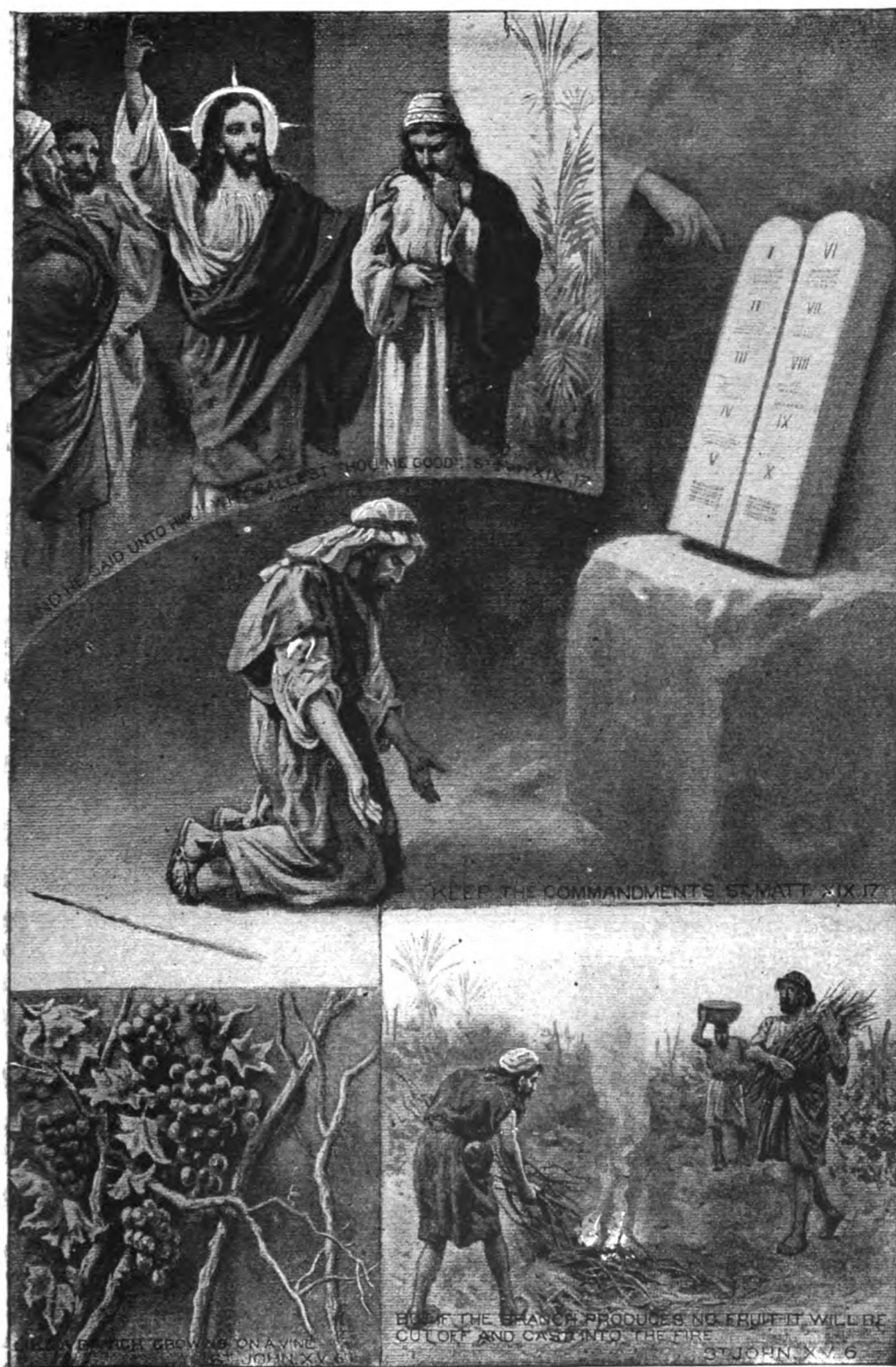
Hence it follows that the sovereign pontiff must be divinely protected from teaching what is wrong ; that is, he must, in teaching, be *infallible*; for, if he were not protected by God from error when he teaches the whole Church in his capacity of supreme pastor, the Church would be liable to be led into error, contrary to the promise of Jesus Christ.

That this was the belief of the early Church, the fathers of the first five centuries are splendid witnesses. I shall quote three of them. 1st, *St. Irenæus*, bishop of Lyons, who was a father of the second century, renowned for his learning and sanctity, and for the purity of his faith, which he sealed with his blood, and who lived some years with the bishop of Smyrna, *St. Polycarp*, disciple of *St. John the Evangelist*.

We can hardly have a better witness of the sentiments and teaching of the Catholic Church, east and west, during the first two centuries than this great martyr and father of the Church, *St. Irenæus*.

Now, in his book against heresies, amongst other things, *St. Irenæus* lays down this general principle, that to convince heretics of their errors one might indeed consult the doctrine of his particular Church, founded by some one of the Apostles, and preserved by their lawful successors, but that this long process was not necessary ; for there was a sufficient, safe, and shorter way, by looking to what was taught by the Roman Church, as all the other churches were bound to be united in faith with that Church on account of her *greater principality* (in the Latin version extant, "*ad hanc Ecclesiam propter potiore principalityatem necesse est omnem convenire Ecclesiam*"), and that therefore to convince heretics of their errors it was enough to show that the Roman Church never taught their heretical doctrines. (Against Heresies, book iii., chap. iii.)

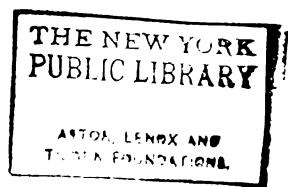
St. Irenæus attributes to the Church of Rome the *superior headship* and declares the duty of all other churches to agree with her faith, because of her



JUSTIFICATION BY FAITH.

Vol. I.—84.

Digitized by Google



having been founded by the two glorious Apostles, St. Peter and St. Paul, whose faith as preached by them was handed down by an uninterrupted line of bishops who succeeded St. Peter in the see of Rome. These Bishops of Rome, all martyrs, to the number of twelve up to his time, he enumerates, namely, Linus—Anaclétus—Clement—Avaristus—Alexander I.—Sixtus I.—Telésphorus—Hygínus—Pius I.—Anicétus—Soter—and lastly, Eleutherius, under whose pontificate he was living.

This duty of all churches to be united to the Church of Rome as branches to the trunk, and to conform their faith to the teaching of the Church of Rome, that is, of her Bishop, would be inconceivable unless we admit that it was from the first the universal conviction that the Bishop of Rome was endowed by Christ with *infallibility*.

To this universal sentiment of the Church the great doctor of the fourth century, *St. Jerome*, is also a noble witness. Being disturbed with the disputes among three parties which divided the Church of Antioch, of which Church or diocese he was then a subject, he writes for directions to Rome to Pope St. Dámasus I., thus: "I who am but a sheep do apply to my Shepherd for succor. I am united in communion with your Holiness, that is to say, with the chair of Peter; I know that the Church is built upon that *rock*. He who eats the paschal lamb out of the house, is profane. Whoever is not in the ark of Noë will perish by the deluge. I know nothing of Vitális; I reject Meletius; I am ignorant of Paulínus: *he who gathers not with thee scatters.*" (Letter to Pope St. Damasus.)

The great African doctor of the Church, *St. Augustine*, bishop of Hippo (near the site of ancient Carthage), who lived in the fourth and in the beginning of the fifth century, must also have been impressed with the same principle and conviction; for commenting on the condemnation of Pelagianism he says: "Already the decisions of two councils have been submitted to the apostolic see, and from thence rescripts [or apostolic letters of reply] have come to us. *The cause is finished.*" This sentence of St. Augustine has been condensed into that famous maxim which has for ages expressed in a few words the Catholic faith on this point: "*Roma locuta est, causa finita est*" (Rome has spoken, the case is ended).

The infallibility of the Pope was defined by the Vatican Council in the Fourth Session, chapter iv., on the 18th of July in the year of our Lord 1870, in these words: "*Itaque Nos traditioni a fidei Christianæ exordio perceptæ fideliter inhærendo, ad Dei Salvatoris nostri gloriam, religionis Catholicæ exaltationem et Christianorum populorum salutem, sacro approbante Concilio, docemus et divinitus revelatum dogma esse definimus: Romanum Pontificem, cum ex Cathedrâ loquitur, id est, cum omnium Christianorum Pastoris et Doctoris munere fungens, pro suprema sua Apostolica auctoritate doctrinam de fide vel moribus ab universa Ecclesia tenendam de-*

finis, per assistentiam divinam, ipsi in beato Petro promissam, ea infallibilitate pollere, qua divinus Redemptor Ecclesiam suam in definienda doctrina de fide vel moribus instructam esse voluit; ideoque ejusmodi Romani Pontificis definitiones ex sese, non autem ex consensu Ecclesiæ irreformabiles esse."

The following is a translation of this definition:—

"Wherefore, faithfully adhering to the tradition received from the beginning of the Christian faith, for the glory of God our Saviour, the exaltation of the Catholic religion, and the salvation of the Christian people, we, the sacred council, approving, teach and define that it is a dogma divinely revealed: that the Roman pontiff, when he speaks *ex cathedrâ*—that is, when discharging the office of pastor and teacher of all Christians, by reason of his supreme apostolic authority, he defines a doctrine regarding faith or morals to be held by the whole Church—he, by the divine assistance promised to him in blessed Peter, possesses that infallibility with which the divine Redeemer willed that His Church should be endowed in defining doctrine regarding faith or morals: and that therefore such definitions of the said Roman pontiff are of themselves unalterable and not from the consent of the Church."

Consequently, Catholics believe that the Pope is infallible when he teaches the faithful *ex cathedrâ*, that is, "from the chair" of St. Peter, in matters of *faith* or of *morals*.

The word *infallibility*, as applied to the Pope, does not mean that everything that the Pope does is the wisest and most judicious course that could be taken; it does not mean that what he says as a preacher or a writer is necessarily free from error; it does not even mean that in his office of supreme ecclesiastical judge he may not be mistaken, but it means that when he teaches the faithful as the visible head of the Church, in the manner described in the definitions just quoted, he in such cases is protected by the special promise and providence of God, who is Himself the only source of infallibility, from wrongly interpreting the Word of God, and from teaching error.

By teaching *ex cathedrâ* is meant, when the Pope is speaking, not as a private theologian, or in some other limited character, but defining solemnly a doctrine in his capacity of successor of St. Peter and pastor of the universal Church.

The addition of the words, "a doctrine regarding faith or morals," signifies that the Pope, in virtue of this definition, is believed to be infallible only when he teaches a doctrine concerning *faith* or *morals*, that is to say, in matters relating to revealed truth, or to principles of moral conduct in life.

These limitations show that Catholics are not, according to the definition, bound to believe that the Pope cannot err in matters other than

faith or morals, or even in matters of faith or of morals, when he is speaking as a private individual, and not in his official capacity *ex cathedrâ*.

It is important here to remark that *infallibility*, as applied by Catholics to the Pope, differs from *impeccability*: for *infallible*, speaking of men, means preserved by God in certain cases from erring; and *impeccable* means either unable to sin, as God is, or preserved by God from sinning.

The Pope is not *impeccable*; on the contrary, any Pope may fall into sin; but nevertheless every Pope is *infallible* in expounding Holy Scripture, in defining, that is, declaring, in precise words revealed truth, and teaching points of faith or of morals, *when he does all this ex cathedrâ*.

In a somewhat like manner in civil matters a judge may be blamable in his private life, and yet eminent and faultless in his official duty of deciding points of civil law.

Protestants are apt to make this objection, How can a *sinful man* be infallible? They should not, however, be astonished that the successor of St. Peter, though *liable to commit sin*, should, by virtue of the all-powerful prayer and unfailing promise of *Jesus Christ*, be *preserved* under certain conditions by the Holy Ghost from expounding falsely the Word of God, when they see in Holy Writ that *sinful men*, as were Balaam, Solomon, and Jonas, have been made to speak infallibly, or to put the Word of God into writing *free from all error*. Caiaphas was unjust; and yet he was inspired by God to utter infallibly this prophecy: "It is expedient for you that one man should die for the people" (St. John xi. 50), upon which the Evangelist, in the same place, makes this remark: "And this he spoke not of himself: but being the High Priest of that year, he prophesied that Jesus should die for the nation."

Again, many of the Scribes and Pharisees were of sinful life, and yet our Lord, referring to them, says: "The Scribes and the Pharisees have sat on the chair of Moses. All things therefore whatsoever they shall say to you, observe and do; but according to their works do ye not; for they say and do not." (St. Matt. xxiii. 2, 3.) And St. Peter himself, though guilty at one time of sin, is acknowledged by Christians to have been infallible in teaching the Church, both by word and by writing.

It seems hardly consistent that Protestants should find fault with Catholics for believing that the Pope has the special assistance of the Holy Spirit, since many of them go so far as to assume that assistance for every private individual. Again, those Protestants who hold that they are assisted by the Holy Spirit in the interpretation of Scripture, by a strange inconsistency, do not consider themselves to be infallible; for they admit that they are liable to err, liable to contradict themselves, and liable to contradict each other; whereas Catholics, consistent with

their principles, hold that the Pope, for the very reason that he is *assisted by the Holy Ghost*, when he teaches the whole Church, or any part, or even any member of it, *ex cathedrâ*, in points of faith or of morals, cannot, within such defined limits, err in the interpretation of the Word of God, and cannot either contradict himself, or contradict the teaching *ex cathedrâ* of another Pope, or the dogmatical definition of a rightly constituted general council.

How is it, then, some may ask, that this Catholic dogma of the *Pope's infallibility* is so often clamored against as impious and absurd? The honest inquirer will, I think, cease to be astonished at this if he will only observe that declaimers against the Pope's infallibility are not always careful accurately to state the terms and limitations of the solemn definition as just quoted, and that they then cry out against a phantom of their own imagining; thus condemning Catholics for a doctrine which they do not hold.

Chapter XI.

Justification. How Christ's Redemption is Applied to Men.

JUSTIFICATION is a divine act which conveys sanctifying grace, and by that grace communicates a supernatural life to the soul, which by sin, whether original or actual, had incurred spiritual death; that is to say, justification is a change in the human soul or *translation* from the state of sin into the state of grace.

It is a gift of Almighty God, a ray, as it were, coming direct from the divine goodness and filling the soul, which makes those who receive it pleasing to God and justified in His sight.

The grace of justification produces a change affecting the soul of the regenerate by its presence, elevating and perfecting it. By this grace the likeness to God is brought out in them, and they are raised to a state of friendship with Him, and of divine sonship.

The Catholic Church teaches that the grace of justification not merely *covers sin*, but *blots it out*; that is, blots out the guilt and stain arising from sin, and remits the *everlasting* punishment due to it.

Justifying is not dressing splendidly a dead man's body, it is vivifying it. It is not covering a leprosy with a beautiful shining dress, it is curing it thoroughly. It is not gilding a piece of coal, leaving it inwardly black, but it is transforming it into a brilliant diamond.

What unspeakable regrets it would leave in the justified man if he had

ever to see his soul, indeed magnificently arrayed, still in itself stained with sin, deformed, corrupt, black, and horrible as before.

Merely covering sin is a human way of forgiving, which consists in passing over the crime of a sinner, and in treating him outwardly as if he had not committed it, and as if no stain were in the soul in consequence of it, though the guilt and the stain are still there.

God's way of pardoning a sinner is very different, and wholly divine. It is a way worthy of His infinite goodness, sanctity, omnipotence, and worthy, too, of the immense efficacy of Christ's blood, and of His superabundant redemption, and of His infinite merits.

God's way of pardoning is to cleanse away entirely the guilt and stain of sin, so that instead of it, God sees in the pardoned sinner the "charity of God poured forth in our hearts by the Holy Ghost" (Rom. v. 5), which, like a fire, has destroyed all the dross of sin, and rendered man pure, upright, and holy.

Hence the justification of a sinner is represented in Scripture as the putting on of the *new man* who is "created in justice, and holiness of truth" (Ephesians iv. 24); the "renovation of the Holy Ghost." (Titus iii. 5.)

In the case of grown-up persons, some dispositions are required on the part of the sinner in order to be fit to obtain this habitual and abiding grace of justification. A man can only dispose himself by the help of divine grace, and the dispositions which he shows do not by any means *effect* or *merit* justification, but only serve to prepare him for it; and for that reason are simply called dispositions or preparations. This is the teaching of the Council of Trent, which declares: "We are said to be justified gratuitously, because none of the things which precede justification, whether it be faith or good works, can *merit* this blessing for us." (Session VI. chapter viii.) The same holy council declares that sins are remitted *gratuitously* by the mercy of God through the merits of Jesus Christ. (Sess. VI. chapter vii.)

The principal dispositions required for justification are the following acts, which can only be made by the assistance of God's actual grace, namely, an act of *faith* or belief in revealed truths, of *fear of God*, of *hope*, and of *charity*; an act of *repentance* for past sins, with a *purpose* to avoid sin in future, and to keep the commandments; a desire of receiving *baptism* for those who have not yet been baptized, and for those who have fallen into sin after baptism, a *resolution* to approach the sacrament of penance. (Council of Trent, Sess. VI. chap. vi.)

Justification may be lost by wilfully violating a commandment of God, either by doing what is forbidden, or by not doing what is commanded. Justification is a talent or gift which should be made to bear fruit, or we shall be punished for the neglect.

By justification we are raised to the dignity of sons of God, heirs of His kingdom ; and this entails upon us the duty of acting in a way becoming to so high a dignity. "If thou wilt enter into life, keep the commandments," said our Lord. (St. Matt. xix. 17.) By justification we are incorporated with Christ, like a branch growing on a vine ; but if the branch produces no fruit it will be cut off and cast into the fire. (St. John xv. 6.) Hence, the grace of justification is compared by our Saviour, not to a pond, but to a fountain, whose waters reach unto heaven : "But the water that I will give him shall become in him a fountain of water springing up into life everlasting." (St. John iv. 14.)

ACTUAL GRACE.

After we are justified we still stand in need, in order to perform any meritorious good work, of another grace called *actual*. Justifying grace, of which we spoke in the preceding chapter, called also *habitual grace*, is something in itself lasting ; actual grace is something that passes, and extends only to individual acts for the time it is needed. *Actual grace* is a passing, supernatural, divine help, enlightening our understanding, and moving our will, and enabling us to perform any single good action ; for instance, to accept any supernatural revealed truth, or to perform any good work, considered *good in the supernatural order*.

Grace does not force man's free will, but respects it, and leaves man free to act with it or not. Grace, therefore, does not destroy our free-will, but only helps it, and our own working with grace is required. "God who has created thee without thee, will not save thee without thee" ("*Qui creavit te sine te non salvabit te sine te*"), says St. Augustine : and in Holy Scripture it is repeatedly stated that God will render to every one according to his works. A renovation which renders a soul renewed, pure, bright, amiable and endearing to God.

We stand in continual need of actual grace to perform good acts, both before and after being justified. "Without me you can do nothing," says our Saviour, and St. Paul declares that without God's grace we are incapable of even a good thought. The good acts, however, done by the help of grace without justification are not, *strictly* speaking, meritorious, but serve to smooth the way to justification, to move God, though merely through His mercy and condescension, to help us and render us better disposed for the same. But if, with the assistance of actual grace, good works are done by a person who is in a state of justifying grace, then they are acceptable to God, and merit an increase of grace on earth and an increase of glory in Heaven.

Hence St. Paul says : "God is not unjust that He should forget your work, and the love which you have shown in His name." (Hebrews vi. 10.)

And writing to Timothy, he declares that "a crown of justice" was laid up for him; and not only for him, "but to them also that love His [Christ's] coming." (2 Timothy iv. 8.) And in his Second Epistle to the Corinthians, he says, "for that which is at present momentary and light of our tribulation, worketh for us above measure exceedingly an eternal weight of glory." (iv. 17.)

All our merits, however, without any exception, are grounded on the merits of *Jesus Christ*, and on His grace, without which no one can move a step towards heaven.

The merit of a good action performed in a state of grace, as being in consequence of justification, and in union with our Lord, is truly our own merit, because that good action is really performed by us, by our co-operation with God's grace; but it is also, and principally, a merit of our Lord, as a grape is the fruit of the branch, and yet also and principally the fruit of the parent vine without which, or if not connected with which, the branch could not produce any fruit, or indeed have become a branch at all. Our merit, therefore, does not take away from Christ's merits, for *without Him we can do nothing*. We merit through Christ, Christ makes us merit; or still more properly, Christ merits in us, and therefore all the glory is His. "God forbid," says the Council of Trent, "that a Christian should confide or glory in himself and not in the Lord, whose goodness towards men is so great that He regards as their merits the very gifts which He Himself bestows upon them." (Session VI. chap. xviii.) And St. Augustine had said long before, "God crowns His own grace when He crowns our merits."

JESUS CHRIST died for all mankind; He truly died that "He might taste death for all." (Hebrews ii. 9.) Yet we know that all men will not be saved, but only those who do His will; for we read in St. Paul: "And being consummated, He became to all that obey Him the cause of eternal salvation." (Hebrews v. 9.) And so, notwithstanding Christ's redemption, it is stated in the gospel that some "shall go into everlasting punishment." (St. Matt. xxv. 46.) St. Paul did not say that God will save all men, but, "Who will have all men to be saved" (1 Timothy ii. 4), implying thereby that for salvation, man's will and co-operation is required to fulfil the conditions, and use the means appointed by God Himself for the purpose.

Only those who "have washed their robes and have made them white in the blood of the Lamb" (Apocalypse [Rev.] vii. 14), that is, who have the merits of Christ applied to them, and who persevere to the end in doing what is commanded, will be saved.

The direct means instituted by Christ Himself for applying His infinite merits to the souls of men are the holy sacraments, which are so

many channels instituted by Jesus Christ to convey to men His grace purchased for us at the price of His most precious blood: "You shall draw waters with joy out of the Saviour's fountains." (Isaias xii. 3.)

Chapter XII.

The Holy Sacraments. Holy Baptism.

IN the words of our Catechism, "A sacrament is an outward sign of inward grace, ordained by Jesus Christ, by which grace is given to our souls."

More fully, a sacrament may be said to be an outward sign of a corresponding invisible grace, ordained by Jesus Christ as a permanent means in the Church, which, by virtue of Christ's infinite merits, has power to convey to the worthy receiver the grace which it signifies.

The object of the sacraments is to apply the fruit of our Saviour's redemption to men, by conveying, through their means, to our souls either the "habitual grace" of justification, or an increase of the same, and a pouring in of other graces, or the recovery of justification when lost.

The Catholic Church teaches that there are truly and properly seven, and only seven, sacraments of the New Law, instituted by Jesus Christ our Lord, and necessary for the salvation of mankind, though not all of them necessary for every person, as, for instance, Holy Orders and Matrimony.

These seven sacraments are :

1st, *Baptism*, by which we are made Christians, children of God, and members of His holy Church.

2d, *Confirmation*, by which we receive the Holy Ghost, to make us strong and perfect Christians and soldiers of Jesus Christ.

3d, *Holy Eucharist*, which is the true body and blood, with the soul and the divinity, of Jesus Christ, under the appearances of bread and of wine.

4th, *Penance*, by which the sins that we commit after baptism are forgiven.

5th, *Extreme Unction*, which, in serious or dangerous illness, comforts the soul, remits sin, and restores health of body, if God sees it to be expedient.

5th, *Holy Orders*, by which bishops, priests, and other ministers of the Church are ordained.

7th, *Matrimony*, the sacrament which sanctifies the union by marriage of man and woman.

Each of these has the three conditions necessary for a sacrament understood in the strict sense of the word, namely, *the outward sign, the inward grace, and the institution by Jesus Christ*, who alone has the power to institute sacraments, that is, outward signs as means of grace.

WE have seen, in speaking of original sin, how the loss of original justice or grace produces on the soul of man a stain which we call original sin, and which forms the misery of man's fallen state.

It was therefore the part of our Saviour not only to purchase our redemption by His death on Calvary, but to apply to each man the saving fruit of His redemption by bestowing upon man a gift that would make up for this dire calamity.

Jesus Christ applies His most precious blood freely, and not for any merit or work in the receiver, by bestowing upon him in baptism justifying grace, pardon of original sin, and in the case of a grown-up person, of actual sins, if he be guilty of any, and be sorry for them. The stains of these sins are washed away in holy baptism and he becomes a friend and child of God and heir to the kingdom of heaven. Hence baptism is defined a sacrament of the New Law instituted by Jesus Christ for the spiritual regeneration of man.

Baptism is a sacrament absolutely necessary for all, without which no one can enter into the kingdom of God, for Jesus Christ has said : " Amen, amen, I say to thee, unless a man be born again of water and the Holy Ghost, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God." (St. John iii. 5.)

Hence it was not enough for Saul of Tarsus, converted on the road to Damascus (Acts ix. 18), to believe ; nor for the chamberlain of Queen Candace, met on the road by Philip the deacon (Acts viii. 38) ; they had to be baptized in order to obtain remission of their sins, and thus be in the way of salvation ; therefore in the Nicene creed we say : " I acknowledge one baptism for the remission of sins."

So all-important is this sanctifying grace given in holy baptism, that God affords to man everywhere the utmost readiness in obtaining it. Water is at hand almost always : and in case of *necessity*, a layman, a woman or even a child having the intention to baptize, can administer baptism, by pouring common water on the head of a child or grown-up person, and saying at the same time in any language : " I baptize thee in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost."

Martyrdom supplies the place of ordinary baptism of water, and is called " baptism of blood." God grants also this justifying grace to every one who, believing the necessary Christian truths, sincerely desires baptism, and does his best to procure it, but who dies before he can receive it. This is called " baptism of desire."

Baptism, as also confirmation and holy orders, can be received only

once, because each of these sacraments impresses a *character* or *mark* on the soul which will remain for ever.

In order that grown-up persons having the use of reason may receive this sacrament worthily and profitably, they must believe and profess their belief in the necessary Articles of the Christian Faith—they must have trust in the mercy and merits of Christ, and be sorry for their sins ; being assisted in so doing by actual grace, which grace God grants to every one, and without which no one can move a single step towards heaven.

In baptism all infants, without any disposition on their part being required, are cleansed from the stain of original sin, taken into God's favor, made members of Christ's mystical body, and heirs of the kingdom of heaven. They are thus regenerated, that is, in our Saviour's own words, "born again of water and the Holy Ghost." (St. John iii. 5.) As they have contracted the stain of original sin without their knowledge and personal co-operation, so they are freed from sin without their knowledge ; and the dispositions necessary for grown-up persons are not required from them ; for infants are incapable of any reasoning act. As infants are made heirs to earthly property before they are capable of consenting to receive it, so also in holy baptism infants are made heirs of heaven before they are capable of consenting to be baptized ; their consent in both cases is justly presumed.

But, though baptism suffices to save a child in the state of infancy, yet as soon as it comes to the use of reason, the baptism which it received will not by itself suffice for its salvation ; he must, besides, believe, and profess to believe, the principal Articles of Faith, must hope in God, and must love Him with his whole heart ; that is to say, he must make what are called acts of faith, of hope, and of charity ; and for any sins he may have committed since baptism, an act of contrition. (For these acts, see Part II. of this book, No. 13.) Without all this, baptism will not suffice to him.

Chapter XIII.

On Sin. (Nature and Consequences of Sin.)

SIN is of two kinds, namely, Original and Actual. *Original* sin is that sin which we contract in our origin or conception, and which we inherit from our first parents Adam and Eve. (See Chap. iv.)

Actual or *Personal* sin is every sin which we ourselves commit.

Having already in the fourth chapter treated of original sin, I will here speak only of actual sin.

Actual sin is any wilful thought, word, or deed, or voluntary omission which violates the law of God, and is therefore an offence against God.

Actual or personal sin is of two kinds, either mortal or venial. St. John (1st Epistle v. 16) speaks of "a sin which is not to death;" this is what we call *venial*; and "a sin unto death:" this is that which we call *mortal*.

Mortal and venial sins differ fundamentally from each other in their effect on the soul; mortal brings immediate spiritual death or separation from God, venial inflicts wounds more or less severe, but not immediately fatal: it is cooling, not dissolving, the friendship of God. When our Lord compares one sin to a mote of dust settling in the eye, and another to a great beam of wood, He indicates this enormous difference.

Mortal sin is a thorough violation or breaking of a commandment of God with full knowledge and deliberation. It is a turning away from God, who should be the supreme object of our love, and a turning to a created object instead. *It is a grievous offence against God* by which we lose His friendship and His grace, which loss is the death of the soul.* On this account it is called *mortal*—that is, *deadly* sin.

Venial sin is either a slight infringement of the law, or it may be in some cases a great violation of the law, but rendered slight in the person who commits it, through his want of sufficient knowledge, deliberation, or freedom.

Venial sin is not a complete breaking of a commandment, but a tendency toward breaking it. It is not a downright turning of one's back against God, but a turning aside or slackening of our tendency to Him as the supreme object of our desires or last end. It is not abandoning God for a creature, but it is, in some degree, dallying with created objects, whilst still adhering to God. It is a sin which, though heinous in itself, does not so grievously offend God as mortal sin does.

Venial sin, although an offence against God, does not cause the forfeiture of God's friendship, nor the loss of justifying grace, as mortal sin does, but it diminishes God's love toward us, and checks the flow of His choicest gifts and actual graces. In short, it does not inflict, like mortal sin, death on the soul, but a wound, which, in those who are well disposed, is easily healed; it causes a stain and a guilt in the soul, of which we can *easily obtain pardon*; and therefore it is in that sense called *venial*, from the Latin *venia*, pardon.

* *Anima amissa mors est corporis,
Deus amissus mors est animae.*

The soul lost is the death of the body,
God lost is the death of the soul.

—(St. Augustine, Sermon. 28.)

From this simple statement of the difference between mortal and venial sin, it follows that we ought to be careful to avoid venial sin, because it is always an offence against God, but we ought to be much more careful to avoid with horror mortal sin, which *offends God grievously, causes death to the soul, and deserves everlasting punishment.*

Mortal sin is beyond comparison more dreadful than venial sin. No number, indeed, of venial sins can reach the malice and guilt of a mortal sin. All bodily evils in the world are as nothing compared with the evil of mortal sin. Mortal sin is the greatest of evils. It is in itself so hideous and detestable, that even were there no hell to punish it, it ought to be shunned on account of its own innate foulness.

To give a clearer idea of this, I will touch upon some points which show the grievous malice of mortal sin, and the sad effects of it upon the soul.

The grievousness of an offence is increased by the dignity of the person offended, and by the claims which that person has upon our love and service.

Applying this principle, it follows that mortal sin, which is a grievous offence against God, who is infinitely exalted above the highest of His creatures, and whose claim to our love infinitely surpasses all other claims, is an offence incomparably greater than an offence against any creature, and implies an infinite malice.

Sin, moreover, is most opposed to God.

God is goodness itself.	Sin is absence of all good.
“ essential order.	“ thorough disorder.
“ the supreme good.	“ utter evil and corruption.
“ essential beauty.	“ monstrous deformity.
“ diffusive love.	“ narrow, mean, selfishness.
“ essential wisdom.	“ blind madness.
“ justice and holiness.	“ injustice and wickedness.
“ everlasting life.	“ everlasting death.
“ unfading glory.	“ endless shame.

Hence, mortal sin is of necessity infinitely hateful to God, and He therefore punishes it everlastingly; in other words, God exacts for sin a complete satisfaction. The love that God of necessity has for His own infinitely perfect Being is the reason and the measure of the hatred He has to sin.

Sin is a desertion, an abandonment of God: “Know thou, and see that it is an evil and a bitter thing for thee to have left the Lord thy God.” (Jeremias ii. 19.) And Moses says to the sinner: “Thou hast forsaken the God that begot thee, and hast forgotten the Lord that created thee.” (Deuteronomy xxxii. 18.)

Mortal sin is a horrible disorder. It is placing one's good in a created object, instead of fixing it in God, who is the ocean of all goodness, beauty, happiness, and glory.

Mortal sin is a dethroning of God from one's heart. It banishes God from the soul. Isaias says : "Your iniquities have divided between you and your God." (lix. 2.)

It is an injustice, for by it man refuses to give to God what by many titles he owes to Him. Hence sin is often called in Holy Scripture *iniquity*, that is, injustice.

Mortal sin is an act of insubordination, a revolt, an open rebellion against God, who declares : "Thou hast broken my yoke, thou hast burst my bands, and thou saidst : I will not serve." (Jeremias ii. 20.)

It is a base contempt of God, of His authority, majesty, and friendship. It is preferring the slavery of the devil to the glorious service of God. "He that committeth sin," says St. John, "is of the devil." (1 St. John iii. 8.)

It is a daring insult which man, who is "dust and ashes," offers to a Being who is infinitely great, infinitely powerful, infinitely wise, infinitely good, and infinitely holy.

It is a black ingratitude of a man towards his greatest benefactor, his Creator and Redeemer, who has loaded him with natural and supernatural gifts. It dishonors the image of God in the soul, and casts it down in the mire of base passion and vice.

It is in reality preferring misery to bliss ; hell to heaven ; Satan to God. "To whom have you likened me?" says the Lord (Isaias xlii. 5) : to a base passion at which you blush, to a little pleasure that passed so quickly, to a little gold which has melted in your hands. "Be astonished, O ye heavens, at this . . . For my people have done two evils. They have forsaken me, the fountain of living water, and have digged to themselves cisterns, broken cisterns, that can hold no water." (Jeremias ii. 12, 13.)

By sin man outrages God in all His titles—he outrages Him as *Creator*, by revolting against His supreme dominion ; as *Legislator*, by violating His laws ; as *Redeemer*, by despising His grace ; as a *Friend*, by provoking His enmity ; as a *Father*, by resisting His loving authority ; as a *King*, by banishing Him from the possession of his heart.

By sin man outrages in a special manner each of the three divine persons—God the Father, the adopted sonship of whom he renounces ; God the Son, whom he hath "trodden under foot" (Heb. x. 29), and whom, according to St. Paul, he "crucifies again" (Heb. vi. 6) ; God the Holy Ghost, whom it is said in the Holy Scripture that he "grieves," "resists," and "extinguishes" (1 Thess. v. 19) in himself.

Let us now notice some of the *bad effects* that mortal sin produces in the soul.

Mortal sin causes a man to forfeit the friendship of God.

It turns God from a friend into an enemy.

It destroys the beauty of the soul, and covers it with a loathsome deadly leprosy.

It so degrades and debases man as to lead him to seek happiness in muddy waters, to feed on husks fit only for the swine. "How exceeding base art thou become, going the same ways over again!" (Jeremias ii. 36.)

It renders man more grovelling than the brute animals. We read in the Psalms, "Man when he was in honor, did not understand; he is compared to senseless beasts, and is become like to them." (Psalm xlviii. 13.)

It leaves a hideous stain in the soul, deforms it, and makes it hateful in the sight of Heaven. It was one single mortal sin of thought which changed thousands of bright angels into monstrous demons.

Mortal sin spreads bitterness, remorse, shame, disquietude and fear in the soul. It is a poison that tortures the conscience, and works destruction: "By what things a man sinneth, by the same also he is tormented." (Wisdom xi. 17.)

By mortal sin man forfeits his right to his heavenly inheritance.

Mortal sin entirely extinguishes justifying grace in the soul.

It destroys the value of all acquired merits: "All his justices which he had done shall not be remembered." (Ezechiel xviii. 24.)

It deprives the soul of all power of meriting. So long as any one remains in a state of mortal sin, all the good works he does are useless to obtain any reward in heaven. St. Paul writes: "If I have not charity, I am nothing." (1 Corinth. xiii. 2.)

It renders a man the slave of sin, and of his evil desires. (Romans vi. 16.) His passions tyrannize over him. "Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin." (St. John viii. 34.)

By sin a man sells himself and enslaves himself to the devil: "He that committeth sin is of the devil." (1 St. John iii. 8.)

Mortal sin causes the death of the soul. "All iniquity," says Ecclesiasticus, "is like a two-edged sword" (xxi. 4), with which a man attacks God, and at the same time kills his own soul. In the same book of Ecclesiasticus we read, "The teeth thereof," that is, of sin, "are the teeth of a lion killing the souls of men." (xxi. 3.) And in St. James it is said: "But sin, when it is completed, begetteth death." (i. 15.)

Finally, mortal sin closes the gates of heaven against us, and unless remitted before death, entails the dreadful punishment of "everlasting fire, which was prepared for the devil and his angels." (St. Matt. xxv. 41.)

[Prayer.] Through Thy great mercy, O God, and through the merits of Jesus Christ, forgive us our sins. From all sin, Lord Jesus, deliver us.

Chapter XII.

The Sacrament of Penance.

MAN, even though regenerated and justified, is still liable to fall into sin, on account of the depravity of his fallen nature, and also on account of the many temptations that surround him: therefore our loving Lord, in His infinite mercy, instituted another sacrament for the forgiveness of sin committed after baptism. This is the sacrament of penance, in which, by the absolution of the priest, joined with the *contrition*, *confession*, and *satisfaction* of the penitent, the sins of the penitent are forgiven by God, through the application of the merits of Jesus Christ, and a grace is given him to help him to avoid sin in future.

Contrition is an interior grief, horror and detestation of sin committed, with the firm resolve never more to relapse into our evil habits.* Contrition thus includes in itself two acts: sorrow of the heart for sin committed, and the purpose of the will to avoid sin in future.

Confession is an express, contrite, but secret self-accusation, to a duly authorized priest, of at least all grievous sins committed after baptism, of which he wishes to receive absolution, or of all the mortal sins committed since the last confession when absolution was received, as far as we can recall them to our memory.†

Satisfaction means doing the penance enjoined by the priest in confession, repairing the scandal if any was given, and restoring the property and good name to our neighbor in case of his having been injured by us.

Almighty God certainly can, if it so pleases Him, depute a man to forgive sins in His name. That He did depute certain men to forgive sins is plain from what our blessed Lord said to His Apostles, and in the persons of the Apostles to their legitimate successors to the end of the world: "Peace be to you. As the Father hath sent me, I also send you. When He had said this, He breathed on them; and He said to them: Receive ye the Holy Ghost: whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them; and whose sins you shall retain, they are retained." (St. John xx. 21-23.)

* See Council of Trent, Session xiv. chap. 4.

† See Method of Confession, Part II. No. 16 of this book.

This divine commission to forgive sins in Christ's name was always understood to mean what the words just quoted from St. John naturally and plainly signify ; namely, that God has commissioned certain men to grant, and also withhold, the forgiveness of sin in His name ; and these words have thus been understood from the time of the Apostles until now by the Catholic Church, and have thus been understood also by the separated Greek and other Oriental schismatical churches, in which the sacrament of penance is also believed and practised.

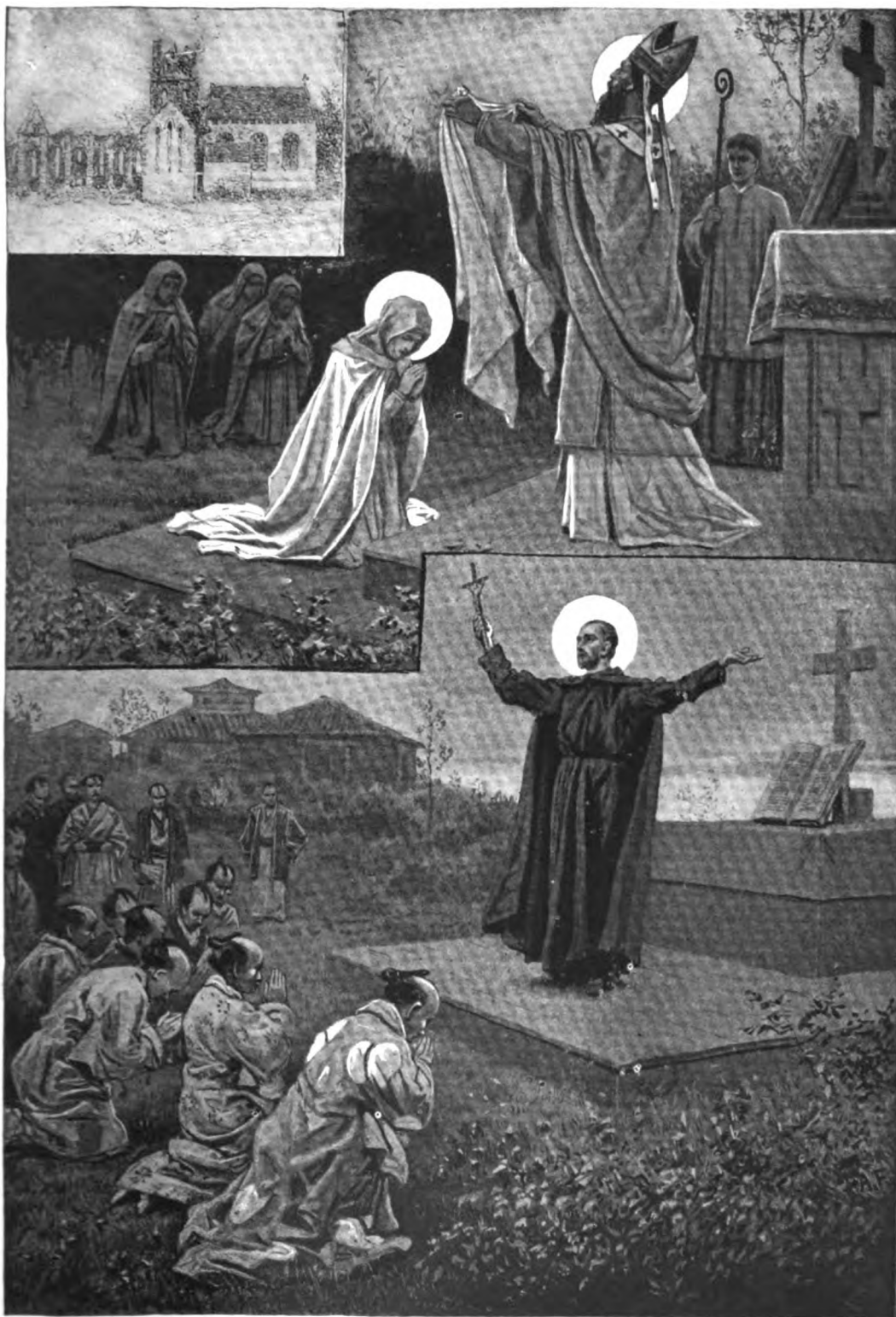
It is of course always God who forgives when forgiveness is granted through the instrumentality or ministration of a priest who acts as minister of God. As in holy baptism, it is God who forgives, yet it is done through the medium of the minister who dispenses that sacrament of regeneration, for whether it be Paul or Cephas who baptizes, it is always *Jesus Christ* who baptizes ; so in the sacrament of penance, when the priest forgives, it is God who forgives through His appointed authorized minister.

From the words of St. John, lately quoted, it is evident that the priest has, by the commission of Christ, sometimes to *forgive*, and sometimes to *retain*, that is, to withhold forgiveness of sin ; therefore it is necessary that the penitent sinner should make known to the priest in confession the state of his conscience, in order that the priest may give or withhold absolution with *knowledge* and *prudence*, and not grant or deny it unduly or at hazard, which Jesus Christ never intended.

The priest, in fact, who is called upon to dispense the sacrament of penance, to remit or to retain sin, has to decide whether the person who comes to him as a penitent is really guilty of sin or not ; whether, if guilty, the sin is grievous or is venial ; whether reparation to a neighbor is required or not ; he must see what instruction, admonition, advice, or penance he has to give him ; he must form a well-grounded judgment whether the penitent has or has not the dispositions which render him fit to receive absolution.

In short, the priest in the tribunal of penance is a judge, and as such he must, as a rule, have full knowledge of the case upon which he has to pronounce judgment ; and this knowledge he can only have from the confession of the penitent person.

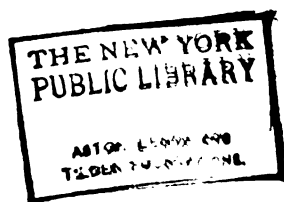
That it is a good thing to confess our sins appears from the following passages of Holy Writ : " He that hideth his sins shall not prosper ; but he that shall confess, and forsake them, shall obtain mercy." (Proverbs xxviii. 13.) St. James writes : " Confess, therefore, your sins one to another." (v. 16.) If open confession is good for the soul, how much more advantageous is it to confess to a priest who has deputed power from God to forgive our sins. We must bear the shame of showing our



St. Patrick and St. Bridget.

St. Francis-Xavier.

THE SPREAD OF THE GOSPEL.



wounds and bruises, and festering sores, if we wish to be cured. To humble ourselves before the minister of God is some reparation for the evil we have done; that humiliation pleases God and procures for us many great blessings.

Chapter Xb.

The Holy Eucharist.

THE Holy Eucharist is the true body and blood of Jesus Christ under the outward appearances of bread and wine.

This sacrament surpasses in excellence all the other sacraments, because under the *appearances** of bread and wine, and under *each* of these appearances or species, that is to say, under the species of bread and under the species of wine, this most blessed sacrament contains *truly, really, and substantially* though not perceptibly to our senses, nor with their natural accidents, the body and blood of our Lord Jesus Christ, together with His soul and divinity, which can never be separated from His body and blood.

Our Saviour said: "My flesh is meat indeed; and my blood is drink indeed." (St. John vi. 56.) And when He instituted this sacrament He said: "This is my body which is given for you. Do this for a commemoration of me." "This is the chalice, the new testament in my blood, which shall be shed for you." (St. Luke xxii. 19, 20.)

The words: "Do this in commemoration of me," should not be taken as though at variance with the real presence of our Lord in this blessed sacrament. At a banquet in commemoration of a battle, the presence of the victor does not render the commemoration impossible, but the more striking. It may also be said that the presence of Jesus Christ in this most holy sacrament renders the commemoration of his death the more vivid.

The change or passing of one *substance* into another is called *Transubstantiation*. The co-existence of one substance, together with, or mingled with, another substance is called *Consubstantiation*.

To understand the word *transubstantiation*, it is well to remark that in all bodies there are two things to be noted; 1st, the *outward qualities*, such as taste, smell, shape, color; and 2d, the *matter* or *substance*, wholly imperceptible to our senses, on which these qualities rest. The sensible

* Those qualities which are outwardly noticed by the senses, as color, taste, or shape, are also called *species* and *accidents*.

qualities are objects of knowledge which we can acquire by the testimony of the senses ; but we cannot form any exact notion of the nature or elementary structure of the inward substance. We know for certain that in each body there must be the substance, or that underlying thing upon which the accidents rest, and that the substance is the essential part in a body : but of the nature of *substance* itself we have only a very imperfect knowledge.

When a change in the *substance* of anything takes place in which thing all the outward appearances remain as they were before, but only the inward *imperceptible substance* is entirely changed, this is called transubstantiation. Transubstantiation, therefore, is the entire change of the inward imperceptible substance, while all the outward appearances of that substance remain as they were before, unchanged.

The Catholic Church teaches that before consecration what on the altar appears to be bread and wine is simply bread and wine, and that after the consecration of that bread and of that wine that which still appears to be bread and wine is no longer bread and wine, but the body and blood of Jesus Christ. Something remains, namely, the outward qualities or *species* of bread and wine ; and something is changed, namely, the inward invisible *substance* of that bread and of that wine into the body and blood of Christ ; this inward change or conversion is what is called *transubstantiation*.

Catholics believe that in the holy Eucharist transubstantiation, or a change of *substance*, and not consubstantiation, or co-existence of two *substances*, takes place, for the simple reason that our Saviour, at the Last Supper, did not say : " IN this " or " WITH this is my body," " IN this," or " WITH this is my blood," but he said : " THIS is my body," " THIS is my blood," which words, in their natural meaning, imply a *change of substance* ; for if what Jesus held in His hands was truly His body and His blood, it must have ceased to be the *substance* of bread and of wine.

And this is still more apparent from the New Testament as written in the Syro-Chaldaic, Greek, and Latin languages, in which the word *this*, in the expression, " This is my body," is *neuter* and cannot be referred to *bread*, which in those languages is of *masculine* gender, so that, according to the force of these languages, the only plain meaning is—this thing which I hold in my hand is my body.

If we were to interpret these expressions to mean—This *bread* is my body ; this *wine* is my blood—there would be a downright contradiction, because bread is one substance and the body of Christ is another, wine is one substance and the blood of Christ is another substance ; and if we were to stretch those expressions to mean—In this bread there is my

body ; in this wine there is my blood—it would be doing a grave violence to the text.

To believe in transubstantiation, therefore, is in plain words to believe the assertion of Christ without hesitation or demur, without seeking for an escape, and without a doubt. To Christ asserting : “ This is my body,” “ This is my blood,” it is to answer with simplicity of faith : “ Yes, Lord, I believe what thou sayest ; It is thy body, it is thy blood.” To explain away these two expressions by flying to a figurative meaning, is to admit that the literal sense is plainly in favor of the interpretation followed by Catholics in all ages.

Transubstantiation takes place when the words of consecration, “ This is my body,” “ This is my blood,” used and ordered by Christ, are pronounced over the elements of bread and wine in the holy sacrifice of the Mass by a priest, rightly ordained. As Jesus Christ, the Son of God made man, when visible on earth could and should be adored, though His divinity was under the veil of His humanity, so He can and should be adored in the holy Eucharist though His divinity and humanity are under the veil or accidents of bread and wine.

All persons who are capable of being instructed in this holy mystery, are bound by the command of Christ to receive this adorable sacrament ; and the Catholic Church, which allows to the faithful, and even recommends, the daily reception of the blessed Eucharist, commands the reception of it, “ at least once a year ” at Easter time.

This solemn precept is based on the words of Jesus Christ : “ Amen, amen, I say unto you: Unless you eat the flesh of the Son of man, and drink His blood, you shall not have life in you.” (St. John vi. 54.)

Chapter Xvi.

The Holy Sacrifice of the Mass. The Holy Sacrifice of the Mass serves to apply Christ's Redemption to Men.

SACRIFICE is the highest act of religion, because other acts with which we worship God may also be used, though in a limited sense, in honoring the angels, the saints, kings and other high personages, while sacrifice is so exclusively due to God, that it can only be offered to Him ; for the natural end of sacrifice is to show, by the destruction of, or notable change in, the victim, the sovereign dominion over creation which belongs to God alone.

From the beginning of the world the servants of God were accustomed to offer sacrifice to the most high God. And in all ancient religions, true or false, this worship of sacrifice was always looked upon as the most solemn act of religion.

It was therefore proper, that as in the law of nature, and in the Mosaic law, there were sacrifices instituted by the Almighty, there should also be in the law of grace a continual sacrifice whereby to worship God in a manner worthy of Him, besides the one sacrifice offered by our Lord Jesus Christ on Mount Calvary.

As the sacrifices with shedding of blood of the Old Law were figures of the sacrifice offered by Christ on Calvary with the shedding of His most precious blood, so those sacrifices of the Old Law that were without the shedding of blood were types of another sacrifice in the New Law, which also was to be without blood-shedding.

The prophet Malachias foretold in plain words this daily sacrifice of the New Law when he said: "For from the rising of the sun, even to the going down, my name is great among the Gentiles: and in every place there is sacrifice, and there is offered to my name a clean oblation; for my name is great among the Gentiles, saith the Lord of hosts." (Malachias i. 11.)

What it was reasonable we should have, what was foreshadowed by the figures of the Old Testament, and, moreover, what was even foretold, our Lord Jesus Christ accomplished at the Last Supper. For the holy Eucharist which He then instituted is not only a sacrament but also a true sacrifice offered up then by the same Jesus Christ to His Eternal Father, and offered also by Himself daily through the ministry of the priest whenever the priest celebrates holy Mass at the altar; the faithful who are present uniting in the oblation.

The holy sacrifice of the Mass is a commemorative sacrifice, regarded as a true sacrifice by the Apostles and their successors, and by the whole Catholic Church in all centuries. It is still so regarded even by all ancient schismatical churches, who separated themselves from the Catholic Church between the fifth and ninth centuries, and who have, up to the present, preserved among them the sacrifice of the Mass as an institution of Christ.

To complete a commemorative sacrifice, the *actual* putting to death of the victim is not necessary, but only the real presence of the victim, accompanied by a mystical death, or by such a notable change in the thing offered as may *represent* death.

Jesus Christ "dieth now no more" (Romans vi. 9), and yet He offers Himself to His Eternal Father as one dead, though alive, "a Lamb standing as it were slain" (Apocalypse [or Revelation] v. 6), showing

continually to God the Father His five most precious wounds, the marks of His immolation on Calvary. In like manner His having died once, never to die again, does not prevent Jesus Christ from being offered a true Victim in the holy sacrifice of the Mass as an immolation with only a mystical death.

Some of the sacrifices of the Old Law were of this kind, as, for example, the typical sacrifice of Isaac by Abraham ; and in the offering of the sparrows. Of these we read in the book of Leviticus (xiv. 6): "The other [sparrow] that is alive he [the priest] shall dip with the cedar-wood, and the scarlet and the hyssop, in the blood of the sparrow that is immolated ;" "he shall let go the living sparrow." Another instance is the "Emissary-goat" (or scape-goat), "he shall present alive before the Lord, that he may pour out prayers upon him, and let him go into the wilderness." (Leviticus xvi. 10.)

Moreover, there are sacrifices of lifeless things, which serve to support animal life, in which, therefore, actual death is not possible. Such were the *loaves* of proposition or shew-bread, called in Leviticus (xxiv. 9) "most holy of the sacrifices of the Lord by a perpetual right." Such likewise were the sacrifices described in the second chapter of Leviticus in verses 2, 9, 16, where it is ordered that a handful of the flour offered by the people should be offered by the priest in sacrifice upon the altar, and there burned by the priest *Aaron or his sons*.

This sort of *sacrifice* was regarded by the Jews as a *true sacrifice*, called *mincha*, which word is translated by the seventy interpreters (in the old Greek version called the Septuagint) and by the Latin Vulgate simply *sacrifice*.

Now it is clear that in this kind of sacrifice neither an actual nor even a mystical death took place, but only a very notable *change*, which is enough for the nature of a sacrifice.

In the holy Eucharist, the Victim, namely, Jesus Christ, is truly present, therefore He can be offered up, and He is truly offered up, as an oblation to His Eternal Father ; and although the death of the victim does not occur in *reality*, yet it takes place *mystically*; the body of Christ being made present, as though separated from the blood, since by the power of the consecrating words, first the body of Christ is caused to be present under the *species* (or what appears to the senses) of bread, and then His blood is caused to be present under the *species* of wine. This *mystical death*, by *seeming* separation of the blood from Christ's body, joined with the true *offering* of Jesus Christ, who is truly present, living and entire under each *species*, can and does constitute a real sacrifice commemorative of that of the cross.

This twofold consecration is by *Christ's institution* so essential for the

sacrificial act, that if there were *only* a consecration of the bread, or *only* a consecration of the wine, our Lord would be present, but not as a *sacrifice*, because in these cases the mystical immolation would not be complete.

Jesus Christ is called by the royal psalmist, "A priest for ever according to the order of Melchisedech" (Psalm cix. 4), because the sacrifice which Melchisedech offered as "the priest of the most high God" (Genesis xiv. 18), was that of bread and wine, which was not a direct figure of the sacrifice offered up on Calvary with *spilling of blood*, but of the sacrifice of the Mass, which is offered under the species of *bread and wine, without the shedding of blood*, and offered *for ever*; "the clean oblation" spoken of by the prophet Malachias. (i. 11.)

It seems plain that it is also in reference to the sacrifice of the Mass that mention is made by St. Paul of an *altar* as belonging to the Christian dispensation; an *altar* always denoting a *sacrifice*. (Hebrews xiii. 10.)

The holy sacrifice of the Mass does not differ *in its essence* from the sacrifice offered up upon Mount Calvary. As we find on Calvary and in the Mass the same identical Victim, and the same principal Offerer, Jesus Christ, the two sacrifices are *essentially* the same. The two sacrifices only differ in *non-essentials*, because only the manner of offering is different. One was offered by Christ personally, the other is offered by Him through His ministers. That was offered with real suffering, real shedding of blood and real death of the Victim; this with only a mystical suffering, a mystical shedding of blood, and a mystical death of the same Victim. Therefore the priest, at the time of the consecration, does not say: "This is the body of Christ," but acting in the person of Christ, says: "This is my body," according to the divine command, "Do THIS," or, as these words might be rendered, OFFER UP THIS. It is on account of this sacrifice offered daily on our altars by Christ that our Lord is called "A priest for ever, according to the order of Melchisedech." (Psalm cix. 4; Hebrews vii. 17.)

ST. PAUL affirms that Christ offered Himself only *once*, meaning, by *suffering, blood-shedding, and death*; as he compares Christ's oblation to the oblations of animal victims of the Old Law which were made by a real destruction of their animal life.

There is nothing in the Mass which is opposed to this teaching of St. Paul. So far from it, the Mass is a perpetual witness to the fact of that single death in blood; it is one of the most striking attestations we can make that Christ died for the world; there cannot be a more conspicuous witness to the *one death of the one Victim* than the holy sacrifice of the Mass; that august act, which, instituted by Christ Himself, *shows forth the Lord's death till He come*, that death, without which the Mass would have neither a meaning nor even an existence.

What is, then, the chief purpose of the Mass? The chief purpose of the holy sacrifice of the Mass is to apply *practically* to our souls individually those merits and graces which the sacrifice of the cross had already gathered and prepared for all mankind; it is a channel or secondary fountain of the effects of redemption, not the original source; not adding value or merit to the sacrifice of Christ offered once for all on Calvary. It is not a sacrifice totally distinct from, and independent of, that of the cross, as the different victims and sacrifices of the Old Law were independent of, and additional to, each other; but it is a renewal and repetition of the "once offered" oblation, by being a renewed sacrificial presentation of the same Victim in another and unbloody manner through the ministry of the priest. It is renewed and repeated that we may have an opportunity of practically joining in that sacrifice; repeated not for the sake of redeeming mankind afresh, or of adding to the merits of the redemption, but to apply Christ's satisfaction and merits, gained on Calvary, to the Church in general, and to each soul in particular.

The following illustration will perhaps assist in making this more plain.

If some one had defrauded the state, and a rich man should offer to pay the amount stolen on condition that the guilty person should be forgiven; should the state accept the terms, on the understanding that the guilty person should first make a special application to the state, signed by the rich man and by himself, no one would call this second requirement a lessening of the value of the first. It seems easy to conceive that this second demand is neither unreasonable, nor unjust, nor disparaging to the former; and why? Because it is based on the same agreement and presupposes it; it is only something required for properly carrying out the transaction in its details; a condition reasonably exacted in order to have the promised forgiveness in an orderly and profitable manner, and not with the intention of adding to the sum already laid down.

Thus the sacrifice of the Mass cannot be considered to detract from the sacrifice offered up "once for all" on Calvary, because the sacrifice of the Mass rests upon it, derives all its value from it, and presupposes it; and yet the Mass is a true sacrifice, because *Jesus Christ is truly offered up*, though in another form; and offered, not in the sense of adding new merits, as if wanting to the first, but because it is a means appointed by the Eternal Father and the incarnate Son, for *applying* the merits of the one bloody sacrifice to the whole Church in general, and to each soul in particular.

To illustrate the same thing by another example, we may suppose that in a certain empire an orator, by a prodigy of eloquence, had obtained from the emperor the freedom of a certain province, on the condition, however, that such freedom should be granted only to those inhabitants

who were present at the recital, before appointed persons, of that oration by a deputy of the said orator. It is clear that this condition, far from lessening the value of the original oration, would only tend to increase the honor of the orator and the value of his oration, by causing each inhabitant of that province to appreciate it more fully, and feel more deeply indebted to that orator.

The same may be said of the holy sacrifice of the Mass, for it gives an opportunity to each of us in particular :

1st, To join our Lord and the priest in offering the divine Victim of Calvary, present on our altars, to the Eternal Father ;

2d, To feel more deeply indebted to Jesus Christ by commemorating with a deep sense of gratitude and love the great sacrifice of Calvary.

3d, To reap the fruit of that great sacrifice by having it practically and personally applied to us. All these benefits, as is evident, redound entirely to the greater honor of Christ and of His great sacrifice on Mount Calvary.

The Mass no more detracts from Christ's passion and death than did the offering which Christ Himself made at His first entering into the world, or at His presentation in the temple, or at His Last Supper, or than baptism or any other sacrament does ; for by all of them Christ applies to us the merits of His passion and death.

In fact, holy Mass is but one of the means left by our Saviour for applying His merits to man. He Himself instituted holy Mass when He gave the command to His Apostles : " Do this for a commemoration of me." (St. Luke xxii. 19.)*

Chapter Xvii.

Ceremonies and Ritual of the Catholic Church.

IN the administration of the sacraments and in the celebration of the Mass and other sacred services, the Church makes use of ceremonies ; that is, she employs certain forms and rites for the purpose of administering the things of God in a becoming and dignified manner, and proper to impress the faithful with sentiments of faith and piety befitting the occasion.

Ceremonies do not form an essential part of the institution of Christ, most of them having been added by the Church in the time of the Apos-

* See Part II. No. 15, A Method of Hearing Mass.

ties or in subsequent ages. Consequently they may, by the same authority, be changed or omitted (as, in fact, in cases of necessity they are omitted), without affecting the validity of the sacraments. But as they are prescribed by the Church, acting under the guidance of the Holy Spirit, in order the better to show forth the dignity and the effects of the sacraments, and to dispose us to receive them in a more devout manner, it would be wrong to omit them, except in cases of necessity.

That it is proper and dutiful, and therefore important, that divine service and the administration of the sacraments should be accompanied by ceremonies may be gathered from the fact that not only the Latin Church, but also all the ancient churches of the East abound in ceremonies from a very remote period, and many of them traceable to apostolic times. Thus we see that the Greek, Armenian, Chaldean, Syro-Chaldean, Coptic, and Eutychian churches in the East have at all times used ceremonies as well as the Roman Catholic Church. Long experience testifies to the good effect which the use of ceremonies produces on the people.

If solemn ceremonies were not used in the celebration of the Mass, Catholic belief in the real presence of Christ upon our altars would not be fitly expressed. If the faithful saw the altar stripped of ornaments, and the officiating priests without distinctive vestments, not bending the knee, and not giving any outward token of worship before the consecrated elements, their Catholic instinct would be shocked. On the other hand, when they see the great pains taken and the great cost often incurred for the becoming adornment of the house of God, for making the altar, the tabernacle, and the throne gleam with rich ornaments; when they see that the priests and their assistants are robed with distinctive emblematic vestments, and especially when they see them bend their knees in humble adoration before the consecrated Host and the consecrated chalice, their faith and devotion are strengthened, and the practical lesson they receive is likely to do them more good than any sermon on the subject.

What we have said of the ceremonies of the Mass may be applied in due proportion also to those ceremonies used in the administration of the sacraments, and in all the services of the Church.

It is objected that there is danger that ceremonies may lead to mere *formality*; but I venture to say that the ceremonies used by the Catholic Church, especially those used in the holy sacrifice of the Mass, far from leading people to *formality*, draw them on to greater *spirituality* and fervor.

Let us consider these externals, first, with regard to the officiating priest, and afterwards with respect to the people.

The Mass ordinarily consists of the following things:—The 42d Psalm,

beginning "*Judica me, Deus*" (Judge me, O God)—the *Confiteor*—the *Introit*, or entrance prayer—the "*Kyrie eleison*" (Lord, have mercy)—"*Christe eleison*" (Christ, have mercy), repeated nine times—the "*Gloria in excelsis*" (Glory to God in the highest)—the *Collect*—the *Epistle* for the day—the prayer, "*Munda cor meum*" (Cleanse my heart, O God)—the *Gospel* for the day—the *Nicene Creed*—the *Offertory*—part of the 25th Psalm, beginning at the verse "*Lavabo*"—(that is, I will wash)—*Oblation* prayer—the prayer called *Secret*—the *Preface*—the *Sanctus*, or Holy, Holy, Holy—the *Canon*, or prayers according to solemn, unvarying *rule*—consecration of the Host—consecration of the wine—prayers after consecration—the Lord's Prayer—*Agnus Dei* (Lamb of God)—three prayers before communion—communion of the priest—prayers after communion—the blessing of the people—the last Gospel, most frequently from the first chapter of St. John (*In the beginning was the Word*). (See Method of Hearing Mass, Part II. No. 15.)

Now it appears that all this is thoroughly spiritual, and without any ceremonial formality, especially when we consider that the greatest part of this is said or done by the priest in secret, that is, in a low tone of voice.

What is less important in the Mass, and what may strictly be called ceremonial, consists in the priest's changing his position; in his reverently bowing the head and kneeling: in kissing the altar and paten (or silver plate on which the Host is placed); in joining or in raising his hands; in looking up toward heaven, or to the crucifix on the altar; in making repeatedly the sign of the cross; and in turning towards the people when addressing them, as when he says "*Dominus vobiscum*" (The Lord be with you), and "*Orate, fratres*" (Brethren, pray).

But men are struck at the reflection that many of these things Jesus did, and that, therefore, they cannot be called valueless formalities, unless indeed we were to say that the priest does these things without the proper interior spirit, which would be an accusation our Lord forbids us to make under pain of sin: "Judge not, that you may not be judged." (St. Matt. vii. 1.)

If we consider, now, the Mass with regard to the people present who assist at Mass, the more ground is there to convince us that no tendency to mere formality exists in the Mass, but that everything in it leads rather to spirituality.

In the Mass there is no set form of prayers required to be repeated after the priest in a formal way by the people, as is constantly done in Protestant churches and chapels, but the people are left free to follow the Mass in spirit, either meditating on the passion of our Lord, or making some acts of repentance, love, praise, adoration, and like acts of devotion;

or reciting some prayers, each in his own way, in keeping with each one's capacity, needs, and desires; or following the Mass according to the direction of the book of devotion which each worshipper may have chosen for his own use.

The different ceremonies, far from leading the pious worshipper to mere formality, serve to arouse and keep alive attention and devotion.

When in the beginning of the Mass the priest bends his body and strikes his breast thrice saying the *Confiteor* or confession, this calls the devout Catholic to make acts of contrition for his sins. The intoning of the *Gloria in excelsis* raises his soul to glorify God. The chanting of the *Gospel* and *Creed* makes him stand up for the faith. The singing of the *Sanctus* invites him to join the choirs of the angels in praising the sanctity of God. The uplifting of the Host and of the chalice, and the repeated genuflections of the priest, draw him to worship God on his knees; and so we may say of the rest. Every act tends to keep up the attention, the devotion, and the fervor of pious persons attending Mass.

The ceremonies, therefore, of the Mass, far from inducing formality, are a good and powerful preservative against it.

But perhaps some may say: What need is there for holy water, for lighted candles in daytime, and for such costly vestments? Why so many changes of position, so much kneeling and standing? Why so much singing and playing of the organ and of other instruments? Why make so often the sign of the cross? Why use incense?

I will endeavor to reply briefly to all these questions.

With regard to *holy water*, the use of it is not commanded, but piously recommended to the laity. If St. John the Baptist, in his baptism of penance, and our Lord in His baptism of regeneration, have made use of the element of water to signify the purification of the soul, surely we cannot make objection if the Church at the threshold of the house of God and in other circumstances makes use of the same element to remind the people that they must follow after purity of soul by repentance if they would that their prayers should be answered by God.

The use of *holy water* is very ancient. St. Justin the Martyr, who lived in the second century, says in the second book of his Apology, that every Sunday in their assemblies the faithful were sprinkled with holy water.

As to *lighted candles* in the daytime, I would say that they are used chiefly as seemly emblematic ornament; and as such need not serve any other purpose. A lighted candle is an ornament most suited for the altar, 1st, because exceedingly primitive and purely ecclesiastical, which many other ornaments are not; 2d, because the light, the burning and self-consuming of the candle, can be taken as a beautiful emblem of our

faith, which must be lively ; of our charity, which must be burning and diffusive ; of our devotion, which, like that of Mary Magdalen, must not spare sacrifices.

As to *rich vestments*, holy Church is glad to use them, when convenient, in holy functions, because it redounds to the honor of God. If it is considered dutiful and honorable toward a prince that people should appear at his court in their best distinctive robes and ornaments, surely it cannot but be right that priests, the ambassadors and ministers of God, should in public functions appear before the altars of God in His sanctuary with their rich distinctive emblematic vestments. This was prescribed by God in the Old Law, though the priests then made offerings of no great intrinsic value, but only figurative ones. There is still more reason for the use of them now that the Lamb of God prefigured by them is personally and corporally present. All the Oriental churches make use of rich vestments and abound in ceremonies.

As to *bowing down the body*, and *bending the knee*, in sign of reverence, the patriarchs and the prophets, and even Jesus Christ Himself on earth also did the same repeatedly, and this St. John saw in a vision done by the twenty-four elders worshipping in heaven.

As to *music and singing*, it is what the psalmist David repeatedly recommends. (See Psalms xcvi. and cl.) And why shall we not make music as well as other things serve to the praises of God ? Music, when good and properly adapted, gives expression, grandeur, and solemnity to our sacred services, and to the offering of our praises to God. If sometimes it has not this effect upon some persons the cause is probably due to early prejudice or perhaps to the defect or absence of the musical sense ; or it may be that the music is not well adapted to the words and to the religious feelings the subject should inspire ; or, lastly, when the people do not attentively or intelligently follow the words and their respective musical expression.

As to the *sign of the cross* (see chapter under this head), the Church makes frequent use of it, especially during the Mass, because it is the sign of our redemption.

We cannot be reminded too often that we must be meek and patient and ready to suffer, because we profess to be followers of the Cross, that is, of our crucified Saviour. The cross is a memorial of the sufferings and death of Christ. It speaks to us strongly of the malice and terrible consequences of sin, and of the immense love of God toward us.

The primitive Christians, as Tertullian and other ancient writers testify, were accustomed to make the sign of the cross very often during the day.

Since, in this age, Christians make this sign less often, let us use it willingly, and rejoice to see it still frequently used, at least by the priests

in their priestly ministrations, to teach us not to be ashamed of the cross of Christ, but to glory in it, as St. Paul gave us the example: "But God forbid that I should glory, save in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ." (Galatians vi. 14.)

As to *incense*, it is a thing which the common sense of man has reserved to do honor to God with. Hence the wise kings offered incense to the child Jesus to honor His divinity. In Leviticus (ii. 1) it was commanded that incense should be placed on the sacrifice called *mincha*. There was in the temple of Solomon a special altar, called the altar of incense, upon which, every day at a certain hour, incense was offered to God. (St. Luke i. 9-11.) Incense is a symbol of charity and of prayer. Holy David says: "Let my prayer be directed as incense in thy sight" (Psalm cxl. 2); and St. John saw the four and twenty ancients and the angels offering up to God "golden vials full of odors [incense], which are the prayers of saints." (Apocalypse [or Revelation] v. 8.) Again in chapter viii. 3, he says: "And another angel came, and stood before the altar, having a golden censer; and there was given to him much incense, that he should offer of the prayers of all saints upon the golden altar, which is before the throne of God."

Incense may also be taken to mean the fragrance of virtue, as also the inferior honor given to things which relate to God. In this sense the altar, the crucifix, the missal, the priest, the assisting ministers, and the faithful themselves, are also incensed.

Some may object: How is all this consistent with those words of our Lord to the Samaritan woman, "But the hour cometh and now is, when the true adorers shall adore the Father in spirit and in truth"? (St. John iv. 23.)

I answer that external worship, if accompanied by inward spirit, is justly said to be worship "in spirit." Besides, worship "in truth" requires external worship, for a man who refuses also externally with his body to adore God who is the Creator, Preserver, and Benefactor of his body as well as of his soul, could not be called a "true adorer." The very words "adorer," and "adore," imply outward action of the body.

When a ceremony—for example, kneeling, or striking the breast—is done not as a mere matter of form, but as accompanied by, or as an expression of, the mind and heart, then it is a ceremony done in spirit and in truth, because it is then dictated by the spirit; it is an effect of the spirit; it is an outward expression of the spirit, and therefore it is a worship in spirit and in truth; the outward expression then corresponds to the inward feelings, and is a real worship and not a merely formal or an empty material action of the body.

When our Saviour in the Garden of Gethsemane prostrated Himself

with His face to the ground before His Eternal Father, He was truly adoring in spirit ; and so likewise when He attended the sacrifices and other holy functions in the temple.

We must not suppose that our Saviour's words to the Samaritan woman imply any slight of the Jewish rite as though only a formal, material worship.* Can we suppose that the patriarchs, that David, other prophets, and all just men of the Old Law, were not adorers in spirit ? Christ compares the new adorers with the Jews as they were then for the most part, not as they ought to have been, according to the spirit of the law. God has expressed strongly in *Isaias* (i. 11) and other places how in the Old Law He hated mere externals, and even prayer itself done without spirit and with a heart attached to sin. Therefore Christ by his words to the Samaritan woman would show that the true adorers of the New Law, who possess not mere emblems and figures, as the Jews did, but enjoy the advantage of having realities, will also be more careful to worship with a purer heart and with a purer intention, with better will and more attention and spirit than the generality of the Jews did then.

Thus Catholic prayer-books are full of beautiful prayers suited to accompany every act of worship performed by the priest at the altar ; and nothing is more recommended in Catholic theology, sermons, catechisms, and books of devotion, than the necessity of assisting at Mass and other holy services with a heart detached from sin, and with attention and fervor.

If, then, outward demonstrations of veneration, faith, love, and zeal, when dictated by the inward spirit, are spirit and truth, it is all the better if a ritual should abound with externals, provided they are accompanied by the inward devotion of the spirit.

Some Protestants might here perhaps observe : What you say may be right, but this Catholic system of ceremonies puzzles me ; I think that I should hardly feel myself at home in it.

I would answer : It is not astonishing, my friend, that the Catholic system of worship should somewhat puzzle you as a Protestant. This system is new to you, and not very easily understood, and perhaps your mind has been prejudiced against it from childhood. But it would be unreasonable, on that account, for you to turn your back upon it discouraged. Would you act in this manner if a good business, in which you were very much interested, were offered to you, and which at first you might find a little difficult to understand or conduct ? Surely you would not act so, especially if you saw engaged in it happy little children, well up to the work and quite at their ease. So if the Catholic worship appears at first sight somewhat strange or perplexing, be not disheartened ; a little goodwill, a little instruction, a little explanation, a little study, and above all a little practice, will enable you to overcome every difficulty, and you will

soon find yourself also quite at home in it and enjoy it, too, almost as much as Catholics themselves.

Look at the Catholic children; they find it quite easy to follow the Mass and benediction; they understand well what seems so difficult to you and you can easily understand it, too, if, taking the advice of our Lord, you only condescend to be as they are, and allow yourself to be taught as they do.

Chapter XVIII.

Benediction of the Blessed Sacrament.

THE real presence of Jesus Christ in the blessed sacrament by transubstantiation implies that Jesus Christ is present there so long as the *species* (accidental qualities which fall under the senses) of the bread or of the wine remain unaltered. And therefore the blessed sacrament, that is to say, *Jesus Christ* there present in the blessed sacrament, can and ought to be adored by the faithful.

This is what the Catholic Church teaches, and she provides that in most churches consecrated "particles," that is, the blessed sacrament, be kept permanently (generally in the tabernacle on the altar): 1st, That it may be ready at any time to be administered to sick and dying persons; for, as the consecration of the blessed sacrament can only take place during Mass, which is celebrated only once a day by each priest, and only in the morning, if the blessed sacrament were not reserved, it might occur that some Christians would die without the great advantage of receiving this sacrament, which, when administered to those supposed to be in danger of death, is called *Viaticum* or *food for the journey*; 2d, In order to afford to the faithful the great consolation of *having Jesus Christ* always in the midst of them in the tabernacle on the altar, to receive their visits, adoration, and prayers, and to dispense His graces.

Thus is literally fulfilled the prophecy of Isaias that the Saviour was to be, and to be called, *Emmanuel*, that is, *God with us*. (vii. 14.) And also the promise of Jesus Christ Himself that He would not leave us orphans.

The churches where the blessed sacrament is reserved, as is the case in all Catholic parish churches and in those of religious orders, are often open—some the whole day long, others some hours—morning and evening. Then the faithful can through the day visit the blessed sacrament, and pass some precious minutes in silent supplication before God, and in adoration of their Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.

But to kings of this world we are not satisfied to offer our homage in private : we also like occasionally to make a public demonstration of our loyalty and attachment to them. So besides this private and silent devotion of the faithful, the Church has provided special solemn rites to show forth our faith, giving us the opportunity of pouring out the innermost love of our hearts, and of expressing publicly our devotion toward our Lord God and King present in the blessed sacrament.

This she does by public processions, by the Quarant'ore or *forty hours' exposition of the blessed sacrament*, especially during Lent, and more frequently by the simple rite called benediction.

Benediction, as a rule, takes place in the afternoon or evening ; less solemnly on week-days, more solemnly on Sundays and festivals.

When the hour to give benediction is come, all, or the greater part of the wax candles about the altar are lighted. This may seem strange to those who are not acquainted with the Catholic belief in the real presence of our Lord Jesus Christ in the blessed sacrament. If Jesus Christ were not present, this display of wax candles might justly be looked upon as a mere show, a mere waste, and a profusion of lights to no purpose ; but it will not appear so to those who enter into the spirit of Catholic belief in the real presence of Jesus Christ in the blessed sacrament. Surely what we do for our God and King, who is there really present, can never be too much. And as lighted candles and beautiful flowers are the most seemly ornaments for the altar during divine worship, the faithful gladly bear the expense, not heeding those who may say—"Why this waste?"

When the altar is made ready and everything prepared, the officiating priest, in his vestments, accompanied, if convenient, by other priests, and preceded by servers and the censer-bearer in their surplices, comes to the altar, at the foot of which all kneel. One of the priests takes the blessed sacrament (or consecrated Host) out of the tabernacle and reverently places it within the round crystal frame in the centre of the *monstrance*, which is made of gold or silver, finely wrought and often adorned with precious stones ; and he thus exposes it on an elevated throne above the middle of the altar, when the hymn beginning "*O Salutaris Hostia*" (O Saving Host), is sung by the choir and people.

The clergy then profoundly adore the blessed sacrament, and the officiating priest, rising, puts three times a small spoonful of incense (that is, sweet-smelling aromatic gum) into the burning censer or "thurible," and waving it thrice before the consecrated Host offers the ascending fragrance to God ; as we read in the Apocalypse (or Revelation), the angels were seen to do in heaven.

The liturgical Latin hymn, "*O Salutaris Hostia*" (O Saving Host)

being sung, it is generally followed by the Litany of the blessed Virgin, commonly called of Loreto, commencing with invocations to each person of the holy Trinity, and then is sung the "*Tantum ergo Sacramentum*," which hymn is never omitted: followed by a prayer said by the officiating priest standing.

After the second offering of incense, a rich silk veil is placed upon the shoulders of the officiating priest, who then ascends the altar-steps, takes in his hands with the veil the monstrance which contains the blessed sacrament, previously taken down from the throne, and turning to the people, makes with it the sign of the cross over them, and thus blesses the faithful with the most holy.

This is done in silence, except that a small bell, and sometimes the tower bell of the church, is sounded, to call the attention not only of those who are in the church, but also of those who are detained at home, that they all may prepare themselves kneeling to receive the blessing of God. Then the blessed sacrament is replaced in the tabernacle, whilst the 116th Psalm, "*Laudate Dominum omnes gentes*" (O praise the Lord, all ye nations) is sung, and some concluding prayers are recited.

After another profound adoration by the clergy, the tabernacle is locked. The priests and servers then rise, make a genuflection, and return in order to the sacristy.

This is a most impressive rite, naturally connected with Catholic belief in the real presence. "Can there be a more touching rite, even in the judgment of those who do not believe in it? How many a man, not a Catholic, is moved, on seeing it, to say: 'Oh, that I did but believe it!' when he sees the priest take up the fount of mercy, and the people bent low in adoration! It is one of the most beautiful, natural, and soothing actions of the Church."*

Pious } Blessed and praised every moment be the most holy and
Ejaculation. } most divine sacrament.

HYMNS AND PRAYERS COMMONLY SAID AT THE EXPOSITION AND BENEDICTION OF THE MOST HOLY SACRAMENT.

When the Priest opens the Tabernacle and incenses the Blessed Sacrament, is sung the Hymn,

O Salutaris Hostia,
Quae coeli pandis ostium;
Bella premunt hostilia,
Da robur, fer auxilium.

Uni Trinoque Domino
Sit sempiterna gloria,
Qui vitam sine termino
Nobis donet in patria. Amen.

O saving Victim, opening wide
The gate of heaven to men below!
Our foes press on from every side;
Thine aid supply, thy strength bestow.

To thy great name be endless praise,
Immortal Godhead, One in Three!
O grant us endless length of days
In our true native land with thee. Amen.

* Cardinal Newman, *Present Position of Catholics in England*, ed. 4, p. 256.

After which generally follows the Litany of the Blessed Virgin, and frequently also a prayer and response. Then is sung the "Tantum ergo Sacramentum," all present making a profound inclination of the body at the words "veneremur cernui."

Tantum ergo Sacramentum
Venerémur cernui;
Et antiquum documentum
Novo cedat ritui;
Praestet fides supplementum
Sensuum defectui.

Genitóri, Genitóque
Laus et jubilatio,
Salus, honor, virtus quoque
Sit et benedictio;
Procedenti ab utroque
Compar sit laudatio. Amen.

Down in adoration falling,
Lo the sacred Host we hail;
Lo! o'er ancient forms departing,
Newer rites of grace prevail;
Faith for all defects supplying
Where the feeble senses fail.

To the everlasting Father,
And the Son who reigns on high,
With the Holy Ghost proceeding
Forth from each eternally,
Be salvation, honor, blessing
Might and endless Majesty. Amen.

Then are sung the following Versicle and Response.

V. Panem de Coelo praestitisti eis (Alleluia).

R. Omne delectamentum in se habentem (Alleluia).

V. Thou didst give them bread from heaven (Alleluia).

R. Containing in itself all sweetness (Alleluia).

Alleluia is added in Paschal time, and during the octave of Corpus Christi.

Orémus.

Deus qui nobis sub Sacramento mirábili, passionis tuae memoriam reliquisti; tribue, quaesumus, ita nos corporis et sanguinis tui sacra mysteria venerári; ut redemptionis tuae fructum in nobis júgiter sentiámus. Qui vivis et regnas in saecula saeculorum. Amen.

Let us pray.

O God, who, under a wonderful Sacrament, hast left us a memorial of thy passion; grant us, we beseech thee, so to venerate the sacred mysteries of thy body and blood, that we may ever feel within us the fruit of thy redemption, who livest and reignest, world without end. Amen.

Here the benediction is given with the blessed sacrament, all bowing down in profound adoration and beseeching our Lord there present to bestow His blessing on themselves, and on the whole Church, and upon the world.

Then is often sung in Latin thrice, followed by the Laudate Dominum (Praise the Lord), Psalm 116.

Adorémus in aeternum
Sanctissimum Sacramentum.

May we forever adore
The most holy sacrament.

*An Act of Spiritual Communion.**

I believe in Thee, O my Jesus, present in the most holy sacrament of

* With Saint Alphonsus Liguori, I would exhort all who seek to advance in the love of Jesus Christ to make a *spiritual communion* each time they visit the blessed sacrament or hear Mass. It would be better to make a spiritual communion three times on these occasions; namely, at the beginning, middle, and end of the visit, and of the Mass.

the altar ; I love Thee above all things ; and I desire to receive Thee into my soul. Since I cannot now receive Thee *sacramentally*, come at least *spiritually* into my heart. I embrace Thee, and I unite myself to Thee as if Thou wert already within my heart. Oh, never let me be separated from Thee ! O Lord Jesus Christ, let the sweet and consuming force of Thy love absorb my whole soul, that I may die for the love of Thee, who wast pleased to die upon the cross for the love of me.

Chapter XIX.

Confirmation. Extreme Unction. Holy Orders. Matrimony.

BESIDES Baptism, Holy Eucharist, and Penance, the Catholic Church holds four other sacred rites as sacraments, namely, Confirmation, Extreme Unction, Holy Orders, and Matrimony.

Confirmation is a sacrament instituted by our Lord, by which the faithful, who have already been made children of God by baptism, receive the Holy Ghost by the prayer, unction (or anointing with holy oil, called *chrism*), and the laying on of the hands of a bishop, the successor of the Apostles. It is thus that they are enriched with gifts, graces, and virtues, especially with the virtue of fortitude, and made perfect Christians and valiant soldiers of Jesus Christ, to stand through life the whole warfare of the world, the flesh and the devil.

The first recorded instance of confirmation being administered to the faithful is in the eighth chapter of the Acts of the Apostles, where St. Peter and St. John confirmed the Samaritans who had been already baptized by St. Philip. "They prayed for them that they might receive the Holy Ghost. . . . Then they laid their hands upon them, and they received the Holy Ghost." (Vers. 15, 17.)

By this sacrament a certain dedication and consecration of the soul to God is made, the *mark* of which is left forever on the soul. This mark is called a *character*, and can never be effaced. Hence this sacrament can only be received once.

All Christians are bound to receive confirmation. The want of opportunity only can excuse from sin for not receiving it.

It must be received in a state of grace ; and therefore, if a Christian is conscious that he is in a state of mortal sin, he must first come to the sacrament of penance.

The time to receive confirmation is from about seven years to any older age. "All must make haste to be confirmed by a bishop ; that is,

to receive the sevenfold *grace of the Holy Ghost*." (St. Clement, *Epistola ad Julium*.)

THE sacrament of extreme unction consists in the anointing, by the priest, of those in danger of death by sickness, with holy oil, accompanied with a special prayer. It is called *extreme*, because administered to sick persons when thought to be near the close of life.

It is a true sacrament, because it possesses all the requisites for a sacrament. 1st, It has the outward sign, which consists in the anointing with a little oil the seat of the senses, as the eyes, the ears, the nostrils, the lips, the hands, and the feet, accompanied by special prayers. 2d, It has the promise of grace, as recorded by the Apostle St. James: "Is any man sick among you? Let him bring in the priests of the church; and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord. And the prayer of faith shall save the sick man; and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he be in sins, they shall be forgiven him." (v. 14, 15.) 3d, That it has been instituted by Christ is gathered from this, that none but God can give to an outward rite the power of forgiving sins and of imparting inward grace, as St James asserts is imparted through this rite.

This sacrament can be received several times during life, but only once in the same dangerous illness.

Christians should not be negligent and postpone to the last moment of life the reception of this sacrament, for there is a danger of dying without it, and thus they would be deprived of special graces, and of a more thorough purification of the soul, which would have rendered them better prepared for death and more fit to meet their eternal Judge.

A slight danger, or as St. Alphonsus Liguori expresses it, "a danger of danger," that the illness might become serious, justifies the reception of the sacrament.

By postponing, one may also lose the blessing of recovery. For, as experience confirms, when God sees it to be good, extreme unction, besides purifying the soul, gives health to the body. "The prayer of faith shall save the sick man, and the Lord shall raise him up." (St. James v. 15.)

FOR carrying on divine worship, ruling the Church, and administering the sacraments, a priesthood is required, and it belongs to God alone to institute the priesthood.

In the Old Law, God chose and raised to the priesthood Aaron, his children and their descendants, and they were to be assisted in their priestly functions by the members of the tribe of Levi; and thus the priesthood was transmitted to posterity simply by family descent. In the New Law the means instituted by Christ for the transmission of the priesthood was not by limiting it to one family or tribe, but by having

the sacrament of holy orders conferred on those Christians whom the Apostles and their successors should see fit to choose among the baptized and who are willing to be ordained.

Holy orders, then, is a sacrament by which bishops, priests, and other ministers of the Church are ordained, and receive power and grace to perform their sacred duties.

The sacramental character of holy orders is manifest in Holy Scripture. St. Paul, in his epistles to St. Timothy, says: "Neglect not the grace that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with imposition of the hands of the priesthood." (1 St. Timothy iv. 14.) "I admonish thee that thou stir up the grace of God which is in thee by the imposition of my hands." (2 St. Timothy i. 6.)

Here we have all the essentials of a sacrament—the outward sign—the inward grace annexed—and divine appointment; for, as we have before said, God alone can make outward signs to be means of grace.

MATRIMONY, also called marriage, is the conjugal union of man and woman who are naturally and legally fit to marry.

It was raised by Christ to the dignity of a sacrament, and is a bond only to be dissolved by death.

The married state is charged with many responsibilities, and has many difficulties to meet, many burdens to bear, and many temptations to overcome.

Jesus Christ, in raising Christian marriage to a higher order, to a supernatural dignity, imposed stricter and nobler duties on the married couple. They have to be subject one to the other in the fear of God, and the women "subject to their husbands, as to the Lord." (Ephesians v. 22.) They have to love, nourish, and cherish each other, as Christ loved the Church (ver. 25), and to train up their children in the fear of God. "Provoke not your children to anger; but bring them up in the discipline and correction of the Lord." (vi. 4.)

It is therefore clear that for the married state there is needed not merely an ordinary, but a very great and special grace, such as is received in a sacrament.

Jesus Christ ennobled and blessed marriage by assisting personally at the nuptials of Cana in Galilee: He sanctioned the marriage bond with those sacred and plain words: "What therefore God hath joined together, let not man put asunder" (St. Mark x. 9), and raised it to the dignity of a sacrament of the New Law.

St. Paul calls it not only a sacrament, but a "great sacrament," because it is a sacrament in a twofold manner; first, in the ordinary sense of a sacrament of the New Law, being an outward sign of a holy and indissoluble union fortified by grace; secondly, because marriage itself,

when lawful, is a mystical sign and an emblem of Christ's union with the Church: "This is a great sacrament," he says, "but I speak in Christ and in the church." (Ephesians v. 32.)

Hence St. Cyril says: "Christ sanctified wedlock, and gave grace to marriage." (Cap. ii. in *Johannem* No. xxii.) Tertullian, St. Irenæus, St. Augustine and St. Ambrose style marriage a sacrament. The Nestorians, Copts, Armenians, and Greeks, though separated from the Catholic Church, are unanimous in recognizing marriage as a sacrament; agreeing in this with the Roman Catholic Church, which has always regarded marriage as a sacrament of the New Law.

It is the teaching of the Church that legitimate matrimony between baptized persons can never be a mere contract, but is always also a sacrament. Though not defined as a point of faith, it is more generally held that the ministers of this sacrament are the contracting parties themselves, when by word or outward signs they mutually accept each other as husband and wife.

In those parts of the world (as in England), where the decrees of the Council of Trent respecting matrimony have not yet been published and promulgated, the presence of the Catholic parish priest is not essential for the validity of the sacrament, it is only required in order to render it lawful; but in those parts where the Council of Trent is officially published, his presence is required to render the contract valid as well as lawful in the eyes of the Church.

The words which the priest pronounces upon the contracting parties—"I join you together in matrimony, in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost," are only intended to acknowledge and solemnly ratify the sacred engagement just effected by the contracting parties. The other prayers which he recites afterwards serve to implore more abundant blessings upon the couple just married.

Hence it follows that both parties ought to be in a state of grace when they contract the sacrament of marriage, for two reasons, 1st, because they themselves administer the sacrament, and 2d, because they receive that sacrament.

As the union of Christ with the Church cannot be broken, so the bond between husband and wife is indissoluble. There is no cause that can justify, or power upon earth that can authorize the breaking of a legal and true marriage bond between Christians after the marriage has been consummated.

Separation, except by mutual consent, is forbidden. For grave reasons, it is sometimes permitted to the innocent party to live separately, but this separation would only improperly be called divorce, as in such case the marriage bond is not broken, and neither party can marry again

during the lifetime of the other ; if ever, therefore, the word divorce is used, this word is understood to mean only *a separation from bed and board* ; but *divorce*, properly and strictly so called, in the sense that a divorced person may remarry during the lifetime of his or her respective partner, is forbidden by the law of God : and there is no reason that can justify, or authority on earth that can sanction it.

This has been the teaching of the Catholic Church in all ages, as proved from passages of the fathers and doctors of the Church.

For the first five centuries the indissoluble nature of marriage is testified by Hermas, St. Justin, Athenagoras, Tertullian, St. Leo of Alexandria, Origen, St. Basil, St. Ephrem, St. Chrysostom, St. Cyprian, Lactantius, St. Hilary, St. Jerome, and St. Augustine.

Jesus Christ was too explicit on this point to allow of being misunderstood. His words are as follows : "Every one that putteth away his wife, and marrieth another, committeth adultery ; and he that marrieth her that is put away from her husband committeth adultery." (St. Luke xvi. 18.) St. Paul teaches that nothing but death can dissolve the marriage bond. "To them that are married," he says, "not I, but the Lord commandeth, that the wife depart not from her husband. And if she depart, that she remain unmarried, or be reconciled to her husband. And let not the husband put away his wife." (1 Corinthians vii. 10, 11.)

The common impression among some Protestants that the Church or the Pope has occasionally sanctioned divorce or the breaking of the marriage bond, allowing one or both of the parties to remarry during the lifetime of the other, is without a true foundation.

It should be noticed that there are some cases which render a marriage invalid and null, as, for example, default of consent, close affinity, illegality of contract, defect of age, and other invalidating causes.

In these cases the Church can, after inquiring into the matter, declare the union to have been null and void from the beginning ; and this has been done, and may be done again. Strictly speaking, however, this is not dissolving an existing marriage, but in reality only declaring that no marriage ever existed between certain parties, on account of some impediment which made the contract void. But a valid marriage completed between baptized persons cannot, in any case, be dissolved. God has joined them together, and that sacred bond no one, not even a Pope, can rend asunder.

Society in general, and Catholics especially, ought to be most thankful to Jesus Christ for having established this inviolable sanctity of marriage, by which numberless scandals, and family strifes and miseries, are prevented, family happiness more universally secured, and the weaker sex and children greatly protected.

If in some particular case this law may happen to be burdensome, especially to persons who have been wanting either in prudence in the choice they made, or in justice and kindness toward their partners, this hardship to the few is small compared with the immense good derived from this law by society at large.

The sufferer must not, on account of his special grief, revolt against God, but bear patiently this like any other trouble, and adorn the general dispensation of the Creator and Lord of nature.

Chapter XX.

Only One True Church. First Mark—Oneness of Faith, of Worship, of Sacraments, and of Supreme Ruler.

“**C**OME, and I will shew thee the bride, the wife of the Lamb.”
(Apocalypse [Rev.] xxi. 9.)

In the Old Law, only in the temple of Jerusalem could sacrifices be offered to God. That was a figure of the Church of Christ, that special body of Christians which Christ recognizes as His own, and to which it is necessary to belong in order to be acceptable to God, as a member of the mystical body of Christ.

The true Church of Christ on earth is the union of all the faithful, who communicate one with another by profession of the same faith, by the participation of the same sacraments, and who are subject to their own bishops, and in a special manner to the Roman pontiff, who is the visible centre of all Catholic union.

This society of Christians forms, as it were, one body with that which Christ, whilst on earth, founded principally on St. Peter, and also on the other Apostles, who were, as a ruling body, to continue, in their lawful successors, to rule the same until the end of the world. This ruling body in the Church Jesus Christ established with the intention of providing all men, through them, with the proper means to obtain eternal salvation.

As there is but *one* God, *one* baptism, *one* truth, *one* faith, *one* fold, *one* Shepherd, *one* way, *one* body, *one* spirit, so that there can be but *one* true Church of God on earth, the *spouse*, as St. Paul and St. John call her, of Jesus Christ. And first of all, the true Church must have its members united in faith, for Christ sent His Apostles to teach one set of truths, not contradictory doctrines, and commands all men to believe *the faith preached by the Apostles*, for He says : “He that believeth not [what you shall have taught] shall be condemned.” (St. Mark xvi. 16.) He requires

the same *unity* in the duties ordered by Him to be fulfilled by Christians, for He says: "Going therefore, teach ye all nations . . . teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you." (St. Matt. xxviii. 19, 20.) The promise of salvation is attached to that faith, hope, and charity which Christ has taught, and to no other.

Again, what Christ has taught as true must necessarily be true for all times, for all people, and under all circumstances, and therefore, *unity of doctrine* is a necessary *mark* of a faith that comes from God, and any system of religion which is not consistent and unchanging in its teaching is thereby convicted of not being the true religion of our Lord; since "Jesus Christ *is* yesterday, and to-day, and for ever the same."

This Church of Christ is the Catholic Church, under the government of St. Peter's successor, the Bishop of Rome; because this Church alone possesses, enjoys, and shows forth all the *four marks* of God's true Church, as pointed out in Scripture, and declared in the Nicene creed in the words: "I believe one, holy, Catholic, and apostolic Church."

THE true Church of Christ must not be a mere medley of disjointed parts, but the parts must be so corresponding and so well connected together as to form a perfect whole, like several members forming a compact, organized, and living body: and this we understand when we say that the true Church must be *one*. (Ephesians iv. 16.) That is, one in faith, and one in organization.

Protestants hold and proclaim, as a right for all, the *private* interpretation of the Bible. This principle, *if it were from God*, should make them all agree in what they believe and teach; but they are divided by this principle into a great number of denominations, opposed in various points of belief one to the other.*

Catholics, however, *are all united in one body*, holding one faith everywhere the same; in having the same sacraments and sacrifice, and all submitting to the same one, visible, universal chief pastor, the Roman pontiff, who is the centre of all Catholic union.

Catholics all agree in acknowledging *Jesus Christ* to be their only Redeemer, and in believing all that Jesus Christ taught and continues to teach by His Church, especially whenever that Church declares and defines any doctrine of faith or of morals; so that every one can know exactly what he must believe, and what he must do in order to be saved. And there is not an instance of any point of faith once defined as true by the Church in a general council, or by the Pope speaking *ex cathedrâ*, having been contradicted by another general council or by any Pope speaking *ex cathedrâ*; nor will there be such an instance to the end of time.

*See Part III. No. 17 of this book, Statistics of Protestant Sects,

They also share in a common sympathy, and are in perfect communion with one another all over the world.

They share one with another their prayers and all good works. They communicate also in worship ; for Catholics admit everywhere their fellow-Catholics to the participation of the sacraments ; in the case of priests they are allowed by the local bishops and by their fellow-priests to celebrate holy Mass in their churches in every land. But above all, Catholics are united under the guidance of the same one visible chief pastor, the Bishop of Rome, the lawful successor of St. Peter, to whom Jesus Christ committed the care of His whole flock on earth.

Chapter XXI.

The Supremacy of the Bishop of Rome.

THIS supremacy or chief authority does not mean that the Pope has a higher degree of priesthood than other bishops. Of the various degrees of priesthood, that of bishop being the highest, the Pope is, in that respect, no higher than any other lawfully ordained bishop. But, by the Pope's supremacy is meant that, as among the bishops there is a difference in authority and jurisdiction, some being bishops, others archbishops, others primates, and others patriarchs, so the Bishop of Rome is, in authority and jurisdiction, above all bishops, as well as above all the faithful of the universal Church on earth.

It is essential to the constitution of the Church that one of her bishops should be recognized supreme in authority, otherwise it would be next to impossible to stay threatening abuses which local bishops might be unwilling or unable to correct ; to apply a remedy if a bishop of any diocese has become perverted in faith or morals ; to settle matters in dispute which might arise between bishop and bishop, or between bishops and laymen. Without this supreme authority there would not be union or sympathy between one part of Christendom and the other : to assemble general councils would be almost impossible ; to found new bishoprics, to fill up vacant sees, and to transfer a bishop from one see to another, would naturally fall into the hands of lay persons, or at least be dependent on them ; and the sending of missionaries to foreign parts would either not be attended to, or done in a timid, lax, irregular, and inefficient manner. It is a most remarkable fact that every nation hitherto converted from paganism to Christianity since the days of the Apostles has received the light of faith



THE ROCK OF AGES.

from missionaries who were either especially commissioned by the see of Rome, or sent by bishops in open communion with that see.

Besides, if such supreme spiritual authority did not exist, there would be, instead of one Church, many churches opposed one to another, some of them being kept together only in a hollow union consisting in outward conformity kept up by temporal power. It could not in that case be said that the Church of Christ is one, nor could she then be compared to a human body with many members and one visible *head*; nor could she be called a *kingdom*, unless a kingdom divided against itself, and a kingdom without a king.

Suppose, for example, that one of the British colonies were to withdraw itself from the jurisdiction of the British crown: from that time, even though the inhabitants were of British race, tongue and customs, and had similar laws, that colony would evidently cease to form part of the British Empire. In like manner any part of Catholicity, withdrawing itself in spiritual matters from the centre of supreme ecclesiastical authority, would from that time cease to be part of the heaven-born kingdom of the Catholic Church. Such a body of Christians would become independent, and denominational, or national; but a living branch or part of the one visible Catholic body it could not be.

It being essential, then, that one of the bishops should preside over the visible Church of God on earth, which of all the bishops in the world should we naturally think ought to be invested with that supremacy? Should it be the bishop of Jerusalem, of Antioch, of Constantinople, of Alexandria, of Paris, of London or of Rome?

St. Peter, from the day of Pentecost, exercised, as appears from the first twelve chapters of the Acts of the Apostles, a supremacy over the other Apostles and over the whole Church; it therefore seems just that the see permanently chosen by St. Peter, and in which he died, should be regarded as enjoying that privilege. Now, it is a well-attested fact, as is proved by history and monumental evidence, that the permanent see chosen by St. Peter was Rome, then the capital of the Roman Empire, and that there he suffered martyrdom by being fastened to a cross with his head towards the earth at his earnest entreaty, deeming himself unworthy to suffer crucifixion in the same manner as his divine Master.* St. Peter identified in his own person in the Roman chair, both episcopal and primatial dignity; therefore also those who after him lawfully occupy this chair unite and identify in themselves both authorities, so much the more that, if St. Peter during his life might have separated these two authorities, this separation after his death could no longer be done; unless, there-

*That St. Peter was in Rome as first Bishop, see Part III. of this book, No. I.

fore, as Bossuet rightly observes, we pretend that the successors of St. Peter must come straight down from heaven, we must confess that there are no other successors of St. Peter but the Roman pontiffs.

The Bishops of Rome, in fact, always claimed and still claim that supremacy, and no other bishop in the world claims it, or ever did claim it.

Some have indeed pretended to see an exception in Pope St. Gregory the Great, because in his letter (iv. 20) to John the patriarch of Constantinople, he rejects the title of *universal* Bishop. We must observe, however, that though St. Gregory rejected that title and was satisfied, like other Popes, with the title of Bishop of Rome, he did not, however, reject the *supremacy of jurisdiction*, but asserted it in plain words for himself, as other Popes had done, and he asserted it in that very letter: for, speaking in it of the see of Constantinople, he says: "Who doubts that it is subject to the apostolic see?" and again, he says: "When bishops commit a fault, I know not what bishop is not subject to it" (that is, to the see of Rome). St. Gregory, moreover, repeatedly exercised the supremacy. Let it suffice here to mention what we read in the instruction he gave to the Benedictine monk, St. Augustine (or Austin as he is often called), when he sent him to England, in which instruction he says: "We give you no jurisdiction over the bishops of Gaul, . . . but we commit to your care all the bishops of Britain." (History of Venerable Bede, i. 27.) No Pope has exercised universal jurisdiction over every part of Christendom more amply than St. Gregory, justly styled the Great.

In all ages the Bishop of Rome has been regarded by all bishops, kings and nations that were Catholic as the successor of St. Peter, and as the supreme visible ruler and administrator of the Catholic Church; and whenever any one rejected the Pope's supremacy, from that moment he was not regarded as a Catholic.

The very names of Romanist, papist, and ultramontane, so freely given to Catholics by those outside the Church, show that they see that the essential feature in Catholicism is, that Catholics, although belonging to different nations, yet form one compact body with their common centre of authority in Rome. They see that it is this that makes Catholics what they really are, *one fold, one body, one kingdom* in spiritual matters, *one Church*. They can see that, in default of this supremacy, Catholics would cease to be Catholics, and would be throughout the world like stray sheep at the mercy of any who might take advantage of their division.

Protestants for the most part are under the impression that this supreme authority of the see of Rome is a usurpation; that it did not exist originally, but was introduced in course of time.

History proves, however, that the Pope's supremacy was as firmly believed by Catholics in the first ages of Christianity as in those that followed. So far from there being any difference on this head, the fact is, that whilst the supremacy of the Pope has been rejected in later ages by the schismatical churches of the East, and by Protestant communities which have separated themselves from the Catholic Church, for the first seven hundred years the whole of Christendom united in believing and proclaiming and submitting to the supremacy of the Roman see. So much so that about the year 140, the then ruling pontiff, Sixtus I., could issue the rule that a bishop going back from Rome to his own diocese without a "*Littera formata*," that is, without the apostolic declaration that he was recognized by the Roman pontiff to be in communion with him, his diocesans were bound not to regard him as their legitimate pastor. (H. W. Wouters, *Epoca* II. § 9.—History of the Roman Pontiffs by Artaud de Mentor.)

The fathers of the primitive Church had no doubt whatever that the Roman pontiff was, by God's appointment, the supreme pastor of "sheep" and "lambs;" that is (as interpreted by the fathers of the Church) of the whole flock of Christ, and the visible source of all spiritual jurisdiction. To reject this truth was, in their judgment, to ruin the whole fabric of the Church; to deny his vicar was to deny Christ. No one ever pretended to create this majestic office: the divine institution of it was always taken for granted. The councils did not invent it, but bore witness to it as older than themselves.

"The Roman Church always had the primacy," said the fathers of Nicæa in the year of our Lord 325, as quoted by the Council of Chalcedon, A. D. 451.*

* Though these words are not found in the Greek exemplars now extant of the Acts of the Council of Nicæa, there is no doubt that they did exist, at least in some copies of those Acts at the time of the Chalcedonian Council (451), for in the Acts of the 16th Session of this Council it is stated that the Roman legate, Bishop Paschasinus, read before that general assembly the VI. Canon of the Council of Nicæa, beginning with these words, "The Roman see always had the primacy."

It cannot be reasonably supposed that Pope St. Leo the Great would have entrusted forged exemplars to his legates, or that Bishop Paschasinus would have dared to read a forged copy of the Acts of the Nicene Council before such an assembly over which he presided; nor could he have done so without provoking some contradiction on the part of the fathers. Great ecclesiastical historians and theologians agree in stating that when the Roman legate, Paschasinus, read the said passage, no one contradicted. (See *Labbe*, Act I., Col. 93, tom. IV. *Bellarmino de Rom. Pontif.*, Book II., Chap. 13. *Hefele* in his recent *Concilien Geschichte*, Vol. I., page 384. *Cardinal Orsi Eccles. History*, Book XXXIII., No. 79.)

Two writers have lately ventured to state that the fathers of the Council of Chalcedon repudiated the assertion of Paschasinus respecting the primacy of the Roman see; one of the writers* did so without producing any authority; the other, Dr. Littledale, grounded himself wrongfully on Fleury; I say wrongfully, because the reference given by him does not even allude to the matter in question, and where Monsignor Claude Fleury gives an account of this transaction of the Council of Chalcedon he asserts quite the contrary. These are his words: "Paschasinus read the VI. Canon of Nicæa beginning with these words: 'The Church of Rome always had the primacy,' which are not in the Greek, and notwithstanding in this particular no ob-

* A correspondent of the (Anglican) *Church Times*.

The great Council of Sardica, 347, wrote to Pope Julius I., that it was "most fitting that the bishops of the Lord make reference from all the provinces *to the head, that is, the see of the Apostle Peter.*"

The Council of Chalcedon, in 451, not only deposed Dioscorus, archbishop of Alexandria, in obedience to Pope St. Leo I., called "the Great," whom the fathers inscribed as "the most blessed Apostle Peter, who is the rock and ground of the Catholic Church," but did so because Dioscorus had "dared to hold a council without the authority of the apostolic see." And this Council of Chalcedon was notably an Eastern council. More than 600 bishops attended it from the East, and only two, Bishop Paschasinus and the priest Boniface (the Pope's legates) were from the West; yet in their synodical letter the council called the Roman pontiff: "the interpreter to all of the voice of the blessed Peter." They say that he is entrusted by the Saviour with the guardianship of the "vineyard," and they humbly solicit him to confirm their conciliar acts by his "supreme authority." All the councils, one after another, say the same thing, and they all ground the doctrine which they all attest, upon the words of our divine Lord.

Many Protestants, following the "Book of Homilies," say that they accept the first six general councils. Should they, however, accept only the first four general councils, admitted by the English Parliament in the first year of Queen Elizabeth (1558, ch. 1, Sec. 36) as authority in the trial of heresies, they must accept the doctrine of the supremacy of the Bishop of Rome, for to the fathers of Ephesus and Chalcedon the opinion of those who deny the supremacy of the Pope would have seemed a hateful impiety, a denial of the Gospel, and a subversion of the Church of Christ.

The ancient fathers agree with the early councils in proclaiming the supremacy of the Bishop of Rome. St. Cyprian (who died in the year of our Lord 258) says that the Pope is the only "fount of spiritual jurisdiction;" and St. Maximus (who died 335), that "whoever anathematizes the Roman see, anathematizes the Catholic Church;" and St. Ambrose (397), that "where Peter is there is the Church" ("*Ubi Petrus ibi Ecclesia*," in Psalm xl.); and St. Innocent I. (417), that "the very episcopate and all the authority of this title sprung from the apostolic see;" and St. Je-

jection was raised." (*Ecclesiastical History* of Monsignor Claude Fleury, Vol. IV., Book 28, No. XXX.) Many other accusations of this writer against the Roman Catholic Church have been proved untrue by the Rev. H. Ryder of the Oratory in his book entitled *Catholic Controversy*, a reply to *Plain Reasons* of Dr. Richard Littledale. Instead of bringing false accusations against the poor author of this book, he had better try to oppose to it a *simple exposition of the faith of the Anglican state Church*.

It is important to notice here that as it was the custom in that age for each bishop who wished to have his own notary to write down the transactions of a council, it should not surprise that differences occurred in various reports of the Acts. It should also not be forgotten that a positive historical assertion has a great deal more weight than mere silence on the part of other equally good historians.

rome (420), "whoso gathereth not with thee scattereth;" and St. Augustine (430), that "the see of Peter is the rock against which the proud gates of hell prevail not."

That great father, St. Irenæus, who flourished only a little more than a hundred years after the death of Christ, and had seen some of those who had seen our Lord, tells us expressly, "that all churches and all the faithful of Christ are bound to agree with the Roman Church on account of her superior principality." (Against Heresies, book iii. chap. vii.)

The Roman see is the supreme tribunal before which the saints have always pleaded. St. Cyprian (who died in the year 258), told Antonianus that "to be united with the see of Rome is to be united to the Catholic Church." St. Dionysius of Alexandria (271), being accused of heresy, implores Pope Dionysius I. to examine and judge his faith. St. Peter of Alexandria (312) has recourse to Pope Damasus I. St. Athanasius (373), driven from his see, appeals to the Roman pontiff, Julius I. St. Augustine (402) accepts the judgment of Innocent I. as that of heaven. St. Cyril of Alexandria (444) wrote a letter to Pope Celestine I., praying him to judge the heresy of Nestorius. Everywhere the Roman pontiff, whether a Victor, a Dionysius, a Damasus, an Innocent, or a Gregory, claims the same supreme authority, and everywhere the saints confess with acclamation that he derives it from God.

In all these instances the cases submitted to the judgment of the holy see were carefully investigated and judicially discussed, and ample justice was done to the contending parties. Ecclesiastical history is full of similar appeals, when the adverse parties manifested the most perfect acquiescence in the authority and equity of the judge.

Every part of Christendom bears witness, from the earliest ages, that the Church is built on Peter. A dispute having arisen in the Church of Corinth as to who should be regarded as the legitimate pastor, the Corinthians did not apply to any Apostle then living, not even to St. John in Ephesus, but applied to Rome, to St. Clement, the third successor of St. Peter. The Christian historian Socrates relates, that at one and the same time the bishops of Constantinople, Gaza, Ancyra, and Adrianople, driven from their sees, committed their cause to Pope Julius. The Council of Antioch adopts the words of Juvenal, bishop of Jerusalem, that "it is an apostolic tradition that the Church of Antioch should be directed and judged by the Church of Rome." Churches in places the most distant from the Roman see proclaim the same truth as strongly as those which are situated nearer to it.

In 740 St. Boniface, an Englishman, and the seven English suffragans in Germany, wrote to the English king and to Cuthbert, archbishop of Canterbury, telling them what they had recently done in synod.

"We declared," they say, "that we would preserve the Catholic faith and unity, and subjection to the Roman Church, to the end of our life; that we would be subject to St. Peter and his vicar; that the metropolitans should in all things strive to follow canonically the precepts of St. Peter, in order that they may be numbered among the sheep entrusted to his care: and this confession we all consented to, and subscribed, and sent to the body of St. Peter, the prince of the Apostles."

About this time it appears that in the year 787 Pope Adrian I. at the request of Offa, king of Mercia and East Anglia, made Lichfield into a metropolitan see, detaching it, together with other bishoprics, from the metropolitan see of Canterbury. This request of King Offa was made on the plea that the extent of the province of Canterbury was extremely large. About fifty years later, Coenulph, who had succeeded to the crown of Egforth, son of Offa, king of Mercia and East Anglia, wrote a suppliant letter to the Pope Leo III., then reigning, in his own name and in that of the bishops and dukes of England, saying: "No one presumes to gainsay your apostolic authority;" and praying that Lichfield might again be subjected as a suffragan to the see of Canterbury. Pope Leo III., "by his apostolic authority," granted their petition, and restored Lichfield to the former condition of suffragan to the see of Canterbury.

At the first Council of Arles, convened by desire of the Emperor Constantine to settle the cause of the Donatists, held in 314, with the intervention of 200 bishops, the British bishops of London, York, and Caerleon, confessed, in the name of all their colleagues, the supreme rights and prerogatives of the holy see.*

A similar declaration of submission to the Roman see was made by the British bishops at the Council of Sardica, A. D. 347.

When England had subdued Wales, and the bishop of St. David's was summoned to do homage to the see of Canterbury, he replied that the British bishops had never recognized any superior "except the holy see." The Church of Scotland gave a like answer to the archbishop of York, when he claimed jurisdiction over it, and "the answer was approved," as Lingard observes, "by Pope Clement III." These are only a few examples out of many that could be brought forward.

This office of the Roman pontiff was given to him, not by men, but by God. It is God's provision, God's creation, "for the preservation of unity," as St. Thomas Aquinas remarks. It was not conferred on the Roman pontiff by the Church; it comes directly from God. It is inherited directly from St. Peter, to whom it was given by Christ.

This supreme authority was given to St. Peter under three most remarkable similitudes.

* See Butler's *Lives of the Saints*, Notes on May 26 and December 31.

Christ compares the Church He is about to establish to a *building*, and makes St. Peter, after Himself, the foundation of it: "Thou art Peter; and upon this rock I will build my Church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it." (St. Matt. xvi. 18.)* It is the foundation which upholds and keeps a building solid; and in a body of men it is clearly the ruling authority which performs the same office.

Again, our Lord compares His Church to a *town* or *kingdom*, the keys of which He places in the hands of St. Peter, making him the master of it: "And I will give to thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven." (St. Matt. xvi. 19.) This expresses in a forcible way the idea of chief authority, as it does also in Isaias, referring to the Messiah: "I will lay the key of the house of David upon his shoulder, and he shall open, and none shall shut: and he shall shut, and none shall open." (xxii. 22.)

Third, our Lord compares His Church to a *sheepfold*, and makes St. Peter head shepherd of it: "Simon, son of John, lovest thou me more than these? . . . Feed my lambs; . . . Feed my lambs. . . . Feed my sheep." (St. John xxi. 15-17.)

These three comparisons all go to prove that our Lord conferred a supreme authority on St. Peter, whom He made the centre of unity, the ruler and leader of His kingdom, then about to be established upon earth.

Besides these passages, in which our Lord gives to St. Peter supreme authority under these striking comparisons, we find one in which Jesus Christ, having assured St. Peter that He had prayed for him that his faith should *not* fail, in the plainest language entrusted to him this commission: "Confirm thy brethren." This was given at a most solemn moment, just when the bitter passion of our Lord was about to commence. (St. Luke xxii. 32.)

These passages prove that our Lord Jesus Christ established St. Peter,

* "Thou art Peter, &c. As St. Peter, by divine revelation, here made a solemn profession of his faith of the divinity of Christ; so in recompense of this faith and profession, our Lord here declares to him the dignity to which He is pleased to raise him: *viz.*, that he, to whom He had already given the name of *Peter*, signifying a *rock* (St. John i. 42), should be a *rock* indeed, of invincible strength, for the support of the building of the Church; in which building he should be, next to Christ Himself, the chief foundation stone, in quality of chief pastor, ruler, and governor; and should have accordingly all fulness of ecclesiastical power, signified by the keys of the kingdom of heaven. *Upon this rock, &c.* The words of Christ to *Peter*, spoken in the vulgar language of the *Jews* which our Lord made use of, were the same as if He had said in *English*: *Thou art a rock, and upon this rock I will build my Church.* So that, by the plain course of the words, *Peter* is here declared to be the rock upon which the Church was to be built: Christ Himself being both the principal foundation and founder of the same. Where also note, that Christ, by building His house, that is, His Church, upon a rock, has thereby secured it against all storms and floods, like the wise builder. (St. Matthew vii. 24, 25.) *The gates of hell, &c.* That is, the powers of darkness, and whatever Satan can do, either by himself or his agents. For as the Church is here likened to a house, or fortress, built on a rock, so the adverse powers are likened to a contrary house, or fortress, the gates of which, *i. e.*, the whole strength, and all the efforts it can make, will never be able to prevail over the City or Church of Christ. By this promise we are fully assured, that neither idolatry, heresy, nor any pernicious error whatsoever, shall at any time prevail over the Church of Christ."—Footnote in *Donay Bible on these passages.*

and in the person of St. Peter his legitimate successors, as the chief pastors of His Church upon earth. For it cannot be supposed that at the death of St. Peter the Church was to remain without its visible head pastor, without its foundation; therefore as St. Peter was to die, and the Church was to last to the end of the world, so the authority which Jesus Christ established for the purpose of keeping the whole Church together, like a compact body, was, of necessity, and according to Christ's will, to be transmitted to St. Peter's legitimate successors, and was to last as long as the Church itself lasted.*

No Christian, then, should seek a pretext for denying this supremacy, essential to the Church, clearly instituted by Christ, and plainly intended for the good of the faithful. If the Pope's authority is great, the good derived from it to the Church is still greater. If this office is gigantic and seemingly beyond the power of man to wield, the experience of eighteen centuries proves that it is practicable with the promised and never-failing assistance of God.

In the Old Law there was only one supreme pontiff or high priest for the whole Jewish people, though the Jews in vast numbers were spread over the world. We should not wonder, therefore, that, in the new dispensation, Christ should have established only *one* supreme administrator of His household on earth, that it might always be *one*, as He Himself is one. We should not wonder that He should have prepared a rock as the foundation of His *one* Church on earth, based upon Himself, the foundation of all, and the very rock of ages.

Our Lord Jesus Christ being the *foundation of foundations* (Isaias xxviii. 16), and *chief corner-stone*, has the *fulness* of authority over the whole Church, whether in heaven or on earth, whether present or future, and is the original source of all authority and jurisdiction. Compared with the authority of Christ, that of the Pope over the Church is dependent, temporal, and, though ample, has its limits. The authority of the Pope is from Christ, under Christ, and for Christ. He only possesses this authority over the Church on earth during the few years of his pontificate. This is but a small portion of the immense flock of Christ, which consists of "a great multitude which no man could number, of all nations, and tribes, and peoples, and tongues" (Apocalypse [Revelation] vii. 9); and over the whole of which great multitude, when gathered together in the end of time from all the nations of the world, from all past ages, Jesus, the everlasting Shepherd of our souls, will Himself, without the ministry of any representative, visibly preside for ever and ever in heaven.

* That St. Peter was the first Bishop of Rome, see Part III. of this book, No. 1.

Chapter XXII.

List of all the General Councils held in the Church of God from the time of the Apostles to A. D. 1894.

BY a General or Ecumenical Council is understood a council to which the bishops of the whole world are lawfully summoned for the settling of some important matter, though it is not necessary for the validity of the council that all should attend.

A council, in order to be ecumenical, must be convoked by the Pope, or at least with his consent, and be presided over by him or by his legates. The decrees of a council must also have his approval.

A general council headed by the Pope, by reason of its representing the whole Church, has the privilege of doctrinal infallibility and supreme authority. It is evident that even the largest assembly of bishops without the Pope would be a body without a head, and could not represent the whole Church.

General councils show the supernatural vitality which exists in the Church of God for her own preservation and purity. To the present time (A. D. 1894) the ecumenical councils are nineteen in number. The first eight were held in the eastern part of Christendom, the remaining eleven were held in the western part.

The following list of general councils will place in a prominent light the fact that there has always existed in the Catholic Church *oneness of body*, that is, intercommunion between all the Catholic bishops, and dependence upon their visible head, the Roman pontiff, and *oneness of faith*, which the Church, faithful to her office, has never failed, when needed, boldly and clearly to state; and there is no instance of a doctrine on faith or morals, defined by one general council, having been changed by another general council or by any Pope:

1. *The First Council of Nicæa (or Nice*, now called Isnick, in Asia Minor, about ninety miles from Constantinople) was held in the year 325, under Pope Sylvester I. in the palace of the emperor. There were present 318 bishops; the Emperor Constantine the Great also assisting.

Arius, presbyter of Alexandria, was condemned for denying the divinity of the *Word*, or Son of God, and His consubstantiality with the Father; at this council the greater part of what is commonly called the Nicene creed was published.

2. *The First Council of Constantinople*, the ancient Byzantium, was held in 381, in the emperor's palace, confirmed by Pope Damasus I.; 150 bishops and the Emperor Theodosius the Elder attended.

The followers of Macedonius were condemned for denying the divinity of the Holy Ghost and His consubstantiality with the Father and the Son. A few more things were added to the Nicæan creed.

3. *The Council of Ephesus*, Asia Minor, was held in the Church of St. Mary in 431, under Pope Celestine I. About 200 bishops, and Theodosius the Younger, were present.

Nestorius was deposed from his see of Constantinople, and condemned for maintaining that in Jesus Christ there were two distinct persons—a human person born of the Virgin Mary, and the divine person, that is, the Eternal Word. In consequence of this error he denied to the blessed Virgin the title of *Theotókos* (or mother of God), contrary to the Catholic doctrine, which confesses Mary to be the mother of that divine person, in whom are intimately and indissolubly united, by what is called *hypostatic* union, the divine and the human nature.

4. *The Council of Chalcedon* (now called Scútari), facing Constantinople, in Asia Minor, under Pope Leo the Great, was held in 451, in the Church of St. Euphemia the Martyr, near the Bosphorus in Bithynia. Paschasinus and Lucentius, bishops, and Boniface, priest, presided at this council as legates of Pope Leo the Great. Six hundred and thirty bishops, and the Roman Emperor Marcian, were present. Papal supremacy was acknowledged.

Eutyches, abbot of Constantinople, and *Dióscorus*, archbishop of Alexandria, were condemned for teaching that in Jesus Christ there was only one nature.

5. *The Second of Constantinople*, held in the sacristy of the cathedral in 553, confirmed by Pope Vigilius: 165 bishops and the Emperor Justinian were present. Though neither the Pope nor his legates attended, yet the council is considered ecumenical from its having afterward received the sanction of the Pope.

The so-called "Three Chapters," or heretical writings of Theodorus of Mopsuesta, of Theodorétus and of Iba, favoring the already anathematized doctrines of Nestorius, were condemned.

6. *The Third of Constantinople*, held in the hall of the imperial palace, in the years 680 and 681, under Pope Agatho, attended by 170 bishops.

The Monothelites, with their leaders Cyrus, Sergius and Pyrrhus, were condemned for maintaining, as their name implies, that in Jesus Christ there was only one operation and *one will*, namely, the divine will. This heresy attempted to revive, under a new form, the error of Eutyches, which had been already condemned.

the Pope Agatho dying before the council came to a conclusion, it was confirmed by Leo II., his successor, who translated the "Acts" of this council from the Greek into Latin.

7. *The Second of Nicæa*, held in the Church of St. Sophia in 787, under Pope Adrian I., attended by 367 bishops.

In this council the Iconoclasts (or breakers of sacred images) were condemned for rejecting the use of holy images, and the practice of paying them due respect. The last session of this council was held at Constantinople.

8. *The Fourth of Constantinople*, held in the Church of St. Sophia in 869 and 870, under Pope Adrian II., attended by 102 bishops.

The intruded patriarch Photius, the author of the Greek schism, was condemned and deposed, and St. Ignatius was restored to his see of Constantinople, which had been unjustly usurped by Photius. This is the last general council held in the eastern part of Christendom.

9. *The First of Lateran*, held in the Basilica of St. John Lateran, in Rome in 1123, under Pope Calistus II., attended by 300 bishops and 600 mitred abbots.

The contest regarding investitures, or appointment to benefices, was settled. The rights of the Church and of the emperors in the serious business of the election of bishops and abbots were regulated.

10. *The Second of Lateran*, held at Rome in 1139, under Pope Innocent II., attended by 1,000 bishops, the Pope himself presiding.

The errors of the Albigenses and the heresies of Peter De Bruys and his disciple, Arnold of Brescia, were condemned, and the schism of Peter Leo was repressed. One of the decrees of this council anathematized those heretics who rejected infant baptism, the holy Eucharist, the priesthood, and matrimony.

11. *The Third of Lateran*, held at Rome in 1179, under Pope Alexander III., who presided in person. It was attended by 300 bishops.

The errors of the Waldenses were condemned, and a better form of electing the sovereign pontiff was prescribed. Most beneficial rules were also framed for the election of bishops, for regulating the rights of patrons, and for the gratuitous instruction of the people, especially of poor children.

12. *The Fourth of Lateran*, held at Rome in 1215, under the great Pope Innocent III., attended by 412 bishops and upward of 800 abbots and friars, besides the representatives of all sovereigns and princes of Christendom.

A short exposition of the Catholic faith was drawn up in opposition to the errors of the time, especially those of the Albigenses and Waldenses. Ecclesiastical laws were framed for the reformation of morals among

Christians. The obligation of confession for adults, instead of several times a year, was reduced to once a year at least; and holy communion likewise to at least once a year, and that at Easter time. A decree authorizing an expedition (known as *Crusade*) for the recovery of the holy places in Palestine was likewise published, and the election of Frederick II. of Germany as Roman emperor was confirmed.

13. *The First of Lyons*, ancient Lugdunum (Rhone), France, held in 1245 in the monastery of St. Just, under Pope Innocent IV., who himself generally presided, attended by 140 bishops and many abbots and procurators of chapters. There was also present Baldwin, emperor of Constantinople, with other princes and various ambassadors.

The Emperor Frederick II. (a noted persecutor of the Church, who, owing to the aid of the powerful Pope Innocent III., his godfather, ascended the throne of the German empire) was excommunicated and deposed after the powerful defence made by his imperial representatives and advocates had been heard.

14. *The Second of Lyons*, held in the Church of St. John in 1274, under Pope Gregory X., attended by 500 bishops of the Latin and the Greek Rite, nearly 70 abbots and about 1,000 minor prelates, the Pope presiding in person.

The schismatic Greeks returned to the unity of the Church, acknowledging the Pope as the head of the whole Church, of the Greek as well as of the Latin Rite.

15. *The Council of Vienna in France*, the ancient Vienne Allôbrogum (Isère, Dauphiny), was held in the metropolitan Church in the year 1311 and 1312, under Pope Clement V. There were 300 bishops and many other prelates present.

The order of Knights Templars was abolished. The errors of the Begards, who pretended that man is capable of attaining such perfection in this life as to become impeccable (or incapable of sinning), even when freely gratifying the evil propensities of the body, were condemned.

The *Council of Constance*, or Constantia, on the Lake of Constance, Baden, was assembled in 1414; when, owing to the interference of states, there were three candidates contending for the papal chair, namely, John XXIII., Gregory XII., and Benedict XIII. It was attended by about 200 bishops and a number of other prelates.

At this council the serious schism caused by this usurpation, which had so long disturbed the Church of God ended, and the errors of John Wickliffe and others were condemned.

In November, 1417, Pope Martin V. was recognized by all as the lawfully elected Pope, and he presided over the council until it closed. In the last session Pope Martin V. approved and ratified all that the council

had defined "*conciliariter*," that is, according to the strict rules of defining in general councils, and, therefore, in these definitions the council was received as ecumenical, although it does not rank among ecumenical councils, because in some of its sessions (or sittings) it was not strictly ecumenical.

16. *The Council of Florence, Italy*, held in 1438 and 1439, under Pope Eugenius IV. Attended by 200 bishops of the Latin and of the Greek Rite, and by the emperor of the Greeks, John Paleologus.

The supremacy of the Pope over the whole Church was declared. Once more the eastern and Russian schismatic bishops who were present submitted to the supremacy of the Pope, and were thereby reunited to the Catholic Church.

17. *The Fifth Lateran*, held at St. John Lateran, Rome, A. D. 1512–1517, under the Popes Julius II. and Leo X., attended by 120 bishops. Many representatives of kings and princes were also present.

It abolished the *Pragmatic Sanction*, that is, the collection of 38 decrees, which the Council of Bale had published, concerning the rights and privileges of the Roman pontiff, the authority of councils, the election of prelates, and other ecclesiastical matters. The dogma relating to the immortality of the soul was defined. The Council of Pisa was condemned, and the ecclesiastical discipline reformed. An impulse was given to an expedition or crusade against the Turks, who were at the time threatening to overrun Christendom.

18. *The Council of Trent* (in the Austrian Tyrol), held from 1545 to 1563 under the Popes Paul III., Julius III., Marcellus II., Paul IV., and Pius IV. It was attended by about 200 bishops, 7 abbots, and 7 generals of religious orders, and by the representatives of Catholic kings and princes. Including an adjournment of four years, and a suspension of ten years, this council lasted eighteen years.

The Catholic doctrine regarding the Holy Scripture, Tradition, original sin, justification, and the seven sacraments, was clearly explained, the contrary errors condemned, and abuses in morals and discipline reformed.

19. *The Vatican Council*, held in the Basilica of St. Peter, Rome, was opened on the 8th of December, 1869, and continued to the 18th of July, 1870. It was summoned by Pope Pius IX., of glorious memory, who occasionally presided in person, but generally by his legates. The patriarchs, archbishops and bishops present at this council, at any time between December 8, 1869, and July 18, 1870, were 704. This number included 113 archbishops and bishops *in partibus infidelium* (in infidel regions), of whom all but 38 held the office of administrator, auxiliary, coadjutor, vicar-apostolic, or prefect-apostolic.

In this council the dogma of the *supremacy* of St. Peter and his successors, previously recognized in the First Council of Ephesus, A. D. 431, and more fully explained in the Council of Florence, A. D. 1438, was again solemnly affirmed and defined. This dogma of faith teaches that on St. Peter was conferred a primacy of jurisdiction over the other Apostles, and over the whole flock of Jesus Christ, and that the Bishop of Rome is the successor of St. Peter in that jurisdiction. It was also declared that this jurisdiction extends over the whole Church on earth, and over every member of the Church, and that all the faithful are bound to submit to it, not only in things that belong to faith or to morals, but also in things that belong to the discipline and government of the Church.

At this council the Pope's *infallibility*, when speaking *ex cathedra* in matters of faith or of morals, was also solemnly defined. Besides the supremacy and the infallibility of the Pope (see chap. x.), this council also defined, against the daring attacks of modern infidelity, the existence of a personal God.

Some people wrongly imagine that the dogma of the infallibility of the Pope is a *new* doctrine, because it was for the first time defined explicitly *as an article of faith* at the Vatican Council; but they who argue thus might with as much show of reason assert that the dogma which teaches the existence of a personal God is therefore also a new doctrine because that article of the faith was for the first time defined as dogma (in order to oppose modern heresy) in this council, or that the dogma of the immortality of the soul was a new doctrine because it was first defined at the Fifth Council of Lateran, A. D. 1512-1517.

This Vatican Council issued likewise some very important decrees relating to discipline.

Chapter XXIII.

Second Mark—Holiness.

THE Catholic Church is *holy*, because, as our Catechism says, "she teaches a *holy doctrine*, offers to all the *the means of holiness*; and is *distinguished by the eminent holiness* of so many thousands of her children."

Catholics see clearly, and non-Catholics themselves for the most part admit, that among the various Protestant sects there are grave errors, divisions, and losses to deplore.

These may be contradictions, or unsound, unscriptural tenets, or the

loss of sacraments, the abandonment of the evangelical counsels of perfection, or it may be some faulty principles, inconsistent with holiness, which, if carried out into practice in their natural consequences, would certainly prove to be opposed to God's perfections, to man's salvation and to the well-being of society.

The following are some of the tenets held by various denominations:*

That the grossest sins do not hurt the elect, who do not forfeit thereby the grace of adoption and the state of justification. This Luther taught.

That God is the author of sin, and at the same time the avenger of it. This Calvin taught.

That there is no falling from the grace of God, but that "once in grace one is always in grace, how grievous soever the sins he may commit." (Calvin: *Book of Institutions*, chapter ii.)

That there is no free will in man. (Luther on Slave will.)

That God sees no sin in believers.

That "no sin, unbelief alone excepted, can cause damnation." (Luther on *Captivity of Babylon*.)

That several books of Holy Scripture are to be rejected, although they are sanctioned by the same authority that has in the Sixth Council of Carthage, A. D. 419, sanctioned all the books of the New Testament.

That a man has a right to prefer and maintain his own interpretation of Scripture, in opposition to the judgment of all the fathers and bishops of the Catholic Church.

That man is *justified by faith only*, without anything else; understanding, by faith, a mere reliance on Christ for pardon.

That repentance, love of God, and of our neighbor, are not *necessary* for justification or for salvation.

That good works are not only not necessary, but hurtful to justification.

That everything that happens, happens necessarily by divine predestination, and that therefore our will has no freedom.

That man is totally depraved, and that all his works are sinful.

That all sins are of equal guilt.

That "works of supererogation cannot be taught without arrogancy and impiety."†

That the exact observance of the commandments of God is impossible.

* See Bp. Bossuet (*Variations*), and Bp. Milner's *End of Religious Controversy*.

† See 14th Article of Religion, in the *Book of Common Prayer* of Church of England. By works of supererogation it is meant works or virtues not *commanded* but only *counselled* by Christ, called counsels of perfection, such as voluntary *poverty*, voluntary state of *celibacy*, or chaste single life for God's sake, and voluntary *obedience*, which is the putting off of oneself under a legitimate superior to obey him in any matter which is not in violation of the law of God.

That it is a matter of indifference which Christian religion you profess. That God (so Calvin blasphemously taught) has predestined and consigned some men, independently of their acts, and without any fault of their own, to everlasting perdition. (*Institut.*, lib. iii. chap. 21.)

That God permits those who are predestined to eternal damnation to do some good in this life, but that He permits it only in order to make them the more guilty, and punish them the more severely in eternity. (Calvin: *Institut.*, lib. iii., chap. 2, No. 11.) And many more tenets hurtful and unsound. These fruits show of what sort the tree (the right of private interpretation of Scripture against legitimate authority) is, for "by their fruits you shall know them." (St. Matt. vii. 20.)

Notwithstanding these faulty principles, a high moral standard is often found amongst Protestants of various denominations. This is because, happily, such persons do not carry out their professed principles to their legitimate conclusions, but follow rather the dictates of natural sense of right and wrong, and adhere to certain portions of Catholic faith still surviving among them.

The Catholic Church is truly holy. Her teaching, both in faith and in morals, inspires her children with a love of perfection; leads them to holiness of life, to practice all virtues, to abhor all sin, to avoid the occasions of it, and to observe faithfully all God's commandments. This is all included in the idea of true holiness. She urges the use of prayer and of the holy sacraments, and of all other means through which God's grace can be obtained. Holy Church commands her children to render to all whatever is their due: loyal allegiance to the ruling civil power in temporal concerns; faithful obedience to ecclesiastical superiors in spiritual matters; affection and ready submission to parents, and to those acting in their stead; respect to all placed over us; consideration and kindness to all placed under us; respect and Christian love toward all, and even love in return for ill treatment.

The Church encourages us to devote ourselves, as much as our other duties will allow us, to spiritual and corporal works of mercy. Such are: to instruct the ignorant; to reclaim the sinner; to help those in danger and trouble on sea and on land; to relieve the poor; to shelter the homeless, the young and the infirm; to visit the afflicted, the aged, the sick, and the dying, in workhouses, orphanages, hospitals, asylums and prisons, or wherever they may be; to bury the dead, and to pray for them and for the spiritual and temporal wants of our neighbor in general.

We are taught by holy Church to worship God, who is of infinite majesty, power, truth, mercy and goodness, by frequent acts of adoration, humility, faith, hope, contrition and love; and by regular and devout attendance at the services of the Church, which she celebrates not only on

Sundays and festivals but also on week-days. Holy Mass, as a rule, is celebrated daily in all Catholic churches by each priest, in order to *show forth the death of the Lord*, and keep the faithful constantly in remembrance of Him and His all-availing passion and death.

She puts constantly before her children the life of Jesus Christ as the perfect model for their imitation: "Put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ." (Romans xiii. 14.) "Leaving you an example that you should follow His steps." (1 St. Peter i. 21.)

The lives of the saints also are often placed before us that we may be encouraged by their bright example in the practice of humility, obedience, purity, charity, patience, self-denial, devotion, perseverance and zeal; which virtues the saints possessed in a degree called heroic, that distinguished them from ordinary pious Christians.

The example of the martyrs who died for Christ, for the faith, and for virtue's sake, are also continually placed before us, that we may learn how to endure sufferings and even death rather than be unfaithful to God, and stain our conscience with sin. The Christian motto is: "*Malo mori quam fœdari*" (Death before dishonor).

The Church commands us to be continually watchful over ourselves, so as not wilfully to allow, even for a moment, one bad thought to defile the mind.

Those who, unhappily, have fallen into sin, she encourages to repent and to return to God without delay, and to approach the sacrament of penance in order to have their souls cleansed in the most precious blood of Jesus, which is applied to them in that life-restoring, healing, and comforting sacrament.

The Catholic Church forbids the least injustice to any one, and strictly obliges us to make reparation and restitution, according to our ability, for any injury or injustice that we may have done to any one, even though our neighbor may not be aware of the wrong.

She presses us to approach frequently and devoutly the most blessed sacrament of holy communion, that our souls may be fed and strengthened by that heavenly food, our hearts more and more inflamed with the fire of divine love, and that thus we may continually grow in grace and piety.

In short, the Catholic Church forbids all that is wrong, even for the sake of obtaining the greatest temporal advantage; she commands all that is dutiful and encourages all that is good, holy, and perfect, even the striving after the attainment of those sublime virtues, for the observance of which Jesus Christ gave not precepts but only counsels, called "counsels of perfection."

The Church cannot be held responsible for the conduct of bad Cath-

olics, for they are bad, inasmuch as they depart from the Catholic teaching and rule. All Catholics who faithfully and humbly follow the guidance of the Church, whatever may be their nation, or lawful calling and position in life, will become exemplary Christians, and it may be, even saints.

Here the question naturally arises : Are the fruits of sanctity or virtue, which are attained through grace, and practised to the high degree called heroic, to be found among the members of the Catholic Church, or among the different new teachers who undertook to reform the Church in the sixteenth century ?

The first thoughts that strike most people who consider this subject are, that not one of those leaders of the Reformation is regarded by any as a saint, but that some of them are admitted, even by many Protestants, to have been quite the reverse of saints, and, that all the saints of Christendom, even those saints retained in the calendar of the state Church of England, and under whose names many Protestant churches are dedicated, lived and died strict members of the Catholic Church, in communion with the see of Rome, zealously attached to her doctrine and discipline.

In this calendar of the Church of England we still meet with Pope St. Gregory I., the zealous assertor of papal supremacy (March 12) ; St. Benedict (March 21) of Monte Cassino, the patriarch of the western monks and nuns ; St. Dunstan of Canterbury (May 18), the vindicator of clerical celibacy ; St. Augustine of Canterbury (May 26), who, after the Saxon invasion, preached the Catholic faith to the inhabitants of pagan England ; and the name of St. Bede, known as Venerable Bede (May 27), the Benedictine monk of Yarrow, Northumberland, the faithful historian of those days of Catholic glory in England ; the glorious martyr St. Lawrence (Aug. 10), the devoted deacon of St. Sixtus II., Pope and martyr ; St. Jerome (Sept. 30), who was so devoted to the papal chair in the fourth century ; St. Clement, Pope and martyr (Sept. 23), whose apostolic letters still exist ; Pope St. Sylvester (Dec. 31), (under whom the Christian Emperor Constantine the Great was converted to Christianity), who, empowered by the emperor, first built, in several parts of Rome, churches for public worship, which, history states, he adorned with sacred images.

The names of other saints in communion with the Roman see, for example, St. David, St. Chad, St. Edward, St. Richard, St. Alphege, St. Martin, St. Swithin, St. Giles, St. Lambert, St. Leonard, St. Hugh, St. Remigius, St. Edmund M, St. Agnes, St. Catherine, St. Etheldreda, St. Margaret, are all retained in the calendar of the state Church of England, and give names to many churches of that establishment.

Besides these there are very many other saints in the Roman Catholic

Church, who, for the extraordinary purity and sanctity of their lives, many learned and candid Protestants admit were saints. Even Luther acknowledges St. Anthony, St. Bernard, St. Dominic, St. Francis of Assisi, St. Bonaventure and others to be saints, though they were avowed Roman Catholics and defenders of the Roman Catholic Church against the heretics and schismatics of their times.

But, added to this and other testimonies, it is certain that the supernatural virtues and heroic sanctity of a countless number of holy persons of different nations, sexes, ranks, and professions, have wondrously adorned the Catholic Church in every age.

For three hundred years every successor of the glorious St. Peter, almost without exception, numbering more than thirty, received, like St. Peter, the crown of martyrdom in, or near, their beloved city of Rome. A great number of Popes, and an immense number of bishops, are regarded by the Church as saints, besides more than twelve millions of martyrs who are known to have nobly sealed their belief in the Catholic faith with their blood.

Chapter XXIV.

Third Mark—Catholicity.

CATHOLICS believe, as expressed in the Nicene creed, that the true Church of God is *Catholic*, that is to say, *universal* or *spreading its jurisdiction throughout all nations*: not *territorial*, not *national*, not *of one continent*, not *limited to a portion of earth*, but of a Church which having its parts in communion with each other and well organized together, forms one whole, one body, one universal empire in spirituals; a Church which has its members not only in one or some countries of the earth, but in any and in every part of the world.

Jesus Christ sent His Apostles to teach, not only *one* nation, but *all nations*; therefore the true Church of Christ cannot be merely a *national Church*, separated in its teaching and discipline from all other churches, but must be the Church which, everywhere one and the same, is spread throughout all the world.

Catholics are truly *Catholics*, in *fact* and in *name*. In *fact*, from their being not of one nation only, but of all nations of the earth; in *name*, because whenever and wherever *Catholics* are mentioned, without any additional designation, only Christians are understood in communion with the see of Rome and not others, excepting with few *among themselves* who make a point of calling themselves Catholics.

At all times heretics, to avoid the force of this mark, so strikingly in favor of Catholics, have endeavored to change the name of "Catholics" into that of "Romans" and Romanists. St. Gregory of Tours relates of the Arians that they persistently called the Catholics *Romans*. "*Romanorum nomine vocitant nostræ religionis homines*" (Hist., book xvii. chap. 25), but never succeeded in depriving the Catholics of their name.

The Protestants of the present day have somewhat departed from the old method. Seeing that it is useless to attempt to deprive us of this mark of Catholicity, which throughout all ages distinguishes the true Church of God, they endeavor to weaken the force of it by qualifying it and saying: "We grant that you are Catholics, but you are not simply Catholics, you are *Roman Catholics*." They want thus to insinuate that there are many *sorts* of Catholics—Roman, Greek, Anglican, Russian, and so forth—and that the word "Roman" is a specifying term. They thus hope to establish for themselves a right to get a place in the Church Catholic, and to share with us this luminous mark of Catholicity.

This is a mistake, for it is well known that either by the word "Catholics," or by the words "Roman Catholics," the same kind of people are pointed out.

The word "Roman" does not limit Catholics to the natives or inhabitants of Rome, or to a limited portion of earth, but extends to wherever Catholics happen to be. Protestants themselves call Catholics "Roman:" therefore, according to them, the word Roman is not a specifying term indicating one sort among different sorts of Catholics, but an amplifying word adding one attribute as a fuller notion, and not a specific difference. I will make this plain with an illustration. If to the expression "English dominions" one were even to add "Queen's English dominions," the word "Queen's" would not indicate that there are different kinds of English dominions, but would only express more fully the same thing, adding a notion which is already supposed in the former expression. Thus the word "Roman" does not limit the word "Catholic," but completes it, declaring more expressly that which is already supposed in the word "Catholic," namely, that the Catholic Church has its centre in Rome.

The absurdity of taking the word "Catholic" in a limiting sense appears from this, that "Catholic" means that the Church has the whole earth for its mission; "Roman," that it has but a portion of it. The contradiction is manifest.

Let this be marked by certain ministers who keep back simple people from becoming Catholic under the false plea that they are Catholics, though not Roman, making them suppose that the Roman Catholic Church is a national Church like their own, thus bringing to nought the glorious marks of oneness and Catholicity.

A little reflection might convince any one that the Catholic Church is not a human institution, created by the state. It does not depend upon any earthly power for spiritual authority—for rights, for the free exercise of spiritual jurisdiction—or for support, as churches which are only national do; but is by divine institution throughout all states and kingdoms of the world free and independent.

It should be remembered that the Pope, the successor in the chair of St. Peter, whether exercising temporal power or not, remains from age to age the visible head of the Church of God on earth, with the full authority, jurisdiction and privileges granted to him by our Lord; and therefore Catholics are Roman because Rome is the centre, and the Bishop of Rome is the visible head of Catholicity, and no one is entitled to be called Catholic unless he is in communion with the see of Rome.

To call Catholics "Roman" in this sense, does not alter the fact that they are Catholic in name and in truth; for the Catholic Church is truly universal, and spread among all nations, although the Church is also Roman in having the Roman pontiff for her visible head. In this sense the word "Roman" marks the unity of the Church and points to the Bishop of Rome as the one visible shepherd. In this sense "the Catholic Church" and "the Roman Catholic Church" is the same thing: for both names, though one more fully than the other, express one and the same reality.

But when, owing to the remnant of the ancient faith yet lingering with them, a Protestant in repeating the Apostles' creed says: "I believe the holy Catholic Church," he surely cannot mean, "I believe the particular denomination to which I belong," or, "I believe my national church to be the Catholic Church," if he reflects that, local and limited as his denomination or Church is, and separated from all other churches and nations of the world, it cannot in truth be called "Catholic."

Again, it is not reasonable for Protestants to say that they believe the "Catholic" but not the "Roman" Catholic Church. Such a mode of interpreting this passage of the Nicene creed seems but a paltry way of appropriating to themselves this glorious mark of Catholicity by confusing the minds of simple people, and mystifying the sense of the words "Catholic" and "Roman."

I will here endeavor to show the error of this interpretation.

When Protestants say that they "believe the Catholic but not the Roman Catholic Church," they may be taken to argue with Catholics in this manner: "We admit that you are Catholics, because in fact your Church is not limited to some nations but spreads itself throughout all nations, but still you are also 'Roman' because you acknowledge the Bishop of Rome to be the visible head of your Church, and therefore we

are justified in calling you Roman: and we are careful to call you by this name, because this word 'Roman' makes it appear to unreflecting people that you are only national like ourselves."

After having called us *Roman* Catholics, they also tell us that they themselves are not *Roman* Catholics, because they reject the supremacy of the Pope. And though they are members of a Church which is only national, or of a denomination only limited, and therefore not Catholic in the proper sense of the term, they yet call themselves Catholic in some other particular sense of their own, and they say therefore that they are Catholics, though not *Roman* Catholics.

It is easy, however, to see that this is not fair reasoning. Surely it would not be fair dealing if a Mohammedan were to maintain that he is a Christian on the ground that, although he does not believe Christ to be God and Saviour, yet he believes a great deal that is written about Him, and therefore has a right to call himself a Christian, and to say: "I am a Christian, but not a thoroughgoing Christian." The least you would say of such a man, I imagine, would be, that he acts unfairly, and deceives himself, not taking the word "Christian" in the common meaning, but attaching to it a meaning of his own, which no one, unless told his particular views, could possibly understand.

Nor does it avail such Protestants to say that by professing to believe the Catholic Church, they mean the universal invisible Church; for this would amount to believing in a Church that does not and cannot come forward and speak out, and therefore does not teach. This would bring to nought the essential office of teaching committed by Christ to His Church, and the corresponding duty on the part of the faithful to believe what she teaches. The Church on earth is essentially and perpetually visible. She is that "mountain . . . on the top of mountains" (Isaias ii. 2; Daniel ii. 35), that "city seated on a mountain," a city that "cannot be hid." (St. Matt. v. 14.)

Some Protestants answer in this manner—"When we say, 'I believe the Catholic Church,' we do not mean, 'I believe my denomination or national Church.' We do not mean, 'I believe an invisible Church,' but we mean, 'I believe a visible Church, spread throughout the world, composed of different national churches, Greek, Roman, Lutheran, Anglican, Episcopalian, and others, which, though disagreeing in certain things, yet agree with each other in essentials, and are so many branches of one tree, forming one universal Church.'"

It should be observed, however, 1st, that such interpretation of this passage of the creed was never admitted in the Church. Such an interpretation was implicitly (that is, in an implied manner) rejected in all centuries, as is evident from the fact that the Catholic Church has always regarded as

schismatical any Christian community not in communion with herself, and as heretical any community rejecting any of her defined articles of faith.

2d, that this interpretation is universally and openly rejected not only by Catholic, but also by the separated Greek and other schismatical churches, and is held only by some Protestants, and by a human tradition of the Anglican state Church, who make use of this explanation to justify their position with regard to this article of the creed.

3d, that this interpretation or theory cannot stand, for these different communities are, in fact, not united in essential matters. On the contrary, they disagree in some doctrine which one community considers essential to profess and another considers essential to deny. They cannot, therefore, be compared to branches of the one only tree, having the same stem and root, and partaking of the same sap, whatever resemblance they may have in certain features.

Perhaps by the words, "agree in essentials," they mean that the said communities, though differing from one another in points considered vital by some of them, yet that they all agree in the things defined by the first six general councils, which are admitted in the "Homilies" * of the state Church of England to be binding upon all Christians. But the early Church and those six general councils based their right of making any definition on this fundamental principle, admitted by all the members of the said Church, namely, that "everything which the Church in communion with the see of Rome should ever define as an article of faith was to be believed by all."

It is self-evident that, without this previous general admission of the duty of believing whatever the Church teaches and shall ever teach as an article of faith, any assembling of general councils for the sake of settling disputes of religion would be of no use.

I said, "in communion with the see of Rome." The necessity of this is manifest. The bishops themselves of those six general councils were convoked and presided over by the Pope through his legates. They submitted to the Pope's orders. The canons framed by the council had to receive the final sanction of the Pope before their validity would be recognized. Moreover, the bishops implicitly admitted or expressed in plain words in those very councils the primacy of jurisdiction or supremacy of the Roman see.

Thus, in the first general council, that of Nicæa, the fathers said, as quoted by the Council of Chalcedon (Fourth General Council, Act 16), "The Roman Church always had the primacy." (See page 113.)

In the second general council (the first of Constantinople), in the letter which the fathers wrote to Pope Damasus I., as recorded by Theodoret in the fifth book of his *Ecclesiastical History* (chap. ix.), the

* Second Book of Homilies, Against peril of idolatry, 2d part.

fathers or bishops of that council acknowledged that the Roman Church is the head and they the members.

In the fourth general council, that of Chalcedon (in the 1st, 2d and 3d Acts), the fathers several times called Pope St. Leo, A. D. 451, the then reigning pontiff, "The Bishop of the universal Church," "To whom the Saviour has entrusted the guardianship of the vineyard," as they add in their letter to the same holy pontiff.

With the exception, therefore, of the Catholics in communion with Rome, who, to this day, adhere to the said fundamental principle, all schismatical churches or Christian communities which repudiate that principle are convicted of not adhering either to that early Church, or to all the definitions of those first six general councils; and, with regard to those definitions which they do accept, they do not agree with the spirit with which they were made, nor with the above stated fundamental principle upon which they were based.

To say that the Church, called in the gospel the "kingdom of God," is made up of a number of discordant churches which have no real intercommunion and no visible connection, and each of which considers the other either schismatical or heretical, though agreeing in some few points, would be as strange as to say that Europe forms one empire, though composed of different nations independent one of another; and disunited as they are, though rivals, and though at times even at war, that all the nations of Europe are one because they agree with each other in some points of law, custom, or civilization. This would be like saying that the Church of God is a society composed of disconnected and clashing elements, without any visible head, without unity, order and proportion, and without that intercommunion, harmony, and sympathy between the members of it, which a well-regulated society should have, and which on this account is compared by St. Paul to a perfect human body. (Ephesians iv. 16.) This would be like supposing that the Church is only a Church of disunion or no Church at all, and that her office of teaching tends only to puzzle or to mislead people by continual contradictions.

Chapter XXV.

Fourth Mark—Apostolicity.

THE true Church of Christ must be apostolic; that is, she must be a Church which has not sprung up in modern times, nor has ever separated herself from any other Church, but the very Church once founded by Jesus Christ and the Apostles, although now become

more unfolded, like a nobly spreading tree which once was but a small plant.

Apostolicity regards especially the clergy, hence it is defined: "an unbroken succession of pastors who, from the time of the Apostles down to the present day, have been rightly ordained, lawfully sent, and who in succession have taught the same unchanging doctrine."

By this *right ordination, legitimate mission, and pure apostolic doctrine*, the Catholic Church of to-day is the continuation of the Church founded by Jesus Christ and the Apostles; forms with it but one living identical body, which carries on and transmits the mission which the Apostles had from Christ, and is the only true abiding messenger sent by Christ for the guidance of men to eternal salvation.

The Roman Catholic Church alone is all this because she is not failing to any of these conditions: 1st, In her the right of ordination was ever preserved intact. 2d, She lawfully derived, transmitted, and transmits the mission received. 3d, Her apostolic doctrine has never changed; it has from time to time been unfolded and made more clear, especially when heresy or some other necessity has called for a solemn and precise definition; but there is no case of the Roman Catholic Church holding a doctrine which was previously declared heretical, or declaring heretical what was formerly defined by the Church as a dogma of faith; so much so that it is a proverbial saying, even among Protestants, that the Roman Church *est semper eadem* (is always the same).

In the Catholic Church alone, from the time of the Apostles until now, there has been an unbroken succession of pastors, lawfully ordained and sent.* The Catholic Church never separated herself from any other Church, and there never was a time, from the foundation of Christianity, when she did not exist. It is this wonderful fact, which ever made so great an impression on the minds of a number of distinguished scholars, and brought them to make their submission to the Catholic Church. Such was the case with Cardinal Newman, whose testimony regarding himself is explicit. The study of ancient ecclesiastical history as exhib-

*The Greek schismatic Church, by separation from communion with the Roman see in the ninth century (879) under Photius, who was patriarch of Constantinople, and rejecting the lawful authority of the Church of Christ, though possessing rightful ordination, has not lawful mission, nor continuity of the whole deposit of Catholic doctrine. That the Holy Ghost does not proceed from the Son as well as from the Father is a heresy anathematized by St. Cyril of Alexandria in a provincial synod held in that city; and this condemnation of St. Cyril against Nestorius was confirmed by the General Council of Ephesus in 431; and yet the Greek Church, since her separation from the Catholic Church in 879, adheres to this heresy. In the Second General Council of Lyons, 1274, the Greek bishops retracted their error, and together with the Latin bishops condemned it, and caused the words, "Who proceeds from the Father and the Son," to be, as it is amongst Catholics, inserted in the Nicene creed, but soon relapsed into the former error. Again, in the General Council at Florence, held in 1439, which was attended also by the schismatical Greek bishops, this heresy was condemned (Session xxv.), but on returning home the Greek bishops relapsed into their schism and heresy, and still adhere to it.

ited in the writings of the fathers, he tells us, was "the one intellectual cause of his renouncing the religion in which he was born, and submitting himself to the holy see. The identity of the Catholic Church of the nineteenth century with the Church of the fathers was "the great manifest historical phenomenon," his eminence bears witness, "which converted me."

Protestant denominations, on the contrary, are all modern ; the oldest of them having only a few centuries of existence. They saw no sect quite like themselves at the time of their separating from the Catholic Church, or probably they would have joined it. These sects, in fact, only began when their several founders gave them existence ; hence they are often distinguished by the name of their founder or by some special feature of their new doctrine ;* and far from being apostolic, they reject apostolical Tradition and the testimonies of the first successors of the Apostles, either in profession or in practice, or in both. Cardinal Bellarmine has enumerated a score of Protestant doctrines, which are but old heresies, condemned in the early centuries of the Church. (*De Notis Ecclesiæ*, book iv., chap. ix.)

The following historical series of all the Bishops of Rome, successors of St. Peter, to the present time, confirms the fact that this luminous mark of apostolicity belongs to the Roman Catholic Church alone.

Chapter XXVI.

List of the Sovereign Pontiffs who, in a direct line, have Succeeded St. Peter in the See of Rome.

CENTURY I.—4 Popes. <i>Vulgar Era.</i>		CENTURY II.—11 Popes. <i>Vulgar Era.</i>	
NO.	A. D.	NO.	A. D.
1. SAINT PETER, native of Bethsaida in Galilee, became Pope on the Ascension of Jesus Christ; that is, in the year 29 of the <i>Vulgar era</i> ,† and Bishop of Rome in 42, where he died a martyr in the year.....	67	5. St. Anaclethus, Athens, Greece: martyr....	100
2. St. Linus, native of Volterra: martyr.....	67	6. St. Evaristus, Bethlehem: martyr.....	112
3. St. Cletus, Rome: martyr.....	78	7. St. Alexander I., Rome: martyr.....	121
4. St. Clement I., Rome: martyr.....	90	8. St. Sixtus I., Rome: martyr.....	142
		9. St. Telesphorus, Greece: martyr: confirmed the lenten fast, introduced the <i>Gloria in Excelsis</i> in the Mass, and allowed three Masses to be celebrated by each priest on Christmas day.....	152

* See List of Sects in Part III. of this Book, No. 17.
 † The *Vulgar era* is designated by the initials A. D. from the Latin *Anno Domini* (in the year of our Lord). It is the era of which all Christian nations make use in the designation of years. It was introduced by Dionysius Rexiguus about A. D. 540, and sometime after was universally adopted. A more diligent examination, however, of ancient monuments

has caused many learned writers to consider this calculation inexact. According to them our Lord was born in the seventh year before the first year of the *Vulgar era*. Therefore, strictly speaking, the *Vulgar* or *Christian era* commences when Christ was between six and seven years of age. So that, adding seven years to the date of the *Vulgar era*, gives the real date from the birth of our Lord.

NO.	<i>Vulgar Era.</i> A. D.
10. St. Hyginus, Athens: martyr: instituted subdeaconship and the minor orders.....	<i>Succeeded</i> 158
11. St. Pius I., Aquileia: martyr.....	158
12. St. Anicetus, Syria: martyr.....	167
13. St. Soter, Naples: martyr.....	175
14. St. Eleutherius, Epirus: martyr.....	182
15. St. Victor I., Africa: martyr.....	193

CENTURY III.—15 Popes.

16. St. Zephyrinus, Rome: martyr.....	203
17. St. Calistus, Rome: martyr.....	221
18. St. Urban I., Rome: martyr.....	227
19. St. Pontianus, Rome: martyr.....	233
20. St. Anterus, Greece: martyr.....	238
21. St. Fabian, Rome: M. (at his election a dove rested on his head).....	240
22. St. Cornelius, Rome, martyr: reprehended St. Cyprian, B. of Carthage, for rebaptizing heretics.....	254
23. St. Lucius I., Lucca: martyr.....	255
24. St. Stephen I., Rome: martyr.....	258
25. St. Sixtus II., Athens, Greece: martyr...	259
26. St. Dionysius, Turin.....	261
27. St. Felix I., Rome: martyr: prescribed the rite for the dedication of churches....	272
28. St. Eutychian, Tuscany: martyr.....	275
29. St. Caius, Dalmatia: martyr.....	283
30. St. Marcellinus, Rome: martyr, under Diocletian.....	296

CENTURY IV.—11 Popes.*

31. St. Marcellus I., Rome: martyr.....	304
32. St. Eusebius, Calabria.....	309
33. St. Melchisedes, Africa.....	311
34. St. Sylvester I., Rome: commanded that the altars be of stone; received the Emperor Constantine into the Church as catechumen. Constantine was baptized and died near Nicomedia.....	314
35. St. Marcus, Rome.....	337
36. St. Julius I., Rome.....	341
37. St. Liberius, Rome: was banished by Constantius, the Arian emperor, but restored.....	352
38. St. Felix II., Rome: during the exile of Pope Liberius.....	355
39. St. Damasus I., Spain: commanded the <i>Gloria Patri</i> to be added at the end of every Psalm.....	366
40. St. Siricius, Rome.....	384
41. St. Anastasius I., Rome: prescribed that at the reading of the gospel in the Mass all should stand.....	399

* The dates of accession of several Popes before the time of Constantine slightly differ in some of the early catalogues.

NO.	<i>Vulgar Era.</i> A. D.
CENTURY V.—12 Popes.	
42. St. Innocent I., Albano.....	<i>Succeeded</i> 402
43. St. Zosimus, Greece: condemned Pelagius and Celestius.....	417
44. St. Boniface I., Rome.....	418
45. St. Celestine I., Rome.....	423
46. St. Sixtus III., Rome.....	432
47. St. Leo I., the Great, Tuscany. He stayed Attila and Genseric from further invading Italy.....	440
48. St. Hilarius, Sardinia.....	461
49. St. Simplicius, Tivoli.....	468
50. St. Felix III., Rome.....	483
51. St. Gelasius I., Africa. He decreed the canon of Scripture with which the Tridentine canon agrees.....	492
52. St. Anastasius II., Rome.....	496
53. St. Symmachus, Rome.....	498

CENTURY VI.—13 Popes.

54. St. Hormisdas, Frosinone.....	514
55. St. John I., Tuscany: martyr.....	523
56. St. Felix IV., Benevento.....	526
57. Boniface II., Rome.....	530
<i>Dioscorus, Antipope.....</i>	
58. John II., Rome: of the family Mercuri.	532
59. St. Agapetus I., Rome.....	535
60. St. Silverius, Frosinone: martyr.....	536
61. Vigilius, Rome.....	538
62. Pelagius I., Rome: condemned the heretical "Three Chapters".....	555
63. John III., Rome.....	560
64. Benedict I., Rome.....	574
65. Pelagius II., Rome.....	578
66. St. Gregory I., the Great, Rome: reformed the plain chant, Apostle of England. Through humility styled himself <i>servant of servants</i> , yet he maintained and exercised supreme pontifical jurisdiction like any other Pope.....	590

CENTURY VII.—20 Popes.

67. Sabinianus, Volterra: introduced the use of bells.....	604
68. Boniface III., Rome.....	607
69. St. Boniface IV., Valeria in the Marsi: instituted All-Saints' day; obtained the <i>Pantheon</i> from the Emperor Phocas, which he dedicated to God in honor of the blessed Virgin and all the holy martyrs.....	608
70. Deodatus I., Rome.....	615
71. Boniface V., Naples.....	619
72. Honorius I., Capua. He was greatly censured for having been remiss in condemning heretics.....	625
73. Severinus, Rome.....	640

NO.		<i>Vulgar Era.</i> A. D.
74.	John IV., Dalmatia.....	<i>Succeeded</i> 640
75.	Theodore I., Greece.....	642
76.	St. Martin I. Todi: martyr.....	649
77.	St. Eugenius I., Rome.....	655
78.	St. Vitalianus, Segni: introduced the use of organs in churches.....	657
79.	Deodatus II., Rome.....	672
80.	Donus I., Rome.....	676
81.	St. Agatho, Greece.....	678
82.	St. Leo II., Sicily. Improved the Church chant.....	682
83.	St. Benedict II., Rome.....	684
84.	John V., Antioch.....	685
85.	Conon, Thrace.....	686
86.	St. Sergius I., Sicily.....	687

CENTURY VIII.—13 Popes.

87.	John VI., Greece.....	701
88.	John VII., Greece.....	705
89.	Sisinnius, Syria.....	708
90.	Constantinus, Syria.....	708
91.	St. Gregory II., Rome.....	715
92.	St. Gregory III., Syria.....	731
93.	Zachary, Greece.....	741
94.	Stephen II., Rome: died before his con- secration.....	752
95.	Stephen III., Rome, called by some Stephen II. Pepin gave him the Ital- ian provinces which he had conquered from the usurping king of Lombardy, Astulphus.....	752
96.	St. Paul I., Rome.....	757
97.	Stephen IV., Syracuse, called by some Stephen III.....	768
98.	Adrian I., Rome (Colonna).....	771
99.	St. Leo III., Rome: consecrated Charles the Great emperor of the West, and thus restored the Roman Empire after 300 years' cessation.....	795

CENTURY IX.—19 Popes.

100.	Stephen V., Rome, called by some Stephen IV.....	816
101.	St. Paschal I., Rome.....	817
102.	Eugenius II., Rome.....	824
103.	Valentinus, Rome.....	827
104.	Gregory IV., Rome.....	827
105.	Sergius II., Rome.....	844
106.	St. Leo IV., Rome: fortified the Vatican and Leonine City against Saracens....	847
107.	* Benedict III., Rome.....	855

* Between St. Leo IV. and Benedict III. is placed by some comparatively recent detractors of the papacy the feminine name of Joan or Johanna. A female Pope is a thing not only improbable and absurd, but also impossible; for, according to Catholic belief, a woman cannot even be a priest, much less a bishop and a Pope. This name, in fact, is not found

NO.		<i>Vulgar Era.</i> A. D.
108.	St. Nicholas I., the Great, Rome..	<i>Succeeded</i> 858
109.	Adrian II., Rome.....	867
110.	John VIII., Rome.....	872
111.	Martin II., or Marinus I., Gallese....	882
112.	Adrian III., Rome.....	884
113.	Stephen VI., Rome, called by some Stephen V.....	885
114.	Formosus, Ostia.....	891
	<i>Sergius, Antipope.</i>	
115.	<i>Boniface VI., Rome: reigned only fif- teen days; considered not legitimately elected.....</i>	896
116.	Stephen VII., Rome, called by some Stephen VI.....	897
117.	Romanus, Gallese.....	898
118.	Theodorus II., Rome.....	898
119.	John IX., Tivoli.....	898

CENTURY X.—24 Popes.

120.	Benedict IV., Rome.....	900
121.	Leo V., Ardea.....	903
	<i>Christophorus, Rome: Antipope...903</i>	
122.	Sergius III., Rome.....	904
123.	Anastasius III., Rome.....	911
124.	Lando, Sabina.....	913
125.	John X., Ravenna.....	915
126.	Leo VI., Rome.....	928
127.	Stephen VIII., otherwise VII., Rome.	929
128.	John XI., Rome.....	931
129.	Leo VII., Tusculum.....	936
130.	Stephen IX. or VIII., Rome.....	939
131.	Martin III., or Marinus II., Rome....	943
132.	Agapetus II., Rome.....	946
133.	John XII., Rome.....	956
	<i>Leo VIII., Antipope.....963</i>	
134.	Benedict V., Rome.....	964
135.	John XIII., Rome.....	965
136.	Benedict VI., Rome.....	972
137.	Donus or Domnus II., Rome.....	973
138.	Benedict VII., Rome.....	975
139.	John XIV., Pavia.....	984
	<i>Boniface VII., Antipope, French, last- ing 7 months.....985</i>	
	<i>John XV., Rome: unconsecrated, died within four months from his doubt- ful election.....985</i>	

in any of the ancient chronologies of Popes, nor is it mentioned by any of the contemporaries, nor by any trustworthy historian during some centuries that followed the epoch of the pretended reign. Leibnitz, Blondel, Boxhorn, Cave, and other Protestants, have proved the whole thing to be absolutely false. It appears this story has no other foundation than a false rumor by Frederick Spanheim, eagerly feceived by people disaffected to the papal chair. A Protestant clergyman, W. S. Baring Gould, shows the absurdity of the story in his curious *Myths of the Middle Ages*.

NO.	<i>Vulgar Era.</i> A. D.		
140.		John XV. or XVI.: established rules for solemn canonization of saints. <i>Succeeded</i>	985
141.		Gregory V., Germany (Bruno), of royal blood. He was interrupted for a short time by an intruder <i>John XVII. of Placentia</i>	996
142.		Sylvester II., Auvergne, France (Gerbert): gave to Stephen, ruler of Hungary, the title of king.....	999

CENTURY XI.—18 Popes.

143.		John XVIII., Rome.....	1003
144.		John XIX., Rome.....	1003
145.		Sergius IV., Rome: the first Pope who changed his name on ascending the papal throne. His baptismal name was Peter.....	1009
146.		Benedict VIII., Rome.....	1012
147.		John XX., Rome.....	1024
148.		Benedict IX., Rome.....	1033
149.		Gregory VI., Rome: abdicated in 1046	1045
150.		Clement II., Saxony.....	1048
151.		Damasus II., Bavaria.....	1048
152.	St.	Leo IX., Alsace, Bavaria, Germany...	1049
153.		Victor II., Sweden.....	1055
154.		Stephen X. or IX., Germany.....	1057
		<i>Benedict X., Antipope</i>	1058
155.		Nicholas II., Burgundy, France (Gherard): ordered that in future Popes be elected by the cardinals in conclave...	1059
156.		Alexander II., Milan.....	1061
157.	St.	Gregory VII., Soana (Aldobrandeschi): withstood the encroachments of Cæsarism; absolved Henry IV. at Canossa, who ungratefully afterward invaded Rome.....	1073
158.		Victor III., Benevento.....	1087
159.		Urban II., Rheims.....	1088
160.		Paschal II., Tuscany.....	1099

CENTURY XII.—16 Popes.

161.		Gelasius II., Gaeta.....	1118
162.		Calistus II., Burgundy.....	1118
163.		Honorius II., Bologna.....	1124
164.		Innocent II., Rome.....	1130
165.		Celestine II., Città di Castello.....	1143
166.		Lucius II., Bologna.....	1144
167.	Bl.	Eugenius III., Montemagno, Pisa. He had been a disciple of St. Bernard. He was thrice compelled to leave Rome on account of seditions.....	1145
168.		Antastasio IV., Rome.....	1153
169.		Adrian IV. (Nicholas Breakspear), Langley, England.....	1154
170.		Alexander III., Siena.....	1159
171.		Lucius III., Lucca.....	1181
172.		Urban III., Milano.....	1185

NO.	<i>Vulgar Era.</i> A. D.		
173.		Gregory VIII., Benevento... <i>Succeeded</i>	1187
174.		Clement III., Rome.....	1187
175.		Celestine III., Rome.....	1191
176.		Innocent III., Anagni.....	1198

CENTURY XIII.—17 Popes.

177.		Honorius III., Rome: approved the order of the Dominicans.....	1216
178.		Gregory IX., Anagni.....	1227
179.		Celestine IV., Milan.....	1241
180.		Innocent IV., Genoa: convoked the thirteenth general council at Lyons, in which the Emperor Frederick II. was deposed.....	1243
181.		Alexander IV., Anagni.....	1254
182.		Urban IV., Troyes: instituted the feast of <i>Corpus Christi</i>	1261
183.		Clement IV., Narbonne, France.....	1265
184.	Bl.	Gregory X., Piacenza: summoned the fourteenth general council, second of Lyons.....	1271
185.		Innocent V., Savoy, Dominican: elected after a conclave of 3 years.....	1276
186.		Adrian V., Genoa.....	1276
187.		John XXI., Lisbon: converted Pom- erania and Norway.....	1277
188.		Nicholas III., Rome: St. Francis fore- told him the papacy.....	1277
189.		Martin IV., Champagne, France.....	1281
190.		Honorius IV., Rome.....	1285
191.		Nicholas IV., Ascoli: Franciscan.....	1288
192.	St.	Celestine V., Terra di Lavoro, Naples: resigned the pontificate for a hermitage	1294
193.		Boniface VIII., Anagni: canonized St. Louis, king of France; ordered a jubilee to be proclaimed every 100 years..	1294

CENTURY XIV.—10 Popes.

194.	Bl.	Benedict XI., Treviso: Dominican....	1303
195.		Clement V., Bordeaux: ordered the election of Popes in conclave; removed to Avignon; helped the rebuilding of St. John Lateran, destroyed by fire; under him took place the fifteenth general council at Vienne, France, in 1311.	1305
196.		John XXII., Cahors, France: ordered the bells to be tolled every evening for the <i>angelus</i>	1316
197.		Benedict XII., Foix, France.....	1334
198.		Clement VI., Limoges, France: Benedictine: endowed with wonderful memory.....	1342
199.		Innocent VI., Limoges, France.....	1352
200.	Bl.	Urban V., Mende, France: transferred his residence from Avignon to Rome; Paleologus abjured the Greek schism in his hands: Benedictine.....	1362
		<i>In the year 1378 began a schism, that</i>	

NO.	<i>Vulgar Era.</i> A. D. <i>is, a series of Antipopes, which lasted 51 years, i.e., till the year 1429.</i>	NO.	<i>Vulgar Era.</i> A. D. <i>the seventeenth general council, the fifth of Lateran; prohibited dueling by excommunication Succeeded</i>
201.	Gregory XI., Limoges, France: returned to Rome 1377. Succeeded 1370	219.	Leo X., Florence: concluded the Council of Lateran; excommunicated Luther, A. D. 1520. 1513
202.	Urban VI., Naples. 1378	220.	Adrian VI., Utrecht, Netherlands. . . . 1522
203.	Boniface IX., Naples; published the crusade against Bajazet. 1389	221.	Clement VII., Florence (De Medici): excommunicated Henry VIII., king of England (1530). 1523
CENTURY XV.—13 Popes.		222.	Paul III., Rome (Farnese): convoked the Council of Trent to put down heresies and correct abuses. 1534
204.	Innocent VII., Sulmona. 1404	223.	Julius III., Tuscany. 1550
205.	Gregory XII., Venice: resigned in 1409 1406	224.	Marcellus II., Montepulciano (Cervini) 1555
206.	Alexander V., Bologna. 1409	225.	Paul IV., Naples: Caraffa (Theatine) 1555
207.	John XXIII., Naples: opened the Council of Constance in 1414, which lasted four years: ceased to be Pope in 1415. 1410	226.	Pius IV., Milan (Medici): ended and confirmed the Council of Trent. 1559
208.	Martin V., Rome: elected in the Council of Constance. 1417	227. St.	Pius V., Bosco, near Alessandria, Piedmont (Ghislieri): Dominican: repressed the Turks. 1566
209.	Eugenius IV., Venice: in the Council of Florence subscribed the decree of reunion of the Greek and Latin churches in 1439, but after 5 years the Greeks separated again. 1431	228.	Gregory XIII., Bologna (Buoncompagni): corrected the calendar. 1572
210.	Nicholas V., Sarzana: introduced the carrying of the holy sacrament in procession on the festival of <i>Corpus Christi</i> 1447	229.	Sixtus V. (Peretti), Ancona: Franciscan: he published a revised edition of the Bible, called the Vulgate. 1585
211.	Calistus III., Valentia, Spain: issued a solemn decision that Joan of Arc had died a martyr for her religion, country, and king. 1455	230.	Urban VII. (Castagna), Rome. 1590
212.	Pius II., Siena. 1458	231.	Gregory XIV. (Sfondrati), Cremona. . 1590
213.	Paul II., Venice: (<i>Æneas Sylvius</i>): worked and gave audience during night, rested in daytime; introduced typography into Rome. 1464	232.	Innocent IX. (Facchinetti), Bologna. . 1591
214.	Sixtus IV., Savona: Franciscan: received an embassy from the czar of Russia, J. Basilowitz, declaring that he, having refused to acknowledge the patriarch of Constantinople, accepted the union of the Roman Church, sworn in the Council of Florence. 1471	233.	Clement VIII. (Aldobrandini), Florence: published an edition of the Vulgate, newly revised, as in present use. 1592
215.	Innocent VIII., Genoa: under his pontificate Spain was freed from Mohammedanism; Pico of Mirandola, at the age of 24 years, sustained 900 theses, extracted from Greek, Latin, Hebrew, and Arabic authors; Christopher Columbus discovered America. 1484	CENTURY XVII.—11 Popes.	
216.	Alexander VI., Spain. 1492	234.	Leo XI. (Medici), Florence. 1605
CENTURY XVI.—17 Popes.		235.	Paul V. (Borghese), Rome. 1605
217.	Pius III., Siena. 1503	236.	Gregory XV. (Ludovisi), Bologna. . . . 1621
218.	Julius II., Savona: laid the foundation stone of the Basilica of St. Peter; marched at the head of an army against Perugia, and entered triumphantly into Bologna without one drop of blood being shed; convoked	237.	Urban VIII. (Barberini), Florence. . . 1623
		238.	Innocent X. (Pamphili), Rome. 1643
		239.	Alexander VII. (Chigi), Siena. 1655
		240.	Clement IX. (Rospigliosi), Pistoja. . 1667
		241.	Clement X. (Altieri), Rome. 1670
		242.	Innocent XI. (Odescalchi), Como. . . . 1676
		243.	Alexander VIII. (Ottoboni), Venice. . 1689
		244.	Innocent XII. (Pignatelli), Naples. . . 1691
		CENTURY XVIII.—8 Popes.	
		245.	Clement XI. (Albani), Urbino. 1700
		246.	Innocent XIII. (Conti, Dominican), Rome 1721
		247.	Benedict XVII., Rome: Orsini praised the Thomistic school. 1724
		248.	Clement XII. (Corsini), Florence. . . 1730
		249.	Benedict XIV. (Lambertini), Bologna 1740
		250.	Clement XIII. (Rezzonico), Venice. . 1758
		251.	Clement XIV. (Ganganelli), Saint Angelo in Vado. 1769
		252.	Pius VI. (Braschi), Cesena. 1775

NO.	CENTURY XIX—	Vulgar Era. A. D.
253.	Pius VII. (Chiaramonte), Cesena.....	1800
254.	Leo XII. (Genga), Spoleto.....	1823
255.	Pius VIII. (Castiglioni), Cingoli.....	1829
256.	Gregory XVI. (Capellari), Belluno....	1831
257.	Pius IX. (John Mary Mastai-Ferretti), born at Sinigaglia (Marco), Italy, May 13, 1792: died Feb. 7, 1878; reigned nearly 32 years; created Pope, June 16	1846
258.	His Holiness Leo XIII. (Vincent Joa- chim [Gioacchino] Pecci *), bishop of Perugia; born in Carpineto, Velletri, March 2, 1810; thirteen days after the death of his glorious predecessor he was created Pope, Feb. 20, 1878, whom may God long preserve.....	1878

NOTE.—*The Roman Pontiffs.*—The number of Popes from St. Peter to Leo XIII. inclusively, without counting the Antipopes, is commonly said to be 258. Of this number, 82 are venerated as saints, 33 were martyred: 104 have been Romans, and 103 natives of other parts of Italy; 15 Frenchmen, 9 Greeks, 7 Germans, 5 Asiatics, 3 Africans, 3 Spaniards, 2 Dalmatians, 1 Hebrew, 1 Thracian, 1 Dutchman, 1 Portuguese, 1 Candiot, and 1 Englishman. Nine pontiffs have reigned less than 1 month, 30 less than one year, and 11 more than 20 years. Only 6 have occupied the pontifical chair over 23 years. These are St. Peter, who was supreme pastor in Rome (besides the seven years of his pontificate in Antioch) 25 years, 2 months, 7 days; Sylvester I., 23 years, 10 months, 27 days; Adrian I., 23 years, 10 months, 14 days; Pius VI., 24 years, 6 months, 3 days; Pius VII., 23 years, 5 months, 6 days; and Pius IX., who celebrated his thirtieth year in the pontifical chair June 19, A.D. 1876, and reigned 31 years, 7 months, 21 days.

Chapter XXVII.

The Sign of the Cross.

THIS holy sign, the “sign of the Son of man” (St. Matt. xxiv. 30), is made use of by the Catholic Church in all the sacraments to show us that they derive all their virtue from the *cross*; that is, from the death and passion of our Saviour *Jesus Christ*.

The pious custom of signing oneself with the sign of the cross is in frequent use among Catholics.

The sign of the cross is made upon ourselves in the following manner:

We first place the extended fingers of our right hand on our forehead, saying: “In the name of the Father;” then, putting them on our breast, we say, “and of the Son;” then on our left shoulder, and immediately after on our right shoulder, while we say, “and of the Holy Ghost.” We then join both hands upon our breast, and say, “Amen.”

It is honorable to disregard human respect, to profess outwardly what we are, namely, followers of Jesus Christ. This is what we do when we make the sign of the cross, as this sign recalls to the mind of all persons present the mystery of our redemption, wrought by our Lord and Saviour on the cross, and in which redemption we believe and trust.

*Pronounced Petchee.

The cross is the natural emblem, and, as it were, the distinguishing banner of Christians. Every Christian, therefore, like St. Paul, ought not to be ashamed to sign himself with it, but ought to "glory in the cross of Christ." (Galatians vi. 14.)

Should a feeling of shame come over you whilst making this sign, banish it by recalling to mind those words of Jesus Christ : "For he that shall be ashamed of me and of my words, of him the Son of man shall be ashamed, when He shall come in His majesty, and that of His Father, and of the holy angels." (St. Luke ix. 26.)

For these reasons, and also for the edification of others, it is commendable and useful for Christians to make the sign of the cross. The sign of the cross is also an excellent act of faith in the two fundamental truths of the Christian religion, namely, in the mystery of the holy Trinity, one God in three persons, and in the mystery of the incarnation.

For by saying, in the "name," in the singular number, we profess to believe that there is only one God. By saying, "of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost," we profess to believe that in one God there are three divine persons. By the form of the cross, which we trace with our right hand from our forehead to our breast, and then across from the left shoulder to the right shoulder, we profess to believe that the Son of God is our Redeemer, who wrought our redemption by dying for us upon the cross.

By the word "Amen" (so be it), we mean to confirm and seal, as it were, our belief in the said fundamental truths.

The sign of the cross was used in the first five centuries even more frequently than it is now. Passages could be quoted from Lactantius, from Eusebius of Cæsarea, from St. Athanasius, St. Basil, St. Ephrem, St. Cyril of Jerusalem, St. Ambrose, and from St. John Chrysostom, all of them fathers of the fourth century, to prove it. But I will quote only two passages.

Tertullian, who wrote in the second century, says : "At every fresh step and change of place, whenever we come in or go out, when we put on our sandals, or wash, or take our meals, or light our lamps ; whether we are about to recline or to sit down, and whenever we begin a conversation, we impress on our forehead the sign of the cross" (*Ad omne progressum atque promotum, ad omnem aditum et exitum, ad calceatum, ad lavacra, ad mensas, ad lumina, ad cubicula et sedilia, quandocumque nos conversatio exercet, frontem, crucis signaculo terimus*). (*De Corona Militis*, chap. iii. 4.)

St. Jerome, a father of the fourth century, addressing the Roman lady, Eustochium, writes : "Before every action, at every step, let your hand form the sign of the cross." (*Epistola xviii. ad Eustochium, titulo iv.*)



IN GOD I TRUST.

St. Basil asserts as a noted fact that the practice of making the sign of the cross was introduced by the Apostles. (Book on the Holy Ghost, chap. xxxvii.)

Let us, therefore, in imitation of the ancient Christians, be fond of making the sign of the cross before doing anything of any consequence. It will be like directing our intention to do that thing for God. It will be the token of putting our whole trust in the merits of Jesus Christ which he earned on the cross, and of our invoking God's help through those merits.

Chapter XXVIII.

On Prayer.

PRAYER is "the raising up of the mind and heart to God," begging His aid and blessing. It forms a considerable part of the worship we owe to God. It may be useful to give an outline of the Catholic teaching on this subject.

Although God gives some graces without being asked, such as the first moving graces of faith, and the grace of prayer, He has other graces, necessary for salvation, in store only for those who humbly ask for them. It is therefore necessary for those who have the use of reason to pray.

To make use of prayer is not only a counsel but a divine precept: "Watch ye and pray," our Lord directs, "that ye enter not into temptation." (St. Matt. xxvi. 41.) "We ought always to pray and not to faint." (St. Luke xviii. 1.)

Therefore, to neglect prayer altogether for any great length of time would not only be dangerous but a grievous sin.

There are certain occasions in life in which we are especially bound to pray: as when pressed by a strong temptation which we feel we have not the strength to overcome; or when in evident danger of death; or when we have to receive a sacrament, for the due reception of which sacrament prayer is required by way of preparation; or in time of great public calamity; and, in general, when there is a particular need of divine assistance.

Let us not say, "God is infinite goodness, He knows all our wants, He will grant us what is needful without our asking for it." God requires that we should ask, not because He has need of knowing our wants, or because He is not ready to help us, but that we may, by asking, show our humility and dependence on Him, and enjoy the advantage and honor of praying to Him.

It is a part of the cherished duty of princes and princesses to present

themselves, morning and evening, to their royal parents, to converse with them, to show them their filial love, respect and gratitude, and to make known their wants and wishes to them. Few would object to be a prince merely on account of the task of having to present themselves dutifully every day to their parents. Surely, if it be a task, it is a sweet one.

Prayer, rightly regarded, is a sweet duty, and it is a great honor to be allowed to present ourselves before our Creator, the omnipotent King of heaven; to be allowed to call Him Father; to be permitted to communicate with Him; to show Him our reverence, gratitude and love, and to put our wants before Him. By it we enjoy an opportunity of dutifully acknowledging Him as the source of all good, the Author of our salvation; and of kindling in our hearts love toward Him by that sweet intercourse which prayer procures to us, and by the benefits that prayer obtains.

Indeed, to render the duty of prayer sweeter still, God does to us what kings and queens do not do to their children. He encourages us to approach Him with confidence, by pledging His word that our petitions shall never be rejected, even if we be in a state of sin like the poor publican or the penitent thief; for, though the prayer of the just is more acceptable to God, according to St. James, "The continual prayer of a just man availeth much" (v. 16), yet Christ says in general, without excluding the sinner: "Every one that asketh receiveth." (St. Matt. vii. 8.) For as St. Thomas Aquinas teaches: "The efficacy of prayer does not depend on the merit of the person who prays, but on the mercy of God, and on His faithfulness to His promise."

This promise of God, however, does not extend to petitions for things that are not for our spiritual good; as these could not be asked in the name of Jesus Christ, and because God, as a loving Father, would not grant what would be hurtful to us. Such petitions God refuses, as He refused that of the mother of the two sons of Zebedee, saying: "You know not what you ask" (St. Matt. xx. 22); but He gives something better instead.

Therefore, when we ask for temporal favors, it should always be with resignation to God's will, and on condition that what we ask is profitable to our souls. Our Saviour gave us an example of this resignation when, in the Garden of Gethsemane He besought His Eternal Father to take from Him the bitter chalice that was prepared for Him, and then added: "But yet not my will, but thine be done." (St. Luke xxii. 42.)

Prayer, such as it should be, is always favorably heard. If sometimes our prayers are not answered, it is because we pray amiss, as St. James reminds us—either because we pray with some lingering attachment to sin, or without attention and devotion; or because we pray without confidence and without humility.

Therefore prayer should be made :

1st, With *devotion* and *attention*; such an attention, at least, is requisite, as would discourage wilful distractions. If we ourselves do not pay attention to what we say, how can we expect that God will attend to it? To this effect it is good before prayer to remain some moments silent, and consider in whose presence we are, the suitable attitude in which we should place ourselves, and with what dispositions and feelings we should pray. This is the advice of Ecclesiasticus (or the Preacher): "Before prayer, prepare thy soul; and be not as a man that tempteth God." (xviii. 23.)

2d, With *confidence*: "nothing wavering; for he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea, which is moved and carried about by the wind." (St. James i. 6.) "All things whatsoever you ask when ye pray," says our Lord, "believe that you shall receive: and they shall come unto you." (St. Mark xi. 24.) Distrust or diffidence dishonors God: confidence honors God's goodness and faithfulness to His promises.

3d, With *humility*. For it is written, "God resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble." (St. James iv. 6.) The parable of the Pharisee and the publican is an instance of it. And it is also written, "The prayer of him that humbleth himself shall pierce the clouds." (Ecclesiasticus xxxv. 21.)

If our prayer is made with these conditions, it is sure to be heard with favor.

Sometimes, however, either to try us, or to cause us to value more what we ask for, or to make us pray more earnestly, so that He might afterward reward us more abundantly, God delays to grant what we ask, as we learn from the parable of the unjust judge (St. Luke xviii. 1), and from the persevering woman of Canaan. (St. Matt. xv. 22.)

Therefore we should not be disheartened when the favor is delayed, but recalling to mind those words of Christ, "Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and you shall find; knock, and it shall be opened to you" (St. Matt. vii. 7), we should, full of confidence, persevere in prayer; for that delay is for our good.

We should also pray for others; and this sort of prayer, whilst it will do good to our neighbor, will not be less beneficial to us than if we were praying for ourselves alone, but even more. The reason is, because our prayer is then grounded on charity. In the *Lord's Prayer*, which is the model of all prayers, we are taught to pray to our heavenly Father for all others as well as for ourselves.

Therefore, besides praying for ourselves in particular, let us also pray for the conversion of sinners; for the enlightenment of the Jews and of all unbelievers; for the unity of all Christians in the true faith, and for final

perseverance in it; for those who are sick or dying, or in any danger; for our parents and relatives, friends and enemies; for those who rule the Church and nation; for those who suffer persecution, distress of mind or body, or any other kind of hardship and misery, and this, whether they are near to us or far away; and God, the giver of all good gifts, will bestow His blessing both upon them and upon us in abundance, through Jesus Christ our Lord, in whose blessed name we always are to pray.

Chapter XXIX.

Works of Penance. On Indulgences.

IN the case of those who have fallen into mortal sin after baptism, when the guilt of such sin and the everlasting punishment due to it are forgiven through the merits of Christ in the sacrament of penance, there still very often remains a debt of temporal punishment to be paid by the sinner. This debt remains not from any imperfection in the power of absolution. in the sacrament of penance, or from any want of efficacy in the atonement of Jesus Christ, more than sufficient of itself to atone for the sins of the whole world, but because by God's will chastisement for past sins helps us to make up for the imperfection in our repentance, and serves as a correction. The fear of temporal punishment often helps to strengthen the resolution of amendment: it acts as a check to prevent us from again falling into sin, and excites us to make reparation for the scandal given.

From this we see that, whilst the God-man, Jesus Christ, has, by atoning for our sins, done what we could not possibly do for ourselves, He has not excused us from doing, with the help of His grace, what we can to punish ourselves for the offences and outrages we have offered to God. Good sense tells us that this is but right and just.

Our first parents, after the guilt of their sin had been forgiven, had to undergo a long course of temporal chastisement for their sin. This was also the case with Aaron, Moses, his sister Miriam, and the people of Israel in the desert. (See Numbers xii., xiv., xx.). David, in like manner, upon repenting of his sin, and humbly saying, "I have sinned," heard from the prophet Nathan these words: "The Lord also hath taken away thy sin: thou shalt not die; nevertheless because thou hast given occasion to the enemies of the Lord to blaspheme, for this thing the child that is born to thee shall surely die." (2 Kings [2 Samuel] xii. 13, 14.)

Again, David says of himself ; " I have labored in my groanings ; every night I will wash my bed ; I will water my couch with my tears." (Psalm vi. 7.)

The Catholic Church has ever taught that after sin has been remitted in the sacrament of penance, penitential works, such as prayers, fastings, alms, and other works of piety must still be performed. These penitential works of themselves, however, do not satisfy the justice of God for any sin, but only inasmuch as they derive all their value from that all-availing atonement which Jesus Christ made upon the cross, and in virtue of which alone all our good works find acceptance in the sight of God.

Thus it was that in the primitive Church the penitential canons were established, and the forty days' fast of Lent was observed from the time of the Apostles. St. Jerome says : " According to the apostolical tradition at the proper season of the year we observe Lent." (*Epistola 27, ad Marcellum.*) And St. Leo says : " Let the apostolical institution of forty days be spent in fasting." (Third Sermon on Lent.)

The General Council of Nicæa, held in the year 325, not only alludes to the penitential discipline then in vigor throughout the whole Church of God, but further establishes certain penitential works to be performed by some kinds of sinners in Canon IX., and following. This ought to be especially noticed by those Protestants who profess veneration for antiquity, and notably for the first six general councils.

The pardon granted to the penitent thief in the saving words : " Amen, I say to thee, This day thou shalt be with me in Paradise" (St. Luke xxiii. 43), cannot be taken as a proof that we are excused by God from doing works of penance. That was a wonderful and special grace granted under extraordinary circumstances ; namely, when the blood of redemption was actually being shed upon the cross ; moreover, the dying thief, besides bearing testimony to the divinity of Jesus Christ, confessed his guilt, and in the spirit of penance suffered the torment of his crucifixion and the cruel breaking of his legs, as penalties justly due to his sins ; and it may be that it was the first time that he repented and received pardon of his sins.

The Catholic Church, which teaches the necessity of penitential works in general, holds also that grown-up persons who receive pardon of actual sins for the first time in baptism, and even those who, having fallen again into sin after baptism, die martyrs, and those who come to the sacrament of penance with a very intense perfect contrition, or who, approaching that sacrament with imperfect contrition, afterward obtain the benefit of a plenary indulgence, have no remaining debt of temporal punishment to pay.

IT is a pity that many Protestants should have been so ill-informed

about indulgences as to suppose that it means the forgiveness of a sin, or, astonishing to say, a permission to commit a sin.

By an indulgence is meant not the forgiveness of a sin, nor a permission to commit a sin, but the *remission*, through the merits of *Jesus Christ, of the whole or part of the debt of temporal punishment due to a sin, the guilt and everlasting punishment* of which sin have, through the merits of *Jesus Christ*, been already forgiven in the sacrament of penance.

Indulgences do not secure heaven, but hasten the time of entering it to those who have already secured heaven by having obtained forgiveness of their sins and put themselves in a state of grace before death.

Catholics believe that the power of granting indulgences was left by Christ to the Church. It is included in the promise made by Jesus Christ to St. Peter : " And whatsoever thou shalt loose upon earth shall be loosed also in heaven " (St. Matt. xvi. 19), for these words contain an ample and universal power given to St. Peter and his successors of loosing a properly disposed person from everything that may hinder him from going to heaven ; and the debt of temporal punishment does hinder for a time even a justified soul from going into eternal bliss ; that is, until that debt be paid or remitted.

It may be said, at least according to their principles, that Protestants give, in their way, a kind of plenary or full indulgence to every one, when they say that works of penance are not necessary ; but Catholics believe that from all of us poor sinners works of penance are required, and that the power of binding and loosing, which includes that of granting an indulgence, was left only to the legitimate successors of the Apostles, in whom alone this power is still vested.

Thus the criminal Corinthian was subjected to a very severe penance by St. Paul. At length, however, upon the solicitation of the brethren, the Apostle granted to that repentant sinner an indulgence, suspended the punishment inflicted upon him, and readmitted him to the communion of the faithful. (1 Corinth. v., and 2 Corinth. ii.)

Experience proves that this granting of an indulgence is very useful : it encourages the faithful to deeper repentance, to have more frequent recourse to the sacraments of penance and communion, and to exercise works of charity and devotion : for it is the doctrine of the Catholic Church that, in order to obtain any indulgence, the soul must be in a state of grace, that is, must be free from mortal sin ; and the conditions for gaining a plenary indulgence almost always are, that the applicant should worthily receive the sacraments of penance and the holy Eucharist, as a preparation for the reception of the indulgence, and perform some outward works of piety. Therefore an indulgence granted only under such conditions, far from being an inducement to sin, encourages

us to repent and to do penance and other works of piety, and is a happy corrective of sin and a preservative against falling again into sin.

Chapter XXX.

On Purgatory.

PURGATORY is a state of suffering after this life, in which those souls are for a time detained which depart this life after their deadly sins have been remitted as to the stain and guilt, and as to the everlasting pain that was due to them; but which souls have on account of those sins still some debt of temporal punishment to pay; as also those souls which leave this world guilty only of venial sins. In purgatory these souls are purified and rendered fit to enter into heaven, where nothing defiled enters.

Catholics believe that a Christian who dies after the guilt and everlasting punishment of mortal sin have been forgiven him, but who, either from want of opportunity or through his negligence, has not discharged the debt of temporal punishment due to his sin, will have to discharge that debt to the justice of God in purgatory.

They believe also that those Christians who die with the guilt of venial sin,* only, upon their soul do not immediately enter heaven, where "nothing defiled" can enter, but go first to purgatory for an allotted time, and after being purified there from the stain of these venial or lesser faults, are admitted into heaven. As to the place, manner, or kind of these sufferings, nothing has been defined by the Church.

As works of penance have no value in themselves except through the merits of Jesus Christ, so the pains of purgatory have no power in themselves to purify the soul from sin but only in virtue of Christ's redemption; or, to speak more exactly, the souls in purgatory are able to discharge the debt of temporal punishment demanded by God's justice, and to have their venial sins remitted only through the merits of Jesus Christ, "yet so as by fire."

The Catholic belief in purgatory rests on the authority of the Church and her apostolic traditions recorded in ancient liturgies, and by the ancient fathers, Tertullian, St. Cyprian, Origen, Eusebius of Cæsarea, Arnobius, St. Basil, St. Ephrem of Edessa, St. Cyril of Jerusalem, St. Gregory of Nyssa, St. Ambrose, St. Epiphanius, St. John Chrysostom, St.

*See Chapter XIII. on mortal sin, in which a notion of venial sin is also given.

Jerome, St. Augustine, on the Fourth Council of Carthage, and on many other authorities of antiquity.

That this tradition is derived from the Apostles, St. John Chrysostom plainly testifies in a passage quoted at the end of this chapter, in which he speaks of suffrages or help for the departed.

St. Augustine says of Acrius, that he was the first who dared to teach that it was of no use to offer up prayers and sacrifices for the dead; and this doctrine of Acrius he reckoned among heresies. (Book of Heresies, Heresy 53d.)

There are also passages in Holy Scripture from which the fathers have confirmed the Catholic belief on this point.

St. Paul, in his First Epistle to the Corinthians (chap. iii. 11-15) writes: "For other foundation no man can lay but that which is laid; which is Christ Jesus. Now if any man build upon this foundation, gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble, every man's work shall be manifest; for the day of the Lord shall declare it, because it shall be revealed in fire: and the fire shall try every man's work, of what sort it is. If any man's work abide, which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward. If any man's work burn, he shall suffer loss; but he himself shall be saved, yet so as by fire."

The ancient fathers, Origen in the third century, St. Ambrose and St. Jerome in the fourth, and St. Augustine in the fifth, have interpreted this text of St. Paul * as relating to venial sins committed by Christians, which St. Paul compares to "wood, hay, stubble," and thus with this text they confirm the Catholic belief in purgatory, well known and believed in their time, as it is by Catholics in the present time.

In St. Matthew (chap. v. 25, 26) we read: "Be at agreement with thy adversary betimes, whilst thou art in the way with him; lest perhaps the adversary deliver thee to the judge, and the judge deliver thee to the officer, and thou be cast into prison. Amen, I say to thee, thou shalt not go out from thence till thou repay the last farthing."

On this passage St. Cyprian, bishop of Carthage, a father of the third century, says: "It is one thing to be cast into prison, and not go out from thence till the last farthing be paid; and another to receive at once the reward of faith and virtue; one thing in punishment of sin to be purified by long suffering and purged by long fire, and another to have expiated all sins by suffering (in this life); one, in fire, at the day of judgment to wait the sentence of the Lord, another, to receive an immediate crown from him." (Epistle lii.)

* Origen, Homily xiv. on Leviticus, and in Homily xvi. (in some editions xii.) on Jeremias; St. Ambrose in his comments on 1 Corinthians; St. Jerome in his second book against Jovinian, title 4, part 2; St. Augustine in his *Enarratio* on Psalm xxxvii. title 4.

Our Saviour said: "He that shall speak against the Holy Ghost, it shall not be forgiven him, neither in this world, nor in the world to come." (St. Matt. xii. 32.)

From this text St. Augustine argues, that "It would not have been said with truth that their sin shall not be forgiven, *neither in this world, nor in the world to come*, unless some sins were remitted in the next world." (*De Civitate Dei*, book xxi., chap. xxiv.)

On the other hand, we read in several places of Holy Scripture that God will render to every one (that is, will reward or punish) according as each deserves. (See, for example, St. Matt. xvi. 27.) But as we cannot think that God will punish everlastingly a person who dies burdened with the guilt of venial sin only—it may be an "idle word"—it is reasonable to infer that the punishment rendered to that person in the next world will only be temporary.

The Catholic belief in purgatory does not clash with the following declarations of Holy Scripture, which every Catholic firmly believes, namely, that it is Jesus who cleanseth us from all sin, that Jesus bore "the iniquity of us all," that "by His bruises we are healed" (Isaias liii. 5); for it is only through the blood of Jesus and His copious redemption that those pains of purgatory have power to cleanse the souls therein detained.

Likewise the Catholic belief in purgatory is not in opposition to those texts of Scripture in which it is said that a man when he is justified is *translated from death to life; that he is no longer judged; that there is no condemnation in him*. For these passages do not refer to souls taken to heaven when natural death occurs, but to persons in this world, who from the death of sin pass to the life of grace. Nor does it follow that, dying in that state of grace, that is, in a state of spiritual life, they must go at once to heaven. A soul may be justified, entirely exempt from eternal condemnation, and yet have something to suffer for a time; thus also in this world many are justified and yet are not exempt from suffering.

Again, it is not fair to bring forward against the Catholic doctrine on purgatory that text of the Apocalypse (Rev. xiv. 13): "Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord. From henceforth now, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labors; for their works follow them," for this text applies only to those souls who die perfectly in the Lord, that is, entirely free from every kind of sin, even venial, and from the stain, the guilt, and the debt of temporal punishment of every sin. Catholics believe that these souls have no pain to suffer in purgatory, as is the case with the martyrs and saints who die in a perfect state of grace.

It is usual to bring forward against the Catholic belief in purgatory

that text which says: "If the tree fall to the south, or to the north, in what place soever it shall fall, there shall it be." (Ecclesiasticus xi. 3.)

This text confirms and illustrates the truth that when death comes the final doom of every one is fixed, and there is no more possibility of changing it, so that one dying in a state of mortal sin will always remain in a state of mortal sin, and consequently be rejected for ever; and one dying in a state of grace and friendship with God will for ever remain accepted by God, and in a state of grace and in friendship with Him.

But this text proves nothing against the existence of purgatory; for a soul, although in a state of grace, and destined to heaven, may still have to suffer for a time before being perfectly fit to enter upon that eternal bliss to enjoy the vision of God.

Some might be disposed, notwithstanding, to regard this text as opposed to the Catholic doctrine of purgatory, by saying that the two places alluded to in the texts are heaven and hell. But this interpretation Catholics readily admit, for at death either heaven or hell is the final place to which all men are allotted, purgatory being only a passage to heaven.

This text surely does not tell against those just ones of the Old Law who died in a state of grace and salvation, and who, though sure of heaven, yet had to wait in some middle state, until after the ascension of Jesus Christ; neither, therefore, does it tell against purgatory.

Christ's redemption is abundant, "plentiful," as Holy Scripture says (Psalm cxxix. 7); and Catholics do not believe that those Christians who die guilty only of venial sins unrepented of, and unforgiven, are condemned to the everlasting pains of hell, as Protestants must believe, if consistent with their principles. Catholics believe that for such there is still a way, although painful, of being cleansed from these lesser faults after this life, through the merits of Jesus Christ. And this is in purgatory, where they can be purified like gold in the fire, and made fit to enter into the heavenly Jerusalem, wherein "there shall not enter any thing defiled" (Apocalypse [Rev.] xxi. 27); or, to use the language of St. Paul, "he himself shall be saved, yet so as by fire." (1 Corinth. iii. 15.*)

Catholics also believe that the souls in purgatory continue to be members of the Church of Christ, and that they are relieved by the sacrifice of the Mass, by prayer, and by pious works, such as almsdeeds. These and other helps are called "suffrages," which are applied to them by the faithful here on earth, with the intention of helping them. Indulgences may also be applied to them.

The living can pray for each other efficaciously. St. James the Apostle says: "Pray for one another, that you may be saved." (v. 16.) Why, then, should we not be able to pray also with efficacy for the de-

* See note on this passage in the Douay Catholic version.

parted, especially since the souls in purgatory quitted this life in the state of grace and love which, according to St. Paul, "never falleth away." (1 Corinth. xiii. 8.) If death does not break their ties of love toward us, the same should not sever our bonds of love toward them, nor prevent us from doing what we can in their behalf. The Jews retain in their liturgy to this day the pious practice of praying for the departed.

This Catholic belief is comprised in those words of the Apostles' creed, "I believe the communion of saints." The natural meaning of this declaration being that we are in communion of prayers with the saints, whether in heaven, in purgatory, or on earth. It has always been the practice of the Catholic Church to offer prayers and other pious works in suffrage for the dead, as is amply testified by the Latin fathers; for instance, Tertullian, St. Cyprian, St. Augustine, St. Gregory; and amongst the Greek fathers, by St. Ephrem of Edessa, St. Basil, and St. John Chrysostom.

St. Chrysostom says: "It was, not without good reason, ordained by the Apostles that mention should be made of the dead in the tremendous mysteries, because they knew well that these would receive great benefit from it." (On the Epistle to Philippians, Homily iii.) By the expression "tremendous mysteries" is meant the holy sacrifice of the Mass.

St. Augustine says: "It is not to be doubted that the dead are aided by the prayers of holy Church and by the salutary sacrifice, and by the alms which are offered for their spirits; that the Lord may deal with them more mercifully than their sins have deserved. For this, which has been handed down by the fathers, the universal Church observes." (Vol. v., Sermon 172, *Enchirid.*)

The same pious custom is proved also from the ancient liturgies of the Greek and other Eastern churches, both Catholic and schismatic, in which the priest is directed to pray for the repose of the dead during the celebration of the holy mysteries.

Chapter XXXI.

On Reverence to, and the Invocation of, the Angels and Saints.

RIGHTLY to understand the Catholic doctrine of the invocation of saints, it is necessary that Protestants should bear in mind that the word *worship* has different significations, according as it is applied to God or applied to creatures. When applied to God, it means the *highest* degree of honor, due to God as God, and to God alone. When applied to things created, it means *inferior*, that is, less honor,

justly paid to them, either on account of their exalted position among creatures, or on account of a special reference they bear to God.

Catholics believe that the saints reigning with Christ are to be honored and invoked, that they offer prayers to God for men, and that their relics are to be held in veneration. We read in Holy Scripture that angels were worshipped by Abraham and Josue (Genesis xix. 1; Josue v. 15); that the prophets Samuel and Eliseus were worshipped, that is, treated with marks of honor and reverence. (1 Book of Kings [or 1 Samuel] xxviii. 14.) And in the First Book of Paralipomenon (or 1 Chronicles) xxix. 20, we read: "And all the assembly blessed the Lord the God of their fathers; and they bowed themselves, and worshipped God, and then the king" (David). In the Protestant version it reads: "worshipped the Lord and the king."

"The continual prayer of a just man availeth much" (St. James v. 16); and we find St. Paul earnestly asking the prayers of the Roman Christians, saying: "I beseech you, therefore, brethren, through our Lord Jesus Christ, and by the charity of the Holy Ghost, that you help me in your prayers for me to God." (Romans xv. 30.) All Christians allow that it is right and useful to ask the prayers of holy persons who are upon earth; it cannot surely be wrong or useless to ask the prayers of the saints in heaven, now that they are so near to God, and in no danger of offending Him.

That the saints can know something of what passes on earth, and can sympathize with us, may plainly be inferred from what our Saviour says in St. Matthew (xxii. 30), that the saints "shall be as the angels of God in heaven:" and from what He said in St. Luke (xv. 7, 10), "I say to you, there shall be joy before the angels of God upon one sinner doing penance." If angels see a sinner doing penance, the saints, who are like the angels of God, are able to see the same.

The holy prophets, enlightened by God, could see what was passing in distant places, and could even foresee future things. We have a striking instance in Exodus xxxii. 7, 14. When Moses was on the mountain with God, out of sight of the people below, God told him that the people had fallen into idolatry, and that He would therefore destroy them. But Moses at once prayed God to spare them, and God did so. If Moses, far away and out of sight, but with God, was allowed to know what was passing elsewhere, and to pray as he did for the idolatrous Israelites, we may naturally suppose that the saints in heaven are allowed to know something of what takes place on earth, and to pray for sinners. Surely the saints in the glory of heaven are not less enlightened than the prophets; nor can it be said that they have lost the power of praying, being nearer to the throne of God. If charity prompts us to pray one for an-

other here on earth, may not the saints pray for us in heaven, where "Charity never falleth away"? (1 Corinth. xiii. 8.) Shall it not be permitted to us who "are fellow-citizens with the saints" (Ephesians ii. 19), to ask their intercession, that they through the merits and mediation of Jesus Christ, may obtain for us what we stand in need of? We naturally feel that these blessed souls, being bound to us by ties of nature and grace, must have a zealous desire to help us in our necessities,* and that God will not withhold from them this satisfaction.

The power which the blessed Virgin and all the saints enjoy of interceding for us is a privilege communicated to them by Christ and based on His divine merits.

An objection often raised against the invocation of saints is, that it places them between God and men, making them mediators in the same way as Jesus Christ is the Mediator. This objection has no real foundation because Jesus is the only Mediator of redemption, and also of intercession by His own rights and merits; whereas the mediation of the saints is not a mediation of redemption but only a mediation of intercession, and this through the merits of Jesus Christ, their divine Saviour and ours. Hence the Church ends all her prayers with these words, "Through Jesus Christ our Lord."

In the sense of intercessor through Jesus Christ, a saint, or any one even here on earth who prays for his neighbor, may be considered and be called a mediator, as Moses was, who could say of himself: "I was the mediator, and stood between the Lord and you." (Deuteronomy v. 5.)

Chapter XXXII.

The Blessed Virgin Mary justly called Mother of God. Honor and Devotion to the Blessed Virgin Mary.

THE blessed Virgin Mary is rightfully called mother of God; for Jesus Christ, God incarnate (that is, God made man), is truly her son, as St. Luke (i. 35) expressly states: "The Holy which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God." St. Elizabeth calls the blessed Virgin "the mother of my Lord." (St. Luke i. 43.) And the blessed Virgin called our Saviour "Son." (St. Luke ii. 48.)

The General Council of Ephesus (held A. D. 431) condemned Nes-

*The rich man in hell (St. Luke xvi. 27) felt sympathy for his brothers on earth; we can but suppose that the saints in heaven have no less sympathy for their relatives and friends.

torius as a heretic for denying this title of "mother of God" (in the Greek *Theotok'os*) to the blessed Virgin. Those, therefore, who refuse to her this title of "mother of God" show that they do not realize the incarnation of the Son of God. They thus virtually deny the personal divinity of the Redeemer and the efficacy of the redemption; for in that case the blood which was shed on Calvary would not have been the blood of a God-man, but simply the blood of a man. It would be like falling into the heresy of Nestorius, who (contrary to the Catholic faith, which teaches that in Jesus Christ there are two natures but only one divine person) taught that in Christ, besides the two natures there are also two persons, the divine person and the human; and that the Eternal Son of God did not become man in the sense of assuming to Himself our human nature, but only in the sense of residing in the humanity as in a temple, or of being united to it, not in one person but in some other mysterious way only; and consequently that the blessed Virgin was merely the mother of that supposed human person, but not of that divine person which is in Christ.

The reason why many Protestants object to join in the affection due to our Lady, mother of God, is because they do not properly comprehend and realize in their hearts the import of this title, "mother of God." Let us then see what this title means.

It does not mean that Mary is the mother of the divinity, if by divinity be understood the divine nature, for the divine nature is "uncreated, eternal, before all worlds." Nor does it mean that Mary is the mother of the second person of the blessed Trinity, God the Son, according to His divine nature, which would be the same as being mother of the divinity, to assert which would be indeed not only absurd but blasphemous. Nor does it mean that Mary became the mother of a person that did not exist before, as is the case naturally with all ordinary mothers, for the Son of God who became the son of Mary is in Himself co-eternal with the Father. But it means that Mary is mother of God the Son, with regard to His human nature, which He assumed in time, and which human nature He had not before He took it from Mary, for until then He possessed only one nature, the divine.

After His incarnation God the Son possessed two natures, the divine and the human. In other words, Mary gave birth to a perfect and complete human nature which, from the very first instant that she conceived it of the Holy Ghost, God the Son made His own, assumed it, and united it to His Godhead, and thus God the Eternal Word was made flesh and became man.

Hence the fathers speak of a twofold birth or nativity of the "Word," or God the Son; the one, His being born of God the Father from all

eternity ("*ex Patre natum ante omnia sæcula*") ; and the other, which is in time, His being born man of the blessed Virgin ("*ex Maria Virgine, et homo factus est*").

God the Son, by assuming this perfect human nature, which He took from the blessed Virgin, was born in the flesh, and became really the son of Mary according to His human nature. Therefore the blessed Virgin, the mother of Jesus Christ, is properly and justly called "mother of God," that is, mother of God the Son from the time that He became also man of the substance of His mother, and was born of her in the world. True that the blessed Virgin Mary is simply a creature, deriving all her graces, privileges, and glory from God, and is wholly dependent upon Him ; but it is no less true that God chose her to be the mother of the Word incarnate, that the divine infant whom she bore and brought forth into the world is a divine person, clothed indeed with human nature, but in whom no human personality exists, because two persons could not so exist in the mystery of the incarnation. If Mary were not truly the mother of the Eternal Word made man, neither would the Eternal Word be truly incarnate, nor truly the Son of man, as He occasionally called Himself.

The blessed Virgin Mary, therefore, is justly styled "mother of God," because she is the mother of Jesus Christ, whose humanity is assumed by, and united to, a divine person, that is, God the Son. No wonder, then, that the blessed Virgin Mary should exclaim in her great hymn of praise to God, known as the *Magnificat* : "For He that is mighty hath done great things to me ; and holy is His name." (St. Luke i. 49.)

BECAUSE the blessed Virgin Mary, as the Archangel Gabriel declared, is "full of grace" (St. Luke i. 37), and because of her incomparable dignity of being the chosen mother of Jesus Christ, the Catholic Church regards her as the most highly favored of all creatures, as a creature highly exalted above all men and angels : and consequently teaches that she is to be honored as the most blessed among women, according to the admonition of St. Paul : 'Render, therefore, to all men their dues, . . . honor to whom honor.'" (Romans xiii. 7.)

All the honor given to the blessed Virgin by men does not equal the least one of those countless acts of honor given to her by her divine Son our Lord during the time that He lived with her and St. Joseph at Nazareth ; when, as we learn from the gospel, He "was subject to them." (St. Luke ii. 51.) We need not therefore be afraid of honoring her whom the Word incarnate so greatly honored. We are encouraged by the Church to do so, and to frequently recommend ourselves to her prayers.

This honor and this recourse to her intercession, far from detracting from the divine worship due to God and to the mediation of Jesus Christ, are felt by Catholics to be really tokens of respect to our blessed Saviour

on whose account chiefly we honor her: in fact, we honor her whom He Himself has so wonderfully honored, and whom He must wish all to honor. To dishonor Christ's mother would be to dishonor Christ; to honor and to love her is to honor and to love Christ, since it is above all for His sake that we show such affection and reverence to her.

This is sweetly expressed by Father Faber in a hymn to our blessed Lady, beginning:

" Mother of mercy,* day by day
My love of thee grows more and more;
Thy gifts are strewn upon my way
Like sands upon the great sea-shore.

.

" But scornful men have coldly said
Thy love was leading me from God;
And yet in this I did but tread
The very path my Saviour trod.

" They know but little of thy worth .
Who speak these heartless words to me,
For what did Jesus love on earth
One half so tenderly as thee ?

.

" Jesus, when His three hours were run,
Bequeathed thee from the cross to me;
And oh ! how can I love thy Son,
Sweet mother ! if I love not thee ?"

It has been well said: " The glories of the mother are the reflection of the divinity of her Son, and every crown that is wreathed for Mary is laid at Jesus' feet."

The parable in the gospel of the poor publican, who, " standing afar off, would not so much as lift up his eyes toward heaven; but struck his breast, saying, O God, be merciful to me a sinner " (St. Luke xviii. 13), proves humility to be the best disposition to render our prayers availing; and our recourse to the Virgin Mary is the effect of humility and of a sense of our unworthiness. Moreover, Catholics see clearly that in asking the blessed Virgin to pray for them, they thereby affirm that she is not herself the fountain of grace or of merit, since she herself, in order to obtain graces and merits for us, must, as well as we, have recourse to God, her and our Creator and Saviour; and that when she prays, she prays only through the mediation and merits of her divine Son.

In asking the blessed Virgin Mary to pray to Jesus for us, we thereby openly declare that Jesus Christ is our only Redeemer.

* Being mother of the Redeemer, she cannot but feel compassion toward those for whom her Son died.

Chapter XXXIII.

The Immaculate Conception of the Blessed Virgin Mary.

THE prophet Jeremias (i. 5) and St. John the Baptist (St. Luke i. 45) were sanctified before their birth, but some while after their conception; whereas it is the Catholic belief that the blessed Virgin was, by a special privilege, preserved immaculate, that is, free from the stain of original sin, from the first moment of her conception.

The immaculate conception of the blessed Virgin Mary, or her conception without the stain of original sin, refers to her soul, not to her body; for it is an admitted principle in theology that a human body is not in itself capable of guilt and of the stain of sin, as sin causes a moral and not a material stain. The Catholic Church teaches that in all other human beings descended from Adam, the soul, when created and united by God to the infant body yet unborn (which union is called passive conception, and in which parents have no part), necessarily contracts, by thus becoming a child of fallen Adam, the stain of original sin, which can afterward be washed away by having the merits of Jesus Christ applied to it; but that with the blessed Virgin Mary it was otherwise, for, at the very instant in which her soul was created and infused into her body, she was preserved from contracting the stain of original sin, by having sanctifying grace bestowed upon her in the very first moment of her existence, and this through the foreseen merits of Jesus Christ, her Son, which were applied to her in the way of prevention, and, therefore, in a special and more perfect manner.

The soul of the blessed Virgin was of itself liable to contract the stain of original sin like any other child of Adam, and, therefore, in need of redemption, but in view of and through the merits of Jesus Christ, whose virgin mother she was to be, and in whose favor some other general laws (as that a woman cannot be mother and virgin at the same time) were suspended, she was, by exception, preserved from contracting this stain. The Council of Basle (September 21, 1429) declared that the blessed Virgin Mary had never been subject to original sin.

Whilst the greatest part of Protestants are loath to admit the exemption of the blessed Virgin Mary from all sin, we find that even the Koran of Mahomet, written twelve centuries ago, deriving most likely the notion from ideas spread among Christians in the East, declares (chapter 3) that Mary the mother of Jesus was always protected from all the attacks of Satan.

All Christians admit that God could preserve the blessed Virgin immaculate, and most persons will feel that it would redound to the honor of Christ that His mother should never have been defiled by sin, never have been the slave of the devil, nor ever, even for an instant, have been an object hateful to God; for the Christian mind shudders at the thought that the one who was to be the living temple of God incarnate should have been permitted by God, who could prevent it, to be first the abode of the devil.

That which some Protestants think possible, reasonable, and strongly demanded by the honor of Christ, Catholics hold as an article of faith.

It is true that before the solemn definition of this doctrine a diversity of opinion was tolerated by the Church, and maintained by some Catholic theologians, who were not on that account accused of heresy; but this diversity was because the Church had not yet given an explicit definition on the subject, and some of the terms employed in debate in the divinity schools of that time were not sufficiently precise and definite, and a clear distinction between active and passive conception was not made.

The doctrine was solemnly defined as an article of faith by Pope Pius IX., speaking *ex cathedrâ* on the 8th of December, 1854, as follows: "*Auctoritate Domini Nostri Jesu Christi, beatorum Apostolorum Petri et Pauli ac Nostri declaramus, pronunciamus et definimus, doctrinam, quae tenet, beatissimam Virginem Mariam in primo instanti suæ Conceptionis fuisse singulari omnipotentis Dei Gratia et privilegio, intuitu meritorum Christi Jesu Salvatoris, humani generis, ab omni originalis culpae labe præservatam immunem, esse a Deo revelatam, atque idcirco ab omnibus fidelibus firmiter constanterque credendam.*"

"*Quapropter si qui secus ac a Nobis definitum est, quod Deus avertat, præsumpserint corde sentire, ii noverint, ac porro sciant, se proprio judicio condemnatos, naufragium circa fidem passos esse, et ab unitate Ecclesiæ defecisse.*"

This extract from the solemn definition may be translated as follows: "By the authority of our Lord Jesus Christ, of the blessed Apostles Peter and Paul, and by our own authority, we declare, pronounce, and define, that the doctrine which holds that the most blessed Virgin Mary, in the first instant of her conception, by a special grace and privilege of Almighty God, in view of the merits of Jesus Christ, the Saviour of mankind, was preserved free from all stain of original sin, has been revealed by God, and therefore is to be firmly and steadfastly believed by all the faithful.

"Wherefore, if any shall presume, which may God avert, to think in their heart otherwise than has been defined by us, let them know and, moreover, understand, that they are condemned by their own judgment, that they

have made shipwreck as regards the faith, and have fallen away from the unity of the Church."

That this doctrine is in accordance with Holy Scripture and the ancient Tradition of the Church, may be seen in books* that treat on this subject, as also in the apostolic letter of his holiness Pope Pius IX., "*Ineffabilis Deus*" (so named from the Latin words with which the said encyclical letter begins), of the 8th of December, 1854, which contains the dogmatical definition of the immaculate conception. In this document is also clearly explained how this doctrine, far from detracting from the redemption of Christ, adds to it a new lustre, inasmuch as it shows Christ's merits to be so efficacious as not only to have power to efface the stain of original sin after it is contracted, but also, what is more wonderful and beneficial, to preserve the soul from contracting it.

To treat this important subject in a satisfactory manner would require an entire volume, but for the satisfaction of some I will here quote one text of Holy Scripture, and a few passages from the ancient fathers in confirmation of the Catholic belief in the immaculate conception.

In the book of Genesis (iii. 15) God said to the serpent: "I will put enmities between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed."

According to all ancient interpreters this is a prophecy. The woman mentioned is Mary the mother of Jesus Christ, and the seed of the woman is Jesus Christ himself, the Redeemer of mankind.

Certainly the enmity which exists between Jesus Christ and the serpent, that is, the devil, is a perpetual one, and excludes sin of all kinds.

But the same enmity, it is here declared by God, should exist between the woman (that is, the blessed Virgin Mary) and the evil spirit.

Therefore it follows that the enmity which exists between the Virgin Mary and the devil must be a perpetual one, and also necessarily excludes all sin, and, therefore, also original sin, which of itself suffices to enslave a person to the devil.

This text sufficiently proves that the blessed Virgin Mary, through the merits of her Son Jesus Christ, was from the first moment of her existence immaculate: that is, she was preserved from contracting the stain of original sin in the first moment that her soul was united to her body and began to exist as a human being, that is, at the time of her passive conception. In the Hebrew and Samaritan text and Alexandrian version the pronoun is masculine or neuter, therefore referable either to seed, or to Christ, but this does not weaken the argument, for the proof does not depend upon the pronoun referring rather to one than to the other, but

* See F. Passaglia, S. J., and Bishop Ullathorne, O. S. B., on the Immaculate Conception, as also Father Patrizi, S. J.

upon the absolute and perpetual enmity of the Son and His mother against the demon, from which enmity it follows that both the Son and the mother have perfectly and entirely triumphed over the demon, though by a diverse title: that is, the Son by his own virtue, the mother by virtue of the Son.

The ancient writer of *De Nativitate Christi*, found in St. Cyprian's works, says: Because (Mary) being "very different from the rest of mankind human nature, but not sin, communicated itself to her." (See the Anglican Bishop Fell's edition, A. D. 1700, p. 60, col. 2.)

Theodorétus, a father who lived in the fifth century, says that Mary "surpassed by far the cherubim and seraphim in purity." Had Theodorétus believed that Mary was born in sin, he would hardly have used such an expression.

St. Ephrem, a father of the fourth century, says that Mary was "entirely free from every defilement and stain of sin." (*Oratio ad Beatam Virgine.*)

St. Cyril of Alexandria, who lived in the beginning of the 5th century, has these words: "With the exception of Christ and His blessed mother, we are all born in sin." (Lib. vi. in Joannem C. 15.)

St. Maximus, bishop of Turin, a father of the fifth century, says: "Mary clearly was a worthy dwelling-place for Christ, not on account of the beauty of her person, but because of original grace." (*Homilia v. ante Natalem Domini.*)

In the Greek liturgy of St. Chrysostom, a father of the fourth century, which liturgy is still used by the United Catholic Greeks and the schismatic Greeks, the following words are directed to be chanted by the choir during the canon of the Mass: "It is truly meet that we should praise thee, O mother of God, who art always to be blessed, and who art exempt from every fault: thou art the mother of our God, to be venerated in preference to the cherubim; thou art beyond comparison more glorious than the seraphim." (Goar: *Euchologium*, p. 78.)

Theodorus, patriarch of Jerusalem, said in the second Council of Nicæa that Mary "is truly the mother of God, and virgin before and after childbirth; and she was created in the condition more sublime and glorious than that of all natures, whether intellectual or corporeal." (Labbe, vol. viii.)

Add to all this, that disbelief in the immaculate conception of the blessed Virgin Mary would imply belief in the following revolting consequences: that He who is holiness itself, and has an infinite horror of sin, took human nature from a corrupt human source, whilst He might have taken it from an incorrupt one; that the infinite purity was enshrined in the ark of the maternity which had been sullied by original sin, whilst

He might have avoided it ; that the divine person drew the precious blood of his humanity from a source which was not from the first immaculate, whilst He might have preserved it immaculate, and this without diminishing, but rather enhancing, the glory of His redemption.

Who can believe that, it being in the power of God the Son to exempt the blessed Virgin, who was to be His mother, from contracting the stain of original sin, He should not have done so ?

Who can believe that, it being in the power of God the Son to prepare a spotless holy temple wherein to dwell incarnate for nine months, should have preferred to have one which had been first profaned by the stain of original sin ?

Who can imagine that God, who could become incarnate by preparing to Himself a mother immaculate in her conception, should have preferred a mother who had first been stained by sin and had been once in the power and slavery of Satan ?

To admit such oppositions is shocking to Christian minds. Christian sense, grounded on theological reasons, sees at a glance that the mother of God incarnate *must* have always been immaculate : that without this the enmity of Mary to sin would not have been perpetual and complete. It having been in the power of God to preserve Mary unstained from original sin, there is every reason to believe that He should have done it. *Potuit ergo fecit* (God was able, therefore He did it). It is hard, indeed, to imagine how the incarnation of the Son of God could have taken place, unless the mother had been preserved free from the stain of original sin, and had always been adorned with the splendor of the most perfect holiness.

Chapter XXXIb.

Reverence to Relics and other Religious Objects.

THE Catholic Church teaches that the images or representations of Jesus Christ, of His blessed virgin mother, and of the saints in general, are to be honored with "due honor ;" not, indeed, for what they are in themselves, but for what they represent. This honor is called relative honor, because it relates or refers to the person represented. Thus it would be simply a token of affection toward our parents if we were to kiss the likeness of a dear father or mother. At the House of Lords it is a customary mark of respect to Her Most Gracious Majesty the Queen to bow before her chair of state, even though it be empty. Again, men honor Her Majesty by putting her portrait in a distinguished

place and by bowing before it. It would be dishonoring the Queen herself to treat her portrait with any disrespect.

The reverence paid by Catholics to holy images does not offend against the commandment of God. It is true that the latter part of the first commandment declares: "Thou shalt not make to thyself a graven thing," but this is explained by the words that follow: "Thou shalt not adore them (*non adorabis ea*), nor serve them." (Exodus xx. 4, 5, and Deuteronomy v. 9.) The meaning, therefore, clearly is: Thou shalt not make unto thyself a graven thing or idol for the sake of adoring it as a false god or idol. The words, "bow down," in the Protestant version, instead of "adore," are calculated unhappily to mislead unreflecting persons. This commandment cannot be taken to condemn the use of images intended to promote the honor and worship of our Lord Jesus Christ, the true living God, or the inferior honor due to the holy angels and the saints, as this is not worship of strange gods, and, therefore, not idolatry.

It was thus understood by the Jews, who by the command of God placed two graven images of the cherubim on the ark of the covenant (3 Kings vi. 23), and other images of angels in the Temple of Solomon. (2 Paralipomenon [or 2 Chronicles] iii. 10, 11.) It is, in fact, thus practically understood also by those Protestants who have no scruple in making graven images, and even in setting them up in their places of worship.

No Christian certainly could find in his heart to treat the crucifix, that affecting image and appealing likeness of our crucified Saviour, as an idol, and trample it under his foot. Christian feeling would prompt him to respect it, as he respects and reveres the precious word, the sound, the very letters, of the holy name of Jesus.

It would be idolatry to worship any saint, or the image of any saint as God, but it is not idolatry to honor the saints for what they are, namely, the faithful servants of God, and to honor pictures of them for what these pictures represent. If we may pay respect to the likeness of a parent, child, or friend, living or departed, we may surely honor pictures of the saints who are the special friends of God, and show our reverence for those who, now glorious in heaven, are "The spirits of the just made perfect" (Heb. xii. 23), who are "like to Him" (1 St. John iii. 2) and who behold Him "face to face." (1 Corinth. xiii. 12.)

The danger which some Protestants suppose to exist that any one Christian might, through ignorance, worship the image for the reality—in other words, make an idol of it—is very remote indeed; for every Christian, even the least educated, knows how to distinguish an image from what it represents. The very word "image" or "likeness" itself marks plainly this distinction. If any one, seeing a poor Catholic woman praying before an image or picture of the blessed Virgin, were to say to her: "The blessed

Virgin is in heaven and not there, my good woman," she would look at such a person with pity and surprise for thinking it necessary to remind her of that.

Josue and the ancients did not break the commandment of God when they remained a whole day prostrate before the ark of the covenant and the likenesses of the cherubim, as stated in the book of Josue (vii. 6) in these words: "But Josue rent his garments, and fell flat on the ground before the ark of the Lord until the evening, both he and all the ancients of Israel."

In the Catholic Catechism of Christian Doctrine (chapter the fourth), learned amongst the first lessons by every Catholic child in England, is seen the Decalogue or the Ten Commandments of God, taken from the twentieth chapter of Exodus, but following, as to the last two commandments, the order of the repetition of the law in the fifth chapter of the book of Deuteronomy (see especially verse 21). The division of the commandments into ten adopted by the Catholic Church is that made by St. Augustine, bishop of Hippo, in the fifth century, in his book of "Questions on Exodus" (Question 17). This is a philosophical arrangement worthy of remark and study, and naturally suggested by the different matter of each part. This division is followed by the Protestants in Germany, and in general, except by the English Protestants.

In the same chapter of the Catholic Catechism we are taught the kind of respect and honor we should pay to relics and pictures in answer to the following questions: Question: "Should we give honor to relics, crucifixes, and holy pictures?" Answer. "Yes; we should give to relics, crucifixes, and holy pictures an inferior and relative honor, as they relate to Christ and his saints, and are memorials of them." Question: "May we not pray to relics or images?" and the plain answer put in the mouth of the child is: "No, for they can neither see, nor hear, nor help us."

As to those who fear lest it be idolatrous to pay honor to relics, I would only refer them to St. Jerome, who, opposing Vigilantius for pretending that the honor paid by the faithful to relics was idolatrous, argued with him in this way: "Not only do we not adore the relics of the martyrs, but we do not even adore the angels, the archangels, the cherubim and seraphim. Yet we honor the relics of the martyrs that we may adore Him whose martyrs they are. We honor the servants, that the honor bestowed on them may redound to their Master."

That God wills we should bestow honor on the relics of his saints, we gather from the marvelous virtue with which it pleases God sometimes to honor their bones and other relics. Thus in the Fourth Book of Kings (2 Kings of the Protestant version) we read: "Some that were

burying a man, . . . cast the body into the sepulchre of Eliseus [Elisha]. And when it had touched the bones of Eliseus, the man came to life, and stood upon his feet." (xiii. 21.)

The afflicted woman in the gospel who, full of faith and humility, trusted for her cure in the touch of the hem of the garment of our Lord (St. Matt. ix. 20); and those who had confidence in the "shadow" of St. Peter to cure their sick (Acts v. 15); and those who confided in the "handkerchiefs" and "aprons" that had touched the body of St. Paul, and brought them to the sick (Acts xix. 12)—all these were not disapproved by our Lord nor by the Apostles, but rewarded by God, who, by these humble means, cured them.

The many celebrated miracles wrought at the tombs of the martyrs prove that the honor we pay to them is agreeable to God. (See St. Augustine, book xxii., *City of God*, chap. viii.)

Chapter XXXv.

On the Use of the Latin Language.

THE Church is apostolic. She is the Church of St. Peter and of the other Apostles, and she has guarded with tenderness all the precious memories they have left.

When the Apostles parted from each other for their mission to announce to all nations the gospel of salvation, two languages chiefly were spoken and understood by the two great civilized divisions of mankind—the Latin language for the most part in the west and the Greek in the east. They preached the faith chiefly in Latin and Greek; their teachings and their institutions were written in those two rich languages, and the Church has preserved these monuments with a religious veneration. This is one reason why her language is for the most part Latin in the west, and Greek in the east. Yet this which, in fact, is a testimony in favor of her antiquity, is made by some a theme of reproach against her.

Providence had already disposed all in advance. Latin and Greek became dead languages, and hence invariable, and wonderfully adapted to formulate (or express with precision) the doctrines of the Church which alters not because she is divine.

An interesting calculation made on the changes that have been made in the living languages, shows, that had the Church adopted the various living languages instead of the Latin, she would have been obliged to

modify the formula (or essential words) used in the administration of the sacrament of baptism a great many times; otherwise these formulas would not have expressed correctly the idea they should convey. By this we can judge of the many changes which the wording of the creed, and decrees of the early councils and those of the Popes would undergo, were they not recorded in an unalterable (or dead) language.

Protestants have perhaps reason in preferring the use of spoken modern tongues in their authorized books of religion. Living languages, continually changing, are more suited to convey doctrines which are subject to frequent alteration. But the Catholic Church prefers old, unchangeable languages because she is herself unchangeable.

The Church speaks Latin, not only because she is unchangeable, but also because she is Catholic, or universal, and has to address herself to all people in all times.

During the first four centuries of Christianity Latin was the language of the civilized world, and although then a living language, it had that character of universality which the Church requires. When in course of time the world was divided into many nationalities, the Church still preserved her beautiful primitive language, and thus remained unchanged in her speech as in her essence.

Thus the Church speaks Latin because she is *apostolic, unchanging, and Catholic*.

St. Paul, it is true, in his First Epistle to the Corinthians (chap. xiv.), directed the Christians to use in their assemblies a language understood by all the faithful present; but many Protestants draw from this an objection which does not apply to the present question.

The Apostle confines himself to the preaching, exhorting, and instructing the assembled faithful, all which, he says, must be done in the vernacular or common language of the people. The word "prophecy" includes instructions—speaking on things divine. The Catholic Church follows this apostolic command to the letter. Her bishops, priests, missionaries, and catechists always employ in their teaching a language understood by all. They speak, when needed, in the most obscure and most barbarous dialects, in order that the Word of God preached may reach the understanding of all.

The Catholic Church speaks not only the particular distinctive language of each land and tribe when instructing the people, but has also a special Catholic language, that her pastors, belonging to every nation, may readily communicate with each other, that they may minister together at the altar, and that her laity, of whatever tongue, may not, when in a foreign land, feel strange in the house of God, but feel at home in any Catholic place of worship, in any part of the world.

In this way the Church unites in one universal tongue to implore the mercy and sing the praises of God. This beautiful and sublime harmony of nations in one faith, with one voice, in the one fold of the one Shepherd, is worthy of the Church of Christ, and of the unity which is her grand characteristic.

The Mass is a sacrifice offered directly to God, and it is not necessary for the people to follow in the Latin the words of the priest. When the Catholic priest stands at the altar, though there may be persons present from every clime, so soon as he pronounces aloud any part of the service, all understand, and take an intelligent part in his ministration; a fact which reminds one of the preaching of the Apostles on the Day of Pentecost, when all from every nation heard St. Peter, each in his own tongue. (Acts ii. 6.)

The Church speaks Latin, therefore, not only because she is *apostolic*, *unchangeable*, and *Catholic*, but also because she is *one*.

Change of language in the liturgy would seem to break the link with the past, and raise some suspicion of innovation in what is expressed in the liturgy; while the having retained the same ancient language indicates that the Church which continues to use it is the very same as of old, and that she has not changed in any essential matter, having been so careful as not to change even her language, which, compared with doctrine, is of much less importance.

It is fairly presumed that the Church which possesses the language of antiquity has antiquity on her side; that, being the inheritor of the language, she is also the inheritor of the ancient faith. The fact of her still using the Latin language makes us feel the more sure that the Catholic Church is the one old, unchangeable Church of God.

Chapter XXXVI.

Some Things that Catholics do not Believe.

WE have already passed in review what seem to be the principal points of Catholic belief, and now, in order to meet the most common of the misapprehensions and misrepresentations on these matters, we will here state, though it may be in part a repetition, some things that Catholics do *not* believe.

1st. They do *not* believe that there is any other Mediator of redemption than our Saviour Jesus Christ, "For there is no other name under heaven given to men, whereby we must be saved" than that of Jesus

(Acts of the Apostles iv. 12); and when they call the blessed Virgin or any other saint a mediator, it is *not* in the sense of Mediator of redemption, attributed to our Saviour, but in the sense of *intercessor* or *pleader*, in which sense any Christian may be called a mediator, whenever he intercedes or mediates between God and his fellow-man, as Abraham and Moses and St. Paul did, and thus prays for his neighbor. God himself commanded Eliphaz and his friends to apply to the patriarch Job that he should pray for them, and God promised to accept his prayers. "Go to my servant Job, and offer for yourselves a holocaust; and my servant Job shall pray for you; his face I will accept, that folly be not imputed to you." (Job xlii. 8.) In this sense Moses could also say, "I was the mediator, and stood between the Lord and you." (Deuteronomy v. 5.)

2d. They do not believe that the blessed Virgin is in any way equal or even comparable to God, for she, being a creature, although the most highly favored, is infinitely less than God. Nor do they claim for her any power beyond that which she derives from Him; for she is entirely dependent on God for her existence, her privileges, her grace and her glory.

The strong, loving expressions used oftentimes by Catholics, which seem to attribute to the blessed Virgin more than is here stated, are to be understood in the limited sense meant by Catholics themselves, as here explained; that is, in a way consistent with the Catholic teaching and spirit, and not in the unlimited, un-Catholic sense which persons not understanding that teaching may be led to apply to them. These tender expressions, I say, ought not to be judged of by cold or hostile criticism, for they spring from fervent, heartfelt devotion and unmeasured love.

If it were permitted to take offense at expressions which are only true in a limited sense, surely from those words of Scripture: "I have said, You are gods" (Psalm lxxxi. 6), one might argue that Holy Scripture holds certain men to be really gods. From those words of the Gospel: "If any man come to me, and hate not his father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brethren, and sisters, . . . he cannot be my disciple" (St. Luke xiv. 26), one might pretend that Christ encourages the hating of parents and other relatives. That direction of our Lord, "If thy right hand scandalize thee, cut it off" (St. Matt. v. 30), might be taken to justify self-mutilation. And from the words: "How knowest thou, O man, whether thou shalt save thy wife?" (1 Corinth. vii. 16) some might argue that according to Scripture a man can be the saviour of his wife.

If, therefore, even in the interpretation of Holy Scripture, it would be a wrong principle to take in the full extent expressions that were meant to be understood in a qualified sense only; so still more unjust it would

be to apply this wrong principle to expressions found in books of devotion or in religious poetical compositions, in which a certain latitude to the expansion of a warm heart is allowed.

It is a common practice among men to use expressions which are true only in a secondary and limited sense. For instance, a great poet or artist is spoken of as "divine;" mothers often call their children their little "angels," "kings," and "queens," and are said to "adore" or "idolize" them, and no one thinks of blaming such tender exaggerated expressions of heartfelt love. In like manner the title of "Worshipful" is given to every guild or ancient company of the city of London, to mayors and magistrates, and justices of the peace. Thus again, in the marriage service in the Book of Common Prayer of the Established Church of England, the bridegroom has to say to the bride: "With my body *I thee worship*."

No one should take offence at these expressions; indeed, it would seem captious to do so; more especially when the speaker declares his meaning.

3d. Catholics do *not* believe that there is any authority upon earth or in heaven that can give leave to commit any sin, even the least; or that a sin can be forgiven for money; or that a priest can give valid absolution to a sinner who does not repent and truly purpose to forsake sin and amend his life.

4th. They do *not* believe that a man can by his own good works, independently of the merits and passion of Jesus Christ and of His grace, obtain salvation, or make any satisfaction for the guilt of his sins, or acquire any merit.

5th. They do *not* believe that it is allowable to break a lawful oath, or tell a lie, or to do any other wicked thing whatever for the sake of promoting the supposed interest of the Church, or for any good, however great, likely to arise from it. The false and hateful principle, that the end justifies the means, or that we may do evil that good may come, is utterly condemned by the Catholic Church.

6th. They do *not* believe that it is in the power of the Church to add to the truths contained in the "deposit of faith," that is, to frame or enforce any doctrine which has not for its source the written or unwritten Word of God, or authority from the same. Nor do they believe, when the Church makes a definition in matters of faith, that this definition or article of faith is a new doctrine, but only a solemn declaration and a clearer statement of what was believed, at least implicitly (that is, in an implied way, or inferentially), in the time of the Apostles, though some private persons might have doubted of it.

7th. Catholics do *not* believe that Protestants who are baptized, who

lead a good life, love God and their neighbor, and are blamelessly ignorant of the just claims of the Catholic religion to be the only one true religion (which is called "being in good faith"), are excluded from heaven, provided they believe that there is one God in three divine persons ;* that God will duly reward the good and punish the wicked ; that Jesus Christ is the Son of God made man ; who redeemed us, and in whom we must trust for our salvation ; and provided they thoroughly repent of having ever, by their sins, offended God.

Catholics hold that Protestants who have these dispositions, and, moreover, have no suspicion of their religion being false, or have not means to discover, or fail in their honest endeavors to discover, the true religion, and who are so disposed in their heart that they would at any cost embrace the Roman Catholic religion if they knew it to be the true one, are Catholics in spirit and in some sense within the Catholic Church, without themselves knowing it. She holds that these Christians belong to, and are united to, the "soul," as it is called, of the Catholic Church, although they are not united to the visible "body" of the Church by external communion with her, and by the outward profession of her faith.

Very different is the case of a person who, having the opportunity, neglects to learn from genuine, trustworthy sources what the Catholic religion is and really teaches, fearing that, were he to become convinced of the truth of the Catholic faith, he would be compelled by his conscience to forsake his own religion and bear the worldly inconveniences attached to this step. This very fear shows a want of good faith, and that he is not in that insurmountable ignorance which could excuse him in the sight of God, but that he is one of those of whom it is said in Psalm xxxv. 4, "He would not understand that he might do well."

Fairness, no less than common sense, teaches that a man should study and examine the teaching of the Catholic Church at Catholic sources before condemning her. Surely no man ought to reject Catholic doctrines if he has not made himself well acquainted with them. Nor is it fair to form a judgment on misrepresentations made by ill-informed, interested, or prejudiced persons ; but he should rather, by the study of authorized Catholic works, judge of the truth with that calm and unprejudiced mind which the all-important subject of religion deserves. Thus having heard both sides you will be in a state to pass a judgment and not in danger of being guided by prejudice.

Our Saviour gave no hope of salvation to the Samaritan woman unless she entered the one true Church of that time, saying to her, destitute of

* A believer in one God who, without any fault on his part, does not know and believe that in God there are three divine persons, is, notwithstanding, in a state of salvation, according to the opinion of most Catholic theologians.

a sure guide: "You adore that which you know not; we adore that which we know; for salvation is of the Jews." (St. John iv. 22.) So likewise there is no salvation for any one who, having by God's grace come to the knowledge of the truth, obstinately refuses to join the true Church of God.

There was no safety out of the ark of Noë during the deluge, and no one can be saved who is in no sense within the true Church, prefigured by that ark. According to St. Cyprian: "No one can have God for his Father who has not the Church for his mother. If any one could escape the deluge out of the ark of Noë, he who is out of the Church may also escape." (Book on the Unity of the Church.)

It is hard to understand how a Protestant can daily say in the Apostles' creed, as many happily do still say: "I believe in the holy Catholic Church," without at least a thought arising in his mind, that perhaps, after all, the Church which alone is truly Catholic or universal, both in name and in fact, has more claim on his love and obedience than his own denomination, which really is not Catholic.

Chapter XXXVII.

Conclusion.

MAY the blessing of God accompany the reading of this short exposition of Catholic doctrine and practice!

May honest-hearted Protestants, by the study of these few pages of plain and candid explanation, be helped to form a more correct idea of the real teaching of the Catholic Church, and be better disposed to listen to her claim upon their love and obedience.

"The charity of Christ presseth us" (2 Corinth. v. 14) to entreat such earnest-minded persons to pray heartily to God for supernatural faith, for light to lead them on to the truth, and for strength to tear themselves away from all dangerous hindrances and from all attachments to any known sin.

If these earnest souls persevere in prayer and in avoiding sin and the occasion of sin, they shall find the truth—and the truth shall make them free indeed: "For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened." (St. Matt. vii. 8; St. Luke xi. 10.) Jesus said: "Blessed are the clean of heart: for they shall see God." (St. Matt. v. 8.) He also said: "Other sheep I have, that are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my

voice, and there shall be one fold and one shepherd." (St. John x. 16.) If, then, they are constant in prayer, they shall be guided into the one fold of the Good Shepherd, Jesus Christ, our blessed Lord and Saviour, to whom, with God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit, be all honor and glory, for ever and ever. Amen.

A PRAYER.*

For light to find the true Church of Christ, and for grace to submit humbly and heartily to her guidance when found.

O God the Father, my Creator; O God the Son, my Redeemer; O God the Holy Ghost, my Sanctifier; Holy Trinity, One God, have mercy upon me!

O Jesus, the Way, the Truth, and the Life, who didst appoint thine Apostles to act in thy stead, with power to teach all revealed truth, and to dispense thy sacraments, give me light to know thy one true Church visible here on earth.

Help me, dear Saviour, to submit myself humbly to her guidance, and let me not be tossed to and fro by every wind of doctrine.

Thou who didst heal the sick, heal me. Thou who didst give sight to the blind, grant that I may see. Let me find in thy Church pardon and salvation, through the merits of thy most precious blood.

Help me, a poor sinner, to follow after thee, and to press forward to the full enjoyment of thee forever in heaven. Amen.

Ejaculations or little prayers, recommended to be repeated very often, humbly and fervently.

Jesus, meek and humble of heart, make my heart like to thy heart.

Dear Jesus, lead me into thy one fold, O God of my salvation.

O God the Holy Spirit, give me light to know, and courage to profess, the true religion.

Jesus, our God: Have mercy on us.

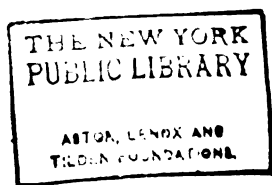
Maxim.

No security is too great where Eternity is at stake.

* It is strongly recommended to pray and to pray much, as conversion is a matter depending on God's light and grace. How many are thoroughly convinced of the truth of the Roman Catholic religion, and yet have not the courage to embrace it, because they do not pray, or do not pray properly and enough. See observations of Cardinal Newman on Faith, in Part II. of this book, No. 12.



NO CROSS, NO CROWN.



PART II.

PRACTICAL DIRECTIONS TO A PROTESTANT BEFORE AND AFTER BEING RECEIVED INTO THE CATHOLIC CHURCH.

**No. 1.—Answers to some Difficulties, and to some Questions
that a Person earnestly seeking the true Religion might
wish to ask.**

Question.—May we not consider that all Christian denominations are good for salvation, provided a man lives up to the principles of the religion he professes?

Answer.—No; for though, under certain conditions, as explained at Chapter XXXVI., No. 7, some may be saved, who, without any fault of their own, are not outwardly, that is, visibly, united to the body of the Church, yet it is a great mistake to say that all Christian religions or denominations are good, and leading to salvation.

The Church of Jesus Christ, as is explained in Chapter XX., can be but one, and Jesus Christ has threatened condemnation to any one who refuses to hear this one appointed divine teacher. (St. Mark xvi. 16.)

We are as much bound to submit our intellect to God as we are bound to submit to Him our will. But to give credit to opinions taught by persons not sent by God, or by interpreters not authorized by Him, is not submitting our intellect to God.

Again, as the law of God in morals excludes vice, so in intellectual matters it excludes error in faith ("dissensions, sects"), and forbids it under pain of exclusion from heaven. (See Galatians v. 20, 21.)

God, who is essential truth, can only command true faith, that is, believing what is true; therefore every one is bound to look for the true faith.

To suppose that God is indifferent as to whether we have the truth or the contradiction of it, which is error, whether we commit ourselves to the guide appointed by Him, or rebel against that guide, and commit ourselves to unauthorized teachers, would be to bring to naught the object of revelation, to nullify the office of the Church, to contradict the declaration of Christ, and, if done wilfully, to offer an insult against the God of holiness, charity, and truth.

Question.—I can scarcely suppose that God requires of me to give up the religion of my fathers, in which I was born and brought up, for another religion, in which it may be difficult for me to feel at home. Does God require of me such a sacrifice as the ruin of my prospects, the loss of property, the opposition of parents and friends, who will, in all likelihood, resent such a step and forsake me, leaving me an outcast of society, and an object of pity and suspicion?

Answer.—This must naturally be a painful thought, but instead of regarding this step as abandoning the religion of your fathers, you should consider it, as it really is, a coming back to the old religion and faith of your forefathers, of which faith you and your parents have unconsciously been deprived; for it is a well-known historical fact that down to the time of the so-called Reformation in the sixteenth century, almost without exception all Christian people in England were Catholics, and that the people in England have been forced into Protestantism by the banishment of all Catholic bishops and priests, and by stringent penal laws against anyone who was absent from Protestant service, or who attended Catholic worship.

If Protestantism had been introduced in a fair way (as by persuasion), Protestants would have built churches for themselves, leaving the Catholic churches in possession of their rightful owners. The simple fact that all Catholic cathedrals, churches, colleges, and other Catholic public edifices in England have been taken away from Catholics by Protestants, and not one of them left in their hands, is a sign that Protestantism was introduced into that country in a violent way.*

Were the hardships entailed on a Protestant for embracing the true religion even greater in number and more severe than they really are, they ought not to be considered great when compared with the gain: and one ought to be ready to undergo them with a generous heart, out of a sense of duty to God, and in view of one's eternal interest.

The sacrifice of any temporal advantage is never too great to secure

*See Part III., No. 10, of this book.

everlasting salvation. No earthly advantage, which is but for a time, can make up for the loss of heaven. Our Lord expressed this truth in those searching and solemn words : "What doth it profit a man if he gain the whole world, and suffer the loss of his own soul?" (St. Matt. xvi. 26.)

The example of so many millions of martyrs who died for the faith ought to stir up our courage and devotion.

Our Lord says : "He that loveth father or mother more than me, is not worthy of me ; and he that loveth son or daughter more than me, is not worthy of me. And he that taketh not up his cross, and followeth me, is not worthy of me." (St. Matt. x. 37, 38.) "So likewise everyone of you that doth not renounce all that he possesseth, cannot be my disciple." (St. Luke xiv. 33.) "For he who shall be ashamed of me and of my words, of him the Son of man shall be ashamed when he shall come in his majesty, and that of his Father, and of the holy angels." (St. Luke ix. 26.) "Do not think that I came to send peace upon earth ; I came not to send peace, but the sword." (St. Matt. x. 34.)

From all this it is plain that our Lord Jesus Christ expects some sacrifice from us. We ought, therefore, not to be backward in making them for the love of Him who sacrificed Himself unsparingly for the love of us. We ought to be glad to have an opportunity of doing so : and our Lord will not be sparing in His rewards. (See St. Matt. xix. 29.)

Some are naturally much affected by the thought of having to leave the religion in which they were born and educated, and in which they passed so great a part of their life. But surely this is to allow oneself to be guided by feeling rather than by duty, conscience, and reason. If this were a good motive, all those who have the misfortune of being brought up in heresy would be justified in remaining in it. To have been born and bred in a certain religion is not a sound reason for retaining it, when you come to see clearly that it is not true. You will be answerable to God for obstinately continuing to profess a religion which, by God's grace, you have seen to be false, and for obstinately refusing to embrace that religion which, by God's grace, you feel convinced is the true religion founded by Jesus Christ.

The thought of changing your long-cherished religious profession disturbs and alarms you. You should observe, however, that though, on the one hand, you are required to give up all that is false in the religious belief you have professed until now, you will happily retain everything good and true that you possessed as a Protestant, to which you have only to add those necessary points of belief in which you are deficient. Whatever truth and whatever good there is in the religious belief you have hitherto professed you will find, in all their genuine simplicity and fulness, in the Catholic Church. Instead of having less affection for

your parents and friends, your love for them will be deepened, your sympathy ennobled and enlarged, your love for Jesus Christ intensified, and your respect for the Word of God more consistent and more true.

If what keeps you back were fear of not being able to surmount certain difficulties, you should consider that as it is a strict duty on your part to embrace the true religion, God will not fail to give you the necessary strength to that end. To doubt this and to distrust God's assistance would be more unreasonable, more offensive to God and more fatal to yourself than the distrust shown by the Israelites in the desert of being able to overcome the obstacles which opposed their taking possession of the promised land. (See book of Numbers, chapters xiii. and xiv.)

Question.—If a person believes all that the Catholic Church teaches, and frequents Catholic services and fulfills other Catholic duties, is he not then a Catholic, without any need of a formal reception by a Catholic priest?

Answer.—No adult baptized Protestant is considered to be a convert to the Catholic Church until he is received into the Church according to the prescribed rite. No other way of admitting any non-Catholic Christian as a member of the Catholic Church was ever known but that of absolving him with an external rite from ecclesiastical censures (that is, certain spiritual disadvantages and penalties) resting on him, and of admitting him into the Church. This rite is performed only by a Catholic priest in the name of the Church.*

A foreigner or alien is not considered to be a subject of the British Empire unless he has undergone the formalities of naturalization making him a British subject; and a Christian estranged from the Church of God is not, as a rule, reckoned as belonging to the Church—the kingdom of God on earth—unless he is duly absolved and received. One must be within the ark to be safe from the deluge; one must be within the walls of the city to be safe from the enemy. The Church is that ark, that city. St. Jerome says: "Whoever is not in the ark of Noë will perish by the deluge." (Epistle to Pope Damasus.) And in a passage of Isaias which refers to the Church it is said: "Salvation shall possess thy walls." (lx. 18.)

Question.—Nicodemus was a disciple of Christ, though secretly; cannot I in like manner be a Catholic in heart and in secret?

Answer.—Nicodemus was a disciple of Jesus Christ in secret; but he presented himself to our Lord. Begin therefore by presenting yourself to the Catholic priest, to be instructed and received into the Church. After being received into the Church privately, if weighty reasons in the judgment of your spiritual director justify it, such as loss of home, or

* See Conversion of Victorinus, Part II. No. 3, of this book.

property, or employment, and so long as those weighty reasons last, you need not make your Catholicity public, but may attend to your Catholic duties privately. Circumstances, however, may occur in which either plain duty or the sacredness of truth, or the honor of God, or the edification of neighbors may require of you "to contend earnestly for the faith" (St. Jude 3); imitating Nicodemus himself, who when required boldly came forward and attended to the burial of Christ; for in such cases, as St. Paul warns us, "with the mouth confession is made unto salvation." (Romans x. 10.)

Question.—What should a person do who is convinced of the truth of the greater part of Catholic teaching, but who is not quite satisfied about some points?

Answer.—Humbly beg God's aid and blessing; apply with confidence to a Catholic priest; state your difficulties to him, and ponder well, before God, upon his explanations and advice.

As a father, he will be sure to receive you kindly, whoever you are, and will patiently hear what are your difficulties. He will gladly remove from your mind any mistaken notion about the Catholic faith, and, it may be, he will be able to remove your difficulties.

It is very important that you should hear for yourself an answer to your religious difficulties from one who, by study, training, and in virtue of his office, is fitted to deal with such matters; for it often happens that the particular objections you may have on your mind are not answered, or, perhaps, even so much as mentioned, in ordinary books of Catholic instruction.

Go, then, to him at once, as you value your immortal soul; for you may never be able by yourself to overcome your difficulties; and by delaying you may lose, through a mere crotchet perhaps, after all, the priceless joy and peace of living and dying in the embrace of your true mother the holy Catholic Church, the Church founded and ever protected by Jesus Christ.

Question.—What steps should be taken by any one who, after having thought on the matter well and prayed earnestly, has decided to become a Catholic?

Answer.—You must apply to a Catholic priest, who will judge of your dispositions and of your knowledge of the Catholic faith. He will give you further instruction if needed, and explain your duties, and how you have to act after your reception into the Church. When he is satisfied that you are properly prepared, he will appoint the time for your being received.

Question.—What is the usual practice for the reception of a convert into the Catholic Church?

Answer.—On coming to be received, if it is certain that you have never been baptized, you will receive the sacrament of baptism, and that is a full reception into the Church without any other form. In such case, it may be useful to make a confession of your past sins; but you are not bound to do it, because holy baptism remits not only original sin, but also all actual sins.

For a convert who presumably has been baptized when a Protestant, though not quite certain that he has been baptized well, coming to be received into the Church, the practice is:

1st. You go to the altar or to the sacristy, or other place convenient for your reception.*

2d. The priest who is with you says certain prayers appointed by the Church; you, in the meantime, kneel down and pray silently.

3d. You will then read, or repeat aloud, after the priest, the profession of faith, namely, that summary of Catholic belief known as the Creed of Pope Pius IV., or some other authorized form, as that approved by the Sacred Congregation of the Holy Office. (See Part II., No. 2, Second Form of Profession of Faith.)

4th. After this, the prayer called the "general confession," or *Confiteor*,† is said by yourself, or by the priest, if no one else is there to say it for you. He will then release you from the ban and censures of the Church, under which as a Protestant (by misfortune, probably, rather than by fault), you have hitherto been, and he will so receive you into the fold of the Church. If you do not yourself say the *Confiteor*, you will do well to repeat in a low voice with sorrow of heart those words of the penitent in the gospel: "O God, be merciful to me a sinner." (St. Luke xviii. 13.)

5th. The priest will then administer to you baptism under condition (*sub conditione*), by pouring a little water thrice on your head or forehead, whilst he addresses you by your Christian name, and pronounces these words: "[Christian name], if thou art not already baptized, I baptize thee in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost. Amen."‡

* It has been the practice until of late to hear a preparatory confession from a Protestant before being received into the Church; which confession was completed and followed by sacramental absolution after the conditional baptism had been administered. This practice, I am authorized to state, is now, as a rule, discontinued; for, by an instruction of the holy see, which is printed in the Appendix to the 4th Provincial Council of Westminster (Chapter xviii.), it is required: (1) That those persons who, on being converted to the Catholic faith in England, are conditionally baptized, shall also make a full sacramental confession of the sins of their past life; and (2) that this confession with conditional absolution, shall follow the conditional baptism. I said, "as a rule," because if a convert, of his own accord, wishes to open his mind and tell his sins beforehand to the priest, completing his confession, and receiving absolution after having received conditional baptism, there is nothing to prevent it.

† The *Confiteor* will be found four pages hence.

‡ The Latin form used by the priest is: "[N. N.], si non es baptizatus, ego te baptizo in nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti. Amen."

"If thou art not already baptized," makes this act to be no baptism at all if the first baptism was valid. In this way the danger and even the possibility of administering a second baptism is effectually avoided.

Conditional baptism is, as a rule, administered for safety's sake to all converts from Protestantism, on their reception into the Church, from the fear that, as sometimes has been the case, what they received before as baptism was not really baptism, either for want of intention, or on account of some defect in the element used, or in the words uttered, or on account of some serious fault in the administration; and to obtain full information about every case is almost an impossibility.*

It is to be remarked, therefore, that only when there has previously been really no baptism, does this baptism "under condition" take effect; for holy baptism is a sacrament that can be received only once.

In baptism under condition the ceremonies prescribed for baptism are not required, nor are sponsors needed.

6th. After the baptism under condition the priest recites the ancient hymn of the Church, beginning: "*Te Deum laudamus*" ("We praise thee, O God"). (See Part II., No. 10.)

7th. Being now baptized and received into the Church, you will go and kneel in the confessional, or other appointed place in the Church, to make your confession and to receive from the priest the sacramental absolution.† While receiving absolution, you must renew your sorrow and your hatred of sin, and your resolution to amend, making a sincere act of contrition. (See Part II., No. 12, and middle of No. 15.)

As some converts feel a great deal of needless alarm and anxiety about confession, it may be well here to remark—

1st. That we are bound to confess only mortal sins (that is, grievous sins which "kill the soul," by depriving it of the grace of God) (see chapter XIII.), which after self-examination can be called to mind. Our venial sins (that is, lesser faults, which, "though they offend God, do not kill the soul"), we are not bound to confess, although it is recommended to do so. Holy communion, an act of contrition, or a fervent act of the love of God, suffices, through the merits of Christ, without sacramental confession, to cleanse the soul from the stain of venial sin.

2d. That it is not required of us to mention each sin of the same sort or kind in detail, but the sins of one kind may be all mentioned together: for example, the penitent confessing may say: "I accuse myself of having

* Though a priest is not bound under the said circumstances to make investigation about the validity of the baptism of each convert, yet if, in some particular case, the priest happens to be thoroughly convinced that a person has been validly baptized, the baptism under condition is omitted according to directions from Rome.

† Directions how to approach the sacrament of penance will be found in Part II., No. 15, of this book.

been guilty of grievous disobedience to my father or mother, or of having given way to great spiteful anger, about [so many] times," stating, according to the best of his belief, after careful examination, the number ; and thus also of other mortal sins. A circumstance which may cause a venial sin to become mortal, or a sin of one kind to become further a sin of another kind, must also be declared.

3d. That if we are not able to remember the exact number of our sins, it is enough to state the probable number, to the best of our recollection and judgment, saying: "I have committed that sin about [so many] times" a day, a week, or a month. In fact, we are bound to reveal our conscience to the priest as we know it ourselves, there and then stating the things certain as certain, those doubtful as doubtful, and the probable number as probable ; for God does not require impossibilities, but only what we can offer, namely, sincerity and ordinary diligence.

Confession, fairly explained and rightly understood, is not so difficult as some imagine it to be.

Confession is the healing medicine of the soul, and we must not wonder that, in the providence of God, it is somewhat bitter ; yet we ought to be ready to use it for our soul's health, as we take a medicine for the good of the body, however distasteful that medicine may be.

If prisoners condemned to death were offered release on condition that they would make confession of their misdeeds, in secret only, to one of the judges, who would be bound, in honor, never to reveal a word of what they had confessed, surely they would thankfully avail themselves of the offer, and would easily overcome their natural dislike to self-accusation in order to purchase life and liberty. So a Christian ought not to consider it too hard a condition of forgiveness to have to confess to any priest he may choose, who has the authority, called "faculty," from his bishop to hear confessions, and who is most solemnly bound, not only in honor but in conscience, by the law of God and by the positive law of the Church, to the most sacred and inviolable secrecy with regard to what he hears in sacramental confession. The penitent sinner will not think it too hard to make confession of his sins if he only considers the punishment his sins have deserved, the sufferings which our Saviour underwent for his sins, the forgiveness he receives, his rescue from the slavery of Satan, and his restoration to the friendship of God, and what a great folly it is, for the sake of sparing himself a little shame here in confessing his sins, to expose himself to eternal shame hereafter.

Jesus Christ shed His precious blood, to the last drop, in the midst of the most cruel torments on the cross, to provide for us sinners an overflowing fountain of salvation in the sacrament of penance—the sacrament of reconciliation. To refuse to make use of this life-giving sacrament, on

the plea that to confess to a priest is disagreeable to nature, is unworthy of a Christian.

Let me add that confession is not, after all, so hard in practice as some not accustomed to it may imagine. With God's grace and the assistance of your confessor, added to your own good dispositions, confession becomes surprisingly easy and consoling.

How many converts there are who, though in alarm before making their confession, have afterward exclaimed : " And is that all ? Had I only known how easy it was, I would not have endured upon my conscience the burden of sin so long, and put off my reception into the Catholic Church. Thank God ! now I feel an unspeakable peace."

Oh, that many, many more would thus readily obtain peace and happiness ! Why are there persons who endanger their salvation by choosing to remain in a state of uncertainty in matters necessary to be believed, having all the while their conscience burdened with sin and misery ? Cardinal Newman feelingly observes on this point :

" How many are the souls in distress, anxiety, or loneliness, whose one need is to find a being to whom they can pour out their feelings unheard by the world ! Tell them out they must ; they cannot tell them out to those whom they see every hour. They want to tell them and not to tell them ; and they want to tell them out, yet be as if they be not told ; they wish to tell them to one who is strong enough to bear them, yet not too strong to despise them ; they wish to tell them to one who can at once advise and can sympathize with them ; they wish to relieve themselves of a load, to gain a solace, to receive the assurance that there is one who thinks of them, and one to whom in thought they can recur, to whom they can betake themselves, if necessary, from time to time, while they are in the world. How many a Protestant's heart would leap at the news of such a benefit, putting aside all distinct ideas of a sacramental ordinance, or of a grant of pardon and the conveyance of grace ! If there is a heavenly idea in the Catholic Church, looking at it simply as an idea, surely, next after the blessed sacrament, confession is such. And such is it ever found in fact—the very act of kneeling, the low and contrite voice, the sign of the cross hanging, so to say, over the head bowed low, and the words of peace and blessing. Oh, what a soothing charm is there, which the world can neither give nor take away ! Oh, what piercing, heart-subduing tranquillity, provoking tears of joy, is poured almost substantially and physically upon the soul, the oil of gladness, as Scripture calls it, when the penitent at length rises, his God reconciled to him, his sins rolled away for ever ! This is confession as it is in fact." (*Present Position of Catholics*, p. 351.)

Oh ! if they only would, how many might joyfully exclaim, with the

royal psalmist : “ Our soul hath been delivered as a sparrow out of the snare of the fowlers ; the snare is broken, and we are delivered ” (Psalm cxxiii. 8) ; and why will they not ?

“ Oh, taste and see that the Lord is sweet ; blessed is the man that hopeth in him.” (Psalm xxxiii. 9.)

THE “ CONFITEOR ” OR CONFESSION.

Confiteor Deo omnipotenti, be  t  e Mari  e semper Virgini, be  to Micha  li Archangelo, beato Joanni Baptist  e, sanctis Apostolis Petro et Paulo, omnibus sanctis, et tibi, Pater, quia pecc  vi nimis cogitatione, verbo et opere, me   culp  , me   culp  , me   maxima culp  .

Ideo precor be  tam Mariam semper Virginem, be  tum Micha  lem Archangelum, be  tum Joannem Baptistam, sanctos Apostolos Petrum et Paulum, omnes sanctos, et te Pater, or  re pro me ad Dominum Deum nostrum.

I confess to Almighty God, to blessed Mary ever Virgin, to blessed Michael the Archangel, to blessed John the Baptist, to the holy Apostles Peter and Paul, to all the saints, and to you, father, that I have sinned exceedingly in thought, word, and deed, through my fault, through my fault, through my most grievous fault. [*Here strike your breast in sorrow thrice.*]

Therefore I beseech blessed Mary ever Virgin, blessed Michael the Archangel, blessed John the Baptist, the holy Apostles Peter and Paul, all the saints, and you, father, to pray to the Lord our God for me.

No. 2.—The Apostles’ Creed.

Divided into 12 Articles.

1, I believe in God the Father Almighty, Creator of heaven and earth; 2, and in Jesus Christ, His only Son, our Lord; 3, who was conceived by the Holy Ghost, born of the Virgin Mary; 4, suffered under Pontius Pilate, was crucified, dead, and buried; 5, He descended into Hell; the third day He rose again from the dead; 6, He ascended into heaven; sitteth at the right hand of God the Father Almighty; 7, from thence He shall come to judge the living and the dead; 8, I believe in the Holy Ghost; 9, the holy Catholic Church; the communion of saints; 10, the forgiveness of sins; 11, the resurrection of the body; 12, and the life everlasting. Amen.

CREED OF POPE PIUS IV.*

I [*N., Christian name*], with a firm faith, believe and profess all and every one of those things which are contained in that creed which the

* This Creed, an extension of the Nicene Creed, was composed at the conclusion of the General Council of Trent (capital of the Austrian Tyrol), held from the year of our Lord 1545 to 1563, to meet the errors of the first Protestants, Luther, Calvin, and others, then spreading. A few supplementary words were added by Pope Pius IX., referring to the Supremacy and Infallibility of the Roman pontiff.

holy Roman Church maketh use of. Namely : I believe in one God, the Father Almighty, maker of heaven and earth, of all things visible and invisible. And in one Lord, Jesus Christ, the only-begotten Son of God, born of the Father before all ages. God of God : Light of Light : true God of true God ; begotten, not made, consubstantial * to the Father ; by † whom all things were made. Who, for us men, and for our salvation, came down from Heaven, and was incarnate by the Holy Ghost of the Virgin Mary, and was made man. He was crucified also for us, under Pontius Pilate, He suffered and was buried, and the third day He rose again according to the Scriptures. He ascended into heaven, and sitteth at the right hand of the Father, and He shall come again with glory to judge the living and the dead :—of whose kingdom there shall be no end. And I believe in the Holy Ghost, the Lord and Life-giver, who proceedeth from the Father and the Son, who, together with the Father and the Son, is adored and glorified ; who spoke by the prophets.

And I believe one holy, Catholic, and apostolic Church. I confess one baptism for the remission of sins : and I look for the resurrection of the dead, and the life of the world to come. Amen.‡

I most steadfastly admit and embrace the apostolical and ecclesiastical traditions,§ and all other observances and constitutions of the same Church.

I also admit the Holy Scriptures, according to that sense which our holy mother the Church has held, and does hold, to which it belongs to judge of the true sense and interpretation of the Scriptures : ¶ neither will I ever take and interpret them otherwise than according to the unanimous consent of the fathers. ¶

I also profess that there are truly and properly seven sacraments of the New Law, instituted by Jesus Christ our Lord, and necessary for the salvation of mankind, although not all of them necessary for every one,

* Of one substance with.

† Or through whom, " per quem."

‡ So far, this is, word for word, the Nicene creed, which was mainly composed by the Council of Nicæa, held in the year of our Lord 325, against the Arians, who denied the divinity of Jesus Christ.

§ That is, " I admit as points of revealed truth what the Church declares that the Apostles have taught as such, whether clearly or not clearly expressed or not even mentioned in the written Word of God: as, for instance, that baptism is to be conferred on infants, that Sunday instead of Saturday (called the Sabbath) is to be kept holy: and moreover, I admit those points of discipline which the Church holds as established by the Apostles, or by their successors as lawful rulers of the Church in the early centuries of Christianity, such as points of liturgy or of Church government.

¶ This means: " I will not take the Holy Scripture in a *wrong sense*;" as would be the case if one were to interpret a passage of Scripture in a sense opposed to that defined by the Church. (See Chapter VIII.)

¶ This regards points of faith or morals not yet defined by the Church; and it means that when it is known that the fathers (venerated Christian writers of ancient times) agree in the interpretation of any passage of Scripture on matters of *faith or of morals*, it would be rash and wrong to disregard their interpretation; as in such cases their testimony represents the faith of the Church. It does not, however, imply that an obligation rests on a private person to consult the fathers when reading Holy Scripture for his own edification and instruction. To put such an interpretation on this passage would be mere cavilling.

namely, Baptism, Confirmation, the Eucharist, Penance, Extreme Unction, Orders, and Matrimony ; and that they confer grace ; and that of these, baptism, confirmation, and orders, cannot be repeated without the sin of sacrilege. I also receive and admit the received and approved ceremonies of the Catholic Church used in the solemn administration of the aforesaid sacraments.

I embrace and receive all and every one of the things which have been defined and declared in the holy Council of Trent, concerning original sin and justification.

I profess likewise, that in the Mass there is offered to God a true, proper, and propitiatory sacrifice for the living and the dead. And that in the most holy sacrament of the Eucharist, there is truly, really, and substantially the body and blood, together with the soul and divinity of our Lord Jesus Christ, and that there is made a conversion of the whole substance of the bread into the body, and of the whole substance of the wine into the blood ; which conversion the Catholic Church calls transubstantiation. I also confess that, under either kind alone, Christ is received whole and entire, and a true sacrament.

I steadfastly hold that there is a purgatory, and that the souls therein detained are helped by the suffrages* of the faithful. Likewise that the saints reigning together with Christ are to be honored and invoked, and that they offer prayers to God for us, and that their relics are to be held in veneration.†

I most firmly assert that the images‡ of Christ, of the Mother of God, ever Virgin, and also of other saints, ought to be had and retained, and that due honor and veneration are to be given them.§

I also affirm that the power of granting indulgences was left by Christ in the Church, and that the use of them is most wholesome to Christian people. (See Chapter XXIX.)

I acknowledge the holy Catholic, apostolic, Roman Church for the mother and mistress of all churches, and I promise true obedience to the Bishop of Rome, successor of St. Peter, prince of the Apostles, and vicar of Jesus Christ. (See Chapter XXI., on the Supremacy of the Bishop of Rome.)

I likewise undoubtingly receive and profess all other things which the sacred canons and general councils, and particularly the holy Council of

* That is, spiritual helps, such as pious works or prayers.

† This article does not enjoin as a command the pious invoking of the saints and the honoring of their relics, as this, except in the public services of the Church, is left by the Church to the discretion and devotion of each individual ; but it intends to condemn the error of those who reject altogether as wrong the invocation of saints and the honor paid to them and their relics.

‡ Or pious memorials.

§ In this passage also there is no command implied to keep holy images for private devotion, but it binds us to admit the principle of the lawfulness of the practice, and that it is right and good to use them.

Trent and the Œcumenical Vatican Council, have delivered, defined, and declared, and in particular, about the supremacy and infallible teaching of the Roman pontiff.* And I condemn, reject, and anathematize all things contrary thereto, and all heresies which the Church has condemned, rejected, and anathematized.

I [*Christian name*], do at this present freely profess and sincerely hold this true Catholic faith, out of which† no one can be saved.‡ And I promise most constantly to retain and confess the§ same entire and unstained, with God's assistance, to the end of my life.

A SHORTER FORM OF PROFESSION OF FAITH. |

I [*name*], son [*or daughter*] of [*name and surname of the father*], born in [*place of birth and whether married or single*], kneeling before you Rev. Father duly authorized by the bishop of [*Bishopric*], having before my eyes the holy Gospels, which I touch with my hand, and knowing that no one can be saved without that faith which the Holy Catholic Apostolic Roman Church holds, believes, and teaches, against which I grieve that I have greatly

erred, inasmuch as I have held and believed doctrines opposed to her teaching :

I now, enlightened by divine grace to see my past errors, profess that I believe the Holy Catholic Apostolic Roman Church to be the only and true Church established on earth by Jesus Christ, to which I submit myself with my whole heart. I believe all the articles that she proposes to my belief, and I reject all the articles that she rejects and condemns, and I

* "*Et ab Œcumenico Concilio Vaticano tradita præsertim de Romani Pontificis Primatu et infallibili magisterio.*"

† (*Extra quam*).

‡ This expression should not appear too strong, as it is only a repetition of what Christ said : " But he that believeth not, shall be condemned." (St. Mark xvi. 16.) This condemnation is not intended to apply to the earnest Christian who has not the means of knowing the Catholic faith, for he thus belongs in some sense to the Catholic Church, being excused, on account of involuntary or invincible ignorance. This remark applies also to those who are altogether out of the light of the faith, but who follow with fidelity the light of the natural law they possess written in their hearts. (See Chapter XXXVI., *Some Things that Catholics do Not Believe*, No. 7.)

§ This condemns the opinion of some, that for salvation it is enough to believe the Catholic faith only inwardly ; for, not professing habitually the religion of Christ is equivalent to being ashamed of Christ ; and regarding those who are ashamed of Him, Christ declared He would be ashamed of them when He should come in the glory of his Father. (St. Mark viii. 38, and St. Luke ix. 26.) St. Paul declares, " with the heart we believe unto justice, but with the mouth confession is made unto salvation." (Romans x. 10.) From the moment that one is convinced that the Catholic faith is the true faith, and the Catholic Church the true Church of Christ, it is his duty to become a member of it, and be added to it also exteriorly by an outward reception ; as otherwise he would belong neither implicitly nor explicitly to it, that is, neither to the soul nor to the body of the Church. Not to the soul, because that is the privilege only of a person in good faith, as explained in Chapter XXXVI. No. 7. Not to the body, because, as we suppose, he refuses to join it outwardly in the manner appointed by the Church. Thus it was not enough for St. Paul or for Cornelius the centurion to believe inwardly, though enlightened by a supernatural light, but the former had, by God's direction, to apply for that purpose to the priest Ananias, and Cornelius to St. Peter. (See example of Victorinus, Part II. No. 3.)

| I am authorized by his lordship the bishop of Calcedonia, General Commissary of the Holy Office, Monsignor Vincent Leo Sallua, to state that this form of profession of faith is authorized by the holy see for the whole of Christendom, and that it is the form constantly used in Rome for the reception of Protestants and schismatics into the Catholic Church.

am ready to observe all that she commands me. And especially, I profess that I believe :

One only God in three Divine Persons, distinct from, and equal to, each other—that is to say, the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost;

The Catholic doctrine of the Incarnation, Passion, Death, and Resurrection of our Lord Jesus Christ; and the personal union of the two Natures, the divine and the human; the divine Maternity of the most holy Mary, together with her Immaculate Conception and most spotless Virginity;

The true, real, and substantial presence of the Body and Blood, together with the Soul and Divinity of our Lord Jesus Christ, in the most holy Sacrament of the Eucharist;

The seven Sacraments instituted by Jesus Christ for the salvation of mankind; that is to say, Baptism, Confirmation, Eucharist, Penance, Extreme Unction, Orders, Matrimony;

Purgatory, the Resurrection of the dead, Everlasting life;

The Primacy, not only of honor, but also of jurisdiction, of the Roman Pontiff, successor of St. Peter, Prince of the Apostles, Vicar of Jesus Christ;

The veneration of the Saints, and of their images;

The authority of the Apostolic and Ecclesiastical Traditions, and of the Holy Scriptures, which we must interpret and understand only in the sense which our holy mother the Catholic Church has held, and does hold;

And everything else that has been defined and declared by the Sacred Canons, and by the General Councils, especially by the Holy Council of Trent; and by the Œcumenical Council.

With a sincere heart, therefore, and with unfeigned belief, I detest and abjure every error, heresy, and sect opposed to the said Holy Catholic and Apostolic Roman Church. So help me God, and these His holy Gospels, which I touch with my hand.

MODE OF RECEPTION.

The priest authorized by the bishop sits on a chair, and the person to be received kneels before him and reads the above profession of faith, touching with his right hand the Gospel. Then the psalm Miserere, or De Profundis, is recited, ending with Gloria Patri. After this the priest rises and says :

Kyrie eleison, Christe eleison, Kyrie eleison, Pater noster.

V. Et ne nos inducas in tentationem.

R. Sed libera nos a malo.

V. Salvum fac famulum tuum [vel famulam tuam] Domine.

R. Deus meus sperantem in Te.

V. Domine exaudi orationem meam.

R. Et clamor meus ad Te veniat.

V. Dominus Vobiscum.

R. Et cum spiritu tuo.

OREMUS.

Deus cui proprium est misereri et parcere, Te supplices deprecamur, ut hunc famulum tuum [vel famulam tuam] quem excommunicationis catena constringit misratio tuæ pietatis clementer absolvas. Per Christum, etc.

(Here the Priest sits and says)—

Auctoritate Apostolica qua fungor in hac parte absolvo te a vinculo Excommunicationis quam incurristi, et restituo te sacro-sanctis Ecclesiae Sacramentis, Communioni et unitati fidelium in Nomine Patris, et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti. Amen.

(The priest enjoins a salutary penance consisting of a prayer, or visit to a church, or similar. Then the baptism under condition is administered when needful to do so.

A VERY SHORT FORM OF PROFESSION OF FAITH, TO BE USED ONLY IN CASES
OF VERY GRAVE AND URGENT NECESSITY.

Theologians teach that in case of an urgent necessity, as of grave illness, a short, comprehensive form may be used. I propose the following as an example :

I [*Christian name*], do sincerely and solemnly declare that, having been brought up in the Protestant religion [*or other religion, as the case may be*], but now, by the grace of God, having been brought to the knowledge of the truth, I firmly believe and profess all that the holy Catholic and Roman Church believes and teaches, and I reject and condemn whatever she rejects and condemns.

No. 3.—Conversion of Victorinus.*

To encourage timid souls to apply at once to a Catholic priest for instruction when the truth of the Catholic religion comes home to their minds, and not to allow themselves to be kept back by human respect from frankly applying to be received into the Church when thoroughly convinced of the truth of her divine claim to their obedience, I might here mention many illustrious examples of our own time of conversion to the Catholic faith in England.

Foremost among these would stand the honored names of Henry Edward Manning (now cardinal archbishop of Westminster), of John Henry Newman (now cardinal), of Father Frederick Faber, of Akers, Allies, Anderdon, Ashburnham, Aspinall, Badeley, Bagshawe, Ballard, Bampfield, Barff, Belaney, Bellasis, Beste, Bethell, Blair, Bowden, Bowyer, Britten, Brownlow, Buchan, Buckler, Bury, Bute, Campbell, Caswall, Christie, Clarke, Clutton, Coffin, Coleridge, Dalgairns, Denbigh, Digby, Douglas, Dunraven, Emly, Fincham, Formby, French, Lane-Fox, Galton, Gainsborough, Garside, Goldsmid, Gordon, Grindle, Harper, Hibbert, Humphrey, Hutchison, Hutton, Jerrard, Kenyon, Keogh, Kerr, Knox, Laing, Towry-Law, Leigh, Leslie, Lindsay, De Lisle, Lockhart, Louth, Lucas, Luck, Macmullen, Manners, Marshall, Maskell, Maude, Maxwell, Mayo, Mivart, Molesworth, Montagu, Monteith, Morell, Morris, Scott-Murray, North, Northcote, Oakeley, Paley, Palmer, Patmore, Patterson, Phillips, Pollan, Procter, Wegg-Prosser, Pye, Welby-Pugin, Ranken,

* His full name was Fabius Marius Victorinus. He was of "consular dignity," and is supposed to have been one of the teachers of St. Jerome. He flourished in the time of the Emperor Constantius, son of Constantine the Great, about A. D. 352. St. Jerome (*De Scripturibus Eccl.* cap. 101) gives this short notice : "Victorinus, of African origin, taught rhetoric under Constantius, and, when already much advanced in years, he embraced the faith of Jesus Christ. He wrote some books against Arius . . . and commentaries upon the Apostle St. Paul."

Rawes, Rhodes, Richardson, Ripon, Robertson, Roscommon, Rowe, Watts-Russell, Ryder, St. John, Hope-Scott, Seager, Orby-Shipleigh, Spencer, Stanton, Stokes, Talbot, Healy-Thompson, Thynne, Todd, Turnbull, Urquhart, De Vere, Ward, Wenham, Wilberforce (three brothers), Winchester, Woodward, Warmoll, and others; and of noble women not a few, best known to God and to the poor, but some whose names cannot be unknown to many an English Poor Mission, as Argyll, Atchison, Athole, Buccleuch, Chisholm, Coleridge, Fullerton, Gladstone, Hamilton, Hastings, Herbert, Holland, Kenmare, Lockhart, Londonderry, Lothian, Queensberry, Stanley, Tatton Sykes, Thynne, Waterford, and Wilberforce, who, with many more of either sex, in every condition of life, some highly distinguished in their profession, have shown great moral courage and loftiness of mind, undaunted by the frown of the world, or by any personal or public loss. These all have cheerfully submitted to the Catholic Church, and have humbly sought and found reception into her fold, in lasting joy and peace.

But passing over our own day, I prefer to relate a truthful and affecting history of early Christian times—the conversion of Victorinus, a celebrated orator and poet of Rome, which occurred in the fourth century. It is recorded by the illustrious African bishop and doctor of the Church, St. Augustine, in his deeply interesting work called “Confessions.” *

From this historic account it will be seen that the formal reception by an authorized priest, now required of a convert on becoming reconciled and formally admitted a member of the Catholic Church, is not anything new, but is a practice which has been the universal custom of the Church from very early times.

This narrative by St. Augustine, translated for me by my kind friend, Mr. William Hutchison, from the beautiful Latin (*Confessiones*, book viii., chap. 2), is as follows:

“Therefore [O Lord], I went straightway to the priest, Simplicianus, who, in the conveying of thy grace, was the spiritual father of Ambrose, then bishop, and whom Ambrose really loved as his father.†

“To Simplicianus I disclosed the mazy wanderings of my errors. When, however, I told him that I had read certain books of the Platonic school, which Victorinus, formerly professor of rhetoric in the city of Rome, had translated (from the Greek) into Latin, and who, as I had heard, died a Christian, he rejoiced with me that I had not fallen in with the writings of those other philosophers that are full of fallacies and de-

* St. Augustine wrote his “Confessions” about the year of our Lord 400.

† St. Augustine calls Simplicianus the spiritual father of St. Ambrose, because it was at the hands of this holy Roman priest that St. Ambrose received the grace of holy baptism. Simplicianus was sent from Rome by Pope Damasus I. to Milan, to aid St. Ambrose, whom he succeeded in that bishopric. (See St. Augustine's “Retractations,” book ii., chap. i.)

ceits, according to the principles of this world ;* whereas the Platonic writings tend, in every way, to suggest God and His divine Word.†

“To encourage me, then, in the love of Christ’s humility, hid from the wise, and revealed to little ones,‡ he recalled to mind the same Victorinus, with whom he, when living at Rome, had been most intimately acquainted ; and he took occasion to relate to me an account of his friend that I will not pass over in silence, because it redounds to the great glory of thy grace, O Lord.

“Simplicianus related how this aged and most learned man, thoroughly versed in all the liberal sciences, who had read and judged and explained so many works of the philosophers, who had taught so great a number of noble senators, and who also had merited and gained for himself, in acknowledgment of his remarkable success as a teacher, the rare honor, so highly prized by the citizens of this world, of having his statue set up in the Roman Forum ; how he, even to that, his old age, had been a worshiper of idols, taking part in those profane rites to which nearly all the nobility as well as the people of Rome at that time were so given up ; for they worshiped all kinds of monstrous divinities, even the barking [dog-headed] Anubis of Egypt ; monsters, who all in former days had, as enemies to the Romans, fought against Neptune, Venus, and Minerva ;§ so that, indeed, Rome was now supplicating the very demons she had vanquished.

“How this aged Victorinus, who, by his thunderlike eloquence, for so many years had been defending these hateful idols, yet now, old as he was, did not blush, O God, to become the child of thy Christ, the newborn babe of thy baptismal font, submitting his neck to the yoke of humility, and his subdued forehead to the reproach of the cross.

“O Lord, my Lord, thou who didst bow the heavens and didst come down, who didst touch the mountains, and they gave forth smoke, | by what winning ways didst thou make entrance for thyself into that heart ?

“Victorinus, as Simplicianus told me, used to read Holy Scripture, and most diligently examine and most profoundly study all Christian writings ; and one day he said to Simplicianus, not publicly, but in a more confidential and friendly way : ‘ You must know that now I am a Christian.’ To this Simplicianus replied : ‘ I will not believe it, nor shall I account you as a Christian unless I see you among the faithful in the Church of Christ.’

“Victorinus, turning it into jest, with a smile replied : ‘ Do the walls, then, make people Christians ?’ And often would he say that now he

* See Colossians ii. 8.

† *Logos, Sermo, or Verbum.*

‡ St. Matthew xi. 25.

§ See *Æneid* of Virgil, book viii., line 698.

| Psalm cxliii. 5.

was a Christian, and Simplicianus as often made the same reply as before, to which Victorinus would always return the same jest about the walls; for he was afraid of offending his friends, those haughty worshipers of demons, from the lofty height of whose Babylonian dignity, as from the cedars of Libanus,* which the Lord had not yet broken in pieces, he feared that a heavy storm of enmity would fall down upon him.

"But, after a while, by reading, and by a thirst for truth, he gained inward strength, and feared to be disowned by Christ before the holy angels if he should be afraid to confess Him before men; and he seemed to himself guilty of a great crime in being ashamed of the mysteries of the humiliation† of thy eternal Word, and of not having been ashamed of the sacrilegious rites of proud demons, in which, as a haughty worshiper, he had taken part.

"Emboldened to cast off false shame in quitting vanities, he took shame to himself for not having stood by the truth; so that suddenly and unexpectedly he said to Simplicianus, who told me so himself: 'Come, let us go to the Church, for a Christian I will be.'

"Simplicianus, beside himself with joy, at once went with him. When there, after he had received the first instructions in the Christian mysteries, he soon also gave in his name that he might be regenerated in holy baptism, to the wonder of Rome and joy of the Church. 'The proud saw and were angry, they gnashed with their teeth and pined away.‡' 'But as for thy servant, the Lord God was his hope, and he had not regard to vanities and lying follies.§

"At last, when the hour came for his making profession of the faith, which, at Rome, it is the custom for those who come to receive thy grace to pronounce in a set form of words learnt by heart, from a raised place, in the sight of the faithful, Simplicianus told me that it was proposed by the priests to Victorinus to make his profession privately, as it was customary to allow to some who seemed likely to be troubled through bashfulness; but that he chose rather to make his profession of the saving faith in the presence of the holy congregation.

"What he had been accustomed to teach from his chair of rhetoric was not indeed a matter of salvation, and yet he had professed that science publicly; how much less reason could there be for him, who never had feared when speaking his own words to crowds of foolish men, now to be afraid to pronounce thy words, O Lord, before thy gentle flock?

"When, then, as he went up to make his present profession of faith, all who knew him (and who was there that did not know him?) one and all, according to their acquaintance with him, uttered his name in an out-

* Psalms xxviii. 5.

† Psalm cxi. 9.

‡ St. John i. 14.

§ Psalm xxxix. 4.

burst of joy ; and, from the mouths of all rejoicing together, in a hushed voice on all sides, resounded, ' Victorinus ! Victorinus ! '

" Quickly the people broke silence at the joy of seeing him, and quickly all again were still, in order to hear him speak.

" He pronounced the truthful Christian faith with admirable confidence, and all were longing to carry him off into their innermost heart ; and this, O Lord, they did by the embrace of joy and love—these two affections were the hands that took him prisoner."

No. 4.—Some Distinguished Converts of North America.

Among the many illustrious men who have left the ranks of Protestantism for the Catholic Church in America are the Most Rev. James Roosevelt Bayley, D. D., late archbishop of Baltimore; the Most. Rev. James Frederick Wood, D. D., archbishop of Philadelphia; the Right Rev. Josue Young, D. D., late bishop of Erie; Tyler, late bishop of Hartford; Becker, bishop of Wilmington; Gilmour, bishop of Cleveland; S. H. Rosencrans, bishop of Columbus; E. P. Wadhams, bishop of Ogdensburg; and the late L. S. Ives, D. D., formerly Protestant bishop of North Carolina, who, having recognized the truth of Catholicism, renounced everything to become a layman in her fold; the Very Rev. George H. Doane, vicar-general of the diocese of Newark, and son of the Protestant bishop of that name; the late Rev. Francis A. Baker, C. S. P., a well-known missionary in the United States; the Rev. James Kent Stone, late president of Hobart and Kenyon colleges, now a Passionist (Father Fidelis); the Very Rev. I. T. Hecker, C. S. P.; A. F. Hewitt, C. S. P.; Edward Dwight Lyman; formerly Protestant clergymen of distinction, and now Catholic priests; Generals Rosecrans, Newton, James A. Hardy and others; Orestes A. Brownson, LL. D., the distinguished reviewer, whom Lord Brougham styled " the master-mind of America ; " General D. W. Clark of Vermont; Dr. Joshua Huntington, the well-known author of *Rosemary, Gropings after Truth*, etc.; the Hon. Thomas Ewing, senator from Ohio, and for some time secretary of the United States Treasury; the Hon. Henry May, one of the leaders of his party in the House of Representatives; Homer Wheaton, Esq., of Poughkeepsie, N. Y., at first a lawyer, afterward a Protestant minister, until he was led into the Catholic Church; the late Judge Arrington of Chicago; Prof. Otto Shurrer of the University of Nôtre Dame, formerly a Lutheran minister; Prof. Lucius Tong of the same institution; Hon. Frank Hurd, the distinguished member of Congress; the late Senator Progh, and the late Prof. Halderman, an eminent man of science. Besides these, there are the Hon. Thomas B. Florence of

Philadelphia, for sixteen years a member of the United States House of Representatives; the Hon. Judge T. Parkin Scott of Baltimore, and a great number of others, eminent in the different walks of life.

No. 5.—Earnest Appeal to Protestants, Suggested by the Affecting Words of St. Augustine, Bishop of Hippo, to the Donatists.

Let me beg of you, my brethren, to consider how beautiful is the Catholic unity in doctrine by which the faith is preached, without shadow of change and with authority, in each Catholic cathedral and church; and how revered it is by the faithful. See how the Catholic teaching is set high in our colleges above the assaults of infidelity and the contradictory wranglings of so-called scientific theories; how striking is the Catholic unity in government, by which spiritual jurisdiction, issuing from Christ, flows in fair subordination through bishop and priest, so that each pastor knows his own flock, while his flock knows him and hears his voice.

— What a contrast between this blessed vision of peace within the Church and the scene of disorder and tumult that oppresses you outside! There, nearly every pulpit is made the centre of a different teaching, which delivered without authority, is heard without submission; there, sometimes, the very foundations of Christianity are upturned to be shaped anew, according to the individual bias or the caprice of an excited assembly; there, the flock strays after strangers whose own the sheep are not.

Here seasonably come those words of St. Augustine: "Diverse doctrines resound, various heresies arise. Fly to the tabernacle of God—namely, the Catholic Church; there you will be protected from the contradiction of tongues." *

I will also appeal to you in the affectionate words which the same holy doctor and father of the Church addressed to the Donatists of his day: "Come to us, brothers, come, that you may be engrafted on the true vine. You yourselves cannot but perceive what the Catholic Church is, and what it is to be cut off from the stem. If, then, there be among you any who have care of themselves, let them arise, and come and draw vigor from the root. Let them come before it is too late; before they lose the little Catholic sap that yet remains to them, and become dry wood fit only for the fire. Come, then, to us, brothers, if you will, and be engrafted on the vine. It grieves us to see you lying as you are, lopped off from the tree. Reckon, then, one by one, the pontiffs who have

* *Diversae doctrinae personant, diversae haereses oriuntur. Curre ad tabernaculum Dei, id est, Ecclesiam Catholicam! ibi protegeris a contradictione linguarum."*

sat from this time downward on Peter's very seat, and mark the regular succession in that order of fathers. That seat is the rock which the proud gates of hell overcome not."

No. 6.—A Choice of Prayers.

Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be Thy name ; Thy kingdom come ; Thy will be done on earth, as it is in heaven. Give us this day our daily bread ; and forgive us our trespasses, as we forgive them that trespass against us ; and lead us not into temptation ; but deliver us from evil. *Amen.*

THE HAIL MARY.

Hail Mary, full of grace, the Lord is with thee ; blessed art thou among women, and blessed is the fruit of thy womb, Jesus. Holy Mary, Mother of God, pray for us sinners, now and at the hour of our death. *Amen.*

GLORIA PATRI.

Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost. As it was in the beginning, is now, and ever shall be, world without end. *Amen.*

A DAILY PRAYER.

O God, of infinite majesty and power, Creator of heaven and earth, I adore thee profoundly, and thank thee from the bottom of my heart for the great benefits of creation and redemption, and for all the other blessings which thou hast bestowed upon me ; I love thee with all my heart, and above all things. And, because thou art the very truth who canst neither be deceived, nor deceive any one, I firmly believe all things thou hast revealed to the Church, and through the Church hast made known unto me. I trust, in thy infinite mercy and goodness, that thou wilt pardon all my sins through the merits of Jesus Christ, and give me all the necessary means of salvation, doing on my part what thou commandest and requirest of me. I am extremely sorry for having offended thee. With the help of thy grace, which I humbly and fervently implore, I will never offend thee willfully again, for the time to come. Give me strength to withstand every temptation ; give me patience in my troubles : help me to keep in charity with all my neighbors, and grant me the grace of perseverance.

O Virgin Mary, intercede for me ; Saint Joseph, pray for me ; my guardian angel, protect me ; all ye saints and angels of heaven, pray for me. *Amen.*

ROSARY OF THE BLESSED VIRGIN.

By the rosary (or beads) is meant an excellent devotional practice devised by the wise God, made known by the Blessed Virgin herself to St. Dominic, and commenced in the thirteenth century. It consists of fifteen small parts. Each part is made up of "a mystery," one "Our Father" and ten "Hail Marys," followed by one "Glory be to the Father." No other prayers whatever form part of the rosary: those that are said before or after each decade, are merely pious additions.

By "mystery" is understood a trait of the life of our Lord or of His holy Mother. These mysteries are divided into three series of five each, called the *Joyful*, the *Sorrowful*, and the *Glorious*.

JOYFUL MYSTERIES.

1. The Annunciation to the blessed Virgin.
2. Visitation of the blessed Virgin to St. Elizabeth.
3. Birth of Jesus at Bethelhem.
4. Presentation of Jesus in the Temple.
5. Finding of the child Jesus in the Temple.

SORROWFUL MYSTERIES.

1. The Agony of Jesus in the Garden of Gethsemane.
2. Scourging of Jesus at the pillar.
3. Crowning of Jesus with thorns.
4. Carrying of the cross by Jesus to Mount Calvary.
5. Crucifixion of Jesus on Mount Calvary.

GLORIOUS MYSTERIES.

1. The Resurrection of Jesus.
2. Ascension of Jesus.
3. Descent of the Holy Ghost upon the Apostles.
4. Assumption of the blessed Virgin into heaven.
5. Crowning of the blessed Virgin in heaven.

NOTE.—Most people say only the third part of the rosary, that is, five decades, each day: in that case, though you may say either the Joyful, or the Sorrowful, or the Glorious Mysteries at your choice, yet it is the prevailing custom to say the Joyful Mysteries on Mondays and Thursdays, the Sorrowful on Tuesdays and Fridays, and the Glorious on Wednesdays, Saturdays and Sundays.

THE ANGELUS.*

I. *V.* Angelus Domini nuntiavit Mariæ.

I. The angel of the Lord announced unto Mary.

R. Et concépit de Spiritu Sancto.

R. And she conceived of the Holy Ghost.

* At Easter Time, instead of the "Angelus," the "*Regina Coeli lætare, Alleluia*," is said, standing.



BLESSED
Are they that
HUNGER
AND
THIRST
AFTER
JUSTICE
for they shall be
FILLED

Matt. 5 Chap. 10 v.

Ave Maria, gratiâ plenâ, Dominus tecum; benedicta tu in mulieribus, et benedictus fructus ventris tui, Jesus. Sancta Maria, mater Dei, ora pro nobis peccatoribus, nunc et in hora mortis nostræ. Amen.

II. *V.* Ecce Ancilla Domini.

R. Fiat mihi secundum verbum tuum.

Ave Maria, etc.

III. *V.* Et Verbum caro factum est.

R. Et habitavit in nobis.

Ave Maria, etc.

V. Ora pro nobis, Sancta Dei Genetrix.

R. Ut digni efficiamur promissionibus Christi.

Hail, Mary, full of grace, the Lord is with thee; blessed art thou among women, and blessed is the fruit of thy womb, Jesus. Holy Mary, Mother of God, pray for us sinners, now and at the hour of our death, Amen.

II. Behold the handmaid of the Lord.

R. Be it done unto me according to thy word. (St. Luke i. 38.)

Hail, Mary, etc.

III. And the Word was made flesh.

R. And dwelt among us. (St. John i. 14.)

Hail, Mary, etc.

V. Pray for us, O holy Mother of God.

R. That we may be made worthy of the promises of Christ.

Oremus.

Gratiam tuam, quæsumus, Domini, mentibus nostris infunde; ut qui, angelo nuntiante, Christi Filii tui incarnationem cognovimus, per Passionem ejus et Crucem ad resurrectionis gloriam perducamur; per eundem Christum Dominum Nostrum. Amen.

Let us Pray.

Pour forth, we beseech Thee, O Lord, Thy grace into our hearts; that we, to whom the incarnation of Christ Thy Son was made known by the message of an angel, may, by His Passion and Cross, be brought to the glory of His resurrection; through the same Christ our Lord. Amen.

From Compline on Holy Saturday till Trinity Eve.

Regina Coeli, lætare; alleluia.

Quia quem meruisti portare; alleluia.

Resurrexit sicut dixit; alleluia.

Ora pro nobis Deum; alleluia.

Joy to thee, O Heavenly Queen, alleluia.

He whom thou wast meet to bear; alleluia.

As He promised, hath arisen; alleluia.

Pour for us to Him thy prayer; alleluia.

V. Gaude et lætare, Virgo Maria; alleluia.

V. Rejoice and be glad, O Virgin Mary; alleluia.

R. Quia surrexit Dominus vere; alleluia.

R. For the Lord hath risen indeed; alleluia.

Oremus.

Deus, qui per resurrectionem Filii tui Domini nostri Jesu Christi mundum lætificare dignatus es; præsta, quæsumus, ut per ejus Genetricem Virginem Mariam perpetuæ capiamus gaudia vitæ, per eundem Christum Dominum nostrum.

R. Amen.

V. Divinum auxilium maneat semper nobiscum.

R. Amen.

V. Fidelium animæ, per misericordiam Dei, requiescant in pace.

R. Amen.

Let us Pray.

O God, who didst vouchsafe to give joy to the world through the resurrection of Thy Son our Lord Jesus Christ; grant, we beseech Thee, that, through His Mother, the Virgin Mary, we may obtain the joys of everlasting life. Through the same Christ our Lord.

R. Amen.

V. May the divine assistance remain always with us.

R. Amen.

V. May the souls of the faithful departed, through the mercy of God, rest in peace.

R. Amen.

PRAYERS FOR THE DYING.

Let us say three "Our Fathers" in honor of the agony of Jesus, and three "Hail Marys," in honor of our Lady's dolors, for the faithful who are this day throughout the world in their last agony.

Indulgences: 300 days every recital. Plenary once a month, both applicable to the holy souls in purgatory.

THE DIVINE PRAISES, *said after Mass and Benediction in many Churches, the People repeating each portion after the Priest.*

1. Blessed be God.
2. Blessed be His holy name.
3. Blessed be Jesus Christ, true God and true man.
4. Blessed be the Name of Jesus.
5. Blessed be Jesus in the most Holy Sacrament of the Altar.
6. Blessed be the great Mother of God, Mary most holy.
7. Blessed be her holy and Immaculate Conception.
8. Blessed be the name of Mary, Virgin and Mother.
9. Blessed be God in His Angels and in His Saints. *Amen.*

ACT OF RESIGNATION TO THE WILL OF GOD.

May the most just, most high, and most amiable will of God be done, praised, and eternally exalted in all things. *Amen.*

May the most sacred Heart of Jesus be loved by all.

PRAYER IN OUR LAST AGONY.

Into Thy hands, O Lord, I commend my spirit. (St. Luke xxiii. 46.)
Lord Jesus, receive my soul.

No. 7.—A Prayer for a Good Death.

Lord Jesus, God of goodness, and Father of mercy, I prostrate myself before Thee with a contrite and humble heart, and commend to Thee my last hour, and what thereafter awaits me.

When my feet, motionless, shall warn me that my course in this world is approaching its end, O loving Jesu, have mercy on me.

When my hands, cold and shaking, shall no longer be able to keep holding the crucifix presented to me, and I shall be obliged to let it drop on my bed of sorrow, O loving Jesu, have mercy on me.

When my eyes, cloudy, and turned aside, through dread of imminent

death, shall cast upon Thy image languid and dying looks, O loving Jesu, have mercy on me.

When my lips, cold and trembling, shall utter for the last time Thy adored name, O loving Jesu, have mercy on me.

When my cheeks, pale and livid, shall inspire compassion and grief in the bystanders, and my hair, moistened by the cold sweat of death, shall announce that my end is come, O loving Jesu, have mercy on me.

When my ears, ready to be shut for ever to the discourses of men, shall open to listen to Thy voice, uttering the irrevocable sentence that fixes my everlasting doom, O loving Jesu, have mercy on me.

When my fancy, disturbed by painful and dreadful imaginations, shall be plunged into sadness, and my spirit, troubled by the sight of my iniquities and by the dread of Thy justice, shall struggle with the spirit of darkness who would turn away my eyes from Thy soothing mercies, and throw me into despair, O loving Jesu, have mercy on me.

When my feeble heart, torn by the pangs of illness, shall be assailed by the dread of death, and exhausted by the efforts it shall have made against the enemies of my salvation, O loving Jesu, have mercy on me.

When I shall shed the last tears, symptoms of my imminent dissolution, receive them, O Lord, as a sacrifice of expiation, and grant that I may breathe my last as victim of penance ; and in that terrible moment, O loving Jesu, have mercy on me.

When my relatives and friends, standing by me, shall sympathize with my miserable state, and pray for me, O loving Jesu, have mercy on me.

When I shall have lost the use of my senses, and the whole world shall disappear from me, and I shall sigh in the anguish of agony and the struggles of death, O loving Jesu, have mercy on me.

When the last sighs of my heart shall compel my soul to leave the body, receive them, O Lord, as signs of a holy longing to fly to Thee ; and then, O loving Jesu, have mercy on me.

When my soul, from the door of my lips shall go out of this world for ever, and shall leave my body pale, cold, and lifeless, accept, O Lord, the dissolution of my being as a homage which I offer to Thy divine majesty ; and then, O loving Jesu, have mercy on me.

Lastly, when my soul shall appear before Thee, and shall behold for the first time the immortal splendor of Thy majesty, O Lord, pray, do not reject it from Thee ; deign to receive my poor soul in the arms of Thy mercy, that it may sing Thy praises for ever.

O God, who, condemning us to death, didst conceal the moment and the hour of it, grant that, walking in the paths of justice and holiness, we may deserve to depart from this world in Thy holy love, through the

merits of our Lord Jesus Christ, who liveth and reigneth with Thee in the unity of the Holy Ghost, world without end. *Amen.*

No. 8.—Stations (or Way) of the Cross.

The "Stations of the Cross" is a devotional exercise instituted as a means of helping us to meditate on, and have sympathy for, the sufferings of our divine Lord. The early Christians had the deepest love and veneration for the places made sacred by the sufferings and presence of Jesus Christ. Devout pilgrims went to the Holy Land, from the furthest parts of the earth, to visit Jerusalem, the Garden of Olives, and Mount Calvary. To encourage the piety and devotion of her children, the Church granted many and great indulgences to those who with true sorrow visited certain spots of our Lord's passion. Now, there were many who wished to share in this devotion, and partake of the spiritual blessings attached to it, but who, through various causes, were unable to do so; therefore the Church sanctioned the erecting in churches of fourteen pictures, representing fourteen scenes of the passion, called "stations of the cross," and granted to persons who practice this devotion the same indulgences as are granted to those who visit the said holy places in Jerusalem.

If you have a prayer-book with the prayers of the "Way of the Cross" in it, you will follow the directions, and say the prayers therein laid down. If not, you can still practise this devotion in a church where the stations are duly erected, and gain likewise the indulgences by acting as follows:

First you say three "Our Fathers" before the holy sacrament in preparation for the "Way of the Cross," in order to obtain help from God to do it well; then you go to the first station, kneel down, meditate for a few minutes on the mystery there represented, or on any other point of the passion of our Lord, and conclude with the Lord's Prayer, a "Hail Mary," and "Glory be to the Father." You rise and walk to the other thirteen stations, doing before each the same thing. At the end of the fourteenth station, you go again before the high altar, thank Almighty God for the privilege and assistance granted, and recite five "Our Fathers," "Hail Marys," and "Glory be to the Father," according to the intention of the sovereign pontiff.

PRAYER TO OUR CRUCIFIED LORD,

while we contemplate what He suffered for us.

Behold, O kind and most sweet Jesus, I cast myself on my knees in Thy sight, and with the most fervent desire of my soul I pray and be-

seech Thee to impress upon my heart lively sentiments of Faith, Hope, and Charity, with true repentance for my sins, and a most firm purpose of amendment ; while with deep affection and grief of soul I call to mind and ponder on Thy five most precious wounds, having before my eyes that which the prophet David spoke of Thee, O good Jesus : " They have dug my hands and feet ; they have numbered all my bones." (Psalm xxi. 17.)

NOTE.—To the devout reciting of this foregoing prayer, " Behold, O kind," &c., in any language, is annexed, by Pope Pius VII., April 10, 1821 (in a decree of the Sacred Congregation of Indulgences), a plenary indulgence, which may be obtained by all the faithful who, after having confessed their sins with contrition, and received holy communion, shall devoutly recite it before any representation of Christ crucified. This indulgence is also applicable to the souls in purgatory.

ASPIRATIONS TO JESUS.

Jesus, poor, abject, unknown, and despised, hated, calumniated, persecuted, and abandoned by men, tempted by the devil, betrayed, and sold for a vile price.

R. Have mercy on us.

Jesus, sorrowful unto death, dragged along and bound with ropes and chains, clothed in the garment of shame and ignominy, blamed, accused, condemned and set aside for Barabbas.

R. Have mercy on us.

Jesus, stripped with infamy, and scourged unto blood, beaten and derided, crowned with thorns, saluted in mockery, defiled with spittle, struck, outraged, and jeered.

R. Have mercy on us.

Jesus, laden with the cross of our sins, and with the maledictions of the people, nailed to the infamous tree between two thieves, overwhelmed with opprobrium, agony, and humiliations, despised, and dishonored before men.

R. Have mercy on us.

O most sweet Jesus, Thou who for love of us hast deigned to suffer an infinity of shame and incomprehensible humiliation, may our hearts be deeply impressed with esteem and love for Thy sufferings, and an ardent desire to imitate Thee in Thy humble, poor, laborious, beneficent, and despised life. *Amen.*

PIOUS OFFERING.

Eternal Father, we offer Thee the most precious blood of Jesus Christ for the whole state of Christ's Church, and for all other ends which may be pleasing to Thee.

A PRAYER IN SICKNESS OR AFFLICTION.

O Lord Jesus Christ, I receive this affliction with which Thou art pleased to visit me as coming from Thy fatherly hand. It is Thy will, and therefore I submit—"Not my will, but Thine be done." May it be to the honor of Thy holy name, and for the good of my soul. I here offer myself with an entire submission to all Thy appointments; to suffer whatever Thou pleasest, as long as Thou pleasest, and in what manner Thou pleasest; for I, Thy creature, O Lord, have often and most ungratefully offended Thee, and Thou mightest justly have visited me with Thy severest punishments. Oh, let Thy justice be tempered with mercy, and let Thy heavenly grace come to my assistance, to support me under this affliction! Confirm my soul with strength from above, that I may bear with true Christian patience all the uneasiness, pains, and troubles under which I labor; preserve me from all temptations and murmuring thoughts, that in this time of affliction I may in no way offend Thee; and grant that this and all other earthly trials may be the means of preparing my soul for its passage into eternity, that, being purified from all my sins, I may believe in Thee, hope in Thee, and love Thee above all things, and finally through Thy infinite merits, be admitted into the company of the blessed in heaven, there to praise Thee for ever and ever. *Amen.*

O God, who hast doomed all men to die, but hast concealed the hour of their death, grant that I may pass my days in the practice of holiness and justice, and that I may be able to quit this world in the peace of a good conscience, and in the embrace of Thy love, through Jesus Christ our Lord. *Amen.*

A PRAYER FOR OUR HOLY FATHER THE POPE.

"The Lord preserve him and give him life; and make him blessed upon the earth; and deliver him not up to the will of his enemies." (Psalm xl. 3.)

THE FOURTH PENITENTIAL PSALM.

(The Psalms called Penitential are the 6th, 31st, 37th, 50th, 101st, 129th and 142d.)

Psalm 50 (Prot. Version, 51). *Miserere.*

1. *David prays for remission of his sins.* 8. *for perfect sanctity.* 17. *Praises a contrite heart, and prays for the exaltation of the Church.*

Miserere mei, Deus: * secundum magnam misericordiam tuam.

Et secundum multitudinem miserationum tuarum: * dele iniquitatem meam.

Amplius lava me ab iniquitate mea: * et a peccato meo munda me.

1. Have mercy upon me, O God; according to thy great mercy.

2. And according to the multitude of thy tender mercies: blot out my iniquity.

3. Wash me yet more from my iniquity; and cleanse me from my sin.

Quoniam iniquitatem meam ego cognosco: *
et peccatum meum contra me est semper.

Tibi soli peccavi, et malum coram te feci: *
ut justificeris in sermonibus tuis, et vincas
cum iudicaris.

Ecce enim in iniquitatibus conceptus sum: *
et in peccatis concepit me mater mea.

Ecce enim veritatem dilexisti: * incerta et
occulta sapientiae tuae manifestasti mihi.

Asperges me hyssopo et mundabor: * lavabis
me, et super nivem dealabor.

Auditui meo dabis gaudium et letitiam: * et
exultabunt ossa humiliata.

Averte faciem tuam a peccatis meis: * et
omnes iniquitates meas dele.

Cor mundum crea in me, Deus: * et
spiritum rectum innova in visceribus meis.

Ne projicies me a facie tua: * et Spiritum
sanctum tuum ne auferas a me.

Redde mihi letitiam salutaris tui: * et
spiritu principali confirma me.

Docebo iniquos vias tuas: * et impii ad te
convertentur.

Libera me de sanguinibus, Deus, Deus salutis
meae: * et exultabit lingua mea iustitiam
tuam.

Domine labia mea aperies: * et os meum
annuntiabit laudem tuam.

Quoniam si voluisses sacrificium, dedissem
utique: * holocaustis non delectaberis.

Sacrificium Deo spiritus contribulatus: * cor
contritum et humiliatum, Deus, non despicies.

Benigne fac Domine, in bona voluntate tua
Sion: * ut aedificentur muri Jerusalem.

Tunc acceptabis sacrificium iustitiae, obla-
tiones, et holocausta: * tunc imponent super
altare tuum vitulos.

[Gloria Patri, et Filio, et Spiritui Sancto.
Sicut erat in principio, et nunc, et semper, et
in saecula saeculorum. Amen.]

4. For I acknowledge my iniquity: and my
sin is always before me.

5. Against thee only have I sinned, and
done evil in thy sight: that thou mayest be
justified in thy words, and mayest overcome
when thou art judged.

6. For behold, I was conceived in iniquities:
and in sins did my mother conceive me.

7. For behold, thou hast loved truth: the
uncertain and hidden things of thy wisdom
thou hast made manifest to me.

8. Thou shalt sprinkle me with hyssop, and
I shall be cleansed: thou shalt wash me, and
I shall be made whiter than snow.

9. Thou shalt make me hear of joy and
gladness: and the bones that have been hum-
bled shall rejoice.

10. Turn away thy face from my sins; and
blot out all my iniquities.

11. Create in me a clean heart, O God: and
renew a right spirit within my bowels.

12. Cast me not away from thy face: and
take not thy Holy Spirit from me.

13. Restore unto me the joy of thy sal-
vation: and strengthen me with a perfect
spirit.

14. I will teach the unjust thy ways: and
the wicked shall be converted unto thee.

15. Deliver me from blood-guiltiness, O
God, thou God of my salvation: and my
tongue shall extol thy justice.

16. Thou shalt open my lips, O Lord: and
my mouth shall declare thy praise.

17. For if thou hadst desired sacrifice, I
would indeed have given it: with burnt-offer-
ings thou wilt not be delighted.

18. A sacrifice to God is an afflicted spirit:
a contrite and humbled heart, O God, thou
wilt not despise.

19. Deal favorably, O Lord, in thy good
will with Sion: that the walls of Jerusalem
may be built up.

20. Then shalt thou accept the sacrifice of
justice, oblations, and whole burnt offerings:
then shall they lay calves upon thine altar.

[Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and
to the Holy Ghost. As it was in the begin-
ning, is now, and ever shall be, world without
end. Amen.]

THE SIXTH PENITENTIAL PSALM.*

Psalm 129—*De Profundis.**The cry of a contrite heart imploring the Divine mercy.*

De profundis clamávi ad te, Domine : *
Domine, exaudi vocem meam.

Fiant aures tuæ intendentes : * in vocem
deprecationis meæ.

Si iniquitátes observaveris, Domine : * Domine,
quis sustinébit ?

Quia apud te propitiatio est : * et propter
legem tuam sustinui te Domine.

Sustinuit anima mea in verbo ejus : * speravit
anima mea in Domino.

A custodia matutina usque ad noctem : *
speret Israel, in Domino.

Quia apud Dominum misericordia : * et copiosa
apud eum redemptio.

Et ipse rédimet Israel, * ex omnibus iniquitatibus
ejas. *

[Requiem aeternam dona eis Domine.

Et lux perpetua luceat eis.

Requiescant in pace. Amen.

1. Out of the depths have I cried unto thee,
O Lord: Lord, hear my voice.

2. Oh, let thine ears consider well : the voice
of my supplication.

3. If Thou, O Lord, wilt mark iniquities :
Lord, who shall stand it ?

4. For with Thee there is merciful forgiveness :
and because of Thy law I have waited for Thee, O Lord.

5. My soul hath relied on His Word : my
soul hath hoped in the Lord.

6. From the morning watch even until night :
let Israel hope in the Lord.

7. For with the Lord there is mercy : and
with Him is plentiful redemption.

8. And He shall redeem Israel from all his
iniquities.

[Eternal rest give to them, O Lord.

And let perpetual light shine upon them.

May they rest in peace. Amen.

PRAYER FOR ANOTHER'S CONVERSION.

O Divine and adorable Saviour, Thou who art the way, the truth, and the life, I beseech Thee to have mercy upon [N.] and bring him [or her] to the knowledge and love of Thy truth. Thou, O Lord, knowest all his darkness, his weakness, and his doubts ; have pity upon him, O merciful Saviour ; let the beams of Thy eternal truth shine upon his mind ; clear away the cloud of error and prejudice from his eyes, and may he humbly submit to and embrace with his whole heart the teaching of Thy Church. Oh, let not his [or her] soul be shut out from Thy blessed fold ! Unite him to Thyself in the communications of Thy love, so that, partaking of the blessings of Thy grace in this life, he may come to the possession of those eternal rewards which Thou hast promised to all who believe in Thee and who do Thy will. Hear this my petition, O merciful Jesus, who, with the Father and the Holy Ghost, livest and reignest ever and ever. *Amen.*

FOR A FRIEND IN DISTRESS.

O merciful Lord, give the sweetness of Thy comfort to Thy afflicted servant [N.], and, according to Thy accustomed mercy, remove the heavy

* This Psalm is often said by Catholics for the souls in purgatory, in which case, instead of ending it with the "Glory be to the Father," it is ended as here laid down.

burden of his afflictions. Give him, I humbly beseech Thee, patience in his sufferings, resignation to Thy adorable will, and perseverance in Thy service.

FOR THE SICK.

V. Heal Thy servants, O Lord, who are sick, and who put their trust in Thee.

R. Send them help, O Lord, and comfort them from Thy holy place.

O Almighty and everlasting God, the eternal salvation of them that believe in Thee, hear us in behalf of Thy servants who are sick ; for whom we humbly crave the help of Thy mercy ; that, their health being restored to them, they may render thanks to Thee in Thy Church ; through Jesus Christ our Lord.

PRAYER FOR A BISHOP OR PRIEST.

O God, who hast raised up Thy servant [N.] to the dignity of Bishop [or Priest], grant, we beseech Thee, that he may also be admitted in Heaven to Thy everlasting fellowship, through Jesus Christ our Lord. *Amen.*

FOR THE DEAD.

O Almighty and eternal God, who hast dominion over the living and the dead, and art merciful to all who Thou foreknowest will be Thine by faith and good works ; we humbly beseech Thee, that they for whom we offer up our prayers may, by Thy mercy and goodness, obtain pardon and full remission of their sins ; through our Lord Jesus Christ, Thy Son, who, with Thee and the Holy Ghost, liveth and reigneth one God, world without end. *Amen.*

PRAYER FOR A DEPARTED FATHER AND MOTHER.

O God our Heavenly Father, Who hast commanded us to honor our Father and our Mother, have mercy on the departed souls of my dear Father and Mother, and grant that, if they are not yet with Thee, they may soon come to enjoy Thy blessed vision in Heaven ; through Jesus Christ our Lord. *Amen.*

OTHER PRAYERS FOR THE DEAD.

The Psalm *Miserere* and the Psalm *De Profundis* and others may be recited for the dead, saying, at the end of each, instead of "Glory be to the Father," etc., the Versicle :

V. Eternal rest give unto them, O Lord.

R. And let perpetual light shine upon them.

A PRAYER FOR THE FAITHFUL DEPARTED.

O God, the Creator and Redeemer of all the faithful, grant to the souls of Thy servants departed the remission of all their sins, that,

through pious supplications, they may obtain the pardon which they have always desired. Who livest and reignest with God the Father, in the unity of the Holy Ghost, world without end. *Amen.*

ON THE DAY OF A PERSON'S DECEASE OR BURIAL.

O God, whose property is always to have mercy and to spare, we humbly beseech Thee for the soul of Thy servant [N.], which Thou hast this day commanded to depart out of this world, that Thou wouldst not deliver it into the hands of the enemy, nor forget it unto the end, but wouldst command it to be received by Thy holy angels, and conducted to Paradise, its true country; that, as in Thee it hath hoped and believed, it may not suffer the pains of hell, but may take possession of eternal joys. Through Christ our Lord.

FOR THE PATRONAGE OF ST. JOSEPH.

O God, who by thy adorable Providence didst vouchsafe to choose the blessed Joseph for the spouse of thy most Holy Mother, grant, we beseech thee, that he whom we venerate as our protector on earth may be our intercessor in heaven; who livest and reignest for ever and ever. *Amen.*

No. 9.—Hymns.

HYMN TO THE HOLY GHOST.

“VENI, CREATOR SPIRITUS.”

Ascribed to St. Ambrose (Fourth Century). English Version by Mr. William J. M. Hutchison (1881).

Veni, Creator Spiritus,
Mentes tuorum visita,
Imple supernâ gratiâ,
Quæ tu creasti pectora.

Qui diceris Paráclitus,
Altissimi donum Dei,
Fons vivus, ignis, charitas,
Et spiritalis unctio:

Tu septiformis mune:re,
Digitus Paternæ dexteræ,
Tu ritè promissum Patris,
Sermône ditans guttura:

Accende lumen sensibus,
Infunde amorem cordibus,
Infirma nostri córporis
Virtúte firmans perpeti.

Come, O Creator Spirit, come,
And make Thy children's minds Thy home;
O fill our hearts with grace divine,
Our hearts, by new creation Thine.

Thou, Who The Comforter art named,
And gift of God most high proclaimed,
Thou living fount, Thou fire and love,
And soul's sweet unction from above:

Thou, Who Thy seven-fold gifts hast planned,
Thou finger of the Father's hand,
Sure promise of the Father, Thou,
Who dost our tongue with speech endow:

Revive our senses, light impart,
And pour Thy love within each heart;
Our mortal frame, so weak in fight,
Make strong with Thy enduring might.

Hostem repellas longiùs,
Pacemque dones protinùs;
Ductore sic te prævio
Vitémus omne noxium.

Per te sciámus da Patrem,
Noscámus atque Filium,
Teque utriusque Spiritum
Credamus omni tempore.

Deo Patri sit gloria,
Ejusque soli Filio,
Cum Spiritu Paraclito,
Nunc et per omne sæculum. *Amen.*

[*Tempore Paschali.*]

Deo Patri sit gloria,
Et Filio, qui a mortuis
Surrexit, ac Paráclito,
In sæculorum sæcula. *Amen.*

The Foe yet further drive away,
And give us now Thy peace, we pray;
So may we, close to Thee, our Guide,
Escape all harm from every side.

Give us to know in Thy clear light,
The Father and the Son aright,
And Thee from Both the Spirit pure
To own, while ages all endure.

To God the Father endless praise
And to His only Son we raise;
Like praise, O Holy Ghost, to Thee
Both now and through eternity. *Amen.*

[*For Paschal Time.*]

Praise to the Father, and the Son
Who from the dead arose, Life won;
And equal praise forever be,
O God the Comforter, to Thee. *Amen.*

ADESTE, FIDELES—*Hymn for Christmas.*

Adeste, fidèles,
Læti triumphantes;
Venite, venite in Bethlehem:
Natum videte
Regem angelorum:
Venite adoremus,
Venite adoremus,
Venite adoremus Dominum.

Deum de Deo,
Lumen de lumine,
Gestant puellæ viscera;
Deum verum,
Genitum, non factum:
Venite adoremus, &c.

Cantet nunc Io !
Chorus angelorum:
Cantet nunc aula cœlestium,
Gloria
In excelsis Deo !
Venite adoremus, &c.

Ergo qui natus
Die hodierna,
Jesu tibi sit gloria;
Patris æterni
Verbum caro factum !
Venite adoremus, &c.

Ye faithful, approach ye,
Joyfully triumphing:
O come ye, O come ye, to Bethlehem,
Come and behold ye
Born the King of angels:
O come, let us worship,
O come, let us worship,
O come, let us worship Christ the Lord.

God of God,
Light of Light,
Lo, He disdains not the Virgin's womb:
Very God,
Begotten, not created:
O come, let us worship, &c.

Sing choirs angelic,
Sing with exultation ;
Sing, all ye citizens of heaven above,
Glory to God
In the highest !
O come, let us worship, &c.

Yea, Lord, we greet Thee,
Born this happy morning;
Jesu, to Thee be glory given;
Word of the Father
In our flesh appearing:
O come, let us worship, &c.

THE "STABAT MATER."

Stabat Mater dolorosa
Juxta crucem lacrymosa,
Dum pendebat Filius.
Cujus animam gementem,
Contristatam, et dolentem,
Pertransivit gladius.

O quam tristis et afflicta
Fuit illa benedicta
Mater Unigeniti.
Quæ mœrebat, et dolebat,
Pia Mater, dum videbat
Nati pœnas inclyti.

Quis est homo qui non fleret,
Matrem Christi si videret
In tanto supplicio?
Quis non posset contristari,
Christi Matrem contemplari
Dolentem cum Filio?

Pro peccatis suæ gentis
Videt Jesum in tormentis,
Et flagellis subditum.
Vidit suum dulcem Natum
Moriendo desolatum,
Dum emisit spiritum.

Eia Mater, fons amoris,
Me sentire vim doloris
Fac, ut tecum lugeam.
Fac ut ardeat cor meum
In amando Christum Deum,
Ut sibi complaceam.

Sancta Mater, istud agas,
Crucifixi fige plagas
Cordi meo valide.
Tui Nati vulnerati,
Tam dignati pro me pati,
Pœnas mecum divide.

Fac me tecum pie flere,
Crucifixo condolere,
Donec ego vixero.
Juxta Crucem tecum stare,
Et me tibi sociare
In planctu desidero.

At the Cross her station keeping,
Stood the mournful Mother weeping;
Close to Jesus to the last:
Through her heart, His sorrow sharing,
All His bitter anguish bearing,
Now at length the sword had passed.

Oh, how sad and sore distressed
Was that Mother highly blessed
Of the sole-begotten One!
Christ above in torment hangs:
She beneath beholds the pangs
Of her dying glorious Son.

Is there one who would not weep,
Whelmed in miseries so deep
Christ's dear Mother to behold?
Can the human heart refrain
From partaking in her pain,
In that Mother's pain untold?

Bruised, derided, cursed, defiled,
She beheld her tender Child
All with bloody scourges rent:
For the sins of His own nation,
Saw Him hang in desolation,
Till His spirit forth He sent.

O thou Mother! fount of love!
Touch my spirit from above,
Make my heart with thine accord:
Make me feel as thou hast felt,
Make my soul to glow and melt
With the love of Christ my Lord.

Holy Mother! pierce me through,
In my heart each wound renew
Of my Saviour crucified:
Let me share with thee His pain,
Who for all my sins was slain,
Who for me in torments died.

Let me mingle tears with thee,
Mourning Him who died for me
All the days that I may live:
By the Cross with thee to stay,
There with thee to weep and pray,
Is all I ask of thee to give.

Virgo virginum præclara,
Mihi jam non sis amara;
Fac me tecum plangere.
Fac ut portem Christi mortem,
Passionis fac consortem,
Et plagas recolere.

Fac me plagis vulnerari,
Fac me Cruce inebriari,
Et cruore Filii.
Flammis ne urar succensus,
Per te, Virgo, sim defensus
In die indicii.

Christe, cum sit hinc exire
Da per Matrem me venire
Ad palmam victoriæ.
Quando corpus morietur,
Fac ut animæ donetur
Paradisi gloria.

Amen

Virgin of all virgins best !
Listen to my fond request:
Let me share thy grief divine:
Let me to my latest breath,
In my body bear the death
Of that dying Son of thine.

Wounded with His every wound,
Steep my soul till it hath swooned
In His very blood away:
Be to me, O Virgin, nigh,
Lest in flames I burn and die,
In His awful judgment day.

Christ, when Thou shalt call me hence,
Be Thy Mother my defence,
Be Thy Cross my victory;
While my body here decays,
May my soul Thy goodness praise,
Safe in Paradise with Thee.

Amen.

No. 10.—Te Deum Laudamus.

Te Deum laudamus; * te Dominum confitémur.

Te æternum Patrem, * omnis terra veneratur.

Tibi omnes ángeli, * tibi cœli, et universæ protestates:

Tibi Chérubim, et Séraphim, * incessabili voce proclamant:

Sanctus, sanctus, sanctus, * Dominus Deus Sabaoth:

Pleni sunt coeli et terra, * majestatis gloriæ tuæ.

Te gloriosus * Apostolorum chorus.

Te Prophetarum * laudabilis número.

Te Martyrum candidatus * laudat exercitus.

Te per orbem terrarum * sancta confitétur Ecclesia:

Patrem * immensæ majestatis.

Venerandum tuum verum * et únicum Filium.

Sanctum quoque * Paraclitum Spiritum.

Tu Rex gloriæ, * Christe.

We praise Thee, O God: we acknowledge Thee to be the Lord.

All the earth doth worship Thee: the Father everlasting.

To Thee all angels cry aloud: the heavens and all the powers therein.

To Thee Cherubim and Seraphim: continually do cry:

Holy, holy, holy: Lord God of Sabaoth.

Heaven and earth are full: of the majesty of Thy glory.

The glorious choir of the Apostles: praise Thee.

The admirable company of the Prophets: praise Thee.

The white-robed army of Martyrs: praise Thee.

The Holy Church throughout all the world: doth acknowledge Thee.

The Father: of an infinite majesty.

Thy adorable, true: and only Son.

Also the Holy Ghost: the Comforter.

Thou art the King of Glory: O Christ.

Tu Patris * sempiternus es Filius.

Tu ad liberandum suscepturus hominem, *
non horruisti Virginitatis úterum.

Tu devicto mortis acúleo, * aperuisti creden-
tibus regna cœlórúm.

Tu ad dexteram Dei sedes, * in gloria Patris.

Judex créderis * esse ventúrus.

† Te ergo quæsumus, tuis famulis súbveni, *
quos pretióso sanguine redemisti.

Æterna fac cum Sanctis tuis, * in gloria nu-
merari.

Salvum fac populum tuum, Domine, * et
benedic hæreditati tuæ.

Et rege eos, et extolle illos, * usque in æter-
num.

Per singulos dies * benedicimus te.

Et laudamus nomen tuum in sæculum, et
in sæculum sæculi.

Dignare, Domine, die isto, * sine peccato
nos custodire.

Miserére nostri, Domine, * miserére nostri.

Fiat misericordia tua, Domine, super nos : *
quemadmodum speravimus in te.

In te, Domine, speravi ; * non confundar
æternum.

Thou art the everlasting son : of the Father.

When Thou tookest upon Thee to deliver
man : Thou didst not abhor the Virgin's womb.

When Thou hadst overcome the sting of
death : Thou didst open the kingdom of heaven
to all believers.

Thou sittest at the right hand of God : in
the glory of the Father.

We believe that Thou shalt come : to be our
Judge.

We pray Thee, therefore, help Thy servants .
whom Thou hast redeemed with Thy precious
blood.

Make them to be numbered with Thy Saints:
in glory everlasting.

O Lord, save Thy people: and bless Thine
inheritance.

Govern them : and lift them up forever.

Day by day we magnify Thee.

And we praise Thy name for ever : yea, for
ever and ever.

Vouchsafe, O Lord, this day : to keep us
without sin.

O Lord, have mercy upon us : have mercy
upon us.

O Lord, let Thy mercy be showed upon us:
as we have hoped in Thee.

O Lord, in Thee have I hoped : let me not
be confounded for ever.

No. 11.—Observations on Faith, by Cardinal Newman.

“Faith is not a mere conviction in reason; it is a firm assent, it is a clear certainty, greater than any other certainty; and this is wrought in the mind by the grace of God, and by it alone. As, then, men may be convinced and not act according to their conviction, so may they be convinced and not believe according to their conviction. They may confess that the argument is against them, and that they have nothing to say for themselves, and that to believe is to be happy, and yet, after all, they avow they cannot believe; they do not know why, but they cannot; they acquiesce in unbelief, and they turn away from God and His Church. Their reason is convinced, and their doubts are moral ones, arising in their root from a fault of the will. In a word, the arguments for religion do not compel any one to believe, just as arguments for good conduct do

† Here it is usual to kneel.

not compel any one to obey. Obedience is the consequence of willing to obey, and faith is the consequence of willing to believe; we may see what is right, whether in matters of faith or obedience, of ourselves, but we cannot will what is right without the grace of God. Here is the difference between other exercises of reason and arguments for the truth of religion. It requires no act of faith to assent to the truth that two and two make four; we cannot help assenting to it, and hence there is no merit in assenting to it; but there is merit in believing that the Church is from God; for though there are abundant reasons to prove it to us, yet we can, without an absurdity, quarrel with the conclusion; we may complain that it is not clearer, we may suspend our assent, we may doubt about it, if we will; and grace alone can turn a bad will into a good one." (*Discourses to Mixed Congregations on Faith and Doubt*, No. 11.)

No. 12.—Acts of Faith, Hope, Charity, and Contrition.

AN ACT OF FAITH.

(*From the Penny Catechism of Christian Doctrine, for England, 1881.*)

I firmly believe that there is One God; and that in this one God there are Three Persons, the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost; that the Son took to himself the nature of man, from the Virgin Mary's womb, by the power of the Holy Ghost; and that in this our human nature He was crucified and died for us; that afterwards He rose again and ascended into heaven, from thence He shall come to repay the just with everlasting glory, and the wicked with everlasting punishment. Moreover, I believe whatsoever else the Catholic Church proposes to be believed, and this because God who is the sovereign Truth, who can neither deceive nor be deceived, has revealed all these things to this His Church.

AN ACT OF HOPE.

O my God, relying on Thy almighty power and Thy infinite mercy and goodness, and because Thou art faithful to Thy promises, I trust in Thee that Thou wilt grant me forgiveness of my sins, through the merits of Jesus Christ Thy Son; and that Thou wilt give me the assistance of Thy grace, with which I may labor to continue to the end in the diligent exercise of all good works, and may deserve to obtain the glory which Thou hast promised in heaven.

AN ACT OF CHARITY.

O Lord, my God, I love Thee with my whole heart, and above all things, because Thou, O God, art the sovereign Good, and for Thine own

infinite perfections art most worthy of all love ; and for Thy sake I also love my neighbor as myself.

AN ACT OF CONTRITION.

O my God, who art infinitely good in Thyself, and infinitely good to me, I beg pardon from my heart for all my offences against Thee ; I am sorry for all my sins, and detest them above all things, because they deserve Thy dreadful punishments, because they have crucified my loving Saviour, Jesus Christ, and because they offend Thy infinite goodness ; and I am firmly resolved by the help of Thy grace never to offend Thee for the time to come, and carefully to avoid the occasions of sin.

(It is the strict duty of every Christian to make sometimes these or similar acts of faith, hope, charity, and contrition, and it is strongly recommended to repeat them often, because by an act of faith we worship God's infinite wisdom and truth ; by an act of hope we worship God's infinite mercy, and honor our Saviour's redemption by placing in that divine redemption our full reliance for pardon, justification, and grace ; by an act of charity we worship God's infinite goodness, holiness, and all His perfections in general ; by an act of contrition we worship God's infinite justice and mercy, and acknowledge Him as the Father of Mercies.)

SHORT ACTS OF FAITH, HOPE, LOVE, AND CONTRITION.

Act of Faith.—My God, I believe in Thee, and all Thy Church doth teach, because Thou hast said it, and Thy word is true.

Act of Hope.—My God, I hope in Thee for grace and for glory, because of Thy promises, Thy mercy, and Thy power.

Act of Charity.—My God, because Thou art so good, I love Thee with all my heart, and for Thy sake I love my neighbor as myself.

Act of Contrition.—O my God, because Thou art so good I am very sorry that I have sinned against Thee, and I will not sin again.

No. 13.—The Mass not a mere Form of Words.

In answer to the objection that the prayers of Holy Mass are generally recited by the Priest in a speedy manner.

Cardinal Newman, in his work *Loss and Gain* introduces the Anglican convert Willis, to speak as follows :

"I declare to me nothing is so consoling, so piercing, so thrilling, so overcoming, as the Mass, said as it is among us. I could attend Masses for ever and not be tired. It is not a mere form of words—it is a great action, the greatest action that can be on earth. It is not the invocation merely, but if I dare use the word, the evocation of the Eternal. He becomes present on the altar in flesh and blood, before whom angels bow and devils tremble ; that is that awful event which is the scope, and is the interpretation of every part of the solemnity. Words are necessary, but


as means, not as ends; they are not merely addresses to the throne of grace, they are instruments of what is far higher, of consecration, of sacrifice. They hurry on as if impatient to fulfil their mission. Quickly they go, the whole is quick; for they are all parts of one integral action. Quickly they go; for they are awful words of sacrifice: they are a work too great to delay upon; as when it was said in the beginning, "What thou doest do quickly." Quickly they pass; for the Lord Jesus goes with them, as He passed along the lake in the days of His flesh, quickly calling first one, and then another. Quickly they pass; because as the lightning that shineth from one part of the heaven unto the other, so is the coming of the Son of Man. Quickly they pass; for they are as the words of Moses when the Lord came down in the cloud, calling on the name of the Lord as He passed by, "the Lord, the Lord God, merciful and gracious, long-suffering, and abundant in goodness and truth." And as Moses on the mountain, so we, too, make haste, and bow our heads to the earth and adore. So we, all around, each in his place, look out for the great Advent, "waiting for the moving of the water." Each in his place with his own heart, with his own wants, with his own thoughts, with his own intention, with his own prayers, separate, but concordant, watching what is going on, watching its progress, united in its consummation; not painfully and hopelessly following a hard form of prayer from beginning to end, but, like a concert of musical instruments, each different, but concurring in a sweet harmony, we take our part with God's priest, supporting him, yet guided by him. There are little children there, and old men, and simple laborers, and students in seminaries, priests preparing for Mass, priests making their thanksgiving; there are innocent maidens, and there are penitent sinners; but out of these many minds rises one eucharistic hymn, and the great action is the measure and the scope of it. And oh! my dear Bateman, you ask me whether this is not a formal, unreasonable service? it is wonderful, quite wonderful!"

No. 14.—A Short Method of Hearing Mass.

(It is recommended that each of the following prayers be said at the very time assigned in the "*Directions*." (37))


 Just before the Mass begins, say:

O my God, give me grace to assist with attention and devotion at this solemn act of religion, by which the Church intends to worship Thee in a manner worthy of Thee.

 When the Priest at the foot of the Altar begins Mass, and the "*Confiteor*" or General Confession is recited, say:

O God, who am I that I should dare to stand in Thy Temple before Thy altar, guilty, as I am, of so many sins? Prostrate at Thy feet, O


Lord, I will humbly repeat over and over again the words of the penitent publican in the Gospel, "O God, be merciful to me a sinner."

 *When the Priest ascends the steps and kisses the Altar, then goes twice to his right, or the Epistle side, and shortly after, once to his left or the Gospel side, say :*

This reminds me, O Lord, of the beginning of Thy bitter Passion : 1st, Thy agony in the Garden, where Thou wast betrayed by Judas with a kiss ; 2d, Thy being taken and led captive to the different tribunals of Annas, Caiaphas, Pilate, King Herod, and back again to that of Pontius Pilate ; 3d, It reminds me how, in these tribunals, Thou wast ill-treated, falsely accused, and unjustly condemned. O Lord, give me patience in all my crosses and troubles, of whatever kind they may be.

 *At the Kyrie Eleison (Lord have mercy) say :*

Lord have mercy on me, and forgive me my sins. Christ have mercy on me. Lord have mercy upon me.

 *At the Gloria in Excelsis (Glory to God in the Highest) say :*

Glory be to God on High, and on earth peace to men of goodwill. We praise Thee ; we bless Thee ; we adore Thee ; we glorify Thee ; we give Thee thanks for Thy great glory, O Lord God, heavenly king, God the Father Almighty. O Lord Jesus Christ, only-begotten Son ; O Lord God, Lamb of God, Son of the Father, Thou who takest away the sins of the world, have mercy on us. Thou who takest away the sins of the world, receive our prayers. Thou who sittest at the right hand of the Father, have mercy on us. For Thou only art holy ; Thou only art the Lord ; Thou only, O Jesus Christ, with the Holy Ghost, art most high in the glory of God the Father. *Amen.*

 *When the Priest (or Deacon) reads the Epistle, say :*

Thou hast taught us, O Lord, Thy sacred truths by Thy Prophets and Apostles ; grant that we may so improve by their doctrine and example in the love of Thy holy Name and of Thy Holy Law, that we may show forth by our life that we are Thy disciples. May we no longer follow the corrupt inclinations of the flesh, but subdue all our passions. May we be ever directed by Thy light, and strengthened by Thy grace to walk in the way of Thy Commandments, and serve Thee with pure hearts, through our Lord Jesus Christ.


 *When the Priest reads the Gospel, and the people stand, say :*

O Jesus, the Way, the Truth, and the Life, I give Thee most hearty thanks for the heavenly truths Thou teachest us. I thank Thee also for having appointed Thy Holy Church on earth a sure guide to make known to us which are the inspired Books of Scripture, and the true sense in which they are to be understood. Never may I abandon Thy holy Word,

or Thy Church, the lawful interpreter of the same. It has pleased Thee, O Lord Jesus, to continue daily to teach us by Thy holy Gospel; grant me grace that I may not be wanting in procuring to myself all necessary instruction in Thy saving truths; let me be as industrious for my soul as I am for my body, that while I take pains in the affairs of this world, I may not, through stupidity or neglect, let my soul starve and perish everlastingly. Let the rules of the Gospel be the guide of my life, that I may not only know Thy will, but likewise do it. May I keep all Thy Commandments, and resisting all the inclinations of corrupt nature, may I, as a true disciple, ever follow Thee who art the Way, the Truth, and the Life.

 *When the Priest recites the Nicene Creed (see Part II., No. 2) say:*


O my God, I believe this Creed and all the definitions of faith made by the Holy Catholic Church, which Thou hast appointed to teach Thy revealed truth to all mankind, and which Thou dost assist in a special manner, that she never can lead us astray; and in this faith of Thy Saints I wish to live and die.

 *When the Priest uncovers the paten and the chalice, and offers to God first the bread and then the wine about to be consecrated, say:*

O God, I offer Thee this holy sacrifice for the same ends for which the Church offers it to Thee, namely:

1. To Thy honor and glory.
2. In thanksgiving for all the benefits we have received from Thee.
3. To obtain pardon for my sins and for those of all men.
4. To obtain more graces for myself and for all others.




(Dwell a while upon each of these four points, repeating them with devotion and fervor.)

 *At the Preface and Sanctus, say:*

O my God, I rejoice to see that the angels in heaven and men on earth are ranged, as it were, in two choirs to extol Thy glory, and to thank Thee for Thy countless benefits. Unworthy though I am, I wish to unite in heart and voice with them in thanking and glorifying Thee; and in exclaiming: Holy, Holy, Holy, is the Lord God of Hosts. Heaven and earth are full of Thy Glory. Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord. Hosanna in the highest!

 *Here pray for living friends and enemies.*

 *Whilst the Priest reads the Canon in secret, call to mind the following points of the passion of our Lord:*

-  Jesus terribly scourged at the pillar.
-  Jesus cruelly crowned with thorns.
-  Jesus unjustly condemned to death.
- Jesus loaded with the heavy weight of the Cross.
- Jesus sadly meeting His desolate Mother in the way.
- Jesus falling down thrice under the weight of the Cross on his way to Calvary.

Jesus there stripped of his clothes and nailed to the Cross.

☞ When the consecration takes place, and the priest raises above the level of his head the Host, and shortly afterwards the chalice, whilst the little bell is rung by the server at each elevation to call special attention to this, the principal part of the Mass, call to mind when the cross, with Jesus nailed thereon, was raised on Mount Calvary ; how He remained hanging there in agony in the midst of most excruciating torments for three long hours ; how at last He expired, the victim of immeasurable love for us ; and then say :

O Jesus, I adore Thee, I thank Thee with all my heart for having allowed Thy love to carry Thee to that excess as to die for me upon the Cross. In return, I wish to love Thee with all my heart and soul, and above all things, I repent most sincerely for having offended Thee. I am distressed and filled with shame on account of my past ingratitude to Thee ; yet, full of confidence, I run to Thy sacred wounds for refuge. I thank Thee for having graciously instituted for us this holy sacrifice, and thus afforded us an opportunity of joining Thee, our High Priest, in offering Thyself to Thy Eternal Father as a most pure and most acceptable Divine Victim of expiation, and of thanksgiving, able to call down upon us all blessings.

O Eternal Father, I offer to Thee the most precious Blood of Thy beloved Son Jesus Christ in expiation of my sins, for the wants of Holy Church, in thanksgiving for all the benefits ever imparted to us, and in order to obtain many graces still from Thee.

☞ *At the Memento of the dead, say :*

I offer Thee again, O Lord, this holy sacrifice of the Body and Blood of Thy only Son, in behalf of the faithful departed, and in particular for the souls of [*here name those you wish to pray for*]. To these, O Lord, and to all that died in Christ, grant, we beseech Thee, a place of refreshment, light, and peace, through the same Jesus Christ, our Lord.

☞ *When the Priest recites the " Pater Noster," that is, the Lord's Prayer, say with devotion :*


Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be Thy name ; Thy kingdom come ; Thy will be done on earth, as it is in heaven. Give us this day our daily bread ; and forgive us our trespasses, as we forgive them that trespass against us ; and lead us not into temptation ; but deliver us from evil. *Amen.*

☞ *Whilst the priest says thrice " Agnus Dei " (Lamb of God), and shortly after, thrice, " Domine non sum dignus " (Lord, I am not worthy) ; * and whilst the priest administers to himself the Body and the Blood of Christ you will do well, if you are not among those happy ones who go up to the altar-rails to receive your Saviour sacramentally, to awaken in your heart a great desire to receive Christ spiritually within you. This is called spiritual communion, and you will do well to say :*

O Jesus, I firmly believe that Thou art truly present in this Blessed Sacrament. I see Thee therein full of love, willing to pardon us, and

* At this moment the server again sounds the little bell, to give notice of this other principal part of the Mass, and to remind those who have to communicate (if Communion is then given) that it is time to approach the altar-rail, and kneel there to receive holy Communion. Few go to Communion at High Mass, which is generally celebrated at a late hour, ten or eleven, in the morning. Most persons going to holy Communion, and therefore fasting, prefer to go to an earlier Mass, seven or eight, called Low Mass, from having fewer ceremonies than High Mass.

anxious to dwell within us, and to be very closely united to us. I wish most earnestly to answer to this Thy desire and love. I detest all my sins by which I have displeased Thee. Pardon me, O Lord, and purify my soul in Thy precious Blood ; I love Thee, O Lord, and I wish to love Thee more and more. Come to me, O Lord, and dwell within me. I long to have Thee within my breast. Since I cannot now receive Thee sacramentally, come at least spiritually into my heart. I embrace Thee, and unite myself to Thee, as if Thou wast already there. With all the love I have, I cling to Thee. Guard me from falling into sin, that I may never be separated from Thee, but may remain united with Thee for ever.

 When the priest says, " *ite missa est* " (that is, " You may go, the Mass is said "), and then blesses the people, you will sign yourself with the sign of the cross, saying :

In the name of the Father and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.
Amen. O Holy Trinity, one God, may Thy blessing remain with us for ever. Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost : as it was in the beginning, is now, and ever shall be, world without end.
Amen. Eternal thanks to Thee, O Lord, for having given me the opportunity to be present at the highest Act of Religion, and to unite in spirit and truth in that worship which thou didst institute, which alone is worthy of Thee, and in which Thy Father is well pleased. *Amen.*

No. 15.—Method of Confession.

A person who wishes to receive the sacrament of penance has to do these five things—First, he has to examine carefully his conscience. Second, to be heartily sorry for having offended God. Third, to make a firm resolution never to commit any sin again. Fourth, to make a candid and humble confession of all his mortal sins to a priest. Fifth, he must have an intention of doing the penance enjoined by the priest, and of satisfying his neighbor to the best of his power if he has done injury to any one.

Before all this, however, he should say the following or a similar prayer to obtain divine aid to make a good confession :

"O Almighty God, I long to return to Thee, the fountain of all good. I desire, like the prodigal son, to look seriously into my heart, and to forsake my evil ways without delay. I am wearied in pursuit of empty toys, seeking in vain to satisfy my thirst with muddy waters, and my hunger with husks fit only for swine.

"But, O my God, though I can go astray from Thee by myself, I can-

The sign of the cross is made thus : We place the extended fingers of our right hand on our forehead, while saying, " In the name of the Father ; " then putting them on our breast, we say, " and of the Son ; " then we place them on our left shoulder, and immediately afterward on our right shoulder, while we say, " and of the Holy Ghost. *Amen.* "

not make one step toward Thee without the help of Thy grace. This grace, then, I most humbly implore for the sake of Jesus Christ my Redeemer. And since I have now to examine my conscience, and call to mind my sins, in order to detest and bitterly to deplore them and confess them, mercifully enlighten my understanding that I may clearly see the state of my conscience. Disclose to me, O my God, those secret thoughts, irregular desires, criminal words and actions, or omissions of my duty, by which I have violated Thy sacred laws, or given scandal to my neighbor. Do not permit self-love to deceive me, but help me that I may behold the true state of my heart, and weep bitterly over my sins, and now humbly and sincerely confess them to Thy minister."

You will then proceed to examine your conscience, and as you are bound to confess mortal sins, and not bound, although recommended, to confess lesser faults, called venial sins, your first care should be to find out the mortal sins, that is, the grievous sins you may have committed since your last confession to, and absolution by, a Catholic priest, and find out also the precise number of times each such sin was committed, or at least the probable number.

If you are not in the regular habit of making your examination of conscience, the following list of sins may be of some assistance to you.

SINS MORE DIRECTLY AGAINST GOD.

Have you been guilty of disbelieving an article of faith?—Made a bad confession or communion?

Have you neglected needful instruction in religion?

Have you rashly exposed yourself to the danger of infidelity by reading dangerous books or keeping bad company? How often?

Have you abused the words of Holy Scripture by indecent or grossly irreverent application of them?

Have you been negligent in procuring the necessary instruction for those under your care in their duties to God?

Have you despaired of salvation or of the forgiveness of your sins?

Have you thought it impossible to avoid mortal sin or to be good?

Have you presumed on God's goodness without caring to amend?

Have you notably delayed repentance?

Have you murmured against the providence of God?

Have you thought God cruel or unjust, or indifferent to our doing good or evil?

Have you neglected to prevent evil, when it was your duty and in your power to do so?

Have you said and maintained maliciously that all religions were good?

Have you been wilfully negligent in the church during divine worship ?

Have you neglected prayer for several weeks ?

Have you said your prayers with great want of attention ?

Have you been irreverent in the church by talking, laughing, or making others behave irreverently ?

Have you sworn to a lie, or sworn to do what was wrong ?

Have you broken your lawful oath ?

Have you taken the holy name of God in vain ?

Have you passed Sunday or a holy day of obligation in idleness or sin, or have you been the occasion to others of so passing such time ?

Have you done or commanded servile work for a considerable space of time without necessity upon those days ?

SINS AGAINST OUR NEIGHBOR.

[*Sins in Thought*].—Have you judged rashly, injuriously, of your neighbor ? How often ?

Have you wilfully harbored any thought of rancor or of revenge against any one ?

Have you from hatred avoided any one, or refused to show him ordinary civility ?

Have you maliciously envied any one for their appearance, merit, reputation, talent, fortune, or employment ?

Have you knowingly harbored any desire of revenge ?

[*Sins in Words*].—Have you spoken very harshly, or used abusive language, toward your neighbor ? How often ?

Have you grievously deceived your neighbor ?

Have you wilfully misconstrued another's actions ?

Have you said what was false of your neighbor ?

Have you detracted your neighbor by revealing, to his or her injury, without just cause, what was true but secret ?

Have you encouraged calumny or detraction by listening with pleasure to reports of that kind ?

Have you been a scandal to any one by giving bad advice or bad example, by instilling bad principles, or by using bad language in the presence of any one ?

[*Sins of Deed*].—Have you cheated any one in buying or selling ? How often ?

Have you injured any one by stealing, helping to steal, or usury, extortion, or by any unlawful contract ?

Have you knowingly bought or received stolen goods ?

Have you refused or neglected to pay your just debts ?

Have you neglected the work or business for which you were hired, and were obliged by contract to perform?

Have you neglected to restore ill-gotten goods, or to make compensation for wrong done to your neighbor when it was in your power to do so?

Have you shared in the sin of another by counsel, by command, by consent, by flattery, or by silence?

Have you neglected to restore the character which you may have injured by calumny or detraction?

[*Sins of Omission*].—Have you neglected your duties as a Christian? as a parent? as a husband? as a wife? as master? or as servant? In short, any duty belonging to your state of life or calling? How often?

Have you been wanting in your duty as son or daughter? Have you been guilty of grave disrespect or of grave disobedience to your parents, guardians, or superiors? Have you despised or insulted them? Have you provoked them to great anger, to curse or to swear? Have you treated them in a haughty and insulting manner? Have you spoken evil of them?

Have you omitted to assist your neighbor in his great necessity when you could have helped him?

SINS AGAINST OURSELVES.

[*By Pride*].—Had you too great an esteem of yourself, or boasted unduly, and haughtily despised others?

Did you feel a secret pleasure in hearing others seriously disparaged, or found fault with?

[*By Covetousness*].—Have you through covetousness been unjust to your wife and family?

Have you been seriously wanting in charity and compassion toward the poor? Did you use toward them unmerited, imperious, ill-natured, or insulting language?

Have you received exorbitant interest for money lent?

Have you charged exorbitant prices?

Have you knowingly kept that surplus of change of money which was given to you by mistake?

Have you desired to steal, defraud, or commit any other kind of injustice?

[*By Impurity*].—Have you sinned against purity, by wilfully dwelling upon and taking pleasure in any unchaste thought? How often?

By desiring to commit any immodest action?

By going into bad company?

Talking immodestly? Listening with pleasure to impure language? Singing any unchaste song?

Reading any immodest book ? or lending any such book to any other ?
Looking unchastely at any immodest object ?

Doing any immodest action either alone or with others ? Permitting any immodest liberty to be taken with you ?

[*By Anger*].—Have you harbored great dislike toward any one ? How often ?

Have you given way to great angry passion ?

Have you of set purpose taken part in a serious quarrel or duel ?

Have you provoked others to quarrel or fight ?

Have you struck your wife or husband ? struck your children unduly ?

Have you struck any one else in anger ?

Have you been guilty of wanton cruelty to any animal ?

Have you refused to forgive any injury ? or refused to be reconciled ? or refused to give signs of reconciliation or forgiveness ?

Have you been guilty of great impatience ? of too severely correcting those under your charge ? of cruel and abusive treatment ?

[*By Gluttony*].—Have you exceeded the bounds of temperance, by eating or by drinking to excess ? Have you induced others to do so ? How often ?

Have you through drunkenness been a scandal to your neighbor, a source of unhappiness, and quarrel, and injustice to your family ?

[*By Envy*].—Have you felt sorry at the prosperity of others ? or have you rejoiced at their misfortune ?

[*By Sloth*].—Have you for a long time neglected prayer or other religious duty ? How often ?

Have you performed these duties carelessly ?

Have you led a life of idleness ?

Have you neglected to admonish those whom it was your duty to admonish ?

Have you neglected to pray when assailed by great temptation or in great danger of sin ?

Have you remained voluntarily in proximate (that is, near) occasions of sin ?

Examine yourself carefully whether any of the sins you have committed have been the cause of bad example or scandal to others

SECOND, BE HEARTILY SORRY.

Having tried to bring to your memory the different sins of which you have been guilty, together with their number, and such circumstances as may have considerably increased their malice or changed their nature, you should pass to the next thing to be done in preparation for confession—namely, you should endeavor to excite in your heart a great sorrow for

having committed them, and a sincere detestation of them. For this purpose you should—

1st. Beg of Almighty God to give you grace to feel this abhorrence of your sins.

2d. Consider those things which may help you to detest your sins; as, for example, that by your sins you have lost heaven, deserved hell, rebelled against your Creator, grieved and offended a God of infinite goodness, been very ungrateful to your greatest Benefactor, your Heavenly Father, and your Redeemer who suffered so much, and died on the cross for you: that you have deprived yourself of the grace of God, and become an object hateful to Him.

3d. By saying with great fervor and more than once, the following or a similar act of contrition:

SPECIAL ACT OF CONTRITION.

O Lord Jesus, behold at Thy feet a great sinner. I am ashamed and distressed on account of the many sins which I have committed.

I reproach myself bitterly for having been so ungrateful and wicked. I have abused Thy goodness, O Lord, my Redeemer, my best Benefactor.

I have offended Thee, O God of infinite goodness! Every time I committed a grievous sin I have deserved and called down upon myself that dreadful sentence: "Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, which was prepared for the devil and his angels." (St. Matt. xxv. 41.)

I cannot complain of this sentence, for of my own accord I have departed from Thee, and lived wilfully away from Thee, and in a state of rebellion against Thee.

How often did Thy sweet voice invite me to repentance!

How often have Thy corrections warned me to return! and I was deaf to Thy call, and hardened my heart against Thee.

Often hast Thou stretched out Thy hand to me, O Lord, and I turned my back upon Thee: but, O Lord, I now repent: I am sorry indeed. Who shall give "a fountain of tears to my eyes," that day and night I may weep for my ingratitude to Thee, O Lord? My transgressions are a heavy burden to me. The thought of being astray from Thee alarms me; I am wretched, buried as I am in the depth of sin and misery.

But I will not despair; for if my sins are many and great, Thy mercy, O Lord, is greater. Thou hast waited for me until now to give me time to repent. A humbled and contrite heart Thou wilt not despise; why shall I not trust in Thee? Yes, I do trust in Thy infinite mercy, O Lord; in Thy precious blood shed for me, in Thy divine promise of receiving the repentant sinner, like the prodigal son, as soon as ever he returns to Thee.

Full of confidence, therefore, and out of the depth of my poor heart, I cry out to Thee : "O God, be merciful to me a sinner." (St. Luke xviii. 13.) I detest all my sins ; I heartily wish that I had never committed them. They are hateful now in my sight ; but as my repentance can never be sufficient, I beg to offer Thee, O Lord, the sighs, the tears, the faintness and the sweat of blood, the horror and the grief for sin, with which, in the Garden of Gethsemane, Thou didst supply the poorness of my repentance.

Touch my stony heart, O Lord, with Thy powerful grace, that with tears of sorrow I may bewail my ingratitude and all my past sins in the bitterness of my heart.

Root out of my soul whatever is displeasing to Thee, and lay in me the foundation of a new life. I love Thee, O Lord Jesus, with all my heart and soul, and wish to love Thee more and more. With the help of Thy grace, I will never offend Thee again ; no, nevermore. Strengthen Thou my resolution. (See pages 211 and 222.)

THIRD, MAKE A FIRM RESOLUTION NEVER TO SIN AGAIN. .

A true sorrow for having offended God must contain a firm purpose of amendment. Without this, the sorrow would not be true nor sufficient for making a good confession.

It is clear that if a person, although uneasy for having offended God, yet were wavering whether he should or should not choose to commit sin again, that person would not be truly sorry, nor be in a fit state to obtain pardon of his sins.

Would a father show readiness to forgive a son who had grievously offended him, if that son should remain sullen, or showed himself disposed to repeat the same fault ?

When a person is truly sorry for having offended God, he is also determined, with the help of God's grace, not to offend Him ever again, and is resolved also to avoid proximate occasions of sin.

It might happen that, notwithstanding this resolution to quit all sin, you might after some time yield to temptation, change your mind for the worse, and fall again into sin ; because neither this resolution nor the absolution you receive will render you impeccable. Yet it is no less true that when you are sincerely determined to avoid sin, you are then in a fit state to receive pardon, and if you are not so resolved, you would not be in a fit state for receiving absolution.

It would be foolish to hesitate to make such a resolution on the ground that it is a promise, and to say : If I make a promise, and then fail to keep my word, it would be still worse.

But it is not so, because, strictly speaking, it is not a *promise* which is

demand of you, but only a *resolution*, that is, a determination, that you will do what you are bound to do—namely, observe the commandments and avoid sin.

Now, to resolve over and over again, “I will not offend God ; I will do my duty,” does not create a new obligation, but it encourages us to do what we are simply bound to do. If a sentry at his post, with a view to drive away timidity and encourage himself to do his duty, were to repeat to himself : “I will be brave, I will not desert my post,” that would not surely be contracting a new obligation.

Whether you make such resolutions or not, you are equally bound not to offend God ; but the making of fresh resolutions serves to strengthen your will, and confirm you in your duty and fidelity to God ; and you do not thereby impose upon yourself a fresh obligation.

It is clear, therefore, that to make such resolutions is a real gain, and can but be profitable to your soul. It would therefore be to your interest to repeat often and fervently such purpose of amendment as the following :

O my God, with the help of Thy grace, I will never wilfully offend Thee again.

Rather would I die than wilfully offend Thee, O my God !

I will no longer be unfaithful and ungrateful to Thee. I will no more add to the number of my sins, but put a stop to them, dear Lord. Henceforth I will be altogether Thine. By myself I can do nothing, but with the help of Thy grace I can resist all temptations and keep all Thy commandments. Help me, O Lord, with Thy powerful grace, that I may nevermore offend Thee. O, what a happiness, could I live without offending Thee any more !

Psalm 118 (Prot. vers. 119), beginning, “Blessed are the undefiled in the way,” or part of it, might be recited with great spiritual profit, as it is full of beautiful resolutions to observe God's commandments.

FOURTH, MAKE A CANDID AND HUMBLE CONFESSION.

After having prepared yourself in this manner, you should go to confession with modesty and humility, determined to be sincere, and willing to suffer some shame in penance for your sins, and thus avert the greater shame and confusion which you will otherwise certainly have to endure in the Day of Judgment. Then kneel down at the side of the confessional where the priest is seated for hearing confessions.

Before confessing, turn toward the priest, and say—

“Bless me, father, for I have sinned.”

Immediately after these words recite the first part of the “Confiteor,” consisting of the following words in English or other language (see page 194):

"I confess to Almighty God, to Blessed Mary, ever Virgin, to Blessed Michael the Archangel, to Blessed John the Baptist, to the Holy Apostles Peter and Paul, to all the Saints, and to you, my spiritual father, that I have sinned exceedingly in thought, word and deed ; through my fault, through my fault, through my most grievous fault." If it is your first confession you will tell it to the confessor. If you have been to confession before you will tell the confessor how long since you had been ; whether in it you received absolution or not ; and whether you performed the penance enjoined on you by the confessor.

You then begin to confess your sins. If needed, the priest will readily help you in the matter, especially if you ask him to do so. Tell him, if he does not know it, that it is your first confession.

If it is your first confession, you have to confess all the grievous sins committed during your life ; or, if you have been to confession before, you have to confess the sins you have committed since your last confession, at which you received absolution.

The priest will give you some advice, enjoin a penance, usually some prayers to be said by you, and in the end, if he finds you properly disposed, give you, in God's name, absolution of your sins, whilst you make an act of sincere contrition ; and this absolution will be made good by God in heaven, according to His promise to His Apostles : "Amen, I say to you, whatsoever you shall bind upon earth, shall be bound also in heaven ; and whatsoever you shall loose upon earth, shall be loosed also in heaven." (St. Matt. xviii. 18.) And according to what we read in St. John : "He said therefore to them again, Peace be with you. As the Father has sent me, I also send you. When he had said this, he breathed on them : and he said to them, Receive ye the Holy Ghost : whose sins ye shall forgive, they are forgiven them ; and whose sins you shall retain, they are retained." (xx. 21.)

You will now leave the confessional, and, kneeling in some other part of the church, you will offer a hearty thanksgiving to God for the great helps and wonderful blessings received. And, if time allows, you will then perform the penance, usually some prayers, enjoined on you by the priest, your confessor.

A true penitent, who wishes to repair by well-doing the evil done, has a choice in the following Commandments, Virtues, Works, and Beatitudes.

No. 16.—The Ten Commandments of God.

(Taken in substance from Exodus xx. and Deuteronomy v.)

I am the Lord thy God, who brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

1. Thou shalt not have strange gods before me. Thou shalt not make to thyself a graven thing, nor the likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or in the earth beneath, nor of those things that are in the waters under the earth. Thou shalt not adore them nor serve them.

2. Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain.

3. Remember that thou keep holy the Sabbath day.

4. Honor thy father and thy mother.

5. Thou shalt not kill.

6. Thou shalt not commit adultery.

7. Thou shalt not steal.

8. Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

9. Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife. (Deut. v. 21.)

10. Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's goods.

THE COMMANDMENTS OF THE CHURCH.

We are chiefly commanded by the Church—

1. To keep the Sundays and holy days of obligation holy, by hearing Mass, and resting from servile works.

2. To keep the days of fasting and abstinence appointed by the Church.

3. To go to confession at least once a year.

4. To receive the blessed sacrament at least once a year, and that at Easter or thereabouts, as directed by the bishop of each one's diocese.

5. To contribute to the support of our pastors.

6. Not to marry within certain degrees of kindred, nor to solemnize marriage at the forbidden times.

The Seven Deadly Sins, and the opposite Virtues.

Pride.

Covetousness.

Lust.

Anger.

Gluttony.

Envy.

Sloth.

Contrary Virtues

Humility.

Liberality.

Chastity.

Meekness.*

Temperance.

Brotherly Love.

Diligence.

* The virtue of meekness, so strongly recommended to us by our Saviour, should extend also to animals, so as never to cause them unnecessary pain. The saints had not only a fervent love for the souls of men, and an anxious care for the poor and suffering, but had also a tender compassion for every living creature. "The just regardeth the lives of his beasts: but the bowels of the wicked are cruel." (Proverbs xii. 10.) A striking lesson of tenderness towards God's creatures is conveyed to us in the divine command repeatedly given: "Thou shalt not boil a kid in the milk of his dam." (Exodus xxiii. 19.; Deut. xiv. 21.) The gentle poet Coleridge has well written:

"He prayeth best who loveth best
All things both great and small;
For the dear God who loveth us,
He made and loveth all."

The Seven Spiritual Works of Mercy.

To reclaim sinners.

To instruct the ignorant.

To counsel the doubtful.

To comfort the sorrowful.

To bear wrongs patiently.

To forgive offences.

To pray for the living and the dead.

The Seven Corporal Works of Mercy.

To feed the hungry.

To give drink to the thirsty.

To clothe the naked.

To harbor the harborless.

To visit the sick.

To visit the imprisoned, and

To bury the dead.

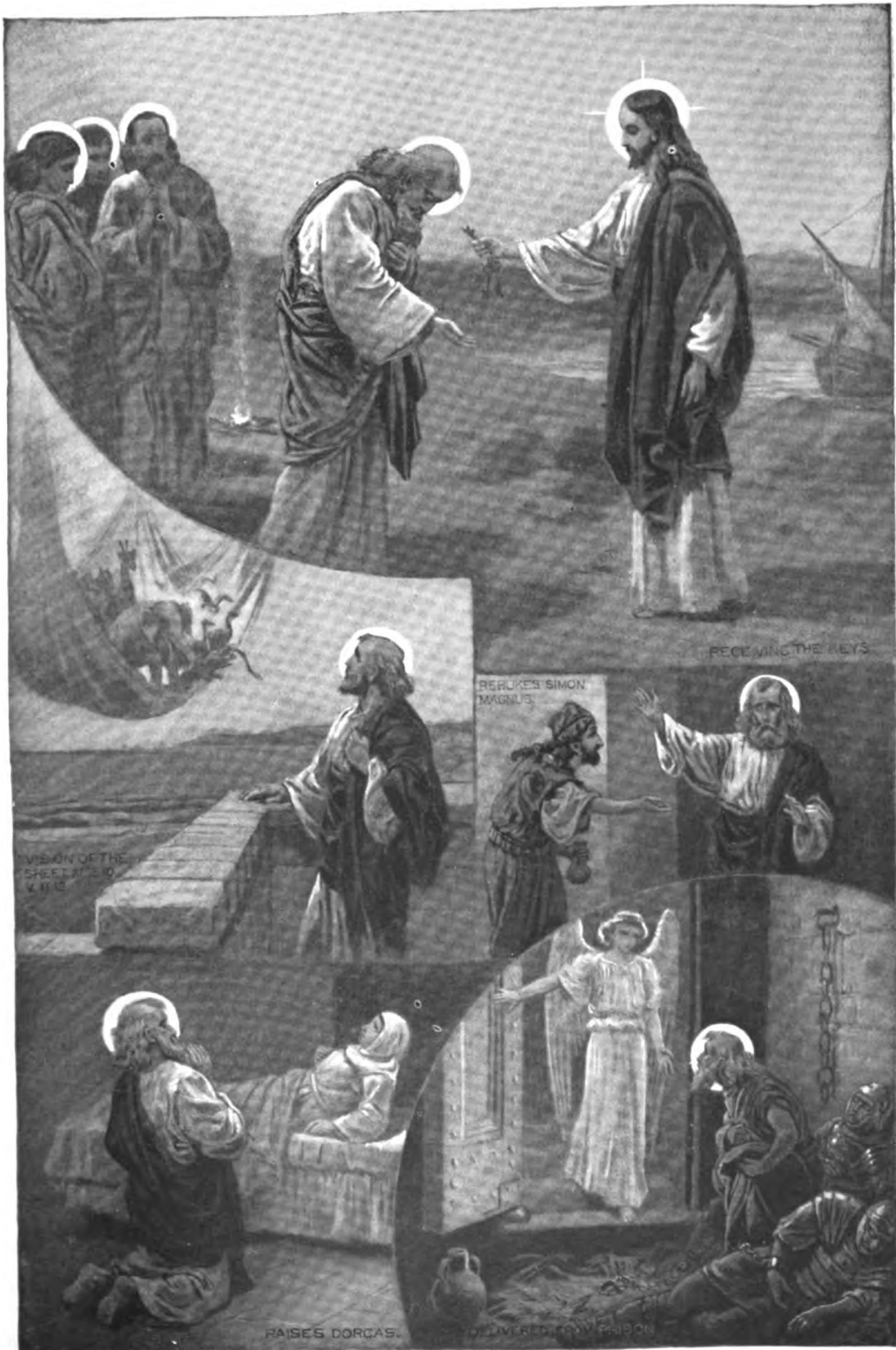
The Seven Gifts of the Holy Spirit. (Isaias xi. 2.)

1. Wisdom. 2. Understanding. 3. Counsel. 4. Fortitude. 5. Knowledge. 6. Piety.
7. Fear of the Lord.

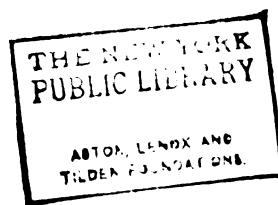
The Eight Beatitudes.

In the fifth chapter of St. Matthew Jesus said :

1. Blessed are the poor in spirit; for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.
2. Blessed are the meek; for they shall possess the land.
3. Blessed are they that mourn; for they shall be comforted.
4. Blessed are they that hunger and thirst after justice; for they shall have their fill.
5. Blessed are the merciful; for they shall obtain mercy.
6. Blessed are the clean of heart; for they shall see God.
7. Blessed are the peacemakers; for they shall be called the children of God.
8. Blessed are they that suffer persecution for justice' sake; for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.



ST. PETER.



PART III.

MISCELLANEOUS SUBJECTS.

No. 1.—St. Peter in Rome.

In the face of millions of Catholics recognizing, generation after generation, the Bishops of Rome as the successors of St. Peter in that see; in the face of the most ancient and most illustrious of all dynasties, the regular line of 257 Roman pontiffs (A. D. 1884), who have at all times claimed to succeed to the chair of Peter, and in the face of a large number of historians and other ancient writers who have asserted the same thing, without one single ancient writer asserting the contrary, some modern writers have boldly questioned the fact that St. Peter ever was in Rome.

As it has happened in other instances that the bitter attacks of our adversaries only served to bring out the Catholic truth in greater relief, so it is in this case. The modern denial of the fact that St. Peter was ever in Rome only gave an opportunity to Catholics to bring forth a host of historical documents in proof of this point of general belief.

To prove that St. Peter was in Rome as the founder and first Bishop of that Church, it would almost suffice to see the great embarrassment into which they have thrown themselves who deny it.

They are unable to tell us, if this is not the fact, how it happens that the whole of Christendom has uniformly, through all ages, believed that St. Peter was the first Bishop of Rome, and there suffered martyrdom.

They cannot explain how it is that this historical fact was never doubted or gainsaid, even by schismatics, heretics, and other bitter enemies of the Roman see, for upward of fourteen centuries, though they were deeply interested in raising doubts about it.

Holy Scripture informs us that before St. Paul went to Rome, in the tenth year of the Emperor Claudius, there was already in Rome a large number of Christians, to whom St. Paul wrote, and of whom he could say that their faith was spoken of in the whole world. (Romans i. 8.) Now, if St. Peter did not convert the Roman people, and was not their pastor, how is it that our opponents cannot tell us who first converted the Romans; and, if not St. Peter, who was their bishop?

They cannot explain how so important a belief, if untrue, could be imposed upon all Christianity, even at the time when St. John the Evangelist was still living, without any one protesting against it, or even noticing the imposture, but rather all taking it for granted.

As it cannot be supposed that St. Peter had no see during the last twenty-five years of his life, if St. Peter was not Bishop of Rome during that period, they ought to tell us of what other place he was bishop, and where he died, and how and when his mortal remains have been transferred to Rome. But of these things they tell us nothing.

If St. Peter was not the first Pontiff of Rome, they ought to be able to explain how since St. Linus the supremacy over the whole Church was ever claimed, and is still claimed, by the Roman see, and not by any other, not even the see of Antioch, which St. Peter occupied for a time. But this also they are unable to explain.

Besides this grave embarrassment, their not being able, also, to bring forth in support of their assertion any positive argument, but only negative ones, serves to betray the weakness of their cause. These are the chief of their objections.

“Chronologists,” they say, “vary in fixing the time that St. Peter went to Rome. It is difficult to reconcile the assertion that St. Peter was in Rome with certain passages of Scripture. We cannot account for St. Paul’s not sending, in his letter to the Romans, his salutations to St. Peter if St. Peter had then been the Bishop of Rome. Holy Scripture,” they add, “does not state that St. Peter went to Rome, or lived or died there.”

In answer to this it should be noted that the disagreement of writers regarding the time in which a fact occurred renders doubtful, at most, only the thing upon which those writers differ, namely, *time*, not the *fact* upon which they agree. Indeed, if the disagreement about some point regarding a fact renders that point doubtful, the agreeing about the fact itself which they relate is a great sign of the truth of the fact related.

Therefore, even supposing that the historians disagree in fixing the exact date on which St. Peter went to Rome, or died in Rome, this is not a reason for denying that St. Peter lived and died there. Thus no one thinks of denying the birth, the baptism, and the death of our Lord,

merely because chronologists are divided in fixing the exact years when these facts occurred.

Thus, likewise, because, ignorant of certain particulars, we are unable to reconcile one fact with another, or to explain some expressions, or account for certain omissions, is not a reason for denying what is otherwise satisfactorily proved from trustworthy documents.

Thus, suppose we were unable to account why mention is not made in Holy Writ of St. Peter's going to Rome, and of his dwelling and teaching there; suppose we could not explain why St. Paul, writing to the Romans, did not send his salutations to St. Peter—this is not a reason why we should deny what is otherwise testified about St. Peter by positive and solid authority; otherwise we might deny that St. John was bishop of Ephesus, and St. James bishop of Jerusalem, on the ground that St. Paul, writing to the Ephesians, did not send his salutations to their bishop, St. John; and, writing to the Hebrews, did not salute St. James, their bishop in Jerusalem.

We attach more value to the testimony of a few trustworthy witnesses asserting a thing than to the silence of a hundred persons who do not deny what the others affirm.

Sometimes the very notoriety of a fact, universally admitted, is the very reason why no pains are taken to establish it, and sometimes why no mention even is made of it. Thus, for example, the historian Eusebius, bishop of Cæsarea, who lived in the fourth century, after having stated that St. Paul was beheaded and St. Peter crucified under Nero, adds, "I think it superfluous to look for other testimonies in proof of these facts, for that these things have taken place is testified by remarkable and most splendid monuments." (Book ii., chap. 25.)

These seeming discrepancies can, I think, be reconciled, and these difficulties surmounted. I will here give a short sketch of the movements of St. Peter in his apostolic labors, which, I trust, will enable the reader to solve most, at least, of those difficulties.

St. Peter began his apostolic labors ten days after the ascension of our Lord into heaven, that is, on the Day of Pentecost, 15th of May of the year 34 from the birth of Christ. In fact, on the very Day of Pentecost St. Peter, full of the Holy Ghost, preached before a large crowd of people and converted three thousand of them. (Acts ii. 41.) Some days after, being freed from prison by an angel (Acts v. 19), he preached in the temple and converted five thousand more. During the four years that he stayed in Jerusalem he visited and preached the gospel in many parts of the Samaritans (Acts viii. 25), and visited especially the city of Samaria itself, where he administered the sacrament of confirmation to the baptized Christians of that city, and sharply rebuked Simon Magus. (Acts viii.)

In the beginning of the fourth year of his dwelling in Jerusalem St. Peter was visited by St. Paul. (Acts ix. 27, 28.) During the same year St. Peter "passed through, visiting all, and came to the saints who dwelt at Lydda" (Acts ix. 32), where he miraculously cured Eneas from his eight years' infirmity; then he went to Joppe (now called Jaffa), and there he raised to life Tabitha (Dorcas), who had died shortly before. It was in that same town of Joppe that St. Peter had the vision of the great linen sheet descending from heaven. (Acts x. 11, 12.) After a few days he went, by God's direction, to Cæsarea, where he instructed the centurion Cornelius and his household, all of whom he baptized and received into the Church. (Acts x. 23.)

From Cæsarea he returned to Jerusalem (Acts xi. 18), but did not tarry there long.

Having heard that in Syria, in the city of Antioch, the gospel had made wonderful progress, Barnabas and several of the disciples hastened thither, and St. Peter also; which thing, though not mentioned by St. Luke, because the principal subject of his history was not St. Peter but St. Paul, is, however, attested by Anacletus (*Epistola iii.*), by Marcellus (*Epistola iii.*), by St. Innocent I. (*Epistola xiv.*), by St. Damasus in the Pontifical Book, by St. Jerome (*De Viris Illustribus*), by Eusebius (in *Chronicon*), by St. Leo (*Sermone i.*, *De SS. Petro et Paulo*), and by others.

During his episcopacy in Antioch, which lasted seven years, St. Peter made excursions to the near provinces of Asia Minor, Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, and Bithynia, as St. Leo testifies (Sermon on Saints Peter and Paul).

In the eleventh year after the ascension of our Lord, which was the second year of the reign of the Roman Emperor Claudius, St. Peter left the bishopric of Antioch, which he intrusted to Euodius, and chose for himself Rome. Before, however, going to Rome, he first went to Jerusalem. Then it was that Herod cast him into prison, as related in the Acts of the Apostles. (Chap. xii.) But being miraculously delivered by an angel from prison a second time, he made his way to Rome.

St. Peter was the first to preach the gospel in Rome, and owing to his sanctity, zeal, prudence, and power of working miracles, it was not long before he made many converts. The number of Christians increasing steadily every year, he chose the most distinguished among them, and sent them as bishops or priests to different parts of the world, as recorded in the Roman Martyrology. To Sicily he sent Pancras, Marcian, and Berillus; to Capua, Priscon; to Naples, Aspren; to Terracina, Epaphroditus; to Nepe, Ptolomeus; to Fiesole, Romulus; to Lucca, Paulinus; to Ravenna, Apolinaris; to Verona, Exuperius; to Padua, Prosdorimus; to Ticinus, Syrus; to Acquileia, Hermogora. To Gaul (France), likewise,

St. Peter sent to Toulouse, Martial ; to Cologne, Maternus ; to Rheims, Sixtus ; to Arles, Trophimus ; to Vienne, Crescent. To Germany he sent Eucharius, Egistus, and Marcian. To Spain he sent Torquatus, Ctesiphons, Secundus, Indalesius, Cecilius, and Esikius ; and others to other places.

In the seventh year of St. Peter's pontificate in Rome the Emperor Claudius banished from that city all the Jews. With the Jews the Christians, who were considered by the pagans a Jewish sect, had also to go.

St. Peter, leaving Rome, directed his journey, according to some, first to Britain ; according to Metaphrastes, first to Carthage, where he placed Crescent as bishop of the Christians who were in that city, then to Alexandria, where he raised that see to a patriarchate, and placed in it St. Mark, with jurisdiction over all the surrounding regions.* He also made Rufus bishop of Thebes, after which he continued his journey to Jerusalem.

About that time there arose a great dispute at Antioch, some holding that the Christians were bound to observe circumcision and other legalities of the law of Moses, others maintaining the contrary ; and as they could not come to any conclusion, hearing that St. Peter had returned to Jerusalem, they sent there St. Paul and St. Barnabas to consult him and the other Apostles and priests who were there on the matter. A council was held, and after sufficient time had been given to debate, St. Peter, who was then Bishop of Rome, stood up, referring to a special revelation made to him by God, declared that certain Jewish legalities were not binding on Christians ; which decision was immediately confirmed by St. James, bishop of Jerusalem, and by all the rest. (Acts xv. 8.)

That that council took place in the tenth year of Claudius, St. Jerome gathers from the Epistle to the Galatians ; for St. Paul, who was converted the year next after our Lord's ascension, went to Jerusalem to visit St. Peter the third year of his conversion (Gal. i. 18), and fourteen years after that visit he went again to Jerusalem (Gal. ii. 1) and attended the council. (Acts xv.) So that altogether there elapsed eighteen years between our Lord's crucifixion and the Council of Jerusalem ; and the eighteenth year from the death of Christ was the tenth of the reign of the Emperor Claudius.

Claudius died after a reign of thirteen years, and his edict of banishment against the Jews, which he enacted four years before, ended with his life.

To Claudius succeeded Nero (at the age of eighteen), who, in the beginning of his reign, was of a peaceable disposition. This encouraged

* St. Mark died a martyr in Alexandria (Egypt) in the eighth year of Nero.

many of the Jews and Christians to return to Rome, as Aquila and Priscilla did. St. Peter hastened also to Rome in the very first year of Nero. Two years after this (second of Nero), St. Peter was joined in Rome by St. Paul, who, some years before, when Peter was absent, had written his Epistle to the Romans, and now came there a prisoner. A difficulty is advanced here from the Acts of the Apostles that St. Paul found in Rome that the Jews knew of the Christian religion only by report, which could not be if St. Peter had preached to them. We must bear in mind that St. Peter's first coming to Rome was before the expulsion of the Jews by Claudius. St. Paul was conducted to Rome in the reign of Nero, after the Jews had been permitted again to reside in the city. Those who had heard St. Peter had been banished, and probably had not returned. Two years later (fourth of Nero), being set free, St. Paul passed some time in that capital, and then left for Spain and other parts.

In the tenth year of the reign of Nero (the twenty-second of St. Peter's Roman pontificate), Rome was set on fire. Nero, to free himself from the charge of being the author of that conflagration, and turn elsewhere the menacing rage of the people, threw the blame on the Christians, and under that pretext many of them were made to suffer imprisonment and death.

The following year Nero enacted the first sanguinary persecution against the Christians, which was kept in full vigor for the remainder of his life.

In the twelfth of Nero (the twenty-fourth of St. Peter's Roman pontificate), St. Peter, who had absented himself for a time, came back to Rome, and St. Paul also, to revive the Church, which through Nero's persecution was being cruelly wasted. During this year it was that St. Peter wrote his second epistle, in which he foretells his approaching death: "Being assured that the laying away of this my tabernacle is at hand." (Chapter i. 14.)

At that time Simon Magus so captivated the Romans, and Nero especially, by his magical arts, that they decreed to him divine honors.

On the day that Simon Magus was to delight the Romans by an ascent in the air, and they were in most anxious expectation to see such a prodigy, St. Peter and St. Paul went to the spot where this was to take place, full of confidence in God that he would confound that impostor and undeceive the poor deluded people. And so it was: as Simon Magus, before an immense crowd of people, was already carried by the wicked spirits on high in what appeared to be a carriage drawn by fiery horses, St. Peter made a fervent prayer to God that He would abase that man, and, behold, in an instant, the fiery horses and chariot vanished away, and Simon Magus fell headlong to the ground and died.

This defeat of Simon Magus, wrought by St. Peter, enlivened the spirits of the Christians, and was the cause of a great many conversions. But Nero, exasperated at seeing himself and the Romans thus deprived of the magical amusements of Simon Magus, ordered St. Peter and St. Paul to be cast into the Mamertine prison, on the Capitol, and there they were kept in strict confinement for nine months. From that prison St. Paul wrote his second letter to St. Timothy, requesting him to come to Rome to be witness of his martyrdom, which then was near.

While prisoners they converted to the faith Process and Martinian, the keepers of the prison, and forty-seven other prisoners, who were baptized with the water which, for this purpose, St. Peter miraculously caused to spring forth in the rock floor of the prison itself ; which prison and fountain of pure water still exist in wonderful preservation under the Church of St. Joseph at the foot of the Capitol.

In the year 74 of the common era, that is, in the year 80 since the birth of Christ, in the year 35 after the ascension of our Lord, in the thirty-fourth year of St. Paul's conversion, in the twenty-fifth year since St. Peter took possession of the see of Rome, in the thirteenth year of Nero, July 29th, St. Peter and St. Paul were sentenced, St. Peter to be crucified, St. Paul to be beheaded, on account of their being disciples of Jesus Christ. They were in consequence taken out of prison, and St. Peter was crucified on Mount Janiculum, not far from the Vatican Hill, * with his head toward the earth, at his special entreaty, because, in his humility, he thought himself unworthy to die in the same manner as his Lord and Saviour did ; and St. Paul was taken to the Salvia Waters, about four miles southward from Rome, on the left of the road to Ostia, and there beheaded. When his head fell under the sword, it made three bounds, and a fountain sprung forth at each place where the head touched the ground. The three fountains—known as *Le Tre Fontane*—are still to be seen on that spot, about two miles beyond the noble basilica of St. Paul, which stands outside the walls (*fuori le mura*) of Rome, by the left bank of the Tiber on the Ostian Way.

This simple sketch of St. Peter's life from the Day of Pentecost to his death will enable any one to explain several of the difficulties which have been raised through not knowing how to reconcile certain facts with others ; how, for example, St. Peter could have been seven years at Antioch and twenty-five years Bishop of Rome, and yet be in Jerusalem in the fourth, eleventh, and eighteenth years after our Lord's ascension, as inferred from the Epistle to the Galatians, and from the Acts of the holy Apostles.

St. Peter having fixed his see in Rome to the end of his life, and having died there a martyr, it follows, as a matter of course, that his heirs and

* The very spot is venerated at *St. Pietro in Montorio*, Rome.

successors in that see should enjoy the prerogatives of that episcopate—that is, the supremacy which St. Peter received—not for his own private advantage, but for the good of the Church; for if any bishop can say with St. Augustine “that we are Christians is for our own sake, that we are bishops is for your sake” (“*Quod christiani sumus propter nos est, quod præpositi sumus propter vos est*”) (*Libro de Pastoribus*, c. i.), how much more pointedly St. Peter and his successors can say: “That we are pontiffs is not for our sake but for the good of the Church, which at all times needs a supremacy to set in order many things which would otherwise remain unsettled, and keep all the flock of Christ together.” And as the need ever is greater as the flock of Christ increases, so the supremacy is to be enjoyed in perpetuity by all the successors of St. Peter. *

To give more satisfaction to those who may have been prejudiced in this matter, or who wish to enter more fully into this subject, I will here subjoin some other proofs to confirm this fact.

I must premise that amongst the first Christians pagan Rome was often designated under the name of Babylon, and naturally so, especially among the converted Jews, who saw the great similarity between the two capitals on account of their vastness, pagan immorality, superstition, and common antagonism to the people of God.

For this reason no one mistook what St. John in the Apocalypse designated under the figure of Babylon.

In the end of the first general Epistle of St. Peter we have these words: “The Church that is in Babylon, elected together with you; saluteth you; and so doth my son Mark;” in which passage the word “Babylon” must be taken to mean Rome; in fact, it is not recorded either in Holy Scripture or elsewhere that St. Peter or St. Mark had ever been to ancient Babylon in Asia †; and no ancient writer has ever said that this letter was dated really from ancient Babylon, or that it was so understood by any one; on the contrary, it is recorded positively in the history of Eusebius (Book ii., chap. 15) as having been stated by Papias, the disciple of St. John the Evangelist and friend of St. Polycarp, that St. Peter, in his first epistle, which he wrote from Rome, called Rome figuratively Babylon. The same thing is asserted by St. Jerome in his book of *Illustrious Men* when he speaks of St. Mark.

That St. Peter was in Rome is also proved from those ancient writers who relate as a notorious fact that St. Mark wrote his gospel in Rome as he heard it there preached by St. Peter. This is stated by Eusebius (History, Book ii., chap. 15); by Irenæus (Book ii., chap. 1); by St. Jerome

* See Supremacy of the Bishop of Rome, Chap. XXI.

† Josephus (Book xviii. *Antig.* Ch. 12) records that in the time of Caius the Jews in Babylon of Assyria were killed or banished. The Babylon in Egypt was, according to Strabo (Book xvi.) only a castle and an obscure place.

in his book of *Illustrious Men* just quoted, when speaking of St. Mark ; by St. Damasus in his *Pontificate* in the Life of St. Peter ; by Isidorus in the Life of St. Mark ; by Ado of Vienne, in France, in his *Chronicon*, year 45 ; by Tertullian (Book iv. against Marcion), who also adds that the Gospel of St. Mark is attributed to St. Peter, because St. Mark was the interpreter and disciple of St. Peter.

I might dispense with quoting testimonies of ancient writers to the fact that St. Peter was the first Bishop of Rome, as it is a thing acknowledged by a good number of Protestant writers, as, for instance, by Cave, who in his *Literary History of Ecclesiastical Writers* writes thus : "That St. Peter was the first Bishop of Rome we affirm boldly with the whole multitude of the ancients. We give testimonies above all exception, taken from the remotest antiquity : Ignatius, bishop of Antioch, disciple of St. Peter, and certainly his successor in the see of Antioch (Epistle to the Romans) ; Papias of Hierapolis, hearer of St. John the Evangelist, at least in his old age (see Eusebius, ii. 15) ; Irenæus of Lyons, a bishop belonging to the apostolic times, disciple of St. Polycarp (Against Heresies, iii. 1) ; Dionysius of Corinth (see Eusebius, ii. 25) ; Tertullian (in the Book of Prescriptions, xxxvi. ; of Baptism, iv. : Scorpiate, last chapter), the Roman priest Cajus, an ecclesiastic of great repute (see Eusebius, ii. 25) ; Origenes (see Eusebius, iii. 1—vi. 14). After names so venerable, and after monuments of antiquity so illustrious, who will call in doubt a thing so clearly and constantly attested ?"

To Cave I might add the learned Ernestus Bunsen, who in a letter to the *Times*, June 5, 1871, admits the coming of St. Peter to Rome in the year 42. He grounds his belief especially on a passage of the History of Eusebius (Armenian version), in which Eusebius says that in the second year of the reign of Claudius, that is, in the year 42 of the Christian era, Philo had familiar intercourse with St. Peter whilst in Rome preaching the gospel.

Also Dr. Von Döllinger wrote thus : "All the fathers understood the word 'Babylon,' used in St. Peter's Epistle, to signify Rome. It has been asserted, especially by those who maintain the monstrous opinion that St. Peter never was at Rome, that we must take the word literally for Babylon on the Euphrates. These authors do not remember that the Jews had been driven from Babylon and Seleucia a short time previous to the writing of this epistle, and we cannot suppose that St. Peter, the Apostle of the circumcision, would travel to so distant a city in which he could find none of his nation. In the epistle St. Peter says that St. Mark was with him ; we know from the writings of St. Paul that St. Mark was at Rome about this time. It has been said that in an epistle in which there exists no allegory, nor allegorical form of speech, St. Peter could not,

without some qualification, call Rome by the name of Babylon. Now be it observed that St. Peter wrote to those Jewish converts who were familiar with the writings of the prophets, by whom Rome, the centre of paganism, is frequently designated by that appellation. I might cite the example of 'Luther, who, without previous allusion to the Apocalypse, dates his letter, written at Wartburg, from the Island of Patmos.' (*History of the Church.*)

Calvin himself wrote: "I cannot withstand the consent of those writers who prove that Peter died at Rome." (*Institutions*, Book iv.)

Wishing, however, to give satisfaction to my readers on this important point, I will here name some illustrious ancient authors, who plainly assert that St. Peter went to Rome; others, that he was the first to teach there; others, that he there held the pontifical Roman see for twenty-five years; others, that he died there a martyr, being suspended on the cross, and that his successors, the Bishops of Rome, were sitting on the chair of Peter.

St. Peter went to Rome and first taught Christianity there.

Thus St. Leo says: "The most blessed Peter, the Prince of the Apostolic Order, is destined to be the bulwark of the Roman Empire." (First sermon on the Birthday of the Apostles.)

Theodorétus says plainly that St. Peter was the first to dispense evangelical doctrine to the Romans. (Chap. i. in his comments on St. Paul's Epistle to the Romans.) The same thing is said by Eusebius. (*History*, Book ii., chap. 14.)

Paul Orosius in the seventh book of his *History* (chap. vi.) confirms the same thing in these words: "In the beginning of the reign of Claudius, Peter, the Apostle of our Lord Jesus Christ, came to Rome, taught with faithful word the saving faith, and confirmed it with very powerful signs; from thence Christians began to be there."

St. Peter was Bishop of Rome 25 years.

Eusebius says that St. Peter, having preached the gospel in Rome, persevered twenty-five years Bishop of Rome. (*Chronicon*, 74.)

The same thing is asserted by Isidorus in the Life of St. Peter, and by Sulpicius. (*History*, Book ii.)

The same is implied by those fathers or ancient writers who call the Roman see "the chair of Peter;" as,

St. Jerome calls St. Damasus the "Successor of the Fisherman," and his chair the chair of Peter. (*Epist.* 15 *ad Damasum*.) (See also First Letter to Pope Damasus.)

Sozomenus. (Book iv., chap. 14.)

St. Augustine. (Book ii., chap. 51, against the Letters of Petilian.)

Prudentius. (Hymn of St. Laurence.)

St. Cyprian, very frequently in his works. (See an instance in Book i., Letter 3, to Cornelius.)

St. Prosper, with his noted expression, "Rome, the see of Peter, which on account of that pastoral honor is made the head of the world."

"Sedes Roma Petri

Quæ pastoralis honoris

Facta caput mundo."—(Book *De Ingratis*.)

To these should be added those fathers who, in their list of the Roman pontiffs, place St. Peter at the head of it, as,

St. Irenæus. (Book iii., chap. 3.)

Dorotheus. (*In Synopsi*.)

St. Augustine. (*Epistola* 53 *ad Generosum*, tit. 2, and *contra Epistolam Fundamenti*, chap. iv., tit. 8.)

St. Peter died in Rome.

That St. Peter ended his life in Rome is stated by—

St. Augustine. (Book i., *De Consensu Evangelistarum*.)

Eusebius. (*Chronicon*, 71, *A Christo nato*.)

Paul Orosius. (*History*, Book viii.)

St. Maximus. (Sermon v. on the Birthday of the Apostles.)

Origen. (Book iii. on Genesis, as stated by Eusebius, *History*, Book iii., chap. 2.)

St. Jerome, who writes thus: "Simon Peter goes to Rome to combat Simon Magus; he retains there the sacerdotal chair twenty-five years, up to the last; that is, up to the year 13 of Nero, by whom, being nailed to a cross, he died a martyr with his head downward." (Book of *Illustrious Men*.)

Tertullian adds that St. Peter was crucified in Rome, after having ordained St. Clement for his successor. (Book of Prescriptions, chap. 32.) St. Clement, in fact, succeeded St. Peter, though after Linus and Anacletus, who were previously the bishop-coadjutors of St. Peter, and therefore St. Clement, in his humility and discretion, wished they should succeed before himself. The same Tertullian, alluding to the death of St. Peter and St. Paul in Rome, addresses that city thus: "Happy Church, over which the Apostles have poured forth the whole of their doctrine together with their blood." (Book of Prescriptions, chap. 36.)

I abstain from giving the quotations of Pope St. Clement I., St. Anacletus, St. Marcellus I., St. Damasus I., St. Innocent I., St. Leo I., St. Gelasius I., John III., St. Gregory I., St. Agatho, Adrianus, St. Nicholas I., who all have asserted that they were succeeding to Peter, and sitting in the chair of Peter.

Some might take the exception that they were speaking in their own cause. Yet their testimony is of great weight if we consider that they were all holy men, who would not claim as a right that which they were not lawfully entitled to, and that they did, however, claim to be the direct successors of St. Peter, and this without any one protesting or doubting, or showing surprise, or finding fault with what they asserted.

I close this short essay by quoting two general councils in support of this assertion—that of Ephesus in the year 431, and that of Chalcedon in 451.

In the Council of Ephesus the Roman pontiff, Celestinus I., is called "The ordinary successor and Vicar of Blessed Peter, the Prince of the Apostles" ("Ordinarius successor et Vicarius Beati Petri Apostolorum Principis.") (Chap. 16.)

In the Council of Chalcedon, as the letter of Pope St. Leo the Great, the Roman pontiff at that time, was read, all the 630 fathers who were sitting in that council exclaimed, "Peter has spoken through Leo" ("*Petrus per Leonem locutus est.*")

In the quoted expressions used by these two general councils, their belief that St. Peter was the first Bishop of Rome is evidently implied.

No. 2.—The Truth about Cusa, Copernicus, Galileo, and Kepler.

The astronomical system which had prevailed in the world down to the seventeenth century is what is called the *geocentric* or Ptolemaic system, by which it was supposed that the earth was motionless, and that the sun went daily round it, causing the days and the nights; and that the sun in the course of twelve months moved gradually forward and backward inside the equatorial zone in such a way as to cause the different seasons.

This was the system received by the Arabians, the Chinese, the Persians, and the Europeans. "For," says an eminent French philosopher, "all the researches which have been prosecuted with the most scrupulous exactness have failed to bring to light any other astronomy than that of Ptolemy." In accordance with this theory, which is so strongly and constantly suggested by our senses, is of course the language of revelation addressed to man.

Such being the state of astronomy from the remotest antiquity, to have departed from a system rendered so venerable by age required an intellect of the boldest originality. With such an intellect was gifted a priest of humble origin, Nicholas Cusa, a son of a fisherman.

This celebrated man was born in a small hamlet called Cusa on the banks of the Moselle. Having studied in the most famous universities

of Germany and Italy, he became archdeacon of Liège, and in that capacity he assisted at the Council of Basil in 1431. He had previously written several works, and among them was a treatise on astronomy, in which, well-nigh two centuries before Galileo, he boldly laid it down as his conviction that the earth and not the sun is in motion, and that the true system of astronomy should be called, not *geocentric* (earth-central) but *heliocentric* (sun-central). This opinion he maintained side by side with his friend, Cardinal Cesarini, before the assembled fathers of the council. What was the consequence? Was he summoned to Rome to answer for his bold speculations? Yes, he was summoned before the reigning pontiff, Nicholas V., but it was to receive the highest dignity the Pope could confer on him: to receive the cardinal's hat, and with it the bishopric of Brixen in the Tyrol.

But the glory of Cusa is cast into the shade by the transcendent lustre of the immortal Copernicus. This great man left early his native town of Thorn, on the banks of the Vistula, and journeyed to Rome under the conviction that in no other place on earth could he display his talents more advantageously. Nor did he err. Already, in the year 1500, he was professor in the Pope's university, and was engaged in giving lectures on his new astronomical theory to more than two thousand pupils.

During his long sojourn in Rome, Copernicus enjoyed the friendship and confidence of the highest dignitaries of the Church, and when he was about to return to Germany, a pension for life was given him. Nor did the liberality of his ecclesiastical friends stop here. When afterward he was unable, out of his slender income as canon of Frouenburg, to give to the world the great work to which he had devoted the labor of his life, Cardinal Schomberg, with princely munificence, came forward and undertook the entire expense of the publication. No wonder, then, when the great work appeared, it should have on its title-page a tender and grateful dedication to the reigning pontiff, Paul III.

If the Roman authorities have shown themselves so favorable to the cultivation of science in the instances of Cusa and Copernicus, how is it that the fate of Galileo was so different?

It may be said, that all the troubles which befell Galileo arose from his wilful and obstinate departure from the prudent course which had been pursued both by Cusa and Copernicus.

Neither of these philosophers had ever claimed for his scientific opinion more than the arguments advanced to support it warranted him to claim—that is to say, a strong and very strong *probability* in its favor.

Again, Cusa and Copernicus had kept the question of religion altogether aloof from their philosophical speculations. Now, these are precisely the two points on which Galileo committed his capital errors.

The discoveries which Galileo had made by the use of the telescope, especially the discovery that the planet Venus has changing phases, so convinced him of the truth of the Copernican system that he not only asserted it as a demonstrated fact, but treated with scornful disdain all who called it into question.

Now, was Galileo justified in doing so? Had he really proved the truth of his scientific views? All modern philosophers affirm that he had done no such thing. The celebrated Delambre, who, under the direction of the French Constituent Assembly, measured the arc of the meridian between Dunkerque and Barcelona, says that till the velocity of light was ascertained by Reaumur, and the aberration of light was calculated by Bradley, and till the laws of gravitation were established by Newton, all the Copernicans were reduced to mere probabilities. Hence, we are told by Lord Macaulay, that the founder in England of the inductive school of philosophy, Lord Bacon, rejected the theory of Galileo with scorn; and so did Descartes. No wonder, then, that when he went to Rome for the first time to defend himself from his assailants, though gardens and palaces were thrown open to him, and the highest dignitaries lavished on him every mark of respect; though a commission of the ablest astronomers in Rome, appointed by Cardinal Bellarmine, declared that the discoveries made by Galileo were undeniable, yet did not regard his proofs as demonstrative of the truth of the Copernican system. Thus, after obtaining the blessing of Paul V. and bidding farewell to troops of friends, the philosopher returned to Florence.

The second capital error committed by Galileo was to pretend to prove his theory from Holy Scripture, asserting that portions of the Scripture could not be satisfactorily explained unless his theory was admitted. A denunciation was drawn up against him; he was formally accused of interpreting the Scriptures in a sense at variance with the teaching of the fathers. This denunciation was quashed in the very first stage of the proceedings in hopes that Galileo would desist from his imprudent attempts. But, on the contrary, he became more and more persisting. Letter after letter came to him from his numerous friends in Rome, entreating him not to interfere with the Scriptures, and to confine himself to scientific argumentation. Monsignor Ciampoli wrote, "I have been emphatically assured by Cardinal Barberini (afterward Pope Urban VIII.) that you will be put to no trouble, provided you do not travel out of the limits of physics and mathematics."

But Galileo would not be content either to hold his opinion as a philosophical probability, or to uphold it on merely scientific grounds. He would have it acknowledged as an unquestionable truth, and would have it declared by the Inquisition as conformable to Scripture. For this pur-

pose he set out for Rome a second time, and was again well and warmly received. With great ability and vehemence he defended on every occasion the Copernican system; but his keen satire and sarcasm excited and inflamed many opponents. The Tuscan ambassador, writing to his court, says of him, "He is so heated that he seems not to know how to govern himself." At a most inopportune moment, Galileo forced the Pope to send his affair before the Inquisition. In a few days a papal decree, founded on a decision of the Inquisition, was issued obliging him to promise that he would no longer teach, as a demonstrated fact, that the earth moved round the sun, as such opinion appeared contrary to Scripture. To this decree he humbly submitted, returned to the fair city on the banks of the Arno, in his pleasing villa called Segni, situated in the lovely suburbs of Bellosguardo.

Seven years after, that is, in 1632, Galileo was cited before the Inquisition for having broken his promise and taught his system in a printed sarcastic dialogue. After a trial of ten months, Galileo was condemned in June, 1633. During these ten months, with the exception, perhaps, of three days (others say one night, when for his own convenience he slept near the court), he resided in the palace of the Tuscan ambassador. He was ordered to abstain from teaching, as a demonstrated fact, that the earth was in motion, as it appeared to be against the express words of Scripture.* He was, moreover, sentenced to remain a prisoner at the good will of the court, and to recite the seven Penitential Psalms once a week for three years. To this sentence Galileo submissively bowed, and without ever uttering "*Eppur si muove*" (It moves, however), words constantly attributed to him, he left the presence of his judges.

It was at the pleasing villa of Ascetri, about a mile from Florence, that Galileo was located, at a short distance from the Church of St. Matthew, where his two daughters were cloistered nuns. To this convent the father used often to go in order to enjoy the sweet conversation of his daughters, and to be comforted by the many proofs of tender affection his children gave him. Thus the theory of the rotation of the earth, which Cusa and Copernicus had been by Catholic dignitaries allowed and encouraged to teach, and even rewarded for teaching, Galileo was forbidden to teach on account of his pretension of teaching it, not as a mere theory, but as a demonstrated truth, and, moreover, as a truth proved from Scripture.

To us who live in times when the system of Copernicus is no more regarded as a theory but as a demonstrated truth, it seems very easy to reconcile it with Holy Scripture by saying that Scripture never intended to teach any astronomical system, but that it spoke of the earth, sun,

* The decree of the Inquisition against Galileo is not formally a papal document.

moon and stars as they appear to the human eye (as all men, including astronomers, still commonly speak of sunrise and sunset), accommodating itself to the popular way of speaking; but it was not an easy thing when the Copernican system was only a theory supported by mere probabilities.

No wonder, then, that Protestants of that age fell into the same mistake of denouncing as warmly as Catholics the rotary system of the earth as clashing with Holy Scripture.

As a proof of this I here subjoin part of a correspondence written in the year 1853, about Kepler, to the editor of the London *Catholic Standard*.

DEAR SIR: On perusing in a German newspaper a few days ago, a very full report of an eloquent discourse delivered at Leeds by the Cardinal Archbishop of Westminster (Wiseman) on the encouragement given to science by the Catholic Church, it occurred to me, *apropos* of Galileo and the Roman Inquisition, that we Catholics would do well to bring more prominently forward than we are accustomed to do, another contemporaneous event of a similar kind—one which entitles us to reply to every taunt cast at us on account of Galileo, that, even granting his ecclesiastical judges condemned him in the manner popularly supposed, they at least did not do so without first having the example set them by a Protestant tribunal not unlike their own, and under circumstances just the same.

I allude here to the condemnation of the celebrated astronomer Kepler by the theological faculty of Tübingen, in 1596, for affirming the identical scientific truth, which thirty-seven years later got Galileo into trouble. The great majority of English Protestants are, without doubt, ignorant of this interesting case, which I venture to think a very fair set-off to their favorite story about Galileo. It may very likely have escaped the attention of many Catholics also; and, therefore, with your permission, Mr. Editor, I will just give the heads of it as briefly as possible.

John Kepler, born near Stuttgart, in Würtemberg, in 1571, I need scarcely remark, reflected no less lustre on Protestant Germany in the seventeenth century than Galileo on Catholic Italy. Kepler it was who, by his great discovery of the elliptical form of the planetary orbits, was led to establish those laws in the astronomy known by his name, which first settled the truth of the Copernican system on an immovable basis, purifying it as he did from the erroneous hypothesis of the circular orbits, which its great author had still left adhering to it. For doing this, Bailli, in his *Histoire de l'Astronomie Moderne*, calls Kepler "one of the greatest men that ever appeared on the earth," and "the true founder of modern astronomy."

When he wrote his celebrated work, whose lengthy title begins with the words, "*Prodromus Dissertationum Cosmographicarum*," etc., in which he undertook by argument to demonstrate the truth of the Copernican system, not less reprobated at that time by the Protestants of Germany and England than by the Catholics of Italy, he had to lay it before the Academical Senate of Tübingen for their approbation, without which, in the regular course of things, it could not be printed. The unanimous decision of the divines comprising this senate was that Kepler's book contained a deadly heresy, because it contradicted the teaching of the Bible in that passage where Joshua commands the sun to stand still. To this Kepler replied, "that as the Bible addressed itself to mankind, in general, it spoke of things in the life of men as men in general are accustomed to speak of them; that the Bible was in no respect a Manual of Optics or Astronomy, but had much higher objects in view; that it was a blamable abuse to seek in it for answers to worldly things; that Joshua had wished to have the day prolonged, and God had responded to his wish; how this had happened was not a subject for inquiry." Such an answer as this might at least have been expected to make an impression on a body of theologians, the

very pillar and foundation of whose religious creed was the right of every man to explain the Bible for himself. So far from this, they repeated their condemnation with more acerbity than before, and had not the Duke of Würtemberg, who was personally attached to Kepler, interposed in his behalf, he would inevitably have been subjected to a persecution far more rigorous than anything Galileo had to undergo. As it was, the vexations with which his clerical opponents contrived to embitter his existence on account of his opinions, in spite of the duke's protection, were such as occasioned him to write in despair to his friend Mastlin, "that he held it for the best to imitate the disciples of Pythagoras, and keep silence on the discoveries he had made, lest, like Apian, he should lose his situation, and be doomed to die of hunger." The upshot was, that he quitted Würtemberg, and fled for refuge—whither?—to the Jesuits of Gratz and Ingoldstadt ! who, staunch Protestant as he was to the last, honored his great talents, and received him with open arms because of the services he had rendered to science. Eventually, on the death of Tycho Brahe, he received the appointment of court astronomer to the Emperor Rudolph II., at Prague. . . .

I am, very truly yours,

R. RABY.

MUNICH, *Saturday in Holy Week*, 1853.

No. 3.—The Transmission of the Sin of Adam to his Children Considered.

The transmission of original sin is a mystery which Catholics believe on the authority of God who reveals it. It is not out of harmony with reason, and to some extent admits of explanation.

God decreed to raise human nature to a supernatural order of love and friendship with Himself, with a right and duty of aspiring to Him as our supernatural end, and being preserved from death, of finally possessing Him in the "beatific vision" of Him in heaven.

No sooner did God create Adam than He bestowed upon him, as head of the whole human family, all the supernatural gifts called holiness and original justice, to be transmitted, together with human nature itself, to all his children.

Unhappily, Adam by his sin of disobedience, which was also a sin of pride, disbelief and ambition, forfeited, or, more properly speaking, rejected that original justice ; and we, as members of the human family, of which he was the head, are also implicated in that guilt of self-spoliation, or rejection and deprivation of those supernatural gifts ; not indeed on account of our having willed it with our personal will, but by having willed it with all the will of our first parent, to whom we are linked by nature as members to their head.

Hence, it appears that not the whole sin of Adam is imputed to us, not his ambition, his pride, his disbelief, not even his disobedience, regarded only as such ; in short, not his sin, so far as it was only personal to Adam ; but we are implicated in that special guilt of his sin in which he could and did act as the head of the human family ; for only in that

capacity could the guilt of his act be attributed to his posterity, and he transmitted with nature itself to every human being descended from him.

Now, what was this special and transmissible guilt of the sin of Adam?

Inasmuch as Adam received certain supernatural gifts, to be transmitted by him to his descendants, the special guilt of the sin of Adam consists in this: that he sinfully rejected those gratuitous supernatural gifts; and, on account of our union with him as his offspring and members of the human family, of which he is the head, we also have shared with Adam in his self-spoliation and voluntary deprivation of original grace.

Therefore, original sin does not consist in the privation of original justice considered as a mere privation, as a mere misfortune, or even as a punishment, because mere privation, mere misfortune and mere punishment are not sin. But when we speak of original sin, we speak of sin properly so called in the range of morality; and, therefore, although the essence of original sin consists in the privation of original justice, yet it consists in this privation, or, more properly, deprivation or self-spoliation, inasmuch as the deprivation is offensive to God and ruinous to us, having been (and being) willed by our human nature in Adam, with the will of Adam.

Hence original sin is also called sin of nature; sin in which our personal will has no part, but with which only our nature has to do, as being one with that of Adam.

According to this explanation, there is no need to suppose that our will was included in the will of Adam like as in law the will of the infant is said to be included in that of a guardian.

Nor is there any need to suppose an express or an implied bond between God and Adam, to the effect that, if Adam had remained faithful to God, he and his offspring should enjoy those supernatural gifts, but if not faithful, he should lose them for himself and for his posterity.

Nor can we suitably employ as an illustration the example of a man who, having by his own fault lost his estates, his children are also deprived of them; for with regard to the children this would be a mere misfortune, unaccompanied by any fault in them or stain of sin.

It is not by an arbitrary act on the part of God that we inherit original sin, nor is it on His part an imputing to us a guilt which we really have not. On the contrary, original sin is a necessary consequence of the sinful breaking by Adam of the supernatural order established by God; in which sin we share, inasmuch as we form one moral body, that is, one family, with him.

In this mystery of original sin we have great reason to humble ourselves, and to adore God's judgments; but we have no ground to complain, as if our contracting the guilt of original sin were unjust.

It was a great favor that the supernatural gifts of sanctity and original justice should have been gratuitously conferred upon Adam. It was also a great favor that such gifts should have been intended not only for Adam but for the whole human race, so that each of the children of Adam should receive it on receiving human nature, and that they should receive it without any merit, or even without any predisposition on their part.

But from this order of things it followed, that if the first man should sin, human nature, which was all included in him, would lose those gifts.

Therefore, on account of the sin of the first man, all his children are indeed born deprived of certain gifts, but gratuitous gifts. They are born averse to God, but averse to God as a supernatural end which is not demanded by nature. If God is said not to love them, the meaning of this is only that God, who loves them as His intelligent creatures, does not love them with a love of gratuitous friendship, with a love ready to confer on them a supernatural blessedness. They are truly sons of wrath, but only inasmuch as the supernatural beatitude is denied to them, and in which privation their condemnation consists. They are called sinners, but not because any actual personal guilt of Adam is imputed to them, but inasmuch as the deprivation of grace brought upon himself by Adam as a necessary consequence of his sin is justly considered voluntary in them by the will of the head of the human race. Therefore they are sinners, not by any personal sin of their own, but by a sin, so to speak, of nature, because brought upon nature by the actual refusal of those gifts by Adam in the name of the whole human nature, and as head of the whole human family.

Nor can it be said that God does thereby impute to us the personal sin of another. He imputes a sin which is ours, though, at the same time, also of another; because it is not the sin of Adam, inasmuch as that was personal which God imputes, but the necessary effect of his sin, that is, the deprivation, the rejection, as it were, of original justice, which Adam wilfully incurred as head of the whole human race, and which, therefore, we also, as united to Adam, have incurred.

In this no vestige of injustice appears. Men do not thereby lose anything which their nature requires. God cannot be charged with being the cause of the sin of nature; but the cause of it is the free will of Adam, the head parent of all men. This sin, therefore, is justly attributed to all his descendants.

All complaint that could possibly be raised might be reduced to the following: "Why did God give these supernatural gifts to human nature to be passed on to all men through Adam only, and not give them successively to each individual?" But such a complaint comes to this:

“Why did not God create another order of Providence rather than this, in which as many as derive their nature from the first parent, if this nature should happen to become sinful, would have to be born in sin?”

It is evident that there is no just ground for this complaint ; for God, being Master of His gifts and of His creatures, has a right to choose the mode whereby to communicate those gifts to them.

Were we to grant, for argument's sake, that the other mode would have been in some respects better, yet as God is not bound to do what is in itself absolutely best, but only what is good or relatively best, it follows that neither God's justice nor even His goodness can be justly found fault with for having acted thus.

The supernatural gifts destined by God for all human nature could not be lost by human nature through the sin of any one but that of Adam. For only the will of the head of the human family could be considered in this point the will of the whole human family. As those gifts were given to human nature, they could only be lost by the will of one whose will, in respect to those gifts, was the will of the whole human nature ; and such the will of Adam was.

If Eve alone had sinned, we should not have incurred original sin, because Adam alone, and not Eve, was the head of the human race. Hence both Tradition and Scripture attribute the fallen state to one alone, namely, Adam ; and to this one they contrast the only second Adam, our Lord Jesus Christ. Eve, therefore, was the first to give occasion to our ruin, but not to effect it.

From this teaching it is easy to understand that only the first sin of Adam could transmit its guilt to posterity, because only at the committing of the first sin of our first parent was there annexed the implied rejection of original justice granted to nature, and should a second or a third sin have been committed by Adam, there was no more original grace to reject, and therefore nature could no more be affected thereby.

The grace also which Adam could recover, through the merits of Jesus Christ being applied to him, was not transmissible, because received for himself alone as an individual through faith and other personal dispositions, and not for human nature.

So, also, the justice and sanctity which any parent besides Adam might have obtained through being regenerated in Christ does not pass to his children. The reason is this : because that recovery of grace is granted by God to the individual, and not simply to nature, and could not, therefore, pass to another by generation ; for generation, which is an act not of the superior, but of the inferior part of man, is only capable of transmitting nature, and the gifts, if any, attached to nature and not the gifts granted and attached to an individual person.

The generation by which human nature and original sin are transmitted to us is done in virtue of the first Adam, and not in virtue of the second Adam, our Lord Jesus Christ, or in virtue of the newness of life in Christ. They who generate do not generate as being children of Christ, but inasmuch as they are children of Adam.

No. 4.—Communion in One Kind.

The Church has always believed that there is no command from our Lord Jesus Christ for the laity to receive the holy Communion under two kinds, that is, under the species of bread and of wine. She holds that this twofold reception was not demanded by the nature or by the institution of this holy sacrament.

The Church therefore either left the faithful free to receive under both kinds or under one kind, or she regulated this point of discipline as she thought proper under existing circumstances.

When the Church left the lay people free to receive either under one or under both kinds, the custom sometimes inclined more to one side, sometimes more to the other.

If at any time it became an obligation for the laity to receive under both kinds or to receive only under one, it was when the Church, for good reasons, thought proper to issue an express command on the matter, or when some general custom prevailed that had the force of law.

Up to the fifth century the Church left the people free to receive holy Communion either under one or under both kinds.

The Manichean heretics considered wine as evil, and held that Christ had no real blood. Owing to the permission which existed at that time of receiving Communion under one kind alone, these heretics could approach to the altar with Catholics and receive the most holy Eucharist under the form of bread alone, without causing surprise; and by so doing they would not manifest their heretical principles, or be known as members of that heretical sect.

On this account Pope Leo I. in the year 443, and Pope Gelasius in 496, commanded that all should communicate under both species—not for the sake of correcting any abuse that had crept into the Church, but because they considered that such a command would deter these heretics from profaning this holy sacrament, and would serve to detect them and expose their heresy.

When the Manichean heresy died away, the law which was made on their account was relaxed. The faithful were again left free to receive holy Communion either under both kinds or under one, just as they felt piously inclined; and by degrees the custom of taking holy Communion

under the species of bread alone prevailed, especially in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, when it became universal, without any positive law binding to this effect.

It was only in the fifteenth century, when some turbulent men began to accuse the Church of error for permitting holy Communion under one kind, that the Church in the Councils of Constance and of Trent sanctioned with a positive law the then prevailing custom among the laity of taking holy Communion under the species of bread only, lest, by introducing and permitting Communion under both kinds, she might appear to connive at the errors of those innovators, and to admit, contrary to truth, that for fifteen centuries she had not known the nature of this sacrament ; that she had allowed this sacrament to be mutilated and profaned. The necessity of counteracting these errors and their destructive consequences was considered a sufficient reason for enacting a general law that the people of the Latin Rite should receive holy Communion under the species of bread only.

It has always been believed that in those things which are not immediately connected with the essence of a sacrament, the Church has a right to change her discipline and the mode of administering the sacraments according to the needs of time and circumstances. Hence we find various changes introduced in the Roman ritual, as it was considered advisable at different times and places, in reference to things that are not of the essence of the sacraments.

At this very day the Roman Catholic Church sanctions different rites, languages, and ceremonies in the administration of the sacraments and in the celebration of the holy sacrifice of the Mass : namely, the Latin, United Greek, Armenian, Chaldaic, Syro-Chaldaic, Maronite, and Coptic rites, each in their respective language ; all of which, while they agree in points of faith defined by the Church, differ in many usages of less importance. Amongst other things they differ in the manner of administering the holy Communion ; some being permitted to give it under both kinds, some having to administer it under one kind alone.

It might be contended that, even admitting that the administration of this sacrament under the species of wine is non-essential with regard to a Christian who receives under the species of bread, yet it would seem more profitable to receive under both and that therefore it is surprising that a command should have been given enjoining what is less profitable.

To this it may be answered, that the privation of this additional comfort and advantage is abundantly compensated, with regard to the receiver himself in particular, by affording him the opportunity of an act of obedience, and greater facility of approaching the holy table, and with regard to the Church at large, by rendering the administration of the sacrament

more easy and less exposed to irreverence. For if the holy Eucharist had always to be given under both kinds, those unable to bear the taste of wine, the sick, and those who live in remote and almost inaccessible regions, or in very hot or very cold climates, where wine can with very great difficulty be procured or preserved, these people would, in many instances at least, have to be deprived of Communion. The same may be said of those poor localities where they cannot afford to buy wine, especially for a large number of communicants.

Also the administration of the holy Eucharist under the species of bread alone is less subject to irreverence ; for experience has proved that in the administration of the chalice there is danger of spilling the sacred blood, especially when great crowds are approaching Communion, besides other difficulties and irreverences liable to happen.

But there are two other very important reasons which have induced the Church to confirm by a positive law the custom, which had already generally prevailed, of giving Communion under the species of bread only. One was that the Church herself might not seem to countenance the error of those who denied the real presence of the body and blood of Christ under each species ; the other to oppose the error of those who, in the fifteenth century, as we have already remarked, taught that the holy Eucharist is no sacrament unless given under the two species ; which error, if admitted, would have sapped the very foundation of the Church, inasmuch as it would have been equivalent to saying that the Church had been teaching what was false for fifteen centuries.

No one, therefore, should blame the Church for having enacted such a law, based on a constant belief of the Church that Communion under one kind was a complete sacrament of the body and blood of Christ, and resting also on the custom then prevailing, and on the greater facility thus afforded of promoting the well-being of the Church at large.

On the other hand, it is not to be wondered at that people who had already formed a party in opposition to the Catholic Church, who denied Christ's presence under either kind or under both kinds, and regarded the sacraments as mere empty symbols, and who were, moreover, guided by the novel principle of private interpretation, should have also opposed this law of the Church. Alas ! what dogma or law is there that cannot be attacked under the destructive principle of private interpretation ? How easy it is, even with a seemingly good intention, to make Holy Scripture speak according to one's inclination or fancy, when all authority to decide is rejected except one's own !

From the fact that St. Paul frequently mentions Communion in both kinds, some persons conclude that therefore there must have been a divine precept obliging all the faithful to receive under both.

Such a consequence does not follow, as those fervent primitive Christians may gladly have availed themselves of it because in itself a privilege.

That it was not a custom nor a divine precept to receive under both kinds appears from what our Lord Himself did on the day of His resurrection, when He made Himself known to the two disciples at Emmaus, as we read, "in the breaking of bread" (St. Luke xxiv. 30, 31), which passage St. Jerome, St. Augustine, and St. Chrysostom understand as signifying a real Communion; as seems also clear from the context itself, and from the spiritual effect produced by the breaking of the bread; for their eyes were then opened to recognize our blessed Lord.

That the primitive Christians used also to receive Communion under one kind alone may be inferred from the Acts of the Apostles (ii. 42), by which we learn that the first baptized converts of Jerusalem "were persevering in the doctrine of the Apostles and in the communication of the breaking of bread, and in prayers," and also from Acts xx. (verse 7), where the inspired writer says: "And on the first day of the week, when we were assembled to break bread, Paul discoursed with them." In these passages no mention is made of the species of wine.

Besides, we know from genuine historical documents that the early Christians were permitted to carry home the holy sacrament with them under the species of bread only, in order to receive holy Communion privately.

These texts of Holy Scripture and this custom of early Christians prove that the Apostles and their immediate successors gave Communion, at least sometimes, under one kind alone, and that, therefore, the giving Communion under both kinds was not considered to be required either by the nature of the sacrament or by the command of Christ, but that it was left to the judgment of the Church.

Some Protestants refer us to the fifty-fourth verse of the sixth chapter of the Gospel of St. John: "Except you eat the flesh of the Son of man and drink His blood, you shall not have life in you," in order to prove the necessity of receiving Communion under both kinds.

When Catholics quote the latter part of this chapter of St. John in proof of the real presence of Christ in the blessed sacrament, many Protestants take upon themselves to declare that the whole chapter refers only to faith and not to holy Communion.

It is remarkable, therefore, that in order to prove the necessity of receiving Communion under both kinds, Protestants should quote from this sixth chapter of St. John.

It is again somewhat strange that they who hold that in this chapter both the eating and the drinking mean one and the same thing (namely, partaking of Christ's body and blood spiritually, by faith), should oppose

Catholics who hold that to receive our Lord in either kind is partaking in reality both of the body and blood of Christ, and, therefore, keeping Christ's commandment contained in this passage.

Yet as an objection is drawn from this passage, I will not leave it unnoticed.

It appears that the scope of our Lord in this passage of St. John was not to reveal the mode of partaking of His body and blood ; and thus His hearers understood His words. They did not strive about the manner or medium of reception of His body and blood—whether under the species of oil, or of milk, or of wine, or of bread, or of fruit, or other chosen thing. This point our Lord did not touch at all, and therefore His hearers could not have anything to say on the matter, but they strove only about the possibility of His giving His real flesh as food. "How can this man," said they, "give us His flesh to eat?" (verse 53.) Therefore the answer of our Lord should be taken to mean merely a precept to partake of His flesh and blood in reality, and not as referring to the mode of reception of His body and blood under the particular species of bread and wine. The elements of bread and wine are not even once mentioned in the whole chapter.

Some may think that, though wine is not mentioned, natural bread at least is mentioned in the latter part of the chapter, which relates to the holy Eucharist. But on examination it will be found that not once in the whole chapter can the word "bread" be taken in the sense of natural bread.

Every time that the word "bread" occurs there, it is so qualified that it signifies not natural bread, but a peculiar bread, that is, Jesus Christ Himself, and relates to what Christ had said before at verse 51: "I am the living bread." Thus in verses 52 and 59, He says, "This bread;" in verse 52, "The bread that I will give;" in verse 59, "The bread that came down from heaven." Therefore from the above-quoted text (chap. vi. 54) the necessity of receiving Christ's body and blood is indeed clearly made known, but whether His body and His blood is to be received under the species of bread and of wine, or of some other elements, whether under one species alone, or under two different species or more, is not pointed out.

It is necessary here to remark, that according to the Catholic belief, Jesus Christ in the blessed sacrament is not partly contained under one species and partly under another—that is to say, Christ is not with His body deprived of His blood under the species of bread; and with His blood without His body under the species of wine separately: but He is in the blessed sacrament whole and entire, with His divinity, soul, body, and blood, under either of the species; and this is so by the necessity or exigency of the case, that is, by virtue of the existing mutual insepara-

bility called concomitance, which means that the body and blood, human soul, and divine nature of Christ, must always go together. The reason is because not the dead body of Christ is made present by consecration, but His living body with His blood, soul, and divinity, which after His resurrection are never to be separated again from each other. This might be called inseparableness, that is, the impossibility of the body and blood, soul and divinity of Christ ever being separated.

It is part of the doctrine of the incarnation that the inseparability (arising from what is known as "hypostatic union") of the two natures, divine and human, in Christ is such that His divinity can never be separated from His humanity nor from any part of it, even when those parts were separated from each other, as occurred at Christ's death ; and that after Christ's resurrection that inseparability became still more close, not even admitting the possibility of any part of His manhood being ever for an instant separated from each other. St. Paul assures us of it when he says : " Christ, rising again from the dead, dieth no more." (Romans vi. 9.) His soul can no longer be separated from His body or blood, nor His blood from His body, as it was at His death on Calvary. His glorified human nature does not admit of mutilation or separation of its parts, so that the body, and blood, and soul, and divinity of Christ must always remain united.

The words of consecration, therefore, which realize the presence of the body under the species of bread, and of the blood under the species of wine, involve the belief that under either kind Jesus Christ is present in the perfection of His human and divine natures.

Hence, under the species of bread is received not only Christ's body, but also His blood, soul and divinity ; and, under the species of wine, not only Christ's blood, but also His body, soul and divinity.

Therefore the communicant who receives under the species of bread alone, receives the same precious gift, the body and the blood, the divine and the human nature of our Lord, as truly and entirely as the one who receives holy Communion under the species both of bread and of wine.

It might be urged that there must be some reason why our Lord Jesus Christ in this passage (St. John vi. 54) used the figure of eating and drinking.

The reason seems clear. In verse 52 our Lord had promised to give His flesh to be eaten. As some of His hearers disbelieved the possibility of this, our Lord confirmed His teaching, by adding that they had not only to partake of His flesh, but of His blood also. Now, having previously used the word "eat" with regard to His flesh, He could not with propriety of language use the same word, "eat," with regard to His blood, and say, "Unless you eat my flesh and blood," but was compelled to use

the word "drink" respecting the blood, that He might speak with propriety of language. Thus for example, a man after having said, "Eat this orange," and wishing for some reason to advert to its juice, could not with propriety say, "Eat this juice," but he would be obliged to say, "Drink this juice."

Some objector might say that the commemoration of our Lord's passion, which we should make in receiving the holy Eucharist, requires the presence of both species; but no necessity exists, for it is evident that a person can, if he wishes, call to mind Christ's bitter passion when he receives the holy Eucharist under one kind alone as perfectly as the one who receives Communion under the two species.

The commemoration of Christ is commanded (1 Corinth. xi. 24, 25) after each of the species, and by St. Luke (xxii. 19) after the species of bread; therefore the commemoration of Christ and His passion and death can be well made on taking Communion under one kind only. To commemorate depends upon our free will, and we can commemorate or call to mind the death of Christ perfectly on taking Communion under one kind only.

Let us see, now, whether the nature of this sacrament requires both species, as some imagine, or in other words, whether Communion under one kind only is, or is not, a true sacrament, conferring on the receiver the same essential grace as is conferred by this sacrament when given under the two species.

Here should be recalled to mind the Catholic doctrine, just stated, of the real presence of Christ's body, soul and divinity, under each kind in this sacrament, from which doctrine it clearly follows that he who receives Communion under the species of bread only, thereby receives Christ as entirely as the one who receives Him under both kinds.

Is not Communion under one kind an outward sign conferring the inward grace which it signifies, and therefore a true sacrament? In the schismatic Greek Church they give Communion under both kinds by taking with a small spoon out of the chalice a little wine, consecrated, with a few crumbs of consecrated bread moistened in it. Between a member of the Latin Church who receives Communion under the species of unleavened bread, and a member of the Greek Church who receives it under the species of leavened bread moistened in a few drops of consecrated wine, there is no essential difference.

The Greek schismatic Church, moreover, in some instances gives Communion also under one kind only, and never insisted upon this difference as a cause of separation from the Church of Rome.

It is true that receiving Communion under both kinds separately might help the receiver to call to mind more vividly the death of Christ,

but between a remembrance and a more lively remembrance there is no difference in essence but only in degree ; and this seeming disadvantage cannot render the sacrament invalid. Baptism by immersion, or dipping under water, as practised in some parts of Christendom, signifies more vividly the burial and resurrection of Christ, yet baptism by effusion, that is, by pouring water on the head, is equally valid, and is generally used by the Church in the west.

In this way may be fairly answered those accusations so freely made against Catholics of mutilating and profaning this sacrament, of defrauding the laity of their inheritance, or of giving them only, as some strangely maintain, half a sacrament, half the inheritance. All these accusations fall to the ground of themselves, for whether under one kind or under both, the communicant receives the entire sacrament, that is, the body and blood, the soul and divinity, of Jesus Christ.

Catholics might also with justice reply to the accusations of their opponents by saying that Protestants, instead of an inheritance more precious than many jewels, only give to the receiver, so to speak, an empty coffer. Instead of realities, they give natural elements, more empty, poor, and weak than those that were formerly in use under the Old Testament ; instead of a sacrament that signifies what it contains and gives what it signifies, they dispense empty signs, signifying what they do not contain, and not giving what they signify ; instead of a sacrament in which Christ is really present, they give that from which the body and blood of Christ are truly absent ; and are careful at the same time to declare that what they dispense is but bread and wine : that Christ's body is nowhere but in heaven, as far distant from the bread consecrated as heaven is from earth.

It is hardly the part of those who give the cup without the precious blood to accuse Catholics of giving the divine blood without the cup, for we have already remarked that Catholics receiving the body of Christ under one kind necessarily receive His blood also.

But some still accuse us of giving to the laity a mutilated sacrament. To suppose that Communion in one kind is a mutilated sacrament would involve consequences both impious and absurd.

A mutilated sacrament is a sacrilege both in the giver and in the receiver, as it would then be a profanation of a holy thing instituted by Christ. Can we think that the early Christians in the east and west were habitually sacrilegious ? Did an Ambrose, a Jerome, a Basil, a Serapion, and other saints who at their death partook of this sacrament under one kind only, receive a mutilated sacrament ? Did they make a sacrilegious Communion before appearing in the presence of their Lord ? Shall the Catholic Church be accused of having throughout all ages profaned the

holiest of sacraments, or of having all along been ignorant of its nature?

Protestants may refer us to Holy Scripture and say: "If it cannot be shown from the nature of this sacrament that both kinds are required in the Communion, it can be proved from the fact that our Saviour in giving the chalice said: 'Drink ye all of this'" (St. Matt. xxvi. 27), implying thereby that *all* persons—priests and laymen—were bound to receive the chalice, besides the consecrated bread.

"It is remarkable," they say, "that Jesus Christ did not use this expression when He gave the consecrated bread. It seems," they add, "that Christ foresaw that some people would in course of time neglect this part of the sacred rite, and that, therefore, He used this expression to put his followers upon their guard."

We reply, that there is no reason why we should take those words, "Drink ye all of this," as addressed to the laity; for, first, it is clear that our Saviour addressed these words only to the Apostles, "the twelve" then present, and the Apostles were priests, not laymen. If everything that was said to the Apostles (that is, to priests) must be understood as addressed to laics, it would follow that also the words delivered by our Saviour to the Apostles: "Go ye, therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them" (St. Matt. xxviii. 19); "Whose sins you shall forgive they are forgiven them, and whose sins you shall retain, they are retained" (St. John xx. 23), should be taken as addressed to every layman, woman and child, as well as to priests. (See St. Matt. xxvi. 29.)

That the word "all" in the text quoted refers only to the Apostles present, and not to any one absent, is shown clearly by the words that occur in St. Mark (xiv. 23), "And they all drank of it;" for if all who had to drink actually drank, there remained no one else to whom the word "all" could be applied.

Again, the expression, "Drink ye all," clearly refers to the same persons to whom He said, "Do this;" therefore it means, "Do in after time what you have seen me do now:" that is, "Give thanks, bless, consecrate and take." If the words "drink ye all" were to be taken as addressed to laymen as well as to consecrating priests, it would follow that the laity—men, women and children—have the right and the power, and are bound to consecrate; as it would be arbitrary, indeed, to say that the words "do this" mean "thank, bless, consecrate and take" when applied to priests, but when applied to laymen only mean "receive this."

The natural interpretation, acknowledged also as such by Protestants, of the words, "Drink ye all of this," is, "Hand the chalice one to another, and drink, each and all of you, a portion out of it."

Christ had no need to say the like words respecting the bread, as He

had broken it (probably into as many pieces as there were Apostles), and given one portion to each; but with regard to the chalice, which was only one, and of which all the Apostles had to partake, it was natural that Christ should say, "Drink ye all of this."

This interpretation, which appears so genuine from the context, seems evidently more so by the corresponding expression used by St. Luke, "Take and divide it among you" (xxii. 17), which expression is clearly used as equivalent to the other, "Drink ye all of this."

Some will perhaps say: "Why, then, did our Saviour, at the very time that He instituted the holy Eucharist, distribute it under the species of bread and of wine, if there was not a necessity for receiving under both kinds?"

We answer that Christ instituted the holy Eucharist under both species, and the consecrating priest is bound to partake of it under both species, because the holy Eucharist, besides being a sacrament, is also a sacrifice. It is requisite for a sacrifice that the victim should be really present, and immolated or destroyed, at least mystically, in order that it may represent the death of the victim. This was done at the Last Supper, and is still done in the Mass, by the symbolical severance of the body and blood of Christ through the separate consecration of each of them.

It is also requisite for the completion of the sacrifice that the priest who has immolated the great Victim, by mystically separating, by a distinct consecration, the body and the blood of that Victim, should consume it in both these kinds as often as he celebrates Mass, in order to show forth in a still more striking manner "the death of the Lord until He come" (1 Corinth. xi. 26); whereas, at other times, when they do not act as sacrificers, neither priests nor bishops, nor the Pope himself, even upon their death-beds, receive Communion in the western parts of Christendom otherwise than the rest of the faithful, namely, only under the species of bread which has been previously consecrated by a priest during Mass.

We do not read that our Lord at the Last Supper said anything about the distribution of this sacrament to the laity, as we have already noticed, much less whether it should be given to them under both kinds or under one alone. This being the case we are obliged to take apostolico-ecclesiastical tradition for our guide on this subject.

The Apostles, as we have already remarked, used to give Communion also under one kind. It is said in the Acts of the Apostles that the first Christians "were persevering in the doctrine of the Apostles and in the communion of the breaking of bread and in prayers" (ii. 42), "breaking bread from house to house" (ii. 46), "on the first day of the week, when we were assembled to break bread." (xx. 7.)

The Apostle Paul is far from insisting on the necessity of receiving under both kinds, for in the following passage of his First Epistle to the Corinthians his words imply that under either kind alone we receive a full sacrament, namely, the blood and body of Christ. He writes: "Therefore, whosoever shall eat this bread, or drink the chalice of the Lord unworthily, shall be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord." (1 Corinth. xi. 27.) If by taking Communion unworthily under one kind alone a person becomes guilty both of the body and blood of the Lord, it follows that by receiving under one kind a person receives the entire sacrament and the whole Jesus Christ.

The mistranslation of this passage which occurs in the authorized Protestant English Version must have materially served to fix more deeply in the minds of the readers the Protestant view of the Communion of the laity under both kinds; for the Protestant version puts the conjunction "and" in place of the disjunctive "or," contrary to the Latin Vulgate, and even contrary to the translation of Beza, and the German translation of Luther, which has the word "oder" ("or").

Many Protestant scholars have acknowledged the corruption of this text in the English Protestant authorized version. Amongst others, the late Dr. Stanley, Anglican dean of Westminster, who wrote these remarkable words: "Probably from the wish to accommodate the text to the change of custom, or from hostility to the Roman Catholic practice of administering the bread without the cup, the English translators have unwarrantably rendered ἡ 'and', that is, 'and' for 'or': *xai* for ἡ occurs only in the Alexandrian,* and in three cursive manuscripts." (Comments on First Epistle to Corinthians xi. 27, note p. 211.) Dean Alford says: "The meaning of this ἡ ('or') is not to be changed to *xai* ('and') as is most unfairly done in our English version and the completeness of the argument thereby destroyed."†

The ancient Sinaitic Codex, discovered by Baron Constantine Tischendorf in 1859, in the Monastery of Saint Catharine, Mount Sinai, has ἡ ("or").

What took place in the time of the Apostles was done in all after ages, so that there never was a time in which the Communion under one kind, and especially under that of bread, was not practiced.‡ Even when by universally prevailing custom, or by positive law of the Church, Communion was given under both kinds, there were yet exceptional cases in which Communion under one kind was allowed.

* The Alexandrian Codex was brought into England in 1628, and is now in the British Museum.

† The Anglican compilers of the revised version (1881) of the New Testament have corrected this passage.

‡ In England at the beginning of the seventh century. Communion was publicly given in the churches under one kind. (See Ven. Bede, Hist., book ii., chapter 5.)

Both ways of giving Communion run side by side throughout all ages, not only in the Latin Church, but also in the Greek and other Eastern churches, both before and after these latter had detached themselves from the Roman Catholic Church.

That in Holy Scripture no divine command is given nor any other kind of necessity can be discovered obliging the priests to give, and the laity to receive, Communion under both kinds, is a thing which seems also admitted by a great number of Protestants.

The Protestant "Confession of Augsburg" (A. D. 1550), alluding to the Catholic custom of giving Communion under one kind, excuses the Catholic Church from any blame in this matter. (See Augsburg Confession, page 235.)

When the Protestant religion was established in England, King Edward and Parliament in 1548, by separate Acts, under the title of "Communion under both kinds," provided that this sacrament should only be commonly so delivered and ministered, yet an exception was made in case necessity should otherwise require. (Burnet's History of the Reformation, part ii., p. 41.)

The Calvinists of France, in their Synod of Poitiers 1560, decreed thus: "The bread of our Lord's Supper ought to be administered to those who cannot drink wine, on their making a protestation that they do not refrain from it through contempt." (On the Lord's Supper, chap. iii., p. 7.)

All this tends to confirm what we have tried to prove with a fair number of arguments, that though we are commanded by Christ to receive the holy Communion, yet, that Communion under both kinds does not fall under a divine precept, and that it is not a thing demanded by the institution of this sacrament, nor by the nature of it; but that Christ left this point, as a matter of discipline, to be regulated by the Church, according to time and other circumstances.

Yet it is sad to think, that, notwithstanding all this, some who may read these pages will perhaps persist in maintaining (such is the force of education, habit, and prejudice) that this sacrament, if taken under one kind alone, is no sacrament at all, or that it is only a mutilated sacrament.

In this case the manner of reasoning adopted by such persons seems to be as follows: "In spite of the foregoing observations I hold to my private opinion that the words of the institution of this sacrament imply a necessity and a command to the laity of communicating under both kinds. The passages which you bring to prove that Communion was given by the Apostles under the species of bread alone do not satisfy me, nor is the expression you quote from St. Paul enough to convince me

that the body and blood of Christ is received under each kind. I am not moved by the historical fact that even in those centuries when Communion in both kinds was in use, yet in a vast number of cases, as of sick, of infants, of prisoners, of persons living in remote places, or keeping themselves concealed through raging persecutions and other causes, the Church sanctioned Communion under one kind. I am not willing to admit that the word 'all' is clearly confined to those then present of whom it is said, 'They all drank;' nor am I concerned about the consequences of my opinion, which implies that the Church, during fifteen centuries before the Reformation, was ignorant of a most important divine precept, and of the nature of the most holy of sacraments, and that she was a constant profaner of the same. I do not even pay regard to the view of those Protestants, or bodies of Protestants, who, by admitting exceptional cases, seem to agree with Catholics in this matter. Their way of thinking is not an authority for me; my opinion is as good as theirs; I will not be argued out of it."

It is to be hoped, however, that many candid Protestants will reason differently: perhaps somewhat in this manner:

"From the observations made in this essay it appears that no proof can be drawn from the words of the institution of a divine precept binding upon all persons to receive Communion under both kinds. It is clear from Holy Scripture, that Christ intrusted the dispensation of this and the other sacraments to the Apostles and their successors, who were well informed and competent to regulate this point. It belonged to them to determine whether this sacrament ought to be distributed under two kinds, or under one alone. I cannot suppose that the Apostles and their successors were uninformed on this important point of religion. It is known that in the time of the Apostles, and in all after centuries, Communion under one kind alone was, to say the least, occasionally given, and this is enough to prove that the Church always held that no divine precept existed commanding all the faithful to receive Communion under both kinds, or forbidding to receive Communion under one kind alone. I cannot understand how saints, as St. Ambrose, on their death-bed would have consented to receive, and the Church would have dared to give, Communion under one kind, as undoubted historical testimonies prove was done, if to give it under one kind were to mutilate a sacrament; to suppose that this did really take place would reflect on our Lord Himself, as having been unable to foresee or provide properly for His Church on this important point.

"Therefore I think I cannot do better in this matter than distrust myself, my prejudices and my private interpretation, or the interpretation of those who claim no higher authority than their own private opinion in

deciding the sense of Holy Scripture, and put my confidence in the holy Catholic Church to guide me in this point—that Church which shows every mark that her pastors are the lawful successors of the Apostles to whom Christ said: ‘Teach ye all nations . . . teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and behold I am with you all days, even to the consummation of the world.’ (St. Matt. xxviii. 19, 20.)

“From this passage it also seems evident that the Apostles, together with their successors, were made the interpreters, promulgators, teachers and the natural guardians of the commands of Christ. It was, therefore, their business, and not that of laymen or other unauthorized persons, to declare which commandments are divine and which are not, and how far the obligation of such divine commandments extends. To the Apostles was promised the Holy Ghost, to abide personally with them and their successors for ever. (St. John xiv. 16.) Therefore, I cannot do better than accept what is held by the Catholic Church on the subject.”

No. 5.—Predestination.

I begin by premising that God on account of His goodness, mercy and holiness, desires the salvation of all men. St. Paul says: That God “will have all men to be saved, and to come to the knowledge of the truth. For there is one God, and one Mediator of God and men, the man Christ Jesus, who gave Himself a redemption for all, a testimony in due times.” (1 Tim. ii. 4.) And in a passage which follows close upon the mention of predestination to life the same Apostle says: “He that spared not even His own Son, but delivered Him up for us all.” (Romans viii. 32.) St. Peter declares that God is “Not willing that any should perish, but that all should return to penance.” (2 St. Peter iii. 9.) Our Lord Jesus Christ touchingly represents Himself as knocking at the door of our hearts, most desirous to get admittance: “Behold, I stand at the gate, and knock. If any man shall hear my voice, and open to me the door, I will come in to him and will sup with him and he with me.” (Apocalypse [Revelation] iii. 20.)

If any one is lost, notwithstanding the means of salvation that God affords to every one, such a one cannot justly blame God, but only himself and his sins. Sin is the only cause of exclusion from heaven. No one is a reprobate but by his own fault. Hence our Saviour justly reproached the Jews for refusing to be saved, with those touching words, “Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered together thy

children as the hen doth gather her chickens under her wings, and thou wouldst not!" (St. Matt. xxiii. 37.)

Grace is a gift of God entirely gratuitous in itself, and so excellent that no creature, independent of Christ, is able to merit it by his own works; but our divine Saviour has merited it for us by the shedding of His precious blood; and on account of Christ's infinite merits, divine mercy gives to every man a measure of grace, at least sufficient for his salvation. (See 1 St. Timothy ii. 4.) Even the greatest sinner is moved from time to time by grace to return to God, and God gives him sufficient grace to correspond.

It is nevertheless true that God distributes this precious gift in an unequal manner, giving more to some and less to others, according to the inscrutable designs of His mercy and of His wisdom; but to no one does He give less grace than is sufficient for salvation.

The goodness of God goes before and meets the soul, and gives to every soul gratuitously a *first* grace (an actual, not justifying grace), by the aid of which the soul can perform good works (not, however, deserving heaven), and obtain further grace. The holy patriarchs, Job and Abraham, the Syrophœnician woman, Nicodemus, and the centurion, are examples. Most frequently one of the first graces is the grace to pray in order to obtain more abundant help. This first grace may be compared to a sum of money given to a poor person, which, if turned to a good account, may make his fortune, but, if abused or not accepted, will be of no benefit to him. Every one can, by prayer, obtain more grace from God, prepare himself to obtain the free gift of justification, and, by coöperating or working with it, arrive at everlasting life.

Almighty God, because he is Eternal and All-knowing, knows beforehand the coöperation of the good with His grace, their good works, perseverance, and final salvation. As the salvation of the good is owing to God's grace, given to them in the measure that He foreknew they would make use of, and not resist, though they *could* have resisted it, it follows that those that are saved must be considered to have been predestined, because their salvation was not only foreseen but effected by God, through His grace, which sanctified them and helped them in the good use of their free will left in them unconstrained.

Thus there is predestination of the good who are saved; but it cannot be said, strictly speaking, that there is predestination of the wicked who are lost; because, although God knows beforehand their resistance to His grace, their obstinacy in sin, and their final condemnation, yet it cannot be said that because He knows beforehand He therefore *wills* beforehand, and by *willing* causes the works of the wicked; nay, His having poured upon them His grace to enable them to do good proves the very contrary.

If God by His grace, which He refuses to none, stirs and enables us to avoid sin, He cannot be said to lead us into sin should we resist His grace.

The second Council of Orange (near Avignon, in France), A. D. 529, pronounced thus : "that any persons are by the divine power predestined to evil, we not only do not believe, but if there be any persons minded to believe so great an evil, with utter detestation thereof we say anathema to them." (Canon 25.) St. Fulgentius says : "Never could God have predestined man to that which He had Himself intended to forbid by His precept, and to blot out by His mercy, and to punish by His justice."

Catholics do not believe that any soul is predestined by God to be lost, or that God causes any man to fall into sin and thus be lost. This the Catholic Church condemns as an impious and monstrous doctrine.* She teaches that as God foresees everything, so it must ever have been known to Him that many of the children of Adam would not attain everlasting life in heaven, notwithstanding the plenteous redemption through the blood of Jesus Christ, because His precious blood has not been, through their own fault, applied to them to free them from the stain of original sin ; or that, though freed from original sin and justified, they would of their own free will resist His grace, which is given in a sufficient measure to all, would plunge into sin, forfeit justification, die without repenting, and consequently be justly condemned.

Now, this foreknowledge cannot properly be called predestination in the strict sense ; and in fact the word "predestination" is never applied in Holy Scripture to those who are lost. It may properly be called "pre-science," "foreseeing," "prevision," or "judicial reprobation," which expressions do not imply that God has an active part in their having deserved that doom. The doctrine of predestination to life and prevision to everlasting misery, as taught in the Catholic Church, is reconcilable with God's goodness, justice, holiness, and wisdom ; with the just man's merits and the wicked man's demerits ; it is reconcilable with God's commands and threats ; with His rewarding the good and punishing the wicked, and agrees with that saying of St. James (i. 13), that God "tempteth no man."

If any should ask why God, who can predestinate some to eternal life, cannot predestinate others to everlasting condemnation, the answer is plain. Salvation is an act of mercy, and can be granted even to one who has no merit ; condemnation is an act of justice and a punishment, and can only be inflicted on a guilty person ; and therefore God can predestinate only in the former case and not in the other, because God cannot be unjust.

To this purpose St. Augustine of Hippo eloquently says, referring to punishment and reward : "God returns evil for evil because He is just ;

* See Council of Trent, Session vi., Canon 6.

good for evil because He is good ; good for good because He is good and just ; only He does not render evil for good because He is not unjust." (On Grace and Free Will, chap. 23.)

On the other hand, the foreknowledge of God about the perdition of some men has not the least influence over their actions ; and no one will be lost in consequence of God's necessary foreknowledge, but only because that one has himself deserved such condemnation.

That no one is condemned without some great fault of his own is clear from these declarations in Holy Scripture : that God "will render to every man according to his works." (Romans ii. 6.) "Depart from me, all ye workers of iniquity." (St. Luke xiii. 27.) "Depart from me, you cursed, into everlasting fire, which was prepared for the devil and his angels. For I was hungry, and you gave me not to eat, I was thirsty, and you gave me not to drink." (St. Matt. xxv. 42.)* "The wicked shall be turned into hell, and all the nations that forget God." (Psalm ix. 17.) All which, and other similar passages, show that those who are lost are lost on account of their being guilty of grievous sin.

It may be objected that some texts represent God as the author of sin ; that He "loved Jacob" and "hated Esau" (Malachias i. 2 ; Romans ix. 13)† ; that He darkened the minds of some so that they might not see ; hardened the hearts of others that they might not be moved to repentance ; that there is no evil of which He is not the cause—and such-like expressions.

The answer to this difficulty is, that when there is a truth plainly stated in the Holy Scripture, which truth other texts seem to contradict, the universally admitted rule of interpretation demands that these passages should be explained in a sense consistent with that plain doctrine, as there cannot be any contradiction in the Word of God. Therefore all the expressions just quoted, and similar ones, must be understood to mean that God darkens the mind, hardens the heart, and offers temptation, not directly but indirectly, that is, by permitting or not stopping these evils as He might, but which He is not in His justice bound to do.

Most ungrounded and unwise it would be to say that, since only those who are predestined to life will be saved, therefore it is of no use to pray, or to try to do good, as, if predestined to life, no matter what amount of evil we commit, we should be saved.

Nor is it true to say that he who is not predestined to life, whatever he may do, will be lost, and that the predestined one, whatever he may do, will be saved ; for none will be lost but the wicked, and none will be saved but the good : and the more good works the just man by God's grace shall do on earth, the fairer shall be his blissful mansion in heaven,

* See Job xxxiv. 9-11.

† See Note in Douay version.

“for star differeth from star in glory” (1 Corinth. xv. 41); and the more works of darkness the wicked man shall do in this world, the greater shall be his punishment hereafter. There is being “beaten with many stripes” and “beaten with few stripes.” (St. Luke xii. 47, 48.)

The doctrine of predestination, understood in the Catholic sense, far from discouraging prayer, diligence, faithfulness, hope and all good works, is an incentive to the same, because God has so predestined men that they should attain their salvation through those very means by which we strive to imitate our Saviour Jesus Christ, and become, as St. Paul says, “conformable” to his image. (Romans viii. 29.) *

As long as we live, though the testimony of the Holy Spirit † and of a good conscience can give us a holy confidence, and even a great confidence, yet unless (as declared by the Council of Trent, Session vi. chap. 9) a person has received from God a special revelation, as was given to Daniel the prophet, our salvation cannot be certainly known to us with certainty of faith, and therefore no one should presume upon his security or be cast down by despair. We must love God and rely on His justice and mercy, and follow the advice of St. Paul, “with fear and trembling work out your salvation” (Philippians ii. 12), who also writes: “I chastise my body and bring it into subjection: lest perhaps when I have preached to others, I myself should become castaway” (1 Corinth. ix. 27); and remember the admonition of St. Peter: “Wherefore, brethren, labor the more, that by good works you may make sure your calling and election.” (2 St. Peter i. 10.)

No. 6.—Justification by “Faith Alone” Considered.

1. As in revolutions the leaders try to gain the people over by the bait of promised independence, so at the time of the so-called Reformation, which was a revolution against Church authority and order in religion, it seems that it was the aim of the reformers to decoy the people under the pretext of making them independent of the priests, in whose hands our Saviour has placed the administering of the seven sacraments of pardon and of grace.

They began, therefore, by discarding five of these sacraments, including the sacrament of orders, in which priests are ordained, and the sacrament of penance, in which the forgiveness of sins is granted to the penitent by virtue of those words of Christ: “Whose sins you shall forgive, they are forgiven them; and whose sins you shall retain, they are retained.” (St. John xx. 23.)

They then reduced, as it appears, to a mere matter of form the two

* See footnote in Douay Bible on this passage.

† See footnote in Douay Bible on Romans viii. 16.

sacraments they professed to retain, namely, holy baptism and the holy Eucharist. To make up for this rejection, and enable each individual to prescribe for himself, and procure by himself the pardon of sins and divine grace, independently of the priests and of the sacraments, they invented an exclusive means, never known in the Church of God, and still rejected by all the eastern churches and by the Roman Catholics throughout the world, by which the followers of Luther ventured to declare that each individual can secure pardon and justification for himself independently of priests and sacraments. They have framed a new dogma, not to be found in any of the creeds, or in the canons of any general council ; I mean, the new dogma of justification by faith alone, or by faith only.

2. This new doctrine has gone through many changes in course of time. It exists even now under many shades of variety in its details. Still, it may be asserted, that the vast majority of Protestants think that the only means appointed by our Saviour for our being pardoned, justified, and adopted by God—that is, for our passing from a state of condemnation to a state of acceptance with God, with the consequent blessings of grace and state of salvation, or, as Catholics would say, from a state of sin to a state of grace—is faith alone.

By adding the word “alone,” Protestants profess to exclude all exterior, ceremonial, pious, or charitable works, works of obedience or of penance, and good moral acts whatever, as means of apprehending justification, or as conditions to obtain it. Protestants by that word “alone” mean also to exclude the sacraments of baptism and penance as means of apprehending or possessing themselves of justification, which they maintain is only apprehended by faith.

By the word “alone,” Wesleyans (who as a body seem, next to the Anglican Establishment, to retain more of Catholic doctrine than other dissenters) and some others do not actually shut out hope, repentance, belief in gospel truths, fear of God, and a purpose of amendment from accompanying faith. They teach that although it is not the part of these moral acts to secure justification, yet the faith which alone takes hold upon Christ has necessarily these results. Most other Protestants, on the contrary, by the word “alone” seem to exclude (with the exception of belief in the plan of redemption and repentance) belief in all other revealed truths and all other interior good moral acts whatsoever—love of God and neighbor, resolution to avoid sin, fear of God, obedience, readiness to do works of penance and the desire to receive the sacraments of baptism and penance ; either because they hold it impossible to make these works properly, or because they consider them sinful in themselves, or at least unnecessary and useless for justification.

Indeed, some of them go so far as to consider these interior good acts, as well as other exterior good deeds, rather hindrances than dispositions to justification.

To do these acts with the view of being justified is, they say, like giving a penny to the Queen to obtain from her a royal gift. Come as you are, they add; you cannot be too bad for Jesus. Through faith alone in His promise, they assert, you can and should accept Christ's merits, seize Christ's redemption and His justice, appropriate Christ to yourself, believe that Jesus is with you, is yours, that He pardons your sins, and all this without any preparation and without any doing on your part; in fact, that however deficient you may be in all other dispositions which Catholics require, and however loaded with sins, if you only trust in Jesus that He will forgive your sins and save you, you are, by that trust alone, forgiven, personally redeemed, justified, and placed in a state of salvation.

3. Nothing certainly can be better for us poor sinners than to be converted, pardoned, actually redeemed, saved and united with Christ. Catholics, indeed, can not aim at anything more needful and desirable than this. The question, however, is not about that. The question is, Is justification, according to Scripture, to be had only by this trusting or faith in Christ for personal salvation, or is it not?

We know that Christ died for all, and yet that all are not saved; but only such are saved as fulfil certain conditions and become just; so that the promise of salvation is not absolute but conditional. Hence St. Paul says: "He became to all that obey Him the cause of eternal salvation." *

Now these conditions, these dispositions demanded by Christ before making us share His merits, His grace, and the fruit of His redemption, before pardoning and justifying us, are they many, or is there only one? And if only one, is it the reliance or faith in Christ for personal salvation taught by Protestants, or is it another kind of faith, or some other means?

Some Protestants are apt to say: "If I have Jesus Christ with me I can not wish for more:" yes, if by this kind of faith you can really have Him; but if this kind of faith is not the right means, and if faith is not the sole, exclusive means appointed by Him for that purpose, you may imagine that you possess Christ, whilst in reality you do not.

To people who are brought up in the belief of justification by faith alone, and who are constantly told that the word "faith" in Holy Scripture mostly means simple acceptance or reliance on Christ for personal salvation, this theory of justification by faith alone must naturally appear very scriptural indeed; for they imagine it to be confirmed every time that mention is made in Scripture of being saved by faith. But on examining, with unprejudiced mind, all the texts generally brought forward in

* See Hebrews v. 9; also St. Matthew xxv. 46.

proof of that doctrine, it is found that not one of them tells clearly in favor of it.

The word "faith," in Scripture, sometimes means confidence in God's omnipotence and goodness ; that He can and is willing to cure or benefit us by some miraculous interposition. Mostly it refers to revealed truths, and signifies belief in them as such. No one has a right to give to the word "faith" a new meaning, and take it, for instance, to signify reliance on Jesus for being personally saved through this very reliance alone, unless Jesus Christ or the Apostles had, in some instance, clearly attributed such a meaning to the word "faith," and taught the doctrine of trust in Christ for personal salvation as the only requisite for justification. No one should attach a particular meaning to the word "faith," without having a good warrant in Scripture or in divine tradition.

4. Now in many passages of Holy Scripture in which "saving faith" is plainly spoken of, by "faith" is not meant a trust in Christ for personal salvation, but evidently a firm belief that Jesus is the Messiah, the Christ, the Son of God ; that what is related of Him in the Gospel is true, and that what He taught is true. This faith, however, does not exclude, but leads to, trusting in Christ, and to all other virtues.

The following are instances. In St. John we read : "These are written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God ; and that believing you may have life in His name." (xx. 31.) It is evident that the saving belief here mentioned is not a trust in Christ for personal salvation, but the believing what is asserted of Christ in the gospel. In St. Mark we read : "And after that John was delivered up Jesus came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of the kingdom of God, and saying, The time is accomplished, and the kingdom of God is at hand ; repent and believe the gospel." (i. 14, 15.) It is clear that here our Saviour for salvation requires repentance and belief in all the gospel truths, of course, in order to carry them into practice.

Thus, likewise, the whole eleventh chapter of St. Paul's Epistle to the Hebrews (which, as is admitted on every side, treats of saving faith), evidently shows that the object of this saving faith is not to make a person confident of actually obtaining mercy through trusting in Christ, but it is to make him certain of the existence of truths not to be discovered by simple reason, but revealed by God.

The saving faith of the chamberlain of Queen Candace, required by St. Philip, was not directly a confidence in Christ for mercy, but a belief in His divinity. (Acts viii. 37.) The faith of the man sick of the palsy, that gained for him the pardon of his sins, was not a reliance on Christ for the forgiveness of his sins, but a belief in the divine omnipotence and goodness of Christ, that He could and would heal his body. (St. Luke v.

20.) When Jesus Christ said to Martha : "Every one that liveth and believeth in me shall not die for ever. Believest thou this?" Martha answered, "Yea, Lord, I have believed that thou art Christ, the Son of the living God, who art come into this world." (St. John xi. 26, 27.) This was not a trust in Christ for pardon, but a belief that Jesus was the Son of God, the Messias.

Again, Jesus Christ declared that saving faith was to know and believe that His Father was the only true God, and that He Himself was His divine Son, sent by Him to redeem the world. "Now this is eternal life; that they may know thee, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom thou hast sent." (St. John xvii. 3.)

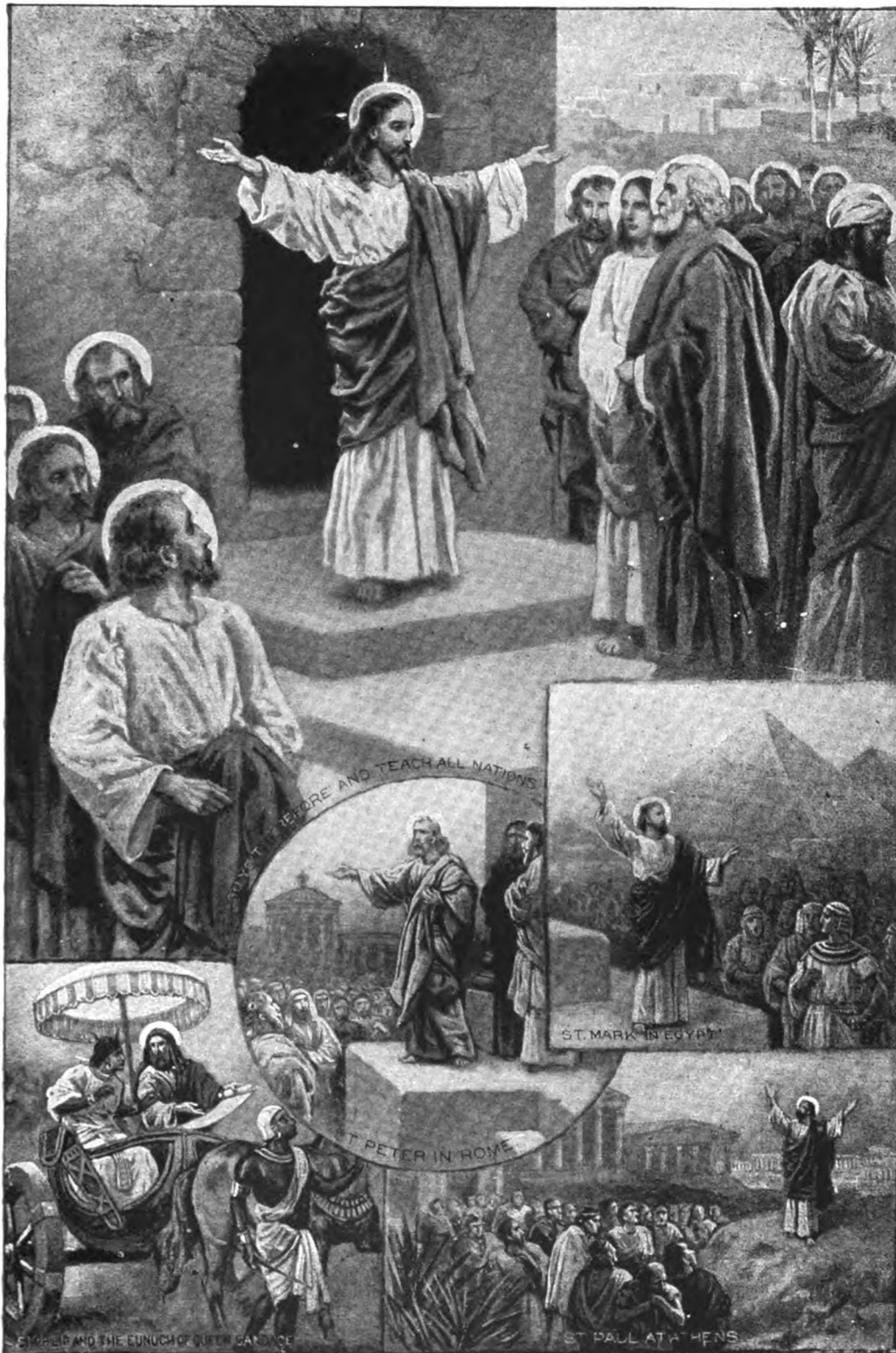
St. Paul, explaining the nature of justifying faith, says : "For if thou confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and believe in thy heart that God hath raised Him up from the dead, thou shalt be saved." (Romans x. 9.)* It is clear that to believe in Jesus Christ, and consequently to believe what He teaches and what He promises, is not the same as a mere confidence in Christ for pardon. When our Saviour said : "Go ye, therefore, and teach all nations, . . . teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you ;" "He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved ; but he that believeth not shall be condemned" (St. Matt. xxviii. 19, 20, and St. Mark xvi. 16), our Lord evidently spoke of saving faith, and this faith was simply to believe the revealed truths taught by Christ and preached by the Apostles, with the intention of practising them as a necessary condition of justification.

These texts, which all refer to saving faith, prove to evidence that not trust in Christ for personal salvation, but the faith of the creed, the faith in revealed truths, the faith of the gospel, as St. Paul calls it (Philippians i. 27), is the faith availing for justification, though this saving faith, as we have said, does not exclude trusting in Christ, but leads to it.

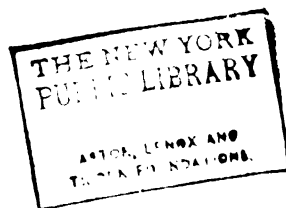
St. Paul confirms all this plainly in his Second Epistle to the Thessalonians, where he says that the love of the truth is necessary for salvation (chap. ii. 10)—that not to believe the truth is to wish not to be justified, but to be judged (verse 11)—that we are chosen to salvation and sanctification through belief of the truth (verses 12, 13). That by faith of the truth St. Paul meant believing everything revealed by God, and taught by the true messengers of God, he makes sufficiently clear in verses 14, 15, where he tells them to stand fast and hold everything they had been taught by him.

5. Now surely it must be admitted, that whenever in other parts of Holy Scripture saving faith is spoken of without any clear indication of its meaning (the word "faith" being left unexplained by the context),

* See also Philippians iii. 2, 20.



CHRIST'S COMMISSIONS TO HIS DISCIPLES.



such a meaning should be attached to this word "faith" as is clearly set forth in other texts; according to the universally accepted rule of interpretation, that we must interpret the obscure or less clear texts of Scripture by those that are more clear. To interpret passages of Scripture which are not clear as though clear, and some even in contradiction to other clear texts, is against reason, and violates the first rule of interpretation.

In no text of Holy Scripture in which "saving faith" is clearly mentioned, are we compelled by the context to take the word "faith" to mean, primarily, trust, and not belief in gospel truths as the first and direct meaning. Therefore, to take certain texts of Scripture in which faith, or belief, or approaching to Christ is mentioned, and take them to mean reliance in Christ for pardon as the primary meaning, and that reliance as the sole means of justification, is a mere assumption, and contrary to the rule of interpretation just mentioned.

6. To trust in God for mercy and pardon has certainly its place along with the other dispositions in the plan of justification. But nowhere in Holy Scripture is justification clearly attributed to that trust as the sole apprehending instrument of justification.

Thus we see that if the penitent publican trusted in the mercy of God, it was not at the same time without some love of God, fear, repentance, prayer, confession of his guilt, and humility, shown by his standing at the far end of the temple, striking his breast, and calling himself a sinner; and there is no allusion made to his having been forgiven only in view of his trust as the sole apprehending instrument of justification, but rather having regard to all the aforesaid dispositions, trust included, and especially his humility, which our Saviour contrasted with the pride of the Pharisee, who boldly felt assured that he was justified. And of this penitent publican our Saviour declared: "I say to you this man went down into his house justified rather than the other." (St. Luke xviii. 14.) Thus St. Peter, speaking to Simon the sorcerer, though he raised somewhat his hope for pardon, yet said to him: "Do penance therefore from this thy wickedness: and pray to God if perhaps this thought of thy heart may be forgiven thee." (Acts viii. 22.)

Thus it is also clearly said that "we are saved by hope" (Romans viii. 24); but it is not said that this hope or trust is the only apprehending instrument of justification; and faith or belief in gospel truths is not excluded, but implied in it, as Protestants also teach; and this faith in gospel truths demands in its turn, and leads to all the other dispositions which the revealed Word of God requires, not for apprehending justification, but for being rendered fit to receive it. If you pretend that by trusting in Christ you apprehend Christ and become justified, then it is

through your efforts and through your work you get justification ; then the getting of justification depends on you, not as merely disposing yourself, as Catholics teach, but as on an active agent ; then would justification not be gratis, but partly a fruit of your work.

This novel apprehending, besides being unscriptural, is also uncalled for. God bestows His justification on us when he finds us disposed to receive it. No apprehending instrument is required. We simply receive His justifying grace when it is given to us, just as we receive any other grace. Trusting is not in itself apprehending ; it is quietly expecting and waiting the gift of God to be given by Him when He shall be pleased to bestow it on us, even without our perceiving it. Thus a man on the point of drowning, without grappling at anything, is caught and rescued by another, moved to compassion by his miserable condition, by his cries, by his humble prayer, and by the confidence he places in him who comes to his rescue.

Luther admitted that justification and salvation by faith alone was a new doctrine, for in his comments on 1 Corinthians v., he was vain enough to speak of himself as one "to whom the mystery of genuine faith, hidden from former ages in God, had been revealed." But having determined to introduce his newly invented doctrine of justification by a mere reliance in Christ for pardon, which he called faith, and despairing to find another text that could serve his purpose better than the text of St. Paul, Romans iii. 28, "For we account a man to be justified by faith without the works of the law," he thought of making this text the great bulwark of his new doctrine ; and being at the same time fully convinced that even this text was insufficient to establish his new principle, he betook himself to the mad expedient of corrupting this passage, adding the word "alone" ("*allein*," which word still remains in the Protestant German version of the Bible) to the word "faith," in order to make it appear that saving faith was not only in contrast to the works of the Old Law, called by St. Paul the law of works, but also to the deeds of the New Law, called by the same holy Apostle the law of faith ; that thus it might help him to start a new method of justification by faith alone.

People remonstrated with him on every side on this account ; even his fellow-reformer Zuinglius accused him in these sharp words : "Luther, thou corruptest the Word of God. Thou art seen to be a manifest and common corrupter and perverter of Holy Scripture ;" but it was of no avail. Despairing to find one text in the whole Scripture to prop efficiently his device, and seeing the necessity of introducing this word "alone" in order to give this passage the appearance of favoring his novel principle of justification by faith alone, he declared unblushingly that this word should remain in spite of everything and of every-

body; and this on no other but his own authority, and for no other reason than his own will.

The new doctrine started by Luther was adopted by the State Church of England, and embodied in the eleventh of the *Thirty-nine Articles of Religion* of 1562, still in force, in these words: "Wherefore that we are justified by faith only is a most wholesome doctrine, and very full of comfort."

During fifteen centuries, both in the Western and Eastern churches, the saving faith mentioned in Holy Scripture was always understood to signify belief in God and God's revelation, as such belief naturally leads to the adoption of all prescribed dispositions and means for being justified; and the kind of apprehending saving faith which means confidence to get pardon, without the sacraments, by the sole means of that confidence, as taught in these later times by Protestants, was then unknown.

Luther invented, as we have said, this doctrine, and was the first to affix such meaning to the word "faith." His new interpretation of the word was adopted in course of time by a vast number of Lutherans, Calvinists, and other Protestants; and from that period only there existed men who saw in the word "faith," occurring so frequently in Holy Scripture, that which had never been seen by the fathers, by the doctors, by the saints, and by the whole Church of God.

To show the unfairness of taking the word "faith" occurring in Holy Scriptures in this new Protestant sense of trust in Christ for pardon, to the exclusion of any other disposition or means, and not in the Catholic sense of belief in revealed truths, which belief virtually implies the use of all dispositions, trust included, and of all proper means, allow me to use the following illustration.

Suppose that a man afflicted with a grave disease sends for a physician of repute. The physician comes and prescribes, and, to inspire the patient with more confidence, tells him, "Only believe in me and you will be cured." Can we suppose that the poor sufferer, on the departure of the physician, would say: "I shall take no medicine, for the physician said, 'only believe and you will be cured?'"

Such way of reasoning and acting seems impossible to occur with regard to the cure of the body, but respecting the cure of the soul it is an unhappy matter of fact that thousands of persons fall into this sad mistake.

7. We seem to hear Jesus, our Heavenly Physician, say: "I died for all, and thereby prepared in my blood a remedy for all. If you would have the merits of my passion and death applied to you, and free your souls from sin, you must come to me, you must believe that I am what I represent myself to be, and you must believe all that I teach. (St. Mark

xvi. 15, 16.) Moreover, assisted by my grace, you must fear and serve me. (St. Luke i. 50; Proverbs i. 7; xiv. 27; xix. 23; Psalm lxxxiv. 10 [or Prot. version lxxxv. 9]; Psalm cii. [or ciii.] 11–13.) You must hope and trust in my goodness, omnipotence, and mercy. (1 St. John iii. 3; Romans viii. 24; Psalms xxxii. [or xxxiii.] 18.) You must love me. (Galatians v. 6; 1 St. John iv. 19; St. Luke x. 27.) You must love your neighbor (1 St. John iii. 14; iv. 7–16; 1 St. Peter iv. 8; St. James ii. 25; Daniel iv. 24); and forgive your enemies. (St. Matt. vi. 14, 15; St. Mark xi. 25, 26; 1 St. John iii. 15.) You must humble yourselves, and be sorry for the sins you have committed, hate the evil you have done, and repent. (Psalm l. [or li.] 19; Psalm cxlvi. [or cxlvii.] 3; St. James iv. 6; 1 St. Peter v. 5; Isaias lvii. 15; St. Luke i. 51, 52.) You must turn to me, amend your lives, have a good intention of avoiding sin for the future, of keeping my commandments, and of doing works of penance. (Zacharias i. 3, 4; St. Luke x. 13; xiii. 5; Ezekiel xviii. 21, 30, 31; St. Matt. iii. 7, 8; Acts ii. 38.) If, assisted by my grace, you come to me with these dispositions, then I am ready to apply to you the atonement of my passion and death, not as though this mercy were due to any merit of yours, but freely, without any price, to grant you forgiveness of your sins, to unite you to myself by justifying grace, and place you in a state of salvation through the sacrament of baptism (Acts ii. 38; St. John iii. 5; Titus iii. 5; Ephesians v. 26), or through the sacrament of penance. (St. John xx. 23.) In one word, I say to you, Believe: and you are saved."

The natural import of these last words would be, "Believe that I am what I declare myself to be, and believe what I teach. Do also what I have told you to do, and then you shall have the merits of my passion and death applied to you, and you shall be justified."

It would be unwarrantable to detach the last words, "Believe and you are saved," to disconnect them from what preceded, and then cry out: "The Lord declares that faith alone is necessary, faith alone is sufficient for our justification; we have only to trust in Christ for pardon, and we are justified."

The Catholic Church, therefore, teaches the necessity of faith or belief in revelation, of hope or trust, fear and love of God, humility, repentance, purpose to observe the commandments and to apply for the sacraments to obtain justification. Her teaching accords with Holy Scripture, whilst the Protestant theory of justification by faith alone is not according to Scripture rightly interpreted, but is opposed to it.

8. Even by the light of reason and common sense, one can see that it is right on the part of God that He should require these dispositions in a sinner before granting him the free gift of justification. What more reasonable than that our Saviour should say: "If you wish that I should

grant you pardon of your sins and apply to you the merits of my passion and death, and justify you freely, do not contradict me and disbelieve what I have revealed, but believe me and have faith ; do not despise me, but fear and revere me ; do not despair, and do not distrust me as if I were unmerciful, but trust and hope in me ; do not reject me, but love me ; be not unconcerned about having offended me, or about offending me again, but detest your sins, be sorry for them, and be determined, with the help of my grace, to avoid all sin in future, and to keep my commandments: for if you be wanting in these dispositions, you set yourself in opposition to me, you offend me and reject me, and so long as you are in this deplorable state of opposition to me, you are unfit to receive my mercy, my pardon and my grace."

9. The common pretext put forward by many Protestants for looking upon reliance on Christ for pardon as the only thing required for justification, and for rejecting all other, seems to be, that they regard this kind of faith as simple acceptance of a gift freely offered, and do not consider it a work, whilst the other dispositions, they think, not being simple acceptance but something else, are works, and, if such, they cannot be admitted as requirements for justification, for St. Paul, they say, expressly declares that we are not justified by works.

This, however, should not create a difficulty, for St. Paul, as we have already pointed out, when he said that we are justified by faith without the works of the law, clearly meant that Christian justification was totally different from the kind of justification which the Jewish converts imagined it to be. They thought it was nothing else but the result of their own exterior good works, independent of grace ; whilst Christian justification, or justification by faith, is a free gift of God ; he therefore insisted that the Jewish rites and ceremonies, now done away with, never could of themselves effect justification : and that though the moral precepts are still in force, and therefore good and necessary to be kept, yet that justification was not a natural fruit of, nor due to, the keeping of them as a strict debt ; but justification was granted as a free gift, undeserved as a claim or merit by good works done without grace, or even by works done with the help of divine grace.* But St. Paul never meant to discountenance gospel works, that is, internal or external moral acts or good works, done by God's grace before being justified, and done, not as deserving justification, but as a preparation to it, for if he had meant to assert such a thing, he would have set faith against faith, grace against grace, God against God, just as if God were discountenancing what He himself had inspired and helped them to do. St. Paul could never have meant that.

* The Council of Trent declares: "None of those things which precede justification, whether faith or good works, can merit this grace" (of justification). (Session vi. chapter 9.)

Protestants admit that these works are good and necessary to be done after being justified as fruits and signs of justification. How can it be wrong or useless to do them before? How can they be supposed to have been discountenanced by St. Paul, merely because he said that justification is not the natural result of ceremonial, or even of good moral works? Although justification is not the result of good works, yet good works are congenial to, and in harmony with, justification, and an indisposition to good moral works is an indisposition to justification; and, therefore, a willingness to do those moral works is a good disposition to justification. St. Paul cannot be supposed by the expression just quoted to have discountenanced good works before being justified in view of being justified, so long as we regard them as dispositions or preparations to justification, and not as producing justification, since justification is purely a gracious, free gift of God.

To be convinced that St. Paul, in that passage and in other similar passages, did not mean to depreciate good moral works, done with the help of divine grace, as dispositions for justification, but only meant to set aside certain kinds of works—as the Jewish rites and ceremonies, or works merely done in the order of nature without faith and grace—let us observe that, if we had to understand St. Paul in these passages to exclude all sorts of good moral works, faith itself would have to be excluded, as faith is evidently the work of the mind and of the will, as much as fear, love and repentance. Even that kind of faith which resolves itself into a mere confidence for personal salvation is also an act of the mind and of the will, and, therefore, a work; and presupposes two acts, of the mind and of the will, namely, belief in revelation, and consent of the will and affection to this plan for obtaining justification.

In fact, faith is clearly called “work” in the gospel itself, in which we find these words: “What shall we do that we may work the works of God? Jesus answered and said to them, This is the work of God, that you believe in Him whom He hath sent.” (St. John vi. 28, 29.)* Now faith, though a work, is not excluded, but required by St. Paul, because a work of faith, and not a work of the law; for the same reason the fear of God, hope, charity, repentance, humility, willingness to obey, and other dispositions, though acts of the mind and of the will, are works, and not excluded by St. Paul.† Even supposing that these inward acts of virtue have been carried out into outward acts, yet because they are works of faith, done through, and as fruits of, faith and grace, and are not works

* Also St. Paul calls faith a work: “Being mindful of the work of your faith.” (1 Thess. i. 3; 2 Thess. i. 11.)

† The necessity of doing good moral work, observing the commandments, and avoiding sin in order to persevere in justification and obtain salvation, is made manifest from Matt. xix. 17; 1 John ii. 4; and from the Epistle to the Romans xi. 6–13. Look also at the references to the same.

of the Jewish law, nor mere efforts of natural strength, they should not be regarded as excluded by St. Paul as dispositions to justification.

In that and other instances St. Paul makes mention only of faith, because faith (that is, belief in revealed truths) is the root and foundation of all other supernatural virtues, and because a true lively faith cannot remain inactive, but makes a man ready to carry at once into practice all that faith requires to the intent for which faith is given; therefore, it was not necessary that St. Paul should mention the works of faith. It was enough to mention faith, since faith (that is, belief in revealed truths) leads to all other dispositions which faith requires to effect its purpose, being itself, so to speak, a spring of work. And this is still more apparent if we consider the people whom he was addressing. They certainly would not even have dreamed of an inactive principle of religion, or of an idle faith, and therefore it was quite enough for his purpose to discard the works of the Old Law and mention only faith. To do so answered better the object he had most at heart in his epistle, of winning them. He took care not to excite their susceptibility or opposition by putting flatly before them a new law, superseding the old, but insinuated it in an inoffensive manner by the word "faith," meaning belief in the new law of grace. As the word "law" in common speech among the Jews meant the whole system of the ancient dispensation, so the word "faith" was introduced as a contradistinction to mean the whole system of the new Christian dispensation.

10. That St. Paul in these passages, by the expression "without the works of the law," did not exclude other dispositions except faith, but implied them in the word "faith," is made still more clear by other passages of his, in which he also attributes justification to hope, charity, fear of God, penance, willingness to keep the law, and holy baptism.

Thus, with regard to hope, he says: "We are saved by hope." (Romans viii. 24.)

As to charity, he says: "If I should have all faith [therefore, also, what Protestants call saving faith], so that I could remove mountains, and have not charity, I am nothing." (1 Cor. xiii. 2.) Again, the faith that availeth is a "faith that worketh by charity." (Gal. v. 6.)

As to penance, he says: "For the sorrow that is according to God worketh penance steadfast unto salvation." (2 Corinth. vii. 10.)

As to willingness to keep the commandments, St. Paul says: "The doers of the law [of faith] shall be justified." (Romans ii. 13.) Again: "Know you not that to whom you yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants you are whom you obey, whether it be of sin, unto death, or of obedience, unto justice?" (Rom. vi. 16.)

As to the sacrament of baptism, St. Paul says clearly that by it we

partake of Christ's death and redemption, and are justified from sin. "He saved us, by the laver of regeneration, and renovation of the Holy Ghost." (Titus iii. 5.) "Know ye not that all we, who are baptized in Christ Jesus, are baptized in His death? For we are buried together with Him by baptism unto death." (Rom. vi. 3, 4.)

Now, unless we were to accuse St. Paul of contradicting himself, we must conclude from these passages that by the expression "without the works of law" he did not exclude the works of faith; on the contrary, we are compelled to admit that in the word "faith" he includes them. And as it would be unreasonable to pick out one of these passages, and say, for example: "We are clearly told by St. Paul that we are 'saved by penance,' therefore neither faith, nor hope, nor humility, nor prayer, nor anything else is necessary for salvation, but penance alone is required and is sufficient—or, at least, penance is the only thing that apprehends justification—so equally unreasonable would it be to look upon faith in the sense of trust as the only disposition or condition necessary, or the only means to attain justification. By this Catholic interpretation, not only is St. Paul made to agree with himself but also with other parts of Holy Scripture, as, for instance, with those already quoted.

11. The necessity of these various dispositions to fit us for the reception of the free gift of justification is in such harmony with Scripture, reason, and common sense, that although Protestant ministers preach very warmly and frequently upon this cherished theory of justification by faith alone, yet in practice, as can be seen in their tracts, books, sermons, and hymns, they not infrequently, by way of preparation for the reception of justification by faith, excite people to repentance, to the love of God and of our neighbor, to a fear of wrath to come, to confidence in the mercy of God and to prayer.*

They even pray with them on their knees, and often repeat with them those words of the penitent publican, "O God, be merciful to me a sinner." In fact, practically, they excite the people to all those dispositions which Catholics teach should always accompany faith, confession itself not excluded. Thus, during the revival meetings of Messrs. Moody and Sankey from America in London in the year 1875, any person, who, being moved by Mr. Moody's earnest appeals to seek conversion, had resorted to the inquiry room, was handed over to a Protestant minister or other person, to whom the distressed one opened his or her conscience,

* Thus, for instance, in the *Justified Believer* by Mr. W. Mackenzie, M. A., the person to be justified is encouraged to prepare himself for it by feeling alarmed and terrified, by believing the gospel record, by intense anguish and sorrow, by conflict of spirit, and by feeling the trouble, the wounds, and the burden of the soul, by readiness to obey, by feeling unworthy, sorrowful, and ashamed like Ezra, by making a strict examination of conscience (p. 65), by weeping like St. Peter and Mary Magdalen. The same thoughts occur in the *Pilgrim's Progress*, and other Protestant works on justification.

making acts of contrition, and expressing determination to lead a good life ; in fact, the penitent may be said to have made to the other a candid confession.

This evidently shows that a great many Protestants, whatever be their teaching in theory, encourage in practice those other good dispositions which Catholics believe to be requisite in order that justification may take place, feeling that to do so is consistent with Holy Scripture, with reason and good sense, with the honor due to Jesus Christ, and with His free gift of justification.

Wesleyan ministers, in fact, professedly teach that faith is not saving faith unless it includes repentance, fear of God, belief in gospel truths, and obedience. If the requirement of these four acts, or moral works, does not prevent the Wesleyans and other Protestants from considering a believer to be justified " gratis by God's free grace, through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus," the same should be said of Catholics, though, besides the four moral acts mentioned, admitted to be needful by Protestants, they require a few more, namely, consent to the suggestions of preventive grace, incipient love of God and desire to receive the sacraments. Catholics can thus truly speak of having " their hearts purified by faith " (Acts xv. 9), because actuated by a lively faith in gospel truths, as it embraces, or rather holds forth not only some, but *all* the requirements for justification.

Another proof that very many Protestants in their hearts look upon the Catholic system of justification as scriptural and reasonable is, that when they undertake to oppose it, they do not give as their reason of opposition that Catholics require belief in God's revelation, fear of God, repentance, humility, a willingness to do penance, and to keep the commandments (which indeed is all that the Catholic Church teaches to be needful for receiving pardon and justification in the sacrament of penance) ; but the reason they assign is, that Catholics, as they imagine, exact a long series of penitential or other works, in order to be justified.

The fact, however, is, that no Catholic theologian teaches that these penitential works should necessarily be done before justification in order to be justified. Nor does the Council of Trent teach that. The only conditions for justification which that general council requires (Session vi., chapter 6), are faith in God and in our Saviour Jesus Christ, consent to the suggestions of preventive grace inciting us to conversion, dread of the effects of divine justice, excited by motives derived from the teaching of faith, united at the same time with hope. In this hope, love's dawn, or the initial love of God, may already be traced, called forth by the consideration of divine mercy and Christ's merits. Finally, sincere hatred of sin, and a firm resolution of amendment of life.

A sinner may receive justification in the sacrament of penance without having previously performed any penitential work. To be willing to perform them afterward suffices.

The necessity of performing penitential works before justification is not even mentioned by the Council of Trent. Hence the constant ordinary practice of the Church is to grant absolution to the true penitent in the tribunal of penance, before he has performed any exterior act of penance. If sometimes it is done otherwise it is in rare and exceptional cases. No doubt it is better if a person by way of preparation does some penitential actions, * but this is not absolutely necessary.

About the works of penance, Catholic theologians say that a man who wishes to be justified must be willing to bring forth worthy fruits of penance, because Christ says : " Except you do penance you shall all likewise perish." (St. Luke xiii. 5.) That the word " penance " includes also exterior works of penance, appears clearly from the 21st verse of the eleventh chapter of St. Matthew, and Acts of the Apostles xxvi. 20. Surely Protestants cannot find fault with us because we teach that, in order to be justified, at least a willingness should be required of the sinner to observe this commandment as well as all other commandments. Are they prepared to say that a man can be justified whilst determined to break the commandments ? I think not ; for this would amount to saying that a man is in a fit disposition to make peace with his enemy while offering him a new insult, or in a fit condition for receiving a gift while striking the giver, or that the giver cannot show his readiness and freedom in giving, unless He should give to a person who is in open revolt against him.

Our Protestant brethren, therefore, cannot do better than adopt openly the teaching of the Catholic Church, so clearly set forth in the General Council of Trent, which requires the above-enumerated dispositions for the reception of the grace of justification in the sacraments of baptism or of penance, and at the same time professes to believe, and solemnly teaches, that justification is not merited by those dispositions, but that a man is, notwithstanding those dispositions, justified freely and gratis, purely through the gracious good will of God. Here are the precise words of the council : "*Gratis autem justificari ideo dicamur, quia nihil eorum quæ justificationem præcedunt, sive fides sive opera, ipsam justificationis gratiam promerentur ; si enim gratia est, jam non ex operibus, alioquin ut idem Apostolus inquit, gratia jam non est gratia*" (" But that therefore we are said to be justified freely [gratis], because none of those things which precede justification, either faith or works, deserve that same grace of justification ; for if it be grace then it is not from works ; otherwise, as the same Apostle says, grace is no more grace"). (Session vi., chap. 8.)

* See Isaiah i. 16, 17, 18.

Take an illustration of it from the widow spoken of in the Fourth Book of Kings, chapter iv. (2d Book in Protestant version). By doing what she was told by the prophet Eliseus, that is, by borrowing empty vessels and by pouring in the oil she was not the cause of the prodigious multiplication of that liquid, nor did she, by so doing, deserve it, but that miraculous supply of oil was still a free gift of the prophet; and yet if she had not done what she was told she would have got no oil. Thus, notwithstanding the dispositions demanded by the Catholic Church for obtaining justification, and all dispositions and preparations on the part of the subject, justification is a still a free gift of God.

Where there is a living human body there is a soul: so likewise where there is the true Church of Christ, compared by St. Paul to a living body, there is the Holy Spirit which animates it. As the Catholic Church is always guided in her teaching by the Holy Spirit (Acts xv. 28), if we set ourselves against the Church we set ourselves against the Word of God and against the Holy Spirit; but if we allow ourselves to be guided by the Church, we cannot go wrong, and we feel sure that we are guided by the Holy Spirit; "the Spirit Himself giveth testimony to our spirit that we are the sons of God." (Romans viii. 16.) "For whosoever are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God." (Romans viii. 14.)

Would that our Protestant friends might see that their theory of justification rests upon a mistake, by attributing to the word "faith," occurring in Holy Scripture, the sense of trust as the primary meaning, under the specious reason that trust supposes faith in gospel truths, and faith in gospel truths leads to trust in Christ for pardon; not perceiving that the same thing could be said of the fear and love of God, of repentance and of obedience, all of which, in germ, are implied in faith in gospel truths, and faith in gospel truths leads to them; and that therefore trust is no more apprehending justification than is faith in gospel truths itself and the other above-mentioned acts of virtue, but all must be placed only in the rank of dispositions or conditions toward being justified.

In a sermon on "Justification by faith," preached in 1812 in Albion Street Chapel, Leeds, by Mr. Jabez Bunting, and published at the request of the Methodist Conference, then assembled in that town, the preacher devotes a full page of his pamphlet to prove that justification is nothing else in itself than the pardon of our sins.* But regeneration, and therefore justification and pardon of sins, given for the first time, are clearly

* This agrees with the Catholic teaching, provided this pardon is not separated from the infusion of charity in the soul.

St. Bernard, speaking the sentiment of the Catholic Church, says: "Happy, and truly happy, he whose sins God will not lay to his charge. To be justified it needs but to have His favor whom we have offended. Not to sin belongs to God alone. *The indulgence of God is man's justice.*" (See work on the Love of God, and fragments from a fragment, by St. Bernard, translated by Marianne Caroline Patmore, and Coventry Patmore. page 87.)

attached by our Lord to the sacrament of baptism (St. John iii. 5), which is emphatically styled by St. Paul "the laver of regeneration" (St. Titus iii. 5); and again our Lord Jesus Christ has plainly and peremptorily attached the pardoning of sins at other times to the sacramental absolution of the priest (St. John xx. 21–23), and not to mere trusting; though hope or trust in God is in itself one of the necessary dispositions never to be omitted on coming to the sacrament of penance, as the Catholic Church teaches.

Let our Protestant friends not forget that there is such a thing as a perverted trust, called presumption, when a man will trust and at the same time neglect the necessary conditions and the use of the necessary means appointed by God to obtain salvation. In that case it is not trusting in Christ, but rather against Christ. This is not doing a thing pleasing to God, but rather tempting God. It is not to hope against human hope as Abraham laudably did, but rather to trust against godly trust.

Prayer.—O God, give light to see, and strength to embrace the truth, to Thy honor and glory, and for the salvation of our soul, through Jesus Christ our Lord *Amen.*

No. 7.—List of the Chief Fathers of the Church and of some other noted Ecclesiastical Writers.

Fl. signifies *flourished*; *c.* (*circa*) *about*; *d.* *died*.

The fathers of the Church are writers, for the most part bishops, who flourished in the Church within the first twelve centuries, who have always been highly esteemed for their great learning in matters of Christian religion, and almost all of them for their exalted holiness of life.

They are considered trustworthy witnesses of what was generally taught in the time in which they lived, and of the apostolic Tradition.

As such, they have been venerated by all antiquity and by the later ages; and their teaching about faith and morals has always been considered of great weight, especially when they all agree in what they state.

It is, therefore, important to know something about them, especially in what part of Christendom they lived, and in what time they flourished. The nearer they are to apostolic times, the weightier is their authority.

The following list will be useful to many:

Fathers of the First Century.

St. Barnabas, martyr, bishop of Cyprus, a disciple of St. Paul, who died about A. D. 76.

Hermas, flourished about the year 90.

St. Clement, Roman pontiff, *d.* 100.

Of the First and Second Centuries.

- St. Ignatius, bishop of Antioch, martyr, *d.* 114.
 St. Polycarp, bishop of Smyrna, martyr, *d.* 155.
 St. Papias, bishop of Hierapolis, *fl.* about 120.
 St. Quadratus, bishop of Athens, *fl.* about 123.

Of the Second Century.

- St. Justin of Sichein, Palestine, professor of philosophy, martyr, *d.* 163.
 Tatianus, disciple of St. Justin, martyr, *d. c.* 170.
 St. Hegesippus, a converted Jew, *d.* about 180.
 St. Apollinaris, bishop of Hierapolis, *fl.* about 176.
 Melito, bishop of Sardis, *fl.* about 176.
 Athenagoras, Christian philosopher, *fl.* about 176.
 St. Theophanes of Antioch, *d.* about 186.
 St. Dionysius, bishop of Corinth, *fl.* between 161 and 192.

Of the Second and Third Centuries.

- St. Irenæus, bishop of Lyons, terse, energetic, *d.* 202.
 Apollonius of Rome (Senator), *fl.* 180-210.
 Clement, priest of Alexandria, elevated in his style, *fl. d.* about 217.
 St. Hippolytus, bishop and martyr, *d.* 235.
 Tertullian of Carthage, concise, energetic, *fl.* between 195 and 230.

Of the Third Century.

- Caius of Rome, priest, *fl.* between 211 and 217.
 Minutius Felix of Rome, orator and governor, consultant, *fl.* about 220.
 Julius of Africa, *fl.* about 221.
 Origen, patriarch of Alexandria, too diffuse, *d.* 253.
 St. Cyprian, bishop of Carthage, martyr, vigorous, *d.* 258.
 St. Dionysius, bishop of Alexandria, *d.* 265.
 St. Gregory, Thaumaturgus, bishop of Cæsarea, *d.* 265-270.
 St. Archelaus, bishop of Cascari, *fl.* 276-282.
 St. Anatolius, bishop of Laodicea, *fl.* between 270 and 283.

Of the Third and Fourth Centuries.

- St. Victorinus, bishop of Pictavium, martyr, *d. c.* 302.
 St. Methodius, bishop of Patara, martyr, *d. c.* 303.
 St. Pamphilus of Cæsarea, apologist, martyr, *d.* 309.
 St. Peter, patriarch of Alexandria, *d.* 311.

Of the Fourth Century.

- Arnobius of Africa, rhetorician, *fl.* about 310.
 Lactantius of Fermo, rhetorician, *d.* about 325.
 Eusebius, bishop of Cæsarea, *d.* 340.
 St. James, bishop of Nisibi, *d.* between 338 and 350.
 Firminius, martyr, *fl.* about 340.
 St. Hilarius, bishop of Poitiers, styled by St. Jerome the "Rhone of Latin Eloquence," *d.*

- St. Eustachius, bishop of Antioch, *d.* 360–361.
 St. Athanasius, bishop of Alexandria, *d.* 371–373.
 Luciferus of Cagliari (Sardinia), *d.* 371.
 St. Basil, bishop of Cæsarea, pure and elegant, *d.* 373.
 Titus, bishop of Bostra, *d.* about 378.
 St. Ephrem Cyrus, deacon of Nisibi, Mesopotamia, *d.* 379.
 St. Zeno, bishop of Verona, *d.* about 380.
 St. Damasus from Spain, Roman pontiff, *d.* 384.
 St. Cyril, patriarch of Jerusalem, *d.* in the year 386.
 St. Gregory of Nazianzum, Asia Minor, archbishop of Constantinople, sublime, majestic, 189.
 St. Macarius, Senior (or the Elder), *d.* 390–391.
 St. Amphilochius, bishop of Iconium, *d.* after 394.
 St. Gregory, bishop of Nyssa, brilliant, pleasing, *d.* after 394.
 St. Philostratus of Brescia, *d.* between 387–397.
 St. Pacianus, bishop of Barcelona, *d.* 392.
 Didymus of Alexandria, *d.* about 395.
 St. Ambrose, bishop of Milan, concise, pointed, *d.* 397.
 St. Optatus of Africa, bishop of Milevi, *f.* about 370.
 St. Asterius, bishop of Amasea in Pontus, *d.* 400.

Of the Fourth and Fifth Centuries.

- St. Jerome of Stridon (Dalmatia), priest, *f.* 370, *d.* 420.
 St. Epiphanius, bishop of Salamina, Cyprus, *d.* 403.
 St. John Chrysostom of Antioch, archbishop of Constantinople, perspicuous, splendid, *d.* 407.
 St. Gaudentius, bishop of Brescia, *d.* about 410.
 St. Prudentius from Spain, styled “the glory of the Christian poets,” *f.* about 405.
 Rufinus of Aquileia, priest and monk, *d.* 410.
 Sulpicius Severus of Agen, priest, *f.* about 415.
 St. Augustine, bishop of Hippo, universally admired, *f.* 386, *d.* 430.
 St. Paulinus, bishop of Nola, *d.* about 431.

Of the Fifth Century.

- Sinesius, bishop of Ptolemais, *d.* 429.
 St. Nilus of Mount Sinai, abbot, *d.* about 430.
 St. Isidorus, priest of Pelusium, Africa, *f.* 400–434.
 Cassian John, priest of Marseilles, *f.* between 416 and 433.
 St. Cyril, bishop of Alexandria, *f.* between 412 and 444.
 St. Proclus, bishop of Constantinople, *d.* 446.
 St. Hilarius, bishop of Arles, *d.* 449.
 Marius Mercator, *f.* between 418 and 450.
 St. Peter Chrysologus, bishop of Ravenna, *f.* 433–450.
 St. Eucherius, bishop of Lyons, *d.* about 450.
 Theodoret, bishop of Cyrus (Zuars), province of Antioch, perspicuous and pleasing, *f.* 423, 458.
 St. Vincent of Lerins, priest of Provence, *f.* between 434 and 450.
 St. Basil, bishop of Seleucia, *d.* about 459.
 St. Leo the Great, Roman pontiff, eloquent, *d.* 461.
 Prosper of Aquitania (Gascogne) bishop, *f.* 428–463.

St. Maximus, bishop of Turin, *d.* about 465.
 Salvian, priest of Marseilles, *fl.* c. 430, *d.* c. 485.
 St. Apollinaris, of Sydon, priest, *d.* 484-490.
 Faustus, bishop of Riez, Provence, *d.* after 490.
 Gennadius, bishop of Marseilles, *fl.* c. 494.
 St. Gelasius, Roman pontiff, *d.* 496.

Of the Fifth and Sixth Centuries.

Vigilius, bishop of Tapsa, *fl.* about 485.
 St. Ennodius, bishop of Pavia, *d.* 521.
 St. Avitus, bishop of Vienne (France), *d.* 523.

Of the Sixth Century.

Boëthius Manlius, of Pavia, philosopher, martyr, *d.* 524.
 St. Fulgentius, bishop of Ruspa (Africa), clear, copious and sweet, *d.* 533.
 St. Cæsarius, bishop of Arles, *d.* 542.
 Facundus, bishop of Hermiana, *fl.* 545.
 Cassiodorus of Squillace (Calabria), abbot, *d.* c. 562.
 St. Gregory, bishop of Tours, clear and elegant, *d.* 595.
 St. John Climacus, monk of Palestine, *d.* 598.

Of the Sixth and Seventh Centuries.

Venantius Fortunatus of Italy, archbishop of Poitiers, *fl.* c. 565.
 St. Eulogius of Alexandria, *fl.* 581.
 St. Gregory the Great, Roman pontiff, *d.* 604.

Of the Seventh Century.

St. Isidore, archbishop of Seville (Spain), *d.* 637.
 St. Maximus, martyr, abbot of Constantinople, *d.* 662.
 St. Ildephonsus, archbishop of Toledo, 667.

Of the Seventh and Eighth Centuries.

Venerable Bede, priest and monk, native of Yarrow, Northumberland, England, *d.* between 732 and 735.

Of the Eighth Century.

St. Boniface of England, bishop of Maintz, Germany, and martyr, *d.* 755.
 St. John of Damascus, styled "the Scholastic," priest and monk of the Monastery of St. Saba, few hours from Jerusalem, *d.* about 730.
 St. Paulinus, bishop of Aquileia, *fl.* 780.

Of the Eighth and Ninth Centuries.

Alcuin of York, disciple of St. Bede, *d.* 804.

Of the Ninth Century.

Paschasius Rathbertus, monk of Soissons, *d.* 865.
 Hincmar, archbishop of Reims, *d.* 882.
 Anastasius, priest, keeper of the Vatican Library (Rome), *d.* 886.

Of the Tenth Century.

Atto, bishop of Vercelli, *d.* 945.
 Flodoardus or Frodoardus of Epernay, *d.* 966.
 Ratherius, bishop of Verona, *d.* 974.
 St. Dunstan, archbishop of Canterbury, *d.* 988.

Of the Eleventh Century.

Burchard, bishop of Worms, *f.* 1020.
 Lanfranc, archbishop of Canterbury, clear, *f.* 1070.
 Theophylact, archbishop of Constantinople, *d.* about 1071.
 St. Peter Damianus of Ravenna, bishop of Ostia, cardinal, *d.* 1072.

Of the Eleventh and Twelfth Centuries.

St. Bruno, Carthusian abbot, Cologne, *d.* 1101.
 St. Anselm of Aosta, Piedmont, archbishop of Canterbury, *d.* 1109.
 Hugo of St. Victor, priest, *f.* 1120.

Of the Twelfth Century.

Rupertus, abbot of Deutch, *d.* 1135.
 Peter Lombard, bishop of Paris, *f.* 1145.
 St. Bernard, abbot of Clairvaux (Champagne), *d.* 1153.
 Eminent ecclesiastical writers after this date are known chiefly by the name of **Scholastics**; as were
 Alexander of Hales, *d.* 1245.
 St. Thomas Aquinas, Dominican, *d.* 1272.
 St. Bonaventure, Franciscan, *d.* 1274.
 John Duns Scotus, Franciscan, *d.* 1308.
 John Gerson, *d.* 1439.

No. 8.—Canonized Founders of Orders and Congregations in the Church.

Month of Feast.	Names, Orders and Congregations.	Died. A. D.	Month of Feast.	Names, Orders and Congregations.	Died. A. D.
Jan. 15.	St. Paul, first hermit, . . .	342	Mar. 21.	St. Benedict, abbot, patriarch of Monks of the West, Order of Benedictines, . . .	543
Jan. 16.	St. Anthony, patriarch of Monks,	356	April 2.	St. Francis of Paula, Order of Minims,	1507
Jan. 29.	St. Francis of Sales, doctor, Visitation Nuns,	1622	April 8.	St. Albert, compiler of Carmelite Rules,	1214
Jan. 31.	St. Peter Nolasco, Order of Our Blessed Lady of Mercy,	1258	April 28.	St. Paul of the Cross, Passionists,	1775
Feb. 7.	St. Romuald, The Camaldoli,	1027	May 19.	St. Peter Celestine, founder of Celestines,	1296
Feb. 8.	St. John of Matha, Trinitarians,	1213	May 26.	St. Philip Neri, Oratorians, .	1595
Mar. 11.	St. John of God, Brothers of Charity, for the Sick, .	1550	May 31.	St. Angela of Brescia, Ursulines,	1540

Month of Feast.	Names, Orders and Congregations.	Died. A. D.	Month of Feast.	Names, Orders and Congregations.	Died. A. D.
June 6.	St. Norbert, Premonstratensians,	1134	Aug. 21.	St. Jane Frances de Chantal, foundress, with St. Francis de Sales, of many Convents of the Visitation,	1641
June 9.	St. Columb, abbot, founder of Monasteries,	597	Aug. 21.	St. Bernard Ptolemy, Olivetans,	1348
June 19.	St. Juliana Falconieri, the Mantellate Servites,	1340	Aug. 23.	St. Philip Benizi, promoter of the Order of the Servites of Mary,	1285
June 25.	St. William, Monte Vergine, near Naples,	1142	Aug. 27.	St. Joseph Calasanctius, founder of the Order of the Pious Schools, called also Piarists,	1648
July 12.	St. John Gualbert, Valombrosa,	1073	Aug. 28.	St. Augustine, bishop, doctor, Augustinians,	430
July 18.	St. Camillus de Lellis, for Visiting the Sick,	1648	Oct. 4.	St. Francis of Assisi, Order of Friars Minor,	1226
July 19.	St. Vincent de Paul, Lazarists, and Sisters of Charity,	1660	Oct. 6.	St. Bruno, Carthusian Monks,	1101
July 20.	St. Jerome Emilianus, The Somasky,	1537	Oct. 15.	St. Teresa, reformer of the Barefooted Carmelites,	1582
July 31.	St. Ignatius of Loyola, founder of the Society of Jesus,	1556	Oct. 21.	St. Ursula, patroness of Ursulines,	650
Aug. 2.	St. Alphonsus Liguori, doctor, Redemptorists,	1787	Nov. 4.	St. Charles Borromeo, Oblates of St. Charles,	1584
Aug. 4.	St. Dominic, Order of Friars Preachers,	1221	Nov. 20.	St. Felix of Valois, Trinitarians,	1221
Aug. 7.	St. Cajetan, Theatines,	1547			
Aug. 12.	St. Clare of Assisi, Poor Clares,	1253			

No. 9.—Chief Heresies.

1. The **ARIANS**, founded by Arius, an ambitious priest of Alexandria, who denied the divinity of our Lord, and said that He was not born of the Father, but made by Him ; that He was not equal to, but inferior to, the Father. These heretics were condemned at the Council of Nice, a town in Bithynia, A. D. 325, under Pope St. Sylvester I. The Nicene creed was drawn up at this council.

2. The **MANICHEANS**, who taught that our Lord did not take to Himself a *real* body, but only the appearance of a body, something similar to what the angels assumed when they visited holy persons, as mentioned in Scripture. They also said that there were two gods, a good one and a bad one. These heresies commenced about A. D. 280, and were finally condemned in the Fourth Lateran Council by Pope Innocent III., A. D. 1215.

3. The **MACEDONIANS**, founded by Macedonius, who had usurped the see of Constantinople. He denied the Godhead of the Holy Ghost, and said that He was only a creation like the angels, but of a higher order.

This heresy was condemned at the First Council of Constantinople, A. D. 381, under Pope St. Damasus I.

4. The PELAGIANS, founded by Pelagius, a native of Britain. He denied the existence of original sin in the soul of man, and taught that without the aid of grace man is perfectly able to fulfill the law of God. This heresy was condemned at a council of African bishops held at Carthage, A. D. 416, the decision of the council being confirmed by Pope St. Innocent I.

5. The NESTORIANS, founded by Nestorius, bishop of Constantinople. He taught that there were two separate persons in our Lord, one the Son of God, and the other the son of man; and that the blessed Virgin was not Mother of God, but only of the Man Christ. This heresy was condemned at the Council of Ephesus, A. D. 431, under Pope St. Celestine I. The latter part of the "Hail Mary" was added—"Holy Mary, Mother of God," etc.

6. The EUTYCHIANS, founded by Eutyches, who taught that there was only one nature, the divine, in our Lord. He said, that at the moment of the incarnation, the human nature was absorbed by, or changed into, the divine. This heresy was condemned at the Council of Chalcedon, A. D. 451, under Pope St. Leo the Great.

7. The SEMI-PELAGIANS taught that the beginning of faith and first desire of virtue came from the powers of man alone, unassisted by divine grace. They also said that the grace of final perseverance can be merited by our own efforts, and is not a free gift of God. This heresy was first taught by some priests of Marseilles. It was condemned at the Second Council of Orange, A. D. 529, the decrees of the council being confirmed by Pope Boniface II.

8. The MONOTHELITES said that Jesus Christ had no separate human will, but only a divine one. They were condemned at the Third Council of Constantinople, A. D. 680, under Pope St. Agatho.

9. The ICONOCLASTS, or breakers of holy images, rejected the use of holy images and pictures, and the practice of paying them due respect. They were condemned at the Second Council of Nice, A. D. 787, under Pope Adrian I.

10. The GREEK HERESY and SCHISM was commenced in 879 by Photius, who, though not a priest, took unjust possession of the see of Constantinople. This schism was consummated in A. D. 1054, by Michael Cerularius, who broke entirely away from the supremacy of the Popes, and established what is called the Greek Church. The Greeks say that the Holy Ghost proceeds from the Father alone, instead of from the Father and the Son, as taught by the Catholic Church from the beginning. Photius was deposed and condemned at the Fourth Council of

Constantinople, A. D. 870, under Pope Adrian II., and St. Ignatius was restored to his see.

11. The HERESY OF BERENGARIUS, who was archdeacon of Angers. He said that the body and blood of our Lord are not really present in the holy Eucharist, but only in figure. He was condemned at Rome, A. D. 1078.

12. The ALBIGENSES taught that there were two Gods and two Christs; they condemned marriage, denied all the sacraments and the resurrection of the body. It was whilst preaching to these heretics that the devotion of the rosary was revealed by the blessed Virgin to St. Dominic.

13. The WALDENSES taught that it was a heinous sin for a magistrate to condemn to death for any crime; that it was a mortal sin to take an oath; and that the clergy became reprobates by holding one farthing's worth of property. The Albigenses and Waldenses were condemned at the Third Lateran Council, under Pope Alexander III., A. D. 1179.

14. The HERESY OF WICKLIFFE. He taught that the Pope is not the visible head of the Church; that bishops have not preëminence over simple priests; that all ecclesiastical powers are either forfeited or are in abeyance during mortal sin; that man is bound to sin; that God approves of sin; that confession is quite useless; and that temporal princes should cut off the head of any ecclesiastic who sinned, etc. These doctrines were, after the death of Wickliffe, preached by John Huss and his followers in the towns and villages of Bohemia. Condemned at the Council of Constance, A. D. 1414.

15. The HERESY OF LUTHER. Luther was a monk of the Order of St. Augustine, and professor in the University of Wittenberg. Pride and jealousy induced him to attack the ancient faith, and invent a new creed. Pope Leo X. having granted a plenary indulgence, Luther was annoyed that the commission to preach it was given to the Dominicans, and not to his own order. He then attacked the doctrine of indulgences itself. He also taught that faith alone will save mankind; that the sacrifice of the Mass is an abomination; that there is no necessity for confession, abstinence, fasting, or any mortification whatever. He said that priests might marry; he denied the supremacy of the Pope; he wrote against purgatory, free will, and almost every article of Christian belief.

16. CALVIN, who is regarded as second only to Luther, was the founder of Presbyterianism. His chief stronghold was Geneva. He taught, among other things, that God created men on purpose to damn the greater number of them; that God is the author of all sin; and that man has no free will. He denounced not only the Pope, but bishops and priests also.

At the Council of Trent, held from 1545 to 1563 A. D., the heresies of Luther, Calvin, and others were condemned. The creed of Pope Pius IV. is grounded on the decisions of this council.

17. The JANSENISTS, so called after their leader, Jansenius, bishop of Ypres, in Flanders. He maintained that man was not free; that it was impossible to keep some of God's commandments; that all good works of unbelievers are sins; that God will punish us for not practicing virtues which are not in our power; that our Lord died only to save a few privileged souls, and not the whole human race. Two illustrious French bishops, Bossuet and Fénelon, defended the truth against these heretics. Christopher de Beaumont, archbishop of Paris (1746–1781), was also a great champion of the true faith, and by his virtues and exertions did much to put down this heresy, which had already been condemned by Pope Urban VIII., A. D. 1642, and by Pope Clement XI., A. D. 1705.

No. 10.—Cardinal Manning on Total Abstinence.*

“When I see around me every day the wreck of men, women and children, from the highest to the lowest class, the utter desolation of homes once happy and innocent, the destruction of the domestic life of the millions of our great working class, upon whom the whole fabric of our commonwealth must rest, I feel that temperance and total abstinence ought to be familiar thoughts in the minds even of those who have never in all their life been tempted to excess. If they would all conscientiously unite by example, by word, and by influence to save those who are perishing in the dangers from which they themselves are happily safe, many a soul and many a home now fearfully wrecked would, I believe, be saved.

“When St. Paul told the Christians in Rome that it ‘is good not to eat flesh and not to drink wine, nor anything whereby thy brother is offended, or scandalized, or made weak’ (Romans xiv. 21), he certainly did not intend to limit the wide reach of this principle of Christian charity to meats offered to idols. . . . If any self-denial on our part, in things that are lawful and to us altogether safe, shall help, or encourage, or support, or give even a shadow of strength to those to whom such lawful things are not only dangerous but often deadly, then assuredly the love of souls will prompt us to place ourselves at their side, and, in sharing their acts of self-denial, to give them a hand and a heart of sympathy.

“Now I say this not as a precept, but as a counsel. If it be good, as

* Extract from the introductory letter by His Eminence to Father Bridgett's interesting book, entitled *The Discipline of Drink*.

St. Paul says it is, freely to forego lawful things for the sake of others, it is certainly good for us, of our own free will, to offer any little mortification we can in reparation and expiation, and intercession for others. It is on this ground, as it seems to me, that total abstinence may be affirmed to be a wise and charitable use of our Christian liberty.

"And if, by laying on ourselves so slight a privation, we can in any way help those who are perishing, and those who are tempted, I do not think we shall ever have cause to regret that we freely chose that slight self-denial."

FIVE GOOD REASONS FOR TOTAL ABSTINENCE.*

The late Dr. Guthrie of Edinburgh said: "I have four good reasons for being an abstainer: My head is clearer, my health is better, my heart is lighter, and my purse is heavier." And we would add, "My ear is readier to the cry of the poor, and our self-denial will edify our neighbor." "Now, we that are stronger ought to bear the infirmities of the weak, and not to please ourselves." (Romans xv. 1.)

No. 11.—Lines on the Blessed Virgin by the American Poet, Longfellow.

"PRINCE HENRY (*on gaining a view of Italy after passing the Alps*).

"Oh, had I faith, as in the days gone by,
That knew no doubt, and feared no mystery:
This is indeed the blessed Mary's land,
Virgin and Mother of our dear Redeemer!
All hearts are touched and softened at her name;
Alike the bandit with the blood-stained hand,
The priest, the prince, the scholar and the peasant.
The man of deeds, the visionary dreamer,
Pay homage to her as one ever present!
And even as children, who have much offended
A too indulgent father, in great shame,
Penitent, and yet not daring unattended
To go into his presence, at the gate
Speak with their sister, and confiding wait
Til she goes in before and intercedes;
So men, repenting of their evil deeds,
And yet not venturing rashly to draw near
With their requests an angry Father's ear,
Offer to her their prayers and their confession,
And she for them in Heaven makes intercession.
And, if our faith had given us nothing more

* See *Temperance Lesson Book*.

Than this example of all womanhood,
 So mild, so merciful, so strong, so good,
 So patient, peaceful, loyal, loving, pure,
 This were enough to prove it higher and truer
 Than all the creeds the world had known before.*

No. 12.—Census of Religions in the World.

Dr. Hurst's *Outline History of the Church* (1875) gives the following populations to the creeds of the world :

Christianity,	. . . . .	407,000,000.
Judaism,	. . . . .	7,000,000.
Buddhism,	. . . . .	340,000,000.
Mohammedanism,	. . . . .	200,000,000.
Brahmanism,	. . . . .	175,000,000.
Confucianism,	. . . . .	80,000,000.
All other forms of religious belief,	. . . . .	174,000,000.

Of the Christian populations of the world, 131,007,449 are assigned to Protestantism ; 200,339,390 to Roman Catholicism ; and 76,390,040 to the Oriental churches. In the New World, comprising North and South America, the Roman Catholics are in the majority, having about sixty millions, and the Protestants about thirty-seven millions.*

According to Hubner, in his *Statistical Tables of all the Countries of the Earth*, there are in the German Empire 25,600,000 Protestants, 14,900,000 Catholics, 38,000 Orthodox Greek Christians, 512,000 Jews, 6,000 of all other denominations or of none. In Austro-Hungary there are 23,900,000 Catholics, 3,600,000 Protestants, 7,220,000 Greek and other Christians, 1,375,000 Jews, 5,000 Mohammedans and others. In France there are 35,390,000 Catholics, 600,000 Protestants, 118,000 Jews, 24,000 Mohammedans and others. In Great Britain and Ireland there are 26,000,000 Protestants of various denominations, 5,600,000 Catholics, 26,000 Greeks, etc., 46,000 Jews, 6,000 Mohammedans and others. In Italy there are 26,660,000 Catholics, 96,000 Protestants, 100,000 Greeks, etc., 36,000 Jews, 25,000 Mohammedans and others. In Spain there are 16,500,000 Catholics, and 180,000 adherents of other denominations (details not given). In European Russia there are 56,100,000 Orthodox Greek Christians, etc., 2,680,000 Protestants, 7,500,000 Catholics, 2,700,000 Jews, and 2,600,000 Mohammedans and others. In Belgium there are 4,920,000 Catholics, 13,000 Reformed Church, 2,000 Jews, and 3,000 belonging to other denominations. In the Netherlands there are 2,001,000 members of the Reformed Church, 1,235,000 Catholics, 64,000 Jews and 4,000 of other denomina-

* Behm and Wagner.

tions. In Sweden and Norway there are 4,162,000 members of the National Evangelical Church, 4,000 Greeks and other Christians, and 2,000 Jews; the number of Catholics is not officially given—it is estimated at less than 1,000.

No. 13.—Census of Catholics in the World.

The *Deutsche Reichszeitung* estimates the number of Catholics in the world as follows: Number of Catholics in France, 36,405,000; Austro-Hungary, 25,357,000; Italy, 27,942,000; Spain, 16,912,000; German Fatherland, 15,950,000; Russia (including Poland), 18,300,000; England, Ireland, Scotland, and Malta, 6,140,000; Belgium, 5,450,000; Portugal, 4,433,000; Holland, 1,652,000; Switzerland, 1,127,000; Turkey, 500,000; Roumania, 114,000; Montenegro, 25,000; Greece, 10,000; Leichtenstein, 9,000; Monaco, 7,000; Servia, 4,000; Denmark, 2,000; and Norway, 1,000—total in Europe, 153,344,000.

Brazil, 10,000,800; Mexico, 9,389,460.

United States, 8,000,000; Colombia, 2,950,017; Peru, 2,699,945; Bolivia, 2,325,000; Chili, 2,116,718; Argentine, 1,812,490; Venezuela, 1,784,197; Guatemala, 1,190,754; Ecuador, 946,053; Hayti, 550,000; Uruguay, 440,000; Salvador, 434,520; Honduras (census of 1858), 357,700; Nicaragua, 300,000; Paraguay, 293,844; San Domingo, 250,000; Costa Rica, 185,000; British America, 2,100,000; Spanish West Indies, 2,080,652; French, 340,000; Dutch, 34,000; Danish, 26,000—total in America, 51,400,391.

Philippine Islands, 5,700,000; British India, 1,600,600; Timor and Macao, 70,000; China, 423,887; Cochin China and Tonkin, 510,581; Japan, 20,000; Corea, 20,000; Mongolia, 5,000; Mantchooria, 9,000; Thibet, 9,300; Siam, 11,150; Cambodia, 11,000; Burmah, 11,950; Malaya, 6,000; Dutch Possessions, 31,324; Maronites, 530,000; United Jacobites, 35,000; Armenians in Syria and Asia Minor, 10,000; Chaldeans, 20,000; Melchites, 20,000; Levant (Latin Rite), 60,000; Siberia and Caucasus, 52,000—total in Asia, 9,166,192.

Algeria, 270,000; Reunion, 150,000; Noyotte and Nossi-be, 20,000; Tetuan, 15,000; Canary Islands, 283,000; Fernando Po, 500; Madeira, 121,753; St. Thomas, 21,441; Cape Verde, 90,604; Continent, 500,000; Cape and Natal, 30,000; Mauritius, 90,000; Madagascar, 30,000; Tunis, 26,000; and Egypt, 35,000—total in Africa, 1,686,998.

Australia, Tasmania, and New Zealand, 590,000; Sandwich Islands, 25,000; Wallis, 4,000; Futana, 1,000; Tonga, 2,000; Fiji, 5,000; Samoan Islands, 5,000; on French territory, 20,000—total in Australasia, 652,000. Grand total, 219,249,531 (about 220 millions).

No. 14.—Difficulties of Private Interpretation, by Father G. Bampffield, B.A., Oxon.*

"I was a young man when my inquiry into truth began. I wished to save my soul—to know the truth and do the right; I asked myself and others how I was to find the truth; the answer was ever the same, 'Search the Scriptures.'

"But here came a difficulty.

"I knew that the Scriptures were the Word of God; but I knew also that God's Writings are then only of use to us when we know what God meant by that which He wrote. God's Word, if we put to it the devil's meaning or man's meaning, is not God's Word at all. 'The letter killeth;' it is 'the spirit' which 'quickeneth.' † What we need is God's meaning of God's Word. The same Holy Ghost who wrote the Scriptures, He only can interpret them.

"Was it possible for me to miss this meaning? I read in the gospels that the Scriptures could be so misused. The devil tempted our Lord with Scripture texts, using God's Word with the devil's meaning (St. Matthew iv.); the Pharisees rejected our Lord by Scripture: ‡ 'Search the Scriptures, and see that out of Galilee a prophet riseth not' (St. John vii. 52), using God's Word, indeed, but perverted by man's sin: of the Sadducees our Lord said that though they read the Scriptures, they knew them not (St. Mark xii. 24); and the Apostles were 'foolish and slow of heart to believe all the things which the prophets have spoken.' (St. Luke xxiv. 25.) It was not the multitude who 'knew not the law' who condemned our dearest Lord, but the Pharisee, the scribe, and the lawyer, whose whole study was in the Sacred Writ.

"Nay, the Scriptures themselves told me plainly, § 'that no prophecy of the Scripture is made by private interpretation.' (2 St. Peter i. 20.) And, again, that in St. Paul's epistles, at least, there ¶ 'are certain things hard to be understood, which the unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other Scriptures, to their destruction.' (2 St. Peter iii. 16.) The Scriptures, then, can be used to our destruction, and who was I that I should think myself learned or stable? 'Thinkest thou,' said Philip to Queen Candace's chamberlain, ¶¶ 'that thou understandest what thou

* *St. Andrew's Magazine*, April, 1879.

† 2 Cor. iii. 6. "The letter killeth, but the spirit giveth life." (Prot. version.)

‡ "Search and look, for out of Galilee ariseth no prophet." (Prot. version.)

§ "No prophecy of the Scriptures is of any private interpretation." (Prot. version.)

¶ "Are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other Scriptures, unto their own destruction." (Prot. version.)

¶¶ "Understandest thou what thou readest? And he said, How can I, except some man should guide me?" (Prot. version.)

readest ?' who said 'How can I, unless some one show me ?' (Acts viii. 30, 31.)

"It was, then, I concluded, possible for me to miss the true meaning of God's Word ; and if I missed it, I missed it to my 'own destruction.' The fault lay not in the Scriptures, which are holy, but in my wretchedness, who misinterpreted.

"When I stated this difficulty to others, I received always the same answer, 'Pray to God the Holy Ghost, and He will guide you.' But here arose two or three difficulties.

"(a) I knew that without God's help no man can understand the Scriptures ; but I knew also, that God's help is given more or less in proportion to the fervency of prayer and the righteousness of him who prays. It is the 'continual prayer of a just man ;' or, as the Protestant translation renders it, 'the effectual fervent prayer of the righteous man' (St. James v. 16), not the lukewarm prayer of the unrighteous, that 'availeth much.' Dared I 'trust in myself that I was righteous ?' (Luke xviii. 9)—my prayer 'fervent and effectual ?' If conscience did not compel, humility would exhort me to think otherwise ; and, if so, how could I tell that the true meaning of Scripture was given me in answer to such worthless prayers as mine ? The fault lay not in God, who is ever ready to give to them that ask, but in the poverty of the asking and the asker.

"(b) But I found that, on this view, not only must I trust in myself that I was righteous, but also despise others. (St. Luke xviii. 9.) For I found that others did the very same thing which I did—namely, pray to the Holy Ghost, and yet explained Scripture in a sense wholly opposite to mine. If I learned from the Scripture that baptism was necessary to salvation, another from the very same Scripture would teach that baptism was not necessary to salvation, and that my doctrine was soul-destroying and hateful to God. If I prayed to the Holy Spirit, so did he ; if I was fully convinced, so was he ; if to my spirit I hoped that 'the Holy Spirit gave testimony that I was a child of God' (Rom. viii. 16), * the same claim also did he make. How could I tell that he was wrong and I right ? My prayers answered and his not ? Was I holier than he ? I dared not think so.

"Of one thing I was certain, that the Holy Ghost could not teach to me that a doctrine was true and to him that the same doctrine was not true. One of us was wrong, and teaching, what God hates, a lie ; but by what sure sign could I say what was wrong ?

"Sometimes I was told that these differences were not essential points ; but I could not understand this. Men certainly differ, for example, on the question whether baptism is necessary to salvation or not. Surely a de-

* "The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit that we are the children of God." (Prot. version.)

bate about a necessity is an essential point. In no worldly business, I am certain, in no question about the life of our bodies should we say, 'Such a thing may be necessary, but it is not essential for us to know whether it is necessary or not.'

"Moreover, who would dare to tell us which part of our Lord's teaching was essential and which not? 'Such a truth will save us, but such another truth He need not have brought from heaven.' This I knew, that not one jot or one tittle of His words shall pass away (St. Matt. v. 18; St. Matt. xxiv. 35), and that we dare not add to nor take from His words (Rev. xxii. 18, 19), but I knew not who was to be the judge of our Lord's teaching, and tell us which part we must believe and which we might reject.

"It is a marvel to me how men can believe that Christ, who is love, has so left Christianity in the world, that nearly nineteen centuries have passed away, and men are still in doubt about the very necessities of salvation. In the Catholic Church alone is no doubt.

"(c) The third difficulty which came to me, when I was told to pray to the Holy Ghost and He would guide me, was this. 'But then,' was my reply, 'if I can be mistaken when I interpret Scripture, how am I to tell when I am mistaken, and when not?' To this question I have to this day been unable to obtain an answer, except in the Catholic Church. I propose it once more for solution.

"The answer which I made to myself was that if our interpretations of Scripture are little more than guesses, in which we might be mistaken, we could never tell if we were right or not; and that, as a result, the possession of truth was to us impossible; if we once admit doubt we cease to know it as a truth. Most of all should this be the case with religious truth: if heaven is not a certainty it were hard to struggle for it; if it be doubtful that there are three persons in God, who could worship them? What martyr would bleed for an opinion which was possibly false?

"Our interpretations are fallible opinions; and opinions, however probable, are not certain truth. It seemed to me, then, that we had the choice of two evils, either to hold that each individual interpreter of Scripture is infallible, or to acknowledge that all interpretations of Scripture are fallible, and therefore all religious doctrines uncertain. I need not show the absurdity of the first alternative; for the upholders of private judgment are the very men who deny infallibility. I fear, then, we must accept the second, and own that there is no certain religious truth on earth, unless, indeed, the Catholic Church be right, and God has provided, in his mercy, a guide whom he has made infallible."

No. 15.—List of Some Protestant Sects in the United States of America.

Adventist or Second Adventist.
 Baptist (Regular).
 Free-Will Baptist.
 Seventh-Day Baptist.
 German Seventh-Day Baptist.
 Free Communion Baptist.
 Anti-Mission Baptist.
 Six-Principle Baptist.
 Cath. Apost. Church (not Roman).
 Christian.
 Christian Connection.
 Christian Perfectionist.
 Church of God.
 Congregationalist Unitarian.
 Congregationalist.
 Disciples (Campbellites).
 Dunkers.
 Episcopal (Protestant).
 Evangelical Association.
 Friends or Quakers.
 Hicksites.
 Lutheran.
 Mennonites.
 Methodist.
 Methodist Episcopal.

Methodist Protestant.
 Methodist Church.
 African Methodist.
 Zion African Methodist.
 Methodist Episcopal (South).
 Free Methodist.
 Western Primitive Methodist.
 Independent Methodist.
 Moravians (Unitas Fratrum).
 Mormon.
 New Jerusalem (Swedenborgian).
 Presbyterian.
 Presbyterians, Associated and United.
 Reformed Church (late Dutch Reformed).
 Reformed Church (late German Reformed).
 Reformed Mennonites.
 River Brethren.
 Second Advent.
 Shakers.
 Spiritualist.
 True Wesleyan.
 Unitarian.
 Unitarian Congregationalist.
 United Brethren in Christ.
 Universalist.

A CHRISTIAN'S RULE OF LIFE.

BY

ST. ALPHONSUS MARY DE LIGUORI,

**BISHOP OF ST. AGATHA, AND FOUNDER OF THE CONGREGATION OF THE
MOST HOLY REDEEMER.**

NEWLY TRANSLATED FROM THE ITALIAN, AND EDITED BY

ROBERT A. COFFIN, C.S.S.R.

Preface.

THE name of St. Alphonsus is too well known and loved, and the merits of his works too well appreciated, to make it necessary for the editor to say more than a few words by way of introduction to the present volume.

The favorable manner in which the prospectus of the new translations was received, has fully justified the grounds for believing that the time had now arrived when the world would welcome a complete edition of the saint's works, presented to them by the children of his own congregation.

It would be impossible to place before the reader the many letters of encouragement and support which the editor received at the commencement of the undertaking, especially from the venerable prelates and other distinguished ecclesiastics, whose approbation he was the most anxious to secure, and for which he desires in this place to express his grateful acknowledgments.

It is unnecessary to do more than just allude here to those still higher sanctions and approbations of the works of St. Alphonsus, conferred upon them by so many sovereign Pontiffs; but lest it might be objected that their interest and utility have lessened, and that their influence was a matter of time and place, of national character and disposition, the editor cannot refrain from inserting here, in order to meet such an objection, the striking words of two who have occupied the chair of St. Peter; and who, though at an interval of more than a quarter of a century the one from the other, bear the same testimony as well to the peculiar merits of the works of St. Alphonsus, as to the great utility of publishing a complete edition of them not only in Italy, but in those countries of which it is sometimes said that they are too cold to appreciate and enter into the glowing spirit, and almost enthusiastic devotion of a warm Italian heart.

Pope Leo XII. in a Brief dated February 19, 1825, to Signor Marietti, of Turin, approving of his complete edition of the works of St. Alphonsus, classes the saint among the number of the pious and learned writers raised up by divine Providence to stem the torrent of bad publications which at that time was coming down on society at large, and says of him, "that he is pre-eminent for a most tender piety and devotion, and

for the singular zeal with which, in his writings, he urges the frequentation of the Sacraments, and inculcates the love of Jesus Christ, and confidence in His merits and mercy, together with devotion to the Blessed Virgin Mother of God, and to the saints, which are indeed the surest bulwarks against every kind of demoralization." And of Signor Maretta himself, his Holiness says, "that in collecting and publishing the works of such a writer, he had deserved well, not only of religion, but, if it did but know its own real good, of society in general."

In like manner, his Holiness Pope Pius IX., in a letter to the Rev. Father Hugues, dated November 25, 1846, is pleased to express his joy and consolation on hearing that the German edition of St. Alphonsus's works had met with such great success "at a moment, too, when, by the insidious devices of the enemies of religion, so many pestilential books are in circulation on every side, to corrupt and deprave the minds and morals especially of those not on their guard against them." "Wherefore," his Holiness continues, "we greatly commend your pious undertaking, and we encourage you to continue with still greater diligence in endeavoring to spread the most wholesome writings of St. Alphonsus every day more and more. To read them cannot but be of the greatest advantage, not only to Christians in general, but also to ecclesiastics, and to those especially who have the care and direction of souls. From the works of that most holy and most learned man, written with an extraordinary tenderness of piety and devotion, breathe in every page a special love for Jesus Christ, and confidence in His merits and mercy; they inspire the highest devotion to the Virgin Mother of God and to the saints; they inflame men's hearts with the desire of frequenting the most holy Sacraments, and furnish a most copious supply of excellent admonitions, counsels, and injunctions for procuring and carrying on the work of the salvation of souls."

Nothing is wanting to add force to such testimonies as these; they speak for themselves. At the same time it must not be forgotten that the present edition rests also under the shadow and protection of St. Peter, having received the benediction of the Holy Father, in the form which is here prefixed.

With regard to the present volume, the editor believes that it is impossible for any one to make use of it with a good will, and with an earnest desire to advance in the way of perfection, corresponding to his state in life, without finding himself led on as it were irresistibly to the spirit of prayer, and to a more tender love of our dearest Lord and His most blessed Mother; and if so, the aim which St. Alphonsus had in view will have been gained as, indeed, it has been hitherto, wherever his works have been known and read.

Instances, moreover, might be mentioned of persons who owed their conversion, under God, to having met with *The Practice of the Love of Jesus Christ, the Treatise on Prayer*, etc., etc. Works of perhaps greater eloquence, humanly speaking, of a more finished style, had left little or no impression on their souls; sermons on the terrors of the divine judgments and the torments of an eternal fire had been to them as unmeaning words; and so for many a sad long year they remained in the cold indifference of a sinful life, until at length St. Alphonsus, with his oft-repeated words, "I love thee, I love thee, I love thee; pray, and you shall be saved; pray, for God will hear you; pray, and heaven is yours," roused them from the sleep of death; opened a new world, as it were, before them; filled them with encouragement and hope; spoke to them of sweeter joys and more lasting pleasures; and led them with broken but loving hearts to seek forgiveness through the intercession of Mary in the Sacred Heart of Jesus crucified.

The victory which neither eloquence nor learning could achieve, was reserved for the irresistible power of the simplicity of a heart burning with the love of God, and with desire for the salvation of souls.

That Almighty God will deign in like manner to make use of the present volume for the welfare both of those who are going on to perfection, and of those who, alas, are strangers to the love of Jesus, and to the compassion of His dearest Mother, who do not, and cannot, or rather know not, how to pray—of this there can be no doubt; for what He has done of old, He does now, and will ever do.

The success, then, of the present volume, as indeed of the whole undertaking, the editor leaves unreservedly in the hands of God; and should the pains and labor which have been bestowed upon it be of any worth, to Him, and to Him alone, be the praise.

"Neither he that planteth is anything, nor he that watereth, but God who giveth the increase."

In conclusion, the editor will only add, that all the references given by St. Alphonsus have been carefully corrected and verified, as far as it was possible.

The editor desires to avail himself of this opportunity of expressing his sincere thanks to the several friends who, by their learning, advice, and otherwise, have kindly assisted him in the present volume.

ROBERT ASTON COFFIN, C.S. S.R.

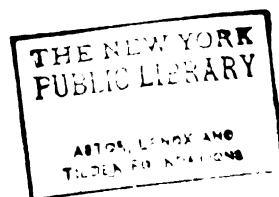
St. Mary's, Clapham.



Reciting the Rosary.

Reading Imitation of Christ.

THE FAITH OF OUR FOREFATHERS.



A CHRISTIAN'S RULE OF LIFE.

In this rule the first chapter treats of the means we must make use of to keep ourselves in the grace of God. In the second, the acts of those devout exercises which should be practised are set forth at length. In the third is shown the exercise of the principal virtues which a Christian ought to practice.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE MEANS OF PRESERVING THE GRACE OF GOD.

WE must be fully persuaded that in order to obtain eternal salvation it is not sufficient to wish to be saved ; but we must further take the means which have been left us by Jesus Christ. Otherwise, if we commit sins, it will not avail us in the Day of Judgment to excuse ourselves by saying that the temptations were great, and we were weak ; because God has given us the means, through His grace, to conquer all the assaults of our enemies ; if, then, we will not take advantage of them, and are overcome, the fault is our own. All men desire to be saved ; but because they omit to employ the means of salvation they sin, and are lost.

1. *To fly the occasions of sin.*—The first means is, to avoid all occasions of sin. It is impossible for any one who does not endeavor to fly from the occasions of sin, especially in the matter of sensual pleasures, to avoid falling into sin. St. Philip Neri said : “ In the war of the senses, the conquerors are the cowards who fly.” The occasion is like a veil put before our eyes, so that we can see nothing else—neither God, nor hell, nor the resolutions we had made. The Scripture says it is impossible to walk on burning coals without being burnt : “ Or can he walk upon hot coals, and his feet not be burnt ? ” (Prov. vi. 28.) So it is morally impossible for any one to put himself voluntarily into the occasion of sin and not to fall, although he may have made a thousand resolutions and a thousand promises to God. This is clearly shown every day by the

misery of so many poor souls who are plunged into vice for not avoiding the occasions. Anyone who has had the evil habit of sins of impurity must know that, in order to restrain himself, it is not enough merely to avoid those occasions which are absolutely proximate; for if he does not also fly from those which are not altogether proximate, he will easily fall again. Nor must we allow ourselves to be deceived by the devil into thinking that the person toward whom we are tempted is a saint; it often happens that the more devout a person is, the stronger is the temptation. St. Thomas Aquinas says that the holiest persons attract the most. The temptation will commence in a spiritual way, and will terminate carnally. The great servant of God, F. Sertorio Caputo, of the Society of Jesus, said that the devil first induces one to love a person's virtue, then the person, and then blinds a man and brings him to ruin. We must also fly from evil companions: we are too weak; the devil continually is tempting us, and the senses are drawing us to evil; the slightest suggestion of a bad companion is alone wanting to make us fall. Therefore the first thing that we have to do to save ourselves is to avoid evil occasions and bad companions. And we must in this matter use violence with ourselves, resolutely overcoming all human respect. Those who do not use violence with themselves will not be saved. It is true that we must not put confidence in our own strength, but only in the divine assistance; but God wills that we should do our part in using violence with ourselves, when it is necessary to do so, in order to gain paradise: "The violent bear it away." (St. Matt. xi. 12.)

2. *Mental Prayer*.—The second means is mental prayer. Without this, the soul will find it almost impossible to remain a long time in the grace of God. The Holy Spirit says: "In all thy works remember thy last end, and thou shalt never sin." (Ecclus. vii. 40.) He who often meditates on the four last things, namely death, judgment, and the eternity of hell and paradise, will not fall into sin; these truths are not to be seen by the natural eyes, but only with the eyes of the mind: if they are not meditated on, they vanish from the mind; and then the pleasures of the senses present themselves, and those who do not keep before themselves the eternal truths are easily taken up by them; and this is why so many abandoned themselves to vice, and are damned. All Christians know and believe that they must die, and that we shall all be judged; but because they do not think about it, they live far from God. Without mental prayer there is no light: we walk in the dark, and, walking in the dark, we do not see the danger we are in, we do not make use of the means we ought, nor pray to God to help us, and so we are lost. Without prayer we have neither light nor strength to advance in the ways of God, because without prayer we do not ask God to give us His grace,

and without so praying we shall certainly fall. It was for this reason that Cardinal Bellarmine declared it to be morally impossible for a Christian who did not meditate to persevere in the grace of God ; whereas, one who makes his meditation every day can scarcely fall into sin ; and if unhappily he should fall on some occasion, by continuing his prayer he will return immediately to God. It was said by a servant of God, that "mental prayer and mortal sin cannot exist together." Resolve, then, to make every day, either in the morning or in the evening—but it is best in the morning—half an hour's meditation. In the following chapter you will see, briefly explained, an easy method for making this prayer. For the rest, it is sufficient that during that time you should occupy your thoughts by reading some book of meditations, either this one, or one of the many there are ; and from time to time excite some good affection or some such aspiration as you will find pointed out in the following paragraph. Above all, I beg you never to leave off this prayer, which you should practise at least once a day, although you may be in great aridity, and should feel great weariness in doing it. If you do not discontinue it, you will be certainly saved.

Together with prayer, it is of great use to make a spiritual reading, in private, in some book which treats of the life of a saint or of the Christian virtues, for half or at least a quarter of an hour. How many, by reading a pious book, have changed their way of living and become saints, like St. John Colombino, St. Ignatius Loyola, and so many others. It would also be a most useful thing if you were every year to make a retreat in some religious house. But at any rate do not omit your daily meditation.

3. *The frequenting of the Sacraments.*—The third means is frequenting the sacraments of confession and communion. By confession the soul keeps itself purified ; and by it not only obtains remission of sins, but also greater strength to resist temptations. For this purpose you should choose your director, and always confess to the same, consulting him on all important matters, even temporal ones ; and obey him in everything, especially if you are distressed by scruples. He who obeys his confessor need not fear to go astray : "He that heareth you heareth me." (St. Luke x. 16.) The voice of the confessor is the voice of God.

The holy Communion is called heavenly bread, because as common bread preserves the life of the body, so the Communion preserves the life of the soul : "Except you eat the flesh of the Son of Man . . . you shall not have life in you." (St. John vi. 52.) On the other hand, to those who often eat this bread eternal life is promised : "If any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever." (St. John vi. 52.) Therefore the Council of Trent calls the Communion "the medicine which delivers us from

venial sins, and preserves us from mortal ones." You should, then, resolve to go to Communion at least once a week, being determined not to give it up for anything in the world ; there is no affair of greater importance than that of your eternal salvation. Indeed, the longer you remain in the world, the greater need you have of assistance, because your temptations are greater. A certain learned priest wrote three books against the opinion which I had maintained, namely, that a person who desires to keep himself in the grace of God may be allowed to communicate every week, although he may not be purified from the affection to venial sins. On this matter, I beg the reader to read the last answer in my *Instruzione Morale*, lately printed in vol. iii. append. 1, § 4, at the end. To make a good confession, as also a good communion, see the following chapter, where you will also find the acts which may be made before and after confession and communion by way of preparation and thanksgiving.

4. *To hear Mass.*—The fourth means is to hear Mass every day. When we assist at Mass we give more honor to God than all the angels and saints in heaven can give Him, because theirs is the honor of creatures ; but in the Mass we offer to God Jesus Christ, who gives Him an infinite honor. Read the following chapter, where you will also find a way of assisting at Mass with much profit.

5. *The visit to the Most Holy Sacrament and to the Blessed Virgin.*—The fifth means is to make a visit every day to the most holy sacrament in some church, and to the divine Mother before some devout image. Jesus Christ dwells on the altars of so many churches in order to dispense graces to all who come to visit Him ; and thus the souls of those who practise this beautiful devotion receive innumerable benefits from it. At the end of the next chapter you will find the prayer which may be said when visiting the most holy sacrament, and one you should say in visits to the divine Mother. The graces you ought especially to ask for, both from Jesus and Mary, are the love of God and holy perseverance till death.

6. *Prayer.*—The sixth means which I recommend you, above all, to put in practice is holy prayer. It is certain that without the divine assistance we can do nothing good for our souls. God also has declared that graces are granted to those only who ask for them : " Ask, and it shall be given you." (St. Matt. vii. 7.) Seek, and it shall be given you ; therefore, as says St. Teresa, " he who seeks not does not receive." Hence it is a common opinion of the holy fathers, with St. Thomas, that without prayer it is impossible to persevere in the grace of God, and to save oneself. But he who prays is sure of the help of God ; we have His word for it, which cannot fail, repeated so often in the sacred gospels : " All things whatsoever you ask when ye pray, believe that you shall receive,

and they shall come to you." (St. Mark xi. 24.) "Every one that asketh receiveth." (St. Luke xi. 10.) "Amen, amen, I say unto you, if you ask the Father any thing in my name, He will give it you." (St. John xvi. 23.) God grants everything that we ask Him for in the name of Jesus Christ. If, then, we wish to be saved we must pray, and pray with humility and confidence, and, above all, with perseverance. And this is why mental prayer is so useful, because then we remember to pray; otherwise we forget it, and so are lost. St. Teresa says that out of her desire of seeing every one saved, she would have wished to go to the top of a mountain and then to cry out, so as to be heard by all men, nothing but these words, "Pray! pray!" The ancient fathers of the desert in their conferences decided that there was no better means of saving ourselves than by continually repeating the prayer of David: "Incline unto my aid, O God! O Lord, make haste to help me!" So let us also try to say. Or else let us make use of the beautiful ejaculation of the blessed F. Leonard of Porto Maurizio: "My Jesus, mercy!" and the two principal graces which we must always ask for, as I have said before, are the love of God and holy perseverance. We must always ask the same graces from the most holy Mary, who is called the dispenser of all the divine graces; and when we pray to her, she certainly obtains them for us from God. Therefore does St. Bernard thus exhort us: "Let us seek grace, and let us seek it through Mary; for what she seeks she finds, and she cannot be disappointed."



CHAPTER II.

DEVOUT EXERCISES TO BE PRACTISED.

I. ACTS ON RISING IN THE MORNING.

MAKE the sign of the cross, and then say: (1) "My God, I adore thee and love thee with all my heart." (2) "I thank thee for all thy benefits, and especially for having preserved me this night." (3) "I offer thee whatever I may do or suffer this day, in union with the actions and sufferings of Jesus and of Mary, with the intention of gaining all the indulgences I can." (4) "I resolve to fly from all sin this day, and especially such a one (it is good to make a resolution, particularly about the fault into which we fall the oftenest); and I beg of thee to give me perseverance, for the love of Jesus Christ. I resolve to conform myself to thy holy will, and particularly in those things which are contrary to my inclination, saying always: 'Lord, thy will be done.'

"My Jesus, keep thy hand over me this day. Most holy Mary, take me beneath thy mantle. And do thou, eternal Father, help me, for the love of Jesus and Mary. O my angel guardian and my patron saints, assist me." An "Our Father" and a "Hail Mary" and the creed, with three "Hail Marys" in honor of the purity of Mary.

When you begin any work or study, say, "Lord, I offer thee this work." When you eat, "My God, bless this food and me, that I may commit no fault about it ; and may all be for thy glory." After having eaten, "I thank thee, Lord, for having done good to one who was thine enemy." When the clock strikes, "My Jesus, I love thee ; never permit me to offend thee again, and let me never be separated from thee." In adverse circumstances, "Lord, since thou hast so willed it, I will it also." In time of temptation often repeat, "Jesus and Mary !" When you know or doubt of some fault or sin you have committed, say immediately, "My God, I repent of having offended thee, O infinite goodness ; I will do so no more." And if it was a grievous sin confess it directly.

It would be a good thing for parents, masters and mistresses, to make the children under them learn these acts by heart, that they may make use of them afterward throughout their whole life.

2. METHOD OF MAKING MENTAL PRAYER.

Mental prayer consists of three parts : the preparation, meditation, and the conclusion. The preparation consists of three acts : one of faith in the presence of God ; of humility, with a short act of contrition ; and of prayer to be enlightened, saying as follows, for the first : "My God, I believe that thou art present with me, and I adore thee with all the affection of my soul." For the second : "O Lord, by my sins I deserve to be now in hell ; I repent, O infinite goodness, with my whole heart, of having offended thee." For the third : "My God, for the love of Jesus and Mary, give me light in this prayer, that I may profit by it." Then say a "Hail Mary" to the most blessed Virgin, that she may obtain light for us ; and a "Glory be to the Father," to St. Joseph, to your guardian angel, and to your patron saint, for the same end. These acts should be made with attention, but briefly ; and then you go on directly to the meditation.

In the meditation you can always make use of some book, at least at the commencement, and stop where you find yourself most touched. St. Francis of Sales says that in this we should do as the bees, which stop on a flower as long as they find any honey on it, and then pass on to another. It should also be observed that the fruits to be gained by meditation are three in number : to make affections, to pray, and to make res-

olutions ; and in these consists the profit to be derived from mental prayer. After you have meditated on some eternal truth, and God has spoken to your heart, you must also speak to God ; and first, by forming affections, be they acts of faith, of thanksgiving, of humility, or of hope : but above all, repeat the acts of love and contrition. St. Thomas says that every act of love merits for us the grace of God and paradise : "Every act of love merits eternal life." Each act of contrition obtains the same thing. Acts of love are such as these : "My God, I love thee above all things. I love thee with all my heart. I desire to do thy will in all things. I rejoice that thou art infinitely happy," and the like. For an act of contrition it is enough to say ; "O infinite goodness, I repent of having offended thee."

In the second place, you must pray ; ask God to enlighten you, to give you humility or other virtues, to grant you a good death and eternal salvation ; but, above all, His love and holy perseverance. And when the soul is in great aridity, it is sufficient to repeat : "My God, help me ! Lord, have mercy on me ! My Jesus, have mercy !" and if you do nothing but this, your prayer will succeed exceedingly well.

In the third place, before finishing your prayer, you must form a particular resolution ; as, for instance, to avoid some occasion of sin, to bear with an annoyance from some person, to correct some fault, and the like.

Finally, in the conclusion, three acts are to be made : in the first, we must thank God for the inspirations we have received ; in the second, we must make a determination to observe the resolutions we have made ; in the third, we must ask God, for the love of Jesus and Mary, to help us to keep our purpose. The prayer concludes by the recommendation of the souls in purgatory, the prelates of the Church, sinners, and all our relatives and friends, for which we may say an "Our Father" and a "Hail Mary." St. Francis of Sales exhorts us to choose some thought which may have struck us more especially in our prayer, that we may remember it during the rest of the day.

Benedict XIV. granted seven years' indulgence to those who make half an hour's mental prayer during the day, and a plenary indulgence if it is made every day for a month, on the condition of confession and communion.

3. ACTS TO BE MADE BY WAY OF PREPARATION AND THANKSGIVING BOTH FOR CONFESSION AND COMMUNION.

Before confessing, the penitent should beg for light from God to enable him to know what sins he has committed, and to obtain the grace of a true sorrow and purpose of amendment. He should also particularly recommend himself to Our Lady of Sorrows that she may obtain contrition for him. Then he may make the following acts :

Act before Confession.—O God of infinite majesty, behold at thy feet a

traitor, who has offended thee over and over again, but who now humbly seeks forgiveness. O Lord, reject me not ; thou dost not despise a heart that humbles itself : “ A contrite and humble heart, O God, thou wilt not despise.” (Ps. l. 19.) I thank thee that thou hast waited for me till now, and hast not let me die in sin, casting me into hell as I deserved. Since thou hast waited for me, my God, I hope that, by the merits of Jesus Christ, thou wilt pardon me in this confession for all the offences I have committed against thee ; I repent, and am sorry for them, because by them I have merited hell and lost paradise. But, above all, it is not so much on account of hell which I have merited, but because I have offended thee, O infinite goodness, that I am sorry from the bottom of my heart. I love thee, O sovereign good ; and because I love thee, I repent of all the insults I have offered thee. I have turned my back upon thee ; I have not respected thee ; I have despised thy grace and thy friendship. O Lord, I have lost thee by my own free will ; forgive me all my sins for the love of Jesus Christ, now that I repent with all my heart ; I hate, detest, and abominate them above every ill. And I repent not only of mortal sins, but also of venial sins, because these are also displeasing to thee. I resolve for the future, by thy grace, nevermore willingly to offend thee. Yes, my God, I will rather die than ever sin again.

And if a person confesses a sin into which he has often relapsed, it is a good thing to resolve particularly not to fall into it again, by promising to avoid the occasion of it, and to take the means pointed out by the confessor, or such as he may himself judge to be most efficacious, for correcting himself of it.

Act after Confession.—My dear Jesus, how much do I not owe thee ! By the merits of thy blood I hope that I have this day been pardoned. I thank thee above all things. I hope to reach heaven, where I shall praise thy mercies forever. My God, if I have hitherto lost thee so often, I now desire to lose thee no more. From this day forward I will change my life in earnest. Thou dost merit all my love ; I will love thee truly ; I will no longer see myself separated from thee. I have promised thee this already ; now I repeat my promise of being ready to die rather than offend thee again. I promise also to avoid all occasions of sin ; and to take such means as shall prevent my falling again. My Jesus, thou knowest my weakness ; give me grace to be faithful to thee till death, and to have recourse to thee when I am tempted. Most holy Mary, help me ! Thou art the mother of perseverance ; I place my hope in thee.

Preparation for Communion.

There is no means more efficacious in freeing us from our sins and in enabling us to advance in the love of God, than the holy Communion. Why is it, then, that some souls find themselves always in the same tepidity, and committing the same faults, notwithstanding the many

communions they make? This happens through the want of a proper disposition and preparation. Two things are requisite for this preparation. The first is to disengage our heart from all affections which are an impediment to the divine love. The second is to have a great desire to love God. And this, says St. Francis of Sales, should be our chief intention when we communicate, namely, to increase in divine love. Out of love alone, says the saint, ought our God to be received, who out of love alone gives Himself to us. For this end let us make the following acts.

Acts before Communion.—My beloved Jesus, true Son of God, who didst die for me on the cross in a sea of sorrows and ignominy, I firmly believe that thou art present in the most holy sacrament; and for this faith I am ready to give my life.

My dear Redeemer, I hope by thy goodness, and through the merits of thy blood, that when thou dost come to me this morning, thou wilt inflame me with thy holy love, and wilt give me all those graces which I need to keep me obedient and faithful to thee till death.

Ah, my God, true and only lover of my soul, what couldst thou do more to oblige me to love thee? Thou wast not satisfied, my Love, with dying for me, but thou wouldst also institute the most holy sacrament, making thyself my food, and giving thyself all to me; thus uniting thyself most closely to such a miserable and ungrateful creature. Thou dost thyself invite me to receive thee, and dost greatly desire that I should receive thee. O infinite Love! A God gives Himself all to me! O my God, O infinite Love, worthy of infinite love, I love thee above all things; I love thee with all my heart; I love thee more than myself, more than my life; I love thee because thou art worthy of being loved; and I love thee also to please thee, since thou dost desire my love. Depart from my soul, all ye earthly affections; to thee alone, my Jesus, my treasure, my all, will I give all my love. This morning thou dost give thyself all to me, and I give myself all to thee. Permit me to love thee; for I desire none but thee, and nothing but what is pleasing to thee. I love thee, O my Saviour, and I unite my poor love to the love of all the angels and saints, and of thy Mother Mary, and the love of thy eternal Father. Oh, that I could see thee loved by all! Oh, that I could make thee loved by all men, and loved as much as thou dost deserve!

Behold, O my Jesus, I am now about to draw near to feed on thy most sacred flesh. Ah, my God, who am I? and who art thou? Thou art a Lord of infinite goodness, and I am a loathsome worm, defiled by so many sins, and who have driven thee out of my soul so often.

Domine, non sum dignus. Lord, I am not worthy to remain in thy presence; I ought to be in hell for ever, far away, and abandoned by thee. But out of thy goodness thou callest me to receive thee. Behold, I come: I come humbled and in confusion for the great displeasure I have given thee, but trusting entirely to thy mercy and to the love thou

hast for me. I am exceedingly sorry, O my loving Redeemer, for having so often offended thee in time past. Thou didst even give thy life for me, and I have so often despised thy grace and thy love, and have exchanged thee for nothing. I repent, and am sorry with all my heart for every offense which I have offered thee, whether grievous or light, because it was an offense against thee, who art infinite goodness. I hope thou hast already pardoned me; but if thou hast not yet forgiven me, pardon me, my Jesus, before I receive thee. Ah, receive me quickly into thy grace, since it is thy will soon to come and dwell within me.

Come, then, my Jesus, come into my soul, which sighs after thee. My only and infinite good, my life, my love, my all, I would desire to receive thee this morning with the same love with which those souls who love thee most have received thee, and with the same fervor with which thy most holy mother received thee; to her communions I wish to unite this one of mine. O blessed Virgin, and my Mother Mary, give me thy Son; I intend to receive Him from thy hands. Tell Him that I am thy servant, and thus will He press me more lovingly to His heart, now that He is coming to me.

Acts after Communion.

The time after communion is a precious time for gaining treasures of grace, because the acts and prayers made whilst the soul is thus united to Jesus Christ have more merit, and are of more value than when they are made at any other time. St. Teresa says that our Lord then dwells in the soul enthroned as on a mercy-seat, and speaks to it in these words: "My child, ask of me what you will; for this end am I come to you to do you good." Oh, what great favors do those receive who converse with Jesus Christ after communion! The Ven. F. Avila never omitted to remain two hours in prayer after communion; and St. Aloysius Gonzaga continued his thanksgiving for three days. Let the communicant, then, make the following acts, and try during the rest of the day to go on making acts of love and prayer, in order to keep himself united to Jesus Christ, whom he has received in the morning.

Lo! my Jesus, thou hast come, thou art now within me, and hast made thyself all mine. Be thou welcome, my beloved Redeemer. I adore thee, and cast myself at thy feet; I embrace thee, I press thee to my heart, and thank thee for that thou hast deigned to enter into my breast. O Mary, O my patron saints, O my guardian angel, do you all thank Him for me! Since, then, O my divine King, thou art come to visit me with so much love, I give thee my will, my liberty, and my whole self. Thou hast given thyself all to me: I will give myself all to thee; I will no longer belong to myself; from this day forward I will be thine, and altogether thine. I desire that my soul, my body, my faculties, my senses, should be all thine, that they may be employed in serving and pleasing thee. To thee I consecrate all my thoughts, my desires, my affections, and all my life. I have offended thee enough, my Jesus; I de-

sire to spend the remainder of my life in loving thee, who hast loved me so much.

Accept, O God of my soul, the sacrifice which I, a miserable sinner, make to thee, and who desires only to love and please thee. Work thou in me, and dispose of me, and of all things belonging to me, as thou pleasest. May Thy love destroy in me all those affections which are displeasing to thee, that I may be all thine, and may live only to please thee.

I ask thee not for goods of this world, for pleasures, for honors ; give me, I pray thee, by the merits of thy passion, O my Jesus, a constant sorrow for my sins. Enlighten me, and make me know the vanity of worldly goods, and how much thou dost deserve to be loved. Separate me from all attachment to the world, and bind me entirely to thy love, that from henceforth my will may neither seek nor desire any thing but what thou willest. Give me patience and resignation in infirmities, in poverty, and in all those things which are contrary to my self-love. Make me gentle toward those who despise me. Give me a holy death. Give me thy holy love. And, above all, I pray thee to give me perseverance in thy grace till death ; never permit me to separate myself from thee again (*Jesu dulcissime, ne permittas me separari a te*). And I also ask of thee the grace always to have recourse to thee, and to invoke thy aid, O my Jesus, in all my temptations ; and the grace to ask thee always for holy perseverance.

O eternal Father, thy Son Jesus Christ has promised me that thou wilt grant me everything that I shall ask thee in His name : " If you ask the Father anything in my name, He will give it you." (St. John xvi. 23.) In the name, therefore, and by the merits of this Son, I ask for thy love and holy perseverance, that I may one day love thee in heaven with all my strength, and sing thy mercies for ever, secure of nevermore being separated from thee.

O most holy Mary, my mother and my hope, obtain for me these graces which I so desire ; as also a great love for thee, my Queen ; may I always recommend myself to thee in all my necessities !

4. METHOD OF HEARING MASS.

The same action is performed in the Mass as was accomplished on Calvary ; except that there the blood of Jesus Christ was really shed, while on the altar it is shed mystically ; but in the Mass the merits of the passion of Jesus are applied to each one in particular. To hear Mass, therefore, with great fruit, we must pay attention to the ends for which it was instituted, namely : 1. To honor God. 2. To thank Him for His benefits. 3. To satisfy for our sins. 4. To obtain graces. For this reason you may use the following prayer during Mass:

Eternal Father, in this sacrifice I offer to thee thy Son Jesus with all the merits of His passion : 1. In honor of thy majesty. 2. In thanksgiving for all the favors thou hast hitherto shown me, and for all those which

I hope to receive for all eternity. 3. In satisfaction for my sins, and for those of all the living and dead. 4. To obtain eternal salvation, and all the graces which are necessary for me to gain it.

At the elevation of the Host: My God, for the love of this thy Son, pardon me and give me holy perseverance.

At the elevation of the Chalice: By the blood of Jesus, give me thy love and a holy death.

At the communion of the priest make a spiritual communion, saying: My Jesus, I love thee, and desire to possess thee. I embrace thee, and I will nevermore separate myself from thee.

5. ACTS TO BE MADE IN VISITING THE MOST HOLY SACRAMENT AND THE DIVINE MOTHER.

My Lord Jesus Christ, who, for the love thou bearest to mankind, dost remain night and day in this sacrament, full of pity and love, awaiting, calling, and receiving all who come to visit thee; I believe that thou art present in the sacrament of the altar; I adore thee from the depths of my own nothingness; I thank thee for the many graces thou hast given me, and especially for having given me thyself in this sacrament; for having given me Mary thy mother as my advocate, and for having called me to visit thee in this church. I salute thy most amiable and most loving heart; and I do so, first, in thanksgiving for this great gift; second, to atone for all the insults thou hast received in this sacrament from all infidels, heretics, and bad Catholics; third, I intend in this visit to adore thee in all those places where thou, thus veiled in the most holy sacrament, art least revered and most abandoned. My Jesus, I love thee with my whole heart. I am sorry that I have hitherto so often offended thy infinite goodness. With the help of thy grace, I resolve to displease thee no more; and, unworthy as I am, I now consecrate myself wholly to thee; I renounce and give to thee my will, my affections, my desires, and all that is mine. Henceforward do with me, and all that belongs to me, whatsoever thou pleasest. I ask for nothing but thee and thy holy love, final perseverance, and a perfect fulfillment of thy will. I recommend to thee the souls in purgatory, especially those who were most devout to this most holy sacrament, and to most holy Mary. I also recommend to thee all poor sinners. And lastly, my beloved Saviour, I unite all my affections with those of thy most loving heart; and thus united, I offer them to thy eternal Father; and in thy name I beseech Him to accept and grant them.

On visiting any image of the ever-blessed Virgin.—Most holy, immaculate Virgin Mary, my Mother, I, the most miserable of sinners, have this day recourse to thee, the Mother of my Lord, the Queen of the universe,

the advocate, the hope, the refuge of sinners. I worship thee, O great Queen, and I thank thee for the many favors thou hast hitherto obtained for me; especially for having delivered me from hell, which I have so often deserved. I love thee, O most amiable Lady, worthy of all love; and for the love I bear thee, I promise to serve thee always, and to do everything in my power to make others serve thee also. In thee do I hope; I place my salvation in thy hands. Accept me for thy servant, receive me under thy mantle, O Mother of mercy. Thou art all-powerful with God; free me, then, from all temptations, or at least obtain for me strength to conquer them as long as I live. From thee I beg a true love of Jesus Christ; and by thy help I hope for a good death. I beseech thee, Mother, by the love thou bearest to God, that thou wilt always help me, but especially at the last moment of my life. Leave me not till thou shalt see me safe in heaven, blessing thee, and singing thy mercies for all eternity. Amen. This is my hope. So may it be.

6. CHRISTIAN ACTS, TO BE MADE IN THE EVENING BEFORE GOING TO BED.

Before going to rest, make your examination of conscience in the following manner: First thank God for all the favors you have received; then cast a glance over all the actions you have done, and the words you have spoken, during the day, repenting of all the faults you have committed. Afterward make the Christian acts in the following manner:

Act of faith.—O my God, who art infallible truth, because thou hast revealed it to thy Church, I believe all that she proposes to my belief. I believe that thou art my God, the Creator of all things; that thou dost reward the just with an eternal paradise, and dost punish the wicked in hell for all eternity. I believe that thou art one in essence, and three in persons, namely Father, Son and Holy Ghost. I believe in the incarnation and death of Jesus Christ. I believe, in fine, all that the holy Church believes. I thank thee for having made me a Christian; and I protest that I will live and die in this holy faith.

Act of hope.—O my God, confiding in thy promises, because thou art powerful, faithful and merciful, I hope, through the merits of Jesus Christ, to obtain pardon of my sins, final perseverance, and the glory of paradise.

Act of love and contrition.—O my God, because thou art infinite goodness, worthy of infinite love, I love thee with all my heart above all things; and for the love of thee I love my neighbor also. I repent with all my heart, and am sorry above all things for all my sins, because by them I have offended thy infinite goodness. I resolve, by the help of thy grace, which I beseech thee to grant me now and always, rather to die than ever to offend thee again. I propose, also, to receive the holy sacraments during my life, and at the hour of my death.

It is well to know that, to those who make these Christian acts with the desire of receiving the holy sacraments during their life and at their death, Benedict XIII. granted seven years' indulgence; and a plenary indulgence, applicable to the souls in purgatory, when they are said regularly for a month; as also a plenary indulgence in *articulo mortis*. Besides, by a concession of Benedict XIV., the indulgence may be gained several times a day by any one who recites the above acts, provided he does so with the intention of gaining the indulgence.

Conclude the whole by saying the rosary and the litany of the blessed Virgin.

Devout acts to be made every day.—I adore thee, my God, most holy Trinity, Father, Son and Holy Ghost, three persons and one only God.

I humble myself in the abyss of my nothingness to the will of thy infinite majesty.

I firmly believe all that thou hast deigned to make known to me by means of the Holy Scripture and thy holy Church, because thou hast said it; and I am ready to give my life a thousand times for this faith.

I place all my hope in thee. Whatever good I may have, whether spiritual or temporal, either in this life or in the next, I hope for from thee, through the merits of Jesus Christ, O God, my life and my only hope.

I love thee, infinite goodness, with all the affection of my heart and of my soul, because thou dost merit all my love. I wish I knew how to love thee as the angels, the saints, and just men love thee. I unite my imperfect love with that which all the saints, most holy Mary, and Jesus Christ bear to thee.

My God, because thou art the supreme good, infinitely worthy of being loved and served, I am sorry and repent of all my sins, detesting them as much as possible above every other evil. I resolve for the future rather to die than to consent to anything that may give thee the slightest displeasure.

I offer thee now and forever my body, my soul, and all my senses and faculties, my memory, my understanding, and my will. Do with me, Lord, and with all that belongs to me, what thou pleasest. Give me thy love and final perseverance, and grant that in all temptations I may always have recourse to thee.

I resolve to employ myself entirely in those things which are pleasing to thee, being ready to suffer any pain and labor in order to please thee, saying always, Lord, may thy will be done.

I desire that all should serve and love thee. I would gladly spend my time in persuading all mankind to love and honor thy majesty.

I offer to thy majesty all the works I shall ever do, steeping them in the blood of Jesus, my Redeemer.

I intend to gain all the indulgences I can in my actions this day, and to apply them by way of suffrage to the souls in purgatory.

I recommend to thee all the souls in purgatory, as also all sinners;

enlighten and strengthen these unhappy creatures, that they may know and love thee.

I rejoice exceedingly that thy happiness is infinite, and will never have an end.

I thank thee for all the graces and benefits which thou hast bestowed upon all mankind, but especially upon me, who have been more ungrateful than others.

My beloved Jesus, I take refuge within thy sacred wounds: do thou there defend me this day, and forever, from all temptations, till thou shalt grant me to see thee and love thee eternally in paradise. Amen. This is my hope, and so may it be.

7. DEVOUT PRAYERS TO JESUS AND MARY TO OBTAIN THE GRACES NECESSARY FOR SALVATION.

Prayer to Jesus Christ to obtain His holy love.—My crucified Jesus, I confess thee to be the true Son of God and my Saviour. I adore and thank thee for the death thou didst suffer for me. My dear Redeemer, if I have hitherto done nothing but offend thee, I am now sorry for it above all things, and I desire nothing but to love thee. Thou hast promised to hear those who pray to thee; by the merits of thy passion I ask thee to give me thy holy love. Ah, draw my heart entirely to thyself, that from this day forward I may love thee with all my strength, and may love none other but thee; and so may I one day come to love thee for all eternity in paradise.

Prayer to obtain final perseverance.—O sovereign and eternal God, I thank thee for having created me; for having redeemed me by means of Jesus Christ; for having made me a Christian by calling me to the true faith, and giving me time to repent after the many sins I have committed. O infinite goodness, I love thee above all things; and I repent with all my heart of all my offences against thee. I hope thou hast already pardoned me; but I am continually in danger of again offending thee. For the love of Jesus Christ, I beg of thee holy perseverance till death. Thou knowest my weakness; help me, then, and permit me not ever again to separate myself from thee. Rather let me die a thousand times, than ever again to lose thy grace. O Mary, my mother, obtain for me holy perseverance.

Another prayer to obtain final perseverance.—Eternal Father, I humbly adore and thank thee for having created me, and for having redeemed me by means of Jesus Christ. I thank thee for having made me a Christian by giving me the true faith, and by adopting me for thy child in holy

baptism. I thank thee for having given me time for repentance after my many sins, and for having (as I hope) pardoned all my offences against thee. I renew my sorrow for them, because I have displeased thee. O infinite goodness! I thank thee also for having preserved me from falling again, as often as I should have done, if thou hadst not held me up and saved me. But my enemies do not cease to fight against me, nor will they until death, that they may again have me for their slave; if thou dost not keep and help me continually by thine assistance, I shall be wretched enough to lose thy grace anew. I therefore pray thee, for the love of Jesus Christ, to grant me holy perseverance till death. Thy Son Jesus has promised that thou wilt grant us whatever we ask for in His name. By the merits then of Jesus Christ, I beg of thee for myself, and for all those who are in thy grace, the grace of nevermore being separated from thy love, but that we may always love thee in this life and in the next. Mary, Mother of God, pray to Jesus for me.

The same prayer to obtain final perseverance.—Eternal God, I adore and thank thee for having created and redeemed me by means of Jesus Christ; for having made me a child of thy holy Church; for having waited for me when I was in sin; for having pardoned me so often, and preserved me from many faults, into which I should have fallen again, if thou hadst not helped me by thy grace. But my enemies will not cease tempting me till death; if thou dost not assist me, I shall offend thee more than before. For the love of Jesus Christ, give me holy perseverance. Jesus Christ has promised that thou wilt grant us all those graces which we ask for in His name; by the merits, then, of this thy Son, I beg of thee the grace nevermore to separate myself from thee (*ne permittas me separari a te*). And this grace I also ask for all who are now in thy friendship. I know certainly that if I continue to ask for perseverance, I shall obtain it, because thou hast promised to hear those who pray to thee. My only fear is, that I shall omit on some occasion to recommend myself to thee, and so I shall be lost. I therefore beseech thee to give me this grace in the name of Jesus and Mary. Thus, my God, do I certainly hope to die in thy grace, and to come and love thee in paradise, where I shall be secure of nevermore being separated from thee, and shall love thee for all eternity. Amen.

Prayer to Jesus Christ, to obtain His holy love.—My crucified love, my dear Jesus! I believe in thee, and confess thee to be the true Son of God and my Saviour. I adore thee from the abyss of my own nothingness, and I thank thee for the death thou didst suffer for me, that I might obtain the life of divine grace. My beloved Redeemer, to thee I owe all my salvation. Through thee I have hitherto escaped hell; through thee have I received the pardon of my sins. But I am so ungrateful, that, instead

of loving thee, I have repeated my offences against thee. I deserve to be condemned, so as not to be able to love thee any more : but no, my Jesus, punish me in any other way, but not in this. If I have not loved thee in time past, I love thee now ; and I desire nothing but to love thee with all my heart. Without thy help I can do nothing. Since thou dost command me to love thee, give me also the strength to fulfil this thy sweet and loving precept. Thou hast promised to grant all that we ask of thee : "You shall ask whatever you will, and it shall be done unto you." (St. John xv. 7.) Confiding, then, in this promise, my dear Jesus, I ask, first of all, pardon of all my sins ; and I repent, above all things, because I have offended thee, O infinite goodness. I ask for holy perseverance in thy grace till my death. But, above all, I ask for the gift of thy holy love. Ah, my Jesus, my hope, my love, my all, inflame me with that love which thou didst come on earth to enkindle (*Tui amoris in me ignem accende*). For this end, make me always live in conformity with thy holy will. Enlighten me, that I may understand more and more how worthy thou art of our love, and that I may know the immense love thou hast borne me, especially in giving thy life for me. Grant, then, that I may love thee with all my heart, and may love thee always, and never cease to beg of thee the grace to love thee in this life ; that living always, and dying in thy love, I may come one day to love thee with all my strength in heaven, never to leave off loving thee for all eternity.

O Mother of fair love, my advocate and refuge, Mary, who art of all creatures the most beautiful, the most loving, and the most beloved of God and whose only desire it is to see Him loved, ah, by the love thou bearest to Jesus Christ, pray for me, and obtain for me the grace to love Him always, and with all my heart. This I ask and hope for from thee. Amen.

The same prayer, to be said every day to Jesus Christ, to obtain His holy love.—My crucified love and my most sweet Jesus, I believe in thee, and confess thee to be true Son of God and Saviour of the world ! I adore thee from the abyss of my misery, and thank thee for the death which thou didst suffer, to obtain for me the life of divine grace. O most faithful of all friends ! O most loving of all fathers ! O kindest of all masters ! my beloved Redeemer, to thee I am indebted for my salvation, for my soul, my body, and my whole self. Thou hast delivered me from hell ; through thee I have received the pardon of my sins ; through thee do I hope for paradise. But my ingratitude is so great, that instead of loving thee, after so many mercies and special endearments of love, I have only offended thee afresh. I confess that I deserve not to be allowed to love thee any more. But no, my Jesus, choose some other punishment for me, and not this. If I have despised thee up to this time, now I love thee, and I desire to love thee with all my heart. Thou knowest very well that

without thy help I can do nothing. Since, then, thou dost command me to love thee, and dost offer me thy grace—provided I ask it in thy name, confiding in thy goodness, and in the promise thou hast made me, saying, “Whatsoever you shall ask the Father in my name, that I will do” (St. John xiv. 13)—I present myself, poor as I am, before the throne of thy mercy; and by the merits of thy passion, I ask thee first to pardon all my sins, of which I repent with all my soul, because by them I have offended thee, who art infinite goodness. Pardon me, then, and at the same time, give me holy perseverance till death; grant me also the gift of thy holy love.

Ah, my Jesus, my hope, and my only love, my life, my treasure, my all, shed over my soul that light of truth and that fire of love, which thou didst come to bring into the world. Enlighten me to know every day better why thou shouldst be loved, and to see the immense love thou hast shown me in suffering and dying for me. Ah, grant that the same love may be in me as that with which thy eternal Father loves thee. And as He is in thee, and is one with thee, so may I, by means of a true love, be in thee, and by a perfect union of will become one with thee. Grant me, then, O my Jesus, the grace of loving thee with all my affections, that I may love thee always, and ever beg the grace to love thee; so that, ending my life in thy love, I may come to love thee in heaven with a purer and more perfect love, never to cease loving thee, and to possess thee for all eternity.

O Mother of beautiful love, most blessed Virgin, my advocate, my mother, my hope after Jesus—who art of all creatures the most loving toward God, and desirest nothing but that He should be loved by all—ah, for the love of this Son, dying before thine eyes for my salvation, pray for me, and obtain for me the grace to love Him always, and with all my heart. I ask it of thee, and from thee do I hope to obtain it. Amen.

Prayer to obtain confidence in the merits of Jesus Christ, and in the intercession of Mary.—Eternal Father I thank thee for myself, and on behalf of all mankind, for the great mercy that thou hast shown us in sending thy Son to be made man, and to die to obtain our salvation; I thank thee for it, and I should wish to offer thee in thanksgiving all that love which is due for such an inestimable benefit. By His merits our sins are pardoned, and thy justice is satisfied for the punishment we had merited; by these merits thou dost receive us miserable sinners into thy grace, while we deserve nothing but hatred and chastisement. Thou dost receive men to reign in paradise. Finally, thou hast bound thyself, in consideration of these merits, to grant all gifts and graces to those who ask for them in the name of Jesus Christ.

I thank thee also, O infinite goodness, that, in order to strengthen our confidence, besides giving us Jesus Christ as our Redeemer, thou hast also given us thy beloved daughter Mary as our advocate; so that, with that heart full of mercy which thou hast given her, she may never cease to succor by her intercession any sinner who may have recourse to her; and this intercession is so powerful with thee, that thou canst not deny her any grace which she asks of thee.

Hence it is thy will that we should have a great confidence in the merits of Jesus, and in the intercession of Mary. But this confidence is thy gift, and it is a great gift which thou dost grant to those only who ask thee for it. This confidence, then, in the blood of Jesus Christ, and in the patronage of Mary, I beg of thee, through the merits of Jesus and Mary. To thee, also, my dear Redeemer, do I turn; it was to obtain for me this confidence in thy merits that thou didst sacrifice thy life on the cross for me, who was worthy only of punishment. Accomplish, then, the end for which thou hast died; enable me to hope for all things through confidence in thy passion. And O Mary, my Mother, and my hope after Jesus, obtain for me a firm confidence, first in the merits of Jesus thy Son, and then in the intercession of your prayers—prayers which are all-powerful in gaining all they ask. O my beloved Jesus! O sweet Mary! I trust in you: to you do I give my soul; you have loved it so much, have pity on it, and save it.

Prayer to obtain the grace of being constant in prayer.—O God of my soul, I hope, in thy goodness, that thou hast pardoned all my offences against thee, and that I am now in a state of grace. I thank thee for it with all my heart, and I hope to thank thee for all eternity (*Misericordias Domini in æternum cantabo*). I know that I have fallen because I have not had recourse to thee when I was tempted, to ask for holy perseverance. For the future, I firmly resolve to recommend myself always to thee, and especially when I see myself in danger of again offending thee. I will always fly to thy mercy, invoking always the most holy names of Jesus and Mary, with full confidence that when I pray thou wilt not fail to give me the strength which I have not of myself to resist my enemies. This I resolve and promise to do. But of what use, O my God, will all these resolutions and promises be, if thou dost not assist me with thy grace to put them in practice, that is, to have recourse to thee in all dangers? Ah, eternal Father! help me, for the love of Jesus Christ; and let me never omit recommending myself to thee whenever I am tempted. I know that thou dost always help me when I have recourse to thee; but my fear is, that I should forget to recommend myself to thee, and so my negligence will be the cause of my ruin, that is, the loss of thy grace, the greatest evil that can happen to me. Ah, by the merits of Jesus Christ, give me

grace to pray to thee ; but grant me such an abundant grace that I may always pray, and pray as I ought. O my Mother Mary, whenever I have had recourse to thee, thou hast obtained for me the help which has kept me from falling. Now I come to beg of thee to obtain a still greater grace, namely, that of recommending myself always to thy Son and to thee in all my necessities. My Queen, thou obtainest all thou dost desire from God by the love thou bearest to Jesus Christ ; obtain for me now this grace which I beg of thee, namely, to pray always, and never to cease praying till I die. Amen.

Prayer to be said every day, to obtain the graces necessary for salvation.

—Eternal Father, thy Son has promised that thou wilt grant us all the graces which we ask thee for in His name. In the name, therefore, and by the merits of Jesus Christ, I ask the following graces for myself and for all mankind. And first, I pray thee to give me a lively faith in all that the holy Roman Church teaches me. Enlighten me, also, that I may know the vanity of the goods of this world, and the immensity of the infinite good that thou art ; make me also see the deformity of the sins I have committed, that I may humble myself and detest them as I ought ; and, on the other hand, show me how worthy thou art by reason of thy goodness, that I should love thee with all my heart. Make me know also the love thou hast borne me, that from this day forward I may try to be grateful for so much goodness. Second, give me a firm confidence in thy mercy of receiving the pardon of my sins, holy perseverance, and, finally, the glory of paradise, through the merits of Jesus Christ and the intercession of Mary. Third, give me a great love toward thee, which shall detach me from the love of this world and of myself, so that I may love none other but thee, and that I may neither do nor desire anything but what is for thy glory. Fourth, I beg of thee a perfect resignation to thy will, in accepting with tranquillity sorrows, infirmities, contempt, persecutions, aridity of spirit, loss of property, of esteem, of relations, and every other cross which shall come to me from thy hands. I offer myself entirely to thee, that thou mayest do with me and all that belongs to me what thou plearest ; do thou only give me light and strength to do thy will ; and especially at the hour of death help me to sacrifice my life to thee with all the affection I am capable of, in union with the sacrifice which thy Son Jesus Christ made of His life on the cross on Calvary. Fifth, I beg of thee a great sorrow for my sins, which may make me grieve over them as long as I live, and weep for the insults I have offered thee, the sovereign good, who art worthy of infinite love, and who hast loved me so much. Sixth, I pray thee to give me the spirit of true humility and meekness, that I may accept with peace, and even with joy, all the contempt, ingratitude and ill-treatment that I may receive. At the same

time I also pray thee to give me perfect charity, which shall make me wish well to those who have done evil to me, and to do what good I can, at least by praying, for those who have in any way injured me. Seventh, I beg of thee to give me a love for the virtue of holy mortification, by which I may chastise my rebellious senses, and cross my self-love ; at the same time, I beg thee to give me holy purity of body, and the grace to resist all bad temptations by ever having recourse to thee and thy most holy Mother. Give me grace faithfully to obey my spiritual father and all my superiors in all things. Give me an upright intention, that in all I desire and do I may seek only thy glory, and to please thee alone. Give me a great confidence in the passion of Jesus Christ, and in the intercession of Mary immaculate. Give me a great love toward the most adorable sacrament of the altar, and a tender devotion and love to thy holy Mother. Give me; I pray thee, above all, holy perseverance, and the grace always to pray for it, especially in time of temptation and at the hour of death.

Lastly, I recommend to thee the holy souls of purgatory, my relatives and benefactors ; and in an especial manner I recommend to thee all those who hate me or who have in any way offended me ; I beg of thee to render them good for the evil they have done or wish to do me. Finally, I recommend to thee all infidels, heretics, and all poor sinners ; give them light and strength to deliver themselves from sin. Oh, most loving God, make thyself known and loved by all, but especially by those who have been more ungrateful to thee than others, so that by thy goodness I may come one day to sing thy mercies in paradise ; for my hope is in the merits of thy blood, and in the patronage of Mary. O Mary, Mother of God, pray to Jesus for me. So I hope ; so may it be.

Prayer to obtain all holy virtues.—My Lord and my God, by the merits of Jesus Christ, I ask thee first to enlighten me ; make me know the vanity of the goods of this world, that there is no other good but to love thee, the supreme and infinite good. Make me know my unworthiness, and how worthy thou art of being loved by all, and especially by me for the love thou hast borne me. Give me holy humility to embrace with cheerfulness all the contempt I may receive from men. Give me a great sorrow for my sins. Give me the love of holy mortification, that by it I may curb my passions, and punish my rebellious senses. Give me a love for the obedience I owe to my superiors. Give me grace to direct all I do to the sole end of pleasing thee. Give me holy purity of mind and body, and a detachment from everything that does not tend to the love of thee. Give me a great confidence in the passion of Jesus Christ, and in the intercession of the ever-blessed Mary. Give me, above all, a great love toward thee, and a perfect conformity to thy divine will. I recommend to thee, also, the souls of purgatory, my relatives, bene-

factors, and friends, and all those from whom I have received any affront or injury ; I pray thee, shower down upon them all blessings. Finally, I recommend to thee infidels, heretics, and all those who are in a state of sin. Since thou, my God, art worthy of infinite love, make thyself known and loved by all ; but especially by me, who have been most ungrateful to thee. I have offended thee enough ; make me love thee exceedingly, and bring me to heaven, where I shall sing thy mercies for all eternity. Blessed Mary, pray to Jesus for me. Amen.

Prayer of a devout soul to Mary and Jesus.—My Queen and my Mother, if thou protect me I fear not that I shall go to hell ; because thou dost interpose thy prayers and thy merits for those whom thou dost protect, and Jesus Christ knows not how to deny anything that thou dost ask Him. My dear Lady, for the love thou hast for thy Son, pray to Him, and have pity on me. And thou, my Jesus, by the prayers and merits of thy mother, and by the blood which thou hast shed for me, deliver me from hell ; because in hell I cannot love thee. From this hell I pray thee to deliver me, by that compassion which forced thee even to die on the cross for the love of me. Jesus and Mary, you are my love and my hope.

Prayer to be made every day to obtain holy perseverance.—My God, I thank thee for having pardoned me, as I trust thou hast, all the offences I have committed against thee. I love thee above all things ; and I am more sorry for having despised thy infinite majesty than for any other evil that has happened to me. I resolve rather to die than ever to offend thee again ; but I fear lest through my weakness I should fall again, and lose thy grace. Ah, by the merits of Jesus Christ, never permit me to fall again under thy displeasure ! And thou, Jesus my Redeemer, since thou hast died on the cross to save me, never let me separate myself from thee again. My Jesus, my Jesus, hear me (*Ne permittas me separari te ; ne permittas me separari a te*). Such is my hope in that blood which thou hast shed for me with so much grief. And thou, Mary, my mother and my hope, pray for me ; and when thou seest me assailed by any temptation, obtain for me that I may always have recourse immediately to thy Son and thee, saying, "Help me, my Jesus ; my mother, come to my aid, that I may not lose God ;" thus I hope to die loving God and thee, in order to love thee eternally in paradise.

Prayer to consecrate oneself to the Blessed Virgin.—Most holy Virgin Mary, Mother of God, I [*N. N.*], although most unworthy of being thy servant, nevertheless, moved by thy wonderful compassion, and by a desire to serve thee, choose thee this day, in presence of my angel guardian, and of all the heavenly court, for my special lady, advocate, and mother ; and I firmly resolve to serve thee always, and to do everything

in my power to make others serve thee also. I beseech thee, then, most merciful mother, by the blood of thy Son, which was shed for me, to take me into the number of thy clients as thy servant for ever. Protect me in my actions, and obtain for me grace so to measure my thoughts, words, and works, that I may never offend thy most pure eyes, nor those of thy divine Son Jesus. Remember me, and abandon me not at the hour of my death.

To most holy Mary, to obtain the forgiveness of our sins and holy perseverance.—Behold, O Mother of God, at thy feet a miserable sinner, who has recourse to thee, and trusts in thee. O mother of mercy, have pity on me. I hear thee called by all the refuge and the hope of sinners; thou art, then, my refuge and hope also. By thy intercession thou hast power to save me. Help me, for the love of Jesus Christ; lend thy hand to a fallen wretch, who recommends himself to thee, and who dedicates himself to thee as thy faithful servant. I offer myself, then, O Queen of heaven, to serve thee all my life; accept me, and reject me not, as I deserve. O my mother, in thy protection have I placed all my hopes. I bless and thank God a thousand times for having in His mercy given me this confidence in thee, which I consider as an earnest of my salvation. Ah, how many times have I unhappily fallen because I had not recourse to thee! I hope now, that through the merits of Jesus Christ and thy prayers, these sins have been pardoned. I may still, notwithstanding, again lose the divine grace. Do thou, my Lady, protect me; never let me again become the slave of hell. Help me always. By thy help I know I shall conquer; and I know that thou wilt surely assist me if I recommend myself to thee; but my fear is, that in the occasions of falling, I should omit to call upon thee, and so should be lost. This, then, is the grace I seek from thee, and which I beseech and conjure thee to obtain for me, namely, that in the assaults of hell I should always have recourse to thee, and say: "Mary, help me! help me, O Mary, my mother, permit me not to lose my God!"

To most holy Mary, to obtain a good death.—O Mary, what death shall I die? When I now think of my sins, and of that moment in which I shall expire and be judged, I am confounded and tremble. O my mother, in the blood of Jesus Christ and in thy intercession do I place my hopes. O comforter of the afflicted, abandon me not at that moment; fail not to console me in that great affliction. If thou help me not, I shall be lost. Ah, lady, before death comes, obtain for me a great sorrow for my sins, a true amendment and a constant fidelity to God during the remainder of my life. And when I come to the last stage of my existence, O Mary, my hope, help me in these moments of misery; and comfort me, so that I may not despair at the sight of my sins, which the devil will then put

before me. Obtain for me that I may then invoke thee more frequently, that I may die with thy name and that of thy divine Son on my lips. Pardon my boldness if I ask thee even to come thyself to console me by thy presence before I expire. I am a sinner, it is true, and I am not worthy of such a favor ; but I am thy servant ; I love thee, and have great confidence in thee. O Mary, I shall expect thee ; leave me not without consolation ! At least, if I am unworthy of such a grace, assist me from heaven, that I may go forth from this life loving God and thee, and come to love you both eternally in paradise.

To most holy Mary, to obtain deliverance from hell and the possession of Paradise.—O most dear lady, I thank thee that thou hast so many times delivered me from hell, which I have so often merited by my sins. I, a miserable wretch, was at one time condemned to that prison ; already, perhaps at my first sin, the sentence would have been executed on me, if thou hadst not mercifully helped me. Without my even praying to thee, but out of thy pure compassion, thou didst restrain the divine justice, and then, overcoming my hardness of heart, thou didst encourage me to have confidence in thee. And, oh, into how many other sins should I not have fallen, in the many dangers which have occurred to me, if thou, most loving mother, hadst not preserved me by the graces thou didst obtain for me. Ah, my Queen, keep me far from hell. O my mother, leave me not to myself, for I shall then be lost, but make me always fly to thee. Save me, my hope ! save me from sin, which can alone condemn me to hell. May I come to rejoice with thee in heaven for all eternity. I thank God above all things for having given me this confidence in the blood of Jesus Christ, and in thee. Yes, I hope that thou wilt save me ; that thou wilt free me from sin, and wilt obtain for me light and strength to fulfill the divine will, and finally that thou wilt conduct me in safety to the gates of paradise. Thy servants have always had this hope, and none have been deceived. Neither shall I be. O Mary, it is so ; thou must save me. Pray to thy Son (as I also pray to Him by the merits of His passion), that He may ever keep and increase in me this confidence, and so I shall be saved.

Thoughts and Ejaculations.

O God! who knows what fate awaits me ?
 I shall be either eternally happy or eternally miserable.
 Of what worth is all the world without God ?
 Let all be lost, but let not God be lost.
 I love thee, my Jesus, who didst die for me.
 Would that I had died before I ever offended thee!
 I will rather die than lose God.
 Jesus and Mary, you are my hope.
 My God, help me, for the love of Jesus Christ!

My Jesus, thou alone art sufficient for me!
 Suffer me not to separate myself from thee.
 Give me thy love, and then do with me what thou pleasest.
 Whom shall I love, if I love not thee, my God?
 Eternal Father, help me, for the love of Jesus!
 I believe in thee, I hope in thee, I love thee.
 Here I am, O Lord; do with me what thou wilt.
 When shall I see myself altogether thine, my God?
 When shall I be able to say to thee, my God, "I can lose thee no more"?
 Mary, my hope, have pity on me.
 Mother of God, pray to Jesus for me.
 Lord, who am I, that thou shouldst desire to be loved by me?
 My God, I desire thee alone, and nothing more.
 I desire all which thou dost will, and that alone.
 O, that I might be annihilated for thee, who wast annihilated for me!
 Toward thee alone, my God, have I been ungrateful.
 I have offended thee enough; I will no longer displease thee.
 If I had died then, I could not have loved thee any more.
 Let me die before again offending thee.
 Thou hast waited for me that I might love thee. Yea, I will love thee.
 I consecrate the remainder of my life to thee.
 O my Jesus, draw me entirely to thyself.
 Thou wilt not leave me; I will not leave thee. I hope that we shall always love one another, O God of my soul.
 My Jesus, make me all thine before I die.
 Grant that when thou shalt come to judge me, I may see thee with a benign countenance.
 Thou hast done more than enough to oblige me to love thee. I love thee, I love thee!
 Deign to accept the love of a sinner who has so often offended thee.
 Thou hast given thyself all to me; I give myself all to thee.
 I desire to love thee exceedingly in this life, that I may love thee exceedingly in the next.
 Teach me to know Thy great goodness, that I may love thee very much.
 Thou lovest those that love thee. I love thee; do thou also love me.
 Give me the love thou requirest of me.
 I rejoice that thou art infinitely happy.
 Oh, that I had always loved thee, and had died before I had offended thee.
 Grant that I may overcome all things to please thee.
 I give thee my whole will; dispose of me as thou pleasest.
 My pleasure is to please thee, O infinite goodness.
 I hope to love thee for all eternity, O eternal God.
 Thou art omnipotent; make me a saint.
 Thou didst seek me while I was flying from thee; thou wilt not drive me away now that I seek after thee.
 I thank thee for giving me time to love thee. I thank thee, and love thee.
 Let me give myself entirely to thee this day.
 Punish me in any way, but deprive me not of the power of loving thee.
 I will love thee, my God, without reserve.
 I accept all sufferings and all contempt, provided I may love thee.
 I desire to die for thee, who didst die for me.
 I wish that all could love thee, who didst die for me.
 I wish that all could love thee as thou meritest.

I wish to do everything that I know to be thy pleasure.

I care more to please thee than for all the pleasures of the world.

O holy will of God, you are my love.

O Mary, draw me entirely to God.

O my Mother, make me always have recourse to thee; it is for thee to make me a saint; this is my hope.

Protestation for a happy death.—My God, being certain that I shall die, and not knowing when it will be, I intend now to prepare myself for death; and I therefore declare that I believe all that the holy Catholic Church believes, and especially the mystery of the most holy Trinity, the incarnation and death of Jesus Christ, paradise and hell; because thou, who art truth itself, hast revealed all these truths.

I deserve a thousand hells: but I hope in thy mercy, through the merits of Jesus Christ, to obtain pardon, final perseverance, and the glory of paradise.

I protest that I love thee above all things, because thou art the infinite good; and because I love thee, I am more sorry that I have so often offended thee than for any other evil, and I resolve rather to die than offend thee again. I pray thee rather to take away my life than to permit me to lose thee by another sin.

I thank thee, my Jesus, for all the sufferings thou hast undergone for me, and for the many mercies thou hast shown me, after I had so greatly offended thee.

My beloved Lord, I rejoice in that thou art infinitely happy, and that thou art loved by so many souls in heaven and on earth. I desire that all should know and love thee.

I protest that if any one has offended me, I pardon him for the love of thee, O my Jesus; and I beg of thee to do good to him.

I declare that I desire to receive the most holy sacraments, both in life and death: and I intend now to ask for absolution of my sins, in case I should not be able to give any sign of it at my death.

I accept my death, and all the pains which shall accompany it, in union with the death and sorrows which Jesus suffered on the cross. And I accept, my God, all the pains and tribulations which thou shalt send me before my death. Do with me, and with all that belongs to me, what thou pleasest. Give me thy love and holy perseverance, and I ask nothing more.

My mother Mary, assist me always, but especially at my death. In the meantime, help me and keep me in the grace of God. Thou art my hope. Under thy mantle I will live and die. St. Joseph, St. Michael, archangel, my guardian angel, help me always, but especially in the hour of my death.

And thou, my dear Jesus, who, to obtain for me a happy death, didst give thyself to suffer such a bitter death, abandon me not in my last hour. From this time I embrace thee, that I may die in thy arms. I deserve hell, but I throw myself on thy mercy, hoping in thy blood to die in thy friendship, and to receive thy blessing when I shall see thee first as my judge. Into thy hands, wounded for my love, I commend my soul. I hope in thee, that thou wilt not then condemn me to hell (*In te, Domine, speravi; non confundar in æternum*). Ah, help me always, but especially in my death; grant me to die loving thee, so that the last sigh of life may be an act of love, which shall transport me from this earth to love thee forever in paradise.

Jesus, Mary and Joseph, assist me in my agony. Jesus, Mary and Joseph, I give myself to you; do you receive my soul at that moment.

Another protestation for a happy death, to be made with the people in common.—My God, prostrate in thy presence, I adore thee; and I intend to make the following protestation, as if I were on the point of passing out of this life into eternity.

My Lord, because thou art the infallible truth, and hast revealed it to thy holy Church, I believe in the mystery of the most holy Trinity, Father, Son and Holy Ghost, three persons, but only one God, who rewards the just with heaven, and punishes sinners with hell. I believe that the second person, that is, the Son of God, was made man and died for the salvation of mankind; I believe everything else that the holy Church believes. I thank thee for having made me a Christian, and I protest that in this holy faith I will live and die.

My God and my hope, trusting in thy promises I hope, from thy mercy, not by my own merits but through the merits of Jesus Christ, to receive the pardon of my sins, perseverance in thy grace, and after this miserable life, the glory of paradise. And if the devil should tempt me to despair at the sight of my sins, I declare that I will always hope in thee, my Lord, and I desire to abandon myself at death into the loving arms of thy goodness.

O God, worthy of infinite love, I love thee with all my heart, I love thee more than myself; and I protest that I desire to die making an act of love in order to go on loving thee forever in paradise. I therefore ask it of thee, and earnestly desire it. And if, instead of loving thee, I have hitherto despised thy infinite goodness, I repent, my Lord, with all my heart; and I declare that I desire to die detesting and sorrowing for all my offences against thee. I resolve for the future rather to die than sin again. And for thy love I forgive all who have ever offended me.

My God, I accept death and all the pains which may accompany my own death; I unite them to the pains and death of Jesus Christ, and I

offer it to thee in honor of thy supreme dominion, and in satisfaction for my sins. Accept, Lord, this sacrifice of my life which I make to thee, for the sake of that great sacrifice which thy divine Son made thee of Himself on the altar of the cross. I resign myself now entirely to thy divine will, in anticipation of the hour of my death ; protesting that I desire to die uttering these words : " May thy will, O Lord, be always done."

Most holy Virgin, my mother and my advocate, thou, after God, art and shalt be my hope and comfort at the point of death. From this time I have recourse to thee, and pray thee to assist me in that passage. My dear Queen, abandon me not in that last hour ; but come, then, to take my soul and present it to thy Son. From henceforth I expect thee, and I hope to die under thy mantle and clinging to thy feet. St. Joseph, my protector, St. Michael, archangel, my guardian angel, and my holy patrons, help me in this last conflict with hell.

And thou, my crucified love, my Jesus, who didst choose such a bitter death to obtain for me a happy death, remember, then, that I am one of those thy sheep whom thou hast purchased with thy blood ; thou who, when all men shall have abandoned me, and when none can help me any longer, thou alone canst console and save me, make me worthy to receive thee at that hour in the viaticum ; permit me not to lose thee forever, and to be banished forever, far from thee in hell. No, my beloved Saviour, receive me then into thy sacred wounds ; for this end I also embrace thee now, and declare that I intend to breathe out my soul in the loving wound of thy sacred side, saying now, beforehand : " Jesus, Mary and Joseph, I give you my heart and my soul. Jesus, Mary and Joseph, receive my soul in that last moment."

'Tis blessed to suffer, Creator, most kind,

'Tis blessed to die, and to suffer for Thee.

I embrace Thee, O Crucified, hoping to find

Thine arms everlasting in death circling me.

So it will not be death, but ineffable rest,

That shall close at the last on these earth-wearied eyes ;

When my forehead by Mary is soothingly prest,

And Jesus receives my last penitent sighs.

A short prayer to be said every day to Jesus crucified, and to Our Lady of Sorrows, to obtain the grace of a good death.—My Lord Jesus Christ, by that bitterness which thou didst endure on the cross when thy blessed soul was separated from thy most sacred body, have pity on my sinful soul, when it shall leave my miserable body to enter into eternity.

O Mary, by that grief which thou didst experience on Calvary in seeing Jesus expire on the cross before thine eyes, obtain for me a good death, that, loving Jesus and thee, my mother, in this life, I may attain heaven, where I shall love you for all eternity.

Domine Jesu Christe, per illam amaritudinem, quam sustinuit nobilissima anima tua, quando egressa est de benedicto corpore tuo, miserere animæ meæ peccatricis quando egredietur de corpore meo. Amen

CHAPTER III.

THE PRACTICE OF THE CHRISTIAN VIRTUES.

1. THE PRACTICE OF HUMILITY.

No one can please God without being humble, for He cannot bear the proud. He has promised to hear those who pray to Him; but if a proud man prays to Him, the Lord hears him not. To the humble, on the contrary, He dispenses His graces: "God resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble." (St. Jas. iv. 6.) Humility is of two kinds; humility of affection and humility of the will. The former consists in the conviction we have of our own wretchedness, so that we can neither know nor do anything but what is evil. All that we have and do that is good comes from God. Let us come now to the practice of humility. With regard, then, to the humility of affections: first, we must put no confidence in our own strength, nor in our own resolutions; but we must be always diffident and fearful of ourselves: "With fear and trembling work out your salvation." (Phil. ii. 12.) St. Philip Neri said: "He who fears not is sure to fall." Second, we must not glory in things that belong to us, as in our natural abilities, in our actions, in our birth, in our relatives, and the like. It is therefore well never to speak of our actions, except to point out where we have been wrong. And it is better not to speak of ourselves at all, either for good or bad; because, even when we blame ourselves, it is often an occasion of vainglory, by making us think that we shall be praised, or at least be considered humble, and thus humility becomes pride. Third, let us not be angry with ourselves after we have committed a fault. That would not be humility but pride; and it is even a device of the devil to take away all our confidence, and make us leave off following a good life. When we see that we have fallen, we should say with St. Catharine of Genoa, "Lord, these are the fruits of my own garden." Then let us humble ourselves, and rise up immediately from the fault we have committed by an act of love and contrition, resolving not to fall into the same fault again, and trusting in the help of God. And if we unhappily do fall again, we must always do the same. Fourth, when we see others fall, we are not to wonder; rather let us compassionate them, and let us thank God, praying Him to keep His hand over

us ; otherwise the Lord will punish us by permitting us to fall into the same sins, and perhaps worse. Fifth, we must always consider ourselves as the greatest sinners in the world, even when we know that others have sinned more than we ; because our sins, having been committed after we had received so many favors and had been enlightened by so many graces, will be more displeasing to God than the faults of others, though they may be more numerous. St. Teresa writes that we must not think we have made any progress in the way of perfection, if we do not esteem ourselves worse than every one else, and desire to be considered the last of all.

The humility of the will consists in being pleased when we are despised by others. Any one who has deserved hell deserves to be trodden under foot by the devils for ever. Jesus Christ desires that we should learn of Him to be meek and humble of heart : " Learn of me, because I am meek and humble of heart." (St. Matt. xi. 29.) Many are humble in word, but not in heart. They say : " I am worse than all : I deserve a thousand hells." But when any one reproves them, or says a word that displeases them, they immediately take umbrage. They are like hedgehogs, which put out their bristles as soon as they are touched. But how is it ? you say you are worse than all, and yet you cannot bear a word. He who is truly humble," says St. Bernard, " esteems himself good for nothing, and desires to be considered good for nothing by others as well."

In the first place, then, if you wish to be truly humble, when you receive an admonition receive it in good part, and thank the person who admonishes you. St. Chrysostom says, " when the just man is corrected, he is sorry for the error he has committed ; but the proud man is sorry that the error should be known." The saints, when they are accused, even wrongfully, do not justify themselves, except when to defend themselves is necessary to avoid giving scandal : otherwise they are silent, and offer all to God.

In the second place, when you receive any affront, suffer it patiently, and increase in love toward the person who has ill-treated you. This is the touchstone by which you may know whether a person is humble and holy. If he resents an injury, even though he may work miracles you may say that he is an empty reed. Father Balthazar Alvarez said that the time of humiliation is the time to gain treasures of merits. You will gain more by peaceably suffering contempt, than you could do by fasting ten days on bread and water. Humiliations which we inflict on ourselves are good : but those which we accept from the hands of others are worth much more, because in these last there is less of self and more of God ; therefore, when we know how to bear them the merit is greater. But what can a Christian pretend to do if he cannot bear to be despised for

the sake of God? How many contempts did not Jesus Christ suffer for us! Buffetings, derisions, scourging, and spitting in His face! Ah, if we loved Jesus Christ, not only should we not show resentment for injuries, but we should rejoice at seeing ourselves despised as Jesus Christ was despised.

2. THE PRACTICE OF MORTIFICATION.

"If any man will come after me, let him deny himself and take up his cross, and follow me." (St. Matt. xvi. 24.) This is all that anyone who wishes to be a follower of Jesus Christ has to do. The denying of oneself is the mortification of self-love. Do we wish to be saved? We must conquer all to make sure of all. How miserable is the soul that allows itself to be guided by self-love! Mortification is of two kinds, internal and external; by interior mortification we have to study to conquer our passions, and especially our predominant one. A person who does not overcome his predominant passion is in great danger of being lost; whereas he who has overcome that will easily conquer all the others. Some, however, allow one vice to predominate in themselves, and think that they are good because they do not see in themselves vices which others have. "But what does it matter?" says St. Cyril: "one leak is sufficient to sink the ship." Nor will it suffice to say, "I cannot abstain from this vice;" a resolute will conquers all; that is, of course, with the assistance of God, who will never fail us.

External mortification has to do with conquering the sensual appetites. Worldly people call the saints cruel when they deny their bodies all satisfaction of the senses, and chastise them with *cilices*, disciplines, and other penances. "But," says St. Bernard, "they are much more cruel in reality to themselves, who condemn themselves to burn for ever in hell-fire for the sake of the short and miserable pleasures of this life." Others say that all forbidden pleasures should be denied to the body; but they despise external mortifications, saying that interior mortification is what is required; that is, the mortification of the will. Yes, my good sir, it is principally necessary to mortify the will, but the mortification of the flesh is also necessary; because, when the flesh is not mortified, it will be hard to be obedient to God. St. John of the Cross said that any one who taught that external mortification was not necessary, ought not to be believed, even though he worked miracles. But let us come to the practice of it.

In the first place, the eyes must be mortified. The first arrows which wound the soul, and often kill it, enter through the eyes. The eyes are, as it were, grappling-irons of hell, which drag souls, as if by main force, into sin. A certain pagan philosopher voluntarily put out his eyes to free

himself from impurities. It is not lawful for us to pluck out our eyes, but we ought to make them blind by means of mortification ; otherwise we shall find it difficult to keep ourselves chaste. St. Francis of Sales said, " You must close the gates, if you do not wish the enemy to enter into the citadel." We must, then, abstain from looking at any object that may give occasion to temptation. St. Aloysius Gonzaga did not dare to raise his eyes to look even at his own mother ; and when by chance our eyes light on some dangerous object, let us take care not to fix them on it. It is not so much the mere seeing, said St. Francis of Sales, but the inspecting and continuing to look, that is the cause of ruin. Let us, then, be very careful in mortifying our eyes ; because many are now in hell on account of sins committed with the eyes.

In the second place, we must mortify our tongue by abstaining from words of detraction, or of abuse, or of obscenity. An impure word spoken in conversation, even in jest, may prove a scandal to others, and be the cause of a thousand sins arising from it. And it should be observed, that sometimes a word of double meaning, said in a witty way, does more harm than a word openly impure.

In the third place, we must mortify the taste. St. Andrew Avellini said that, in order to begin to live a good Christian life, a man must commence by the mortification of his palate. And St. Francis of Sales said, " we must eat to live, not live to eat." Many seem to live only to eat, and thus they destroy the health both of their soul and body. For the most part obstructions, diarrhœa, and other illnesses, are caused by the vice of gluttony. But the worst is, that intemperance in eating and drinking, is often the cause of incontinency. Cassian writes, that it is impossible but that a man, who is satiated with food and heating drinks—as wine, brandy, and the like—should feel many impure temptations. " But how is this ?" says such a one ; " must I eat no more ?" Yes, my good friend we must eat to preserve our life, but like rational beings, not as brutes. Especially if you desire to be free from impure temptations, abstain from eating overmuch meat, and from overmuch wine. The Scripture says, " Give not wine to kings." (Prov. xxxi. 4.) By a king is meant one who brings his flesh under the dominion of reason. Much wine makes us lose our reason, and involves not only the vice of drunkenness, which is certainly a mortal sin, but also that of impurity. Regret not having sometimes to fast or to abstain, especially on a Saturday, in honor of the most holy Mary. Many do so on bread and water ; this you can at least do on the vigils of the seven principal feasts of our Lady. I pray you to observe at least the fasts of obligation. Some go beyond fifteen or twenty ounces at collation, and say, " It is sufficient if I am not satisfied." No, it is not enough ; the most that can be taken on the even-

ings of fast days of obligation is eight ounces ; and even that has grown up by custom, for in olden times food could only be taken once a day.

In the fourth place, we must mortify our hearing and our touch ; the hearing, by avoiding listening to immodest and scandalous conversations ; the touch, by using all possible caution, as well toward others as with ourselves. Some say it is nothing—that they only do it in fun ; but who, I ask, would play with fire ?

3. THE PRACTICE OF CHARITY TOWARD OUR NEIGHBOR.

He who loves God loves his neighbor also ; but he who loves not his neighbor, neither does he love God ; for the divine precept says, "That he who loveth God, loves also his brother." (1 St. John iv. 21.) We must love our neighbor in heart as well as in deed. And how much are we to love him ? Here is the rule : "Love the Lord thy God with thy whole soul . . . and thy neighbor as thyself." (St. Luke x. 27.) We must, then, love God above all things, and more than ourselves, and our neighbor as ourselves. So that, as we desire our own good, and take delight in it when we have it, and, on the contrary, are sorry for any evil that may happen to us, so also we must desire our neighbor's good, and rejoice when he obtains it ; and, on the other hand, we must be sorry for his misfortunes. So, again, we must neither judge nor suspect evil of our neighbor without good grounds. And this is what constitutes interior charity.

External charity consists in our words and actions toward our neighbor. As to words, first, we must abstain from the least shadow of detraction. A detractor is hateful to God and man. On the contrary, he who speaks well of every one is beloved by God and men ; and when the fault cannot be excused, we must at least excuse the intention. Second, let us be careful not to repeat to any one the evil that has been said of him by another ; because sometimes long enmities and revenge arise from such things. The Scripture says he who sows discord is hated by God. Third, we must take care not to wound our neighbor by saying anything that may hurt him, even were it only in jest. Would you like to be laughed at in the same way as you laugh at your neighbor ? Fourth, let us avoid disputes. Sometimes on account of a mere trifle quarrels are begun which end in abuse and rancor. We have also to guard against the spirit of contradiction, which some indulge when they gratuitously set themselves to contradict everything. On such occasions give your opinion, and then be quiet. Fifth, let us speak gently to all, even to our inferiors ; therefore let us not make use of imprecations or abuse. And when our neighbor is angry with us, and is somewhat abusive, let us answer meekly, and the quarrel will be at an end : "A mild answer breaketh

wrath." (Prov. xv. 1.) And when we are annoyed by our neighbor, we must be careful not to say anything; because our passion will then make us go too far: it will make us exaggerate, and afterward we shall certainly be sorry for it. St. Francis of Sales says, "I was never angry in my life, that I did not repent of it shortly afterward." The rule is to be silent so long as we feel ourselves disturbed. And when our neighbor continues to be irritated, let us reserve the correction till another time, even though it should be necessary; because for the moment our words would not convince, and would do no good.

With regard also to the charity of our actions toward our neighbor: First, it is practiced by aiding him as we best may. Let us remember what says the Scripture: "For alms deliver from all sin and from death, and will not suffer the soul to go into darkness." (Job iv. 11.) Almsgiving, then, saves us from sin and from hell. By alms is understood any assistance which it is in our power to render to our neighbor. The kind of almsgiving which is the most meritorious is, to help the soul of our neighbor by correcting him gently and opportunely, whenever we can. And let not us say with some, "What does it signify to me?" It does signify to one who is a Christian. He who loves God wishes to see Him loved by all.

Second, we must show charity toward the sick, who are in greater need of help. Let us take them some little present, if they are poor. At least let us go and wait on them, and comfort them, even though they should not thank us for it; the Lord will reward us for it.

Third, we must, above all, show charity to our enemies. Some are all kindness with their friends; but Jesus Christ says, "Do good to those that hate you." (St. Matt. v. 44.) By this you may know that a man is a true Christian, if he seeks to do good to those who wish him evil. And if we can do nothing else for those who persecute us, let us at least pray that God will prosper them, according as Jesus commands us: "Pray for them that persecute you." (St. Matt. v. 44.) This is the way the saints revenged themselves. He who pardons anyone who has offended him, is sure of being pardoned by God, since God has given us the promise, "Forgive, and you shall be forgiven." (St. Luke vi. 37.) Our Lord said one day to the blessed Angela of Foligno that the surest sign of a soul being loved by God is when it loves a person who has offended it.

Fourth, let us also be charitable to our neighbors who are dead, that is, to the holy souls in purgatory. St. Thomas says that if we are bound to help our neighbors who are alive, we are also bound to remember them when dead. Those holy prisoners are suffering pains which exceed all the sufferings of this life, and therefore are in the greatest necessity, since they cannot possibly help themselves. A Cistercian monk once said to

the sacristan of his monastery : " Help me, brother, by your prayers, when I can no longer help myself." Let us, then, endeavor to succor these holy souls, either by having Masses said for them, or by hearing Masses for them, by giving alms, or at least by praying and applying indulgences in their behalf ; they will show themselves grateful by obtaining great graces for us, not only when they reach heaven, if they get there sooner through our prayers, but also in purgatory.

4. THE PRACTICE OF PATIENCE.

St. James says that patience is the perfect work of a soul : " And patience hath a perfect work." (St. James i. 4.) It is by patience that we gain heaven. This earth is a place where we can gain merit ; therefore it is not a place of rest, but of labors and sufferings ; and it is for this end that God makes us live here, that by patience we may obtain the glory of paradise. Every one has to suffer in this world ; but he who suffers with patience suffers less and saves himself, while he who suffers with impatience suffers more, and is damned. Our Lord does not send us crosses that He may see us lost, as some impatient people say, but that we may be thereby saved, and inherit more glory in heaven. Sorrows, contradictions, and all other tribulations, when accepted with patience, become the brightest jewels in our heavenly crown. Whenever, then, we are in affliction, let us console ourselves and thank God for it, since it is a sign that God wishes us to be saved, by chastising us in this life, where the chastisements are but slight and short, so as not to punish us in the next, where the chastisements are cruel and eternal. Woe to the sinner who is prosperous in this life ! it is a sign that God has reserved for him eternal punishment.

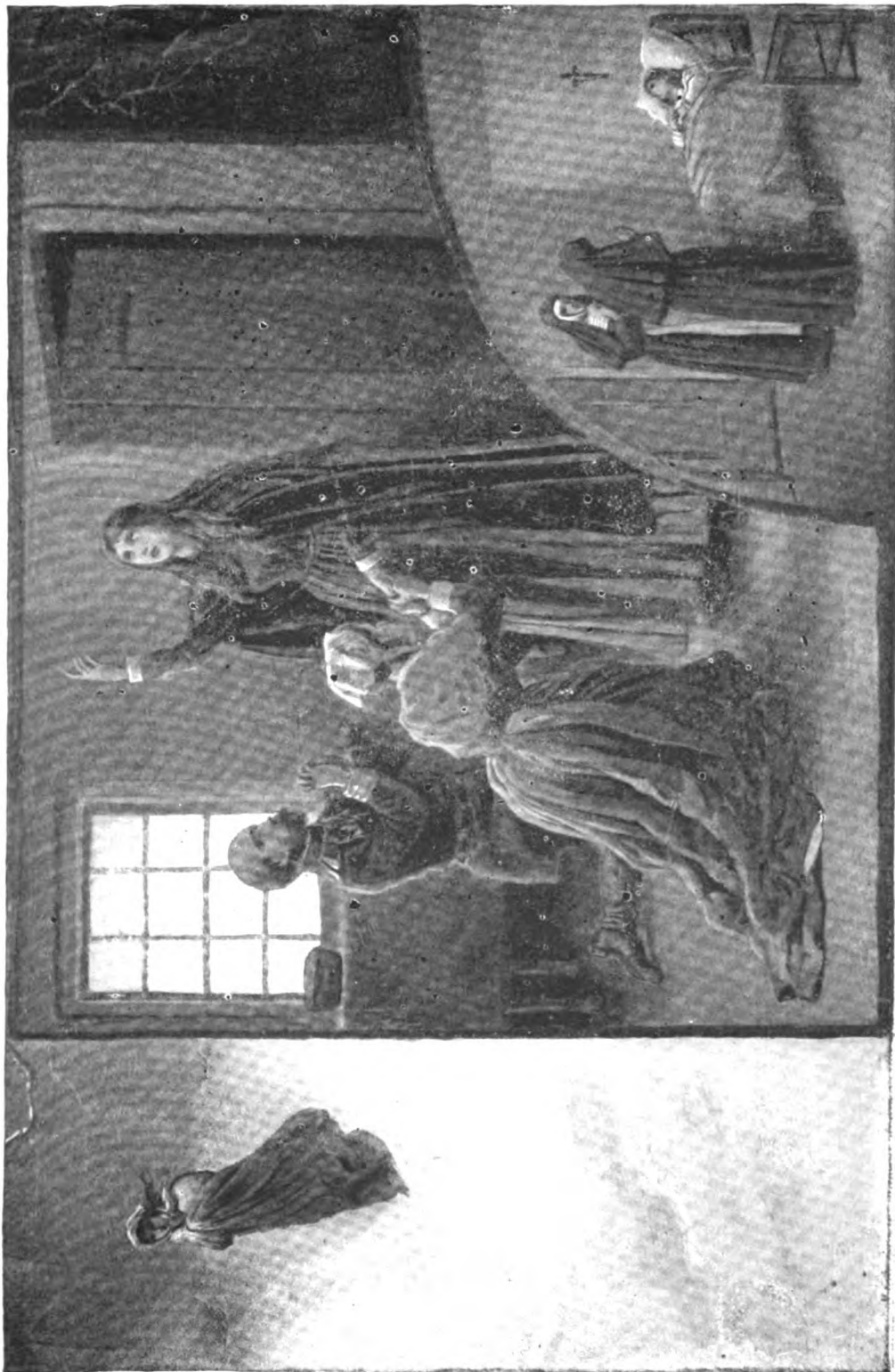
St. Mary Magdalene of Pazzi said, " All sufferings, however great, become sweet when we look at Jesus on the cross." And St. Joseph Calasanctius : " He who cannot suffer for Jesus Christ does not know how to gain Jesus Christ for his own." He who loves Jesus Christ bears patiently all external crosses—sickness, pains, dishonor, loss of parents and friends ; and all interior crosses—afflictions, weariness, temptations, and desolation of spirit, and he bears them all in peace. On the other hand, he who is impatient and angry when he is in tribulation, what does he do ? He does but increase his suffering, and adds to his punishments in the next life. St. Teresa says in her writings, " The cross is felt by those who drag it after them by force ; but he who embraces it with a good will does not feel it." Hence St. Philip Neri also said, " In this world there is no purgatory : it is either heaven or hell ; he who bears tribulation with patience is in heaven, but he who does not is in hell." Let us go on to the practice.

First, patience must be practised in sickness. The time of sickness is a time for testing the devotion of people, whether it is of lead or of gold. Some are pious and cheerful when they are in good health; but when they are visited by any illness they lose their patience, complain of everything, and give themselves up to melancholy, and commit a thousand other faults. Their gold turns out to be lead. St. Joseph Calasanctius said, "If sick people were patient, we should hear no more complaints." Some complain and say: "But as long as I am in this state, I cannot go to church, nor to communion, nor to Mass; in short, I can do nothing." You say you can do nothing. You do everything when you do the will of God. Tell me, why do you want to do those things you have named? Is it to please God? This is the good pleasure of God, that you should embrace with patience all you have to endure, and should leave everything else that you wish to do alone. "God is served," writes St. Francis of Sales, "more by suffering than by any other works we can do."

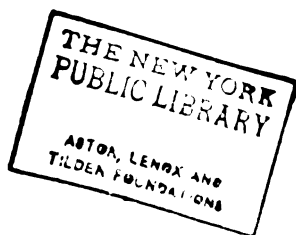
If our sickness be dangerous, then especially must we accept it with all patience, being willing to die, should the end of our life be really at hand. Neither let us say, "But I am not now prepared; I should like to live a little longer to do penance for my sins." And how do you know that if you were to live on you would do penance, and would not fall into greater sins? How many there are who, after recovering from some mortal illness, have become worse than they were before, and have been lost; while if they had died then, perhaps they would have been saved. If it is the will of God that you should leave this world, unite yourself to His holy will, and thank Him for allowing you the help of the holy sacraments, and accept death with tranquillity, abandoning yourself into the arms of His mercy. This compliance with the divine will, by accepting death, will be sufficient to insure your eternal salvation.

In the second place, we must accept also with patience the death of our relatives and friends. Some, on the death of a relative, are so inconsolable, that they leave off saying their prayers, frequenting the sacraments, and all their devotions. Such a one goes so far as even to be angry with God, and to say, "Lord, why hast thou done it?" What rashness is this! Tell me, what does all your grief profit you? Do you, perhaps, think to do pleasure to the dead person? No; what you are doing is displeasing to him as well as to God. He desires that, with regard to his death, you should become more united to God, and should pray for him if he is in purgatory.

In the third place, let us accept the poverty which God sends us. When you are in want even of the necessities of life, say, "My God, thou alone art sufficient for me." One such act will gain treasures for us in paradise. He who possesses God has every good. In the same way



THE TRIUMPH OF FAITH.



let us embrace with patience the loss of property, the failure of our expectations, or even the loss of those who were helping us. Let us be resigned at such times to the will of God, and God will help us ; and if He should not then help us as we should wish, let us be content with whatever He may do, because He will do it to try our patience, that He may enrich us with greater merits and the goods of heaven.

In the fourth place, we must accept patiently contempts and persecutions. You will say, "But what evil have I done, that I should be so persecuted? Why have I had to suffer such an affront?" My brother, go and say this to Jesus Christ on the cross, and He will answer, "And I, what have I done, that I should have to suffer such sorrow and ignominy, and this death of the cross?" If Jesus Christ has suffered so much for the love of you, it is no great thing that you should suffer this little for the love of Jesus Christ. Particularly if you have ever during your life committed some grievous sin, think that you deserve to be in hell, where you would have to suffer much greater contempt and persecution from the devils. If, also, you should be persecuted for having done good, rejoice exceedingly. Hear what Jesus Christ says: "Blessed are they that suffer persecution for justice's sake." (St. Matt. v. 10.) Let us be convinced of the truth of what the Apostle says, that he who would live united to Jesus Christ in this world must be persecuted.

In the fifth place, we must practise patience also in spiritual desolation, which is the heaviest affliction for a soul that loves God. But God in this way proves the love of His beloved ones. At such times let us humble ourselves and be resigned to the will of God, putting ourselves entirely into His hands. Let us be most careful, also, not to leave off any of our devotions, our prayers, frequenting of the sacraments, our visits to the blessed sacrament, or our spiritual reading. As we do everything then with weariness and trouble, it seems to us to be all lost, but it is not so: while we persevere in all these things, we work without any satisfaction to ourselves, but it is very pleasing to God.

In the sixth and last place, we must practice patience in temptations. Some cowardly souls, when a temptation lasts a long time, are disheartened, and will sometimes even say, "God then desires my damnation." No; God permits us to be tempted, not for our damnation, but for our advantage, that we may then humble ourselves the more, and unite ourselves more closely to Him, by forcing ourselves to resist, redoubling our prayers, and thereby acquiring greater merits for heaven. "And because thou wast acceptable to God, it was necessary that temptation should prove thee." (Tob. xii. 13.) Thus was it said to Tobias. Every temptation which we overcome gains for us fresh degrees of glory, and greater strength to resist future temptations. Nor does God ever permit

us to be tempted beyond our strength: "And God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above what you are able; but will make also, with temptation, issue, that you may be able to bear it." (1 Cor. x. 13.)

We should, however, beg our Lord to deliver us from temptations; notwithstanding, when they come, let us resign ourselves to His holy will, beseeching Him to give us strength to resist. St. Paul was troubled with carnal temptations, and he prayed to God to deliver him from them; but the Lord said to Him: "My grace is sufficient for thee; for power is made perfect in infirmity." (2 Cor. xii. 9.) In sensual temptations especially, the first precaution to be taken is to remove ourselves as far as possible from all occasions, and then immediately to have recourse to Jesus Christ for help, not trusting in our own strength. And when the temptation continues, let us not cease to pray, saying: "Jesus help me! Mary, ever Virgin, assist me!" The mere invocation of these all-powerful names of Jesus and Mary will suffice to defeat the most violent assaults of hell. It is also of great use to make the sign of the cross on our forehead or over our heart. By the sign of the cross, St. Anthony Abbot overcame similar attacks of the devil. It is also a very good thing to acquaint your spiritual father with your temptations. St. Philip Neri used to say, "A temptation which is declared is half overcome."

5. THE PRACTICE OF CONFORMITY TO THE WILL OF GOD.

All sanctity consists in loving God; and the love of God consists in fulfilling His holy will. In this is our life: "And life in His good will." (Ps. xxix. 6.) And he who is always united to the will of God is always in peace; for the divine will takes away the bitterness of every cross. By saying, God wills it so, God has so willed it, holy souls find peace in all their labors: "Whatsoever shall befall the just man, it shall not make him sad." (Prov. xii. 21.) You say, "Everything goes wrong with me; God sends me all kinds of misfortunes." Things go wrong with you, my friend, because you make them go wrong; if you were to be resigned to the will of God, all would go well, and for your good. The crosses which God sends you are misfortunes because you make them misfortunes; if you would take them with resignation, they would no longer be misfortunes, but riches for paradise. The Venerable Balthazar Alvarez says, "He who in his troubles resigns himself with peacefulness to the divine will, runs to God post-haste." Let us now come to this practice.

And first, let us resign ourselves in the sicknesses which befall us. Worldly people call illnesses misfortunes, but the saints call them visitations of God and favors. When we are ill we ought certainly to take remedies in order to be cured, but we should always be resigned to

whatever God disposes. And if we pray for restoration to health, let it always be done with resignation, otherwise we shall not obtain the favor. But how much do we not gain, when we are ill, by offering to God all we suffer! He who loves God from his heart does not desire to be cured of his illness in order not to suffer, but he desires to please God by suffering. It was this love which made the scourge, the rack, and the burning pitch, sweet to the holy martyrs. We must also be especially resigned in mortal sicknesses. To accept death at such a time, in order that the will of God may be fulfilled, merits for us a reward similar to that of the martyrs, because they accepted death to please God. He who dies in union with the will of God makes a holy death; and the more closely he is united to it, the more holy death does he die. The Venerable Blosius declares that an act of perfect conformity to the will of God at the hour of death not only delivers us from hell, but also from purgatory.

Second, we must also unite ourselves to the will of God with regard to our natural defects: as want of talents, being of low birth, weak health, bad sight, want of ability for affairs, and the like. All that we have is the free gift of God. Might He not have made us a fly or a blade of grass? A hundred years ago were we any thing but nothingness? And what more do we want? Let it suffice that God has given us the power of becoming saints. Although we may have little talent, poor health, and may be poor and abject, we may very well become saints through His grace if we have the will. Oh, how many unfortunate beings have been damned on account of their talents, their health, high birth, riches or beauty! Let us, then, be content with what God has done for us; and let us thank Him always for the good things He has given us, and particularly for having called us to the holy faith; this is a great gift, and one for which few are found to thank God.

Third, we must resign ourselves in all adversities which may happen to us: as the loss of property, of our expectations, of our relatives, and in the attacks and persecutions we may meet with from men. You will say, "But God does not will sin; how is it that I must resign myself when some one calumniates me, wrongs me, attacks and defrauds me? That cannot happen by the will of God." What a deception is this! God does not will the sin of such a one: He permits it; but, on the other hand, He does will the adversity which you suffer by means of this person. So that it is our Lord Himself who sends you that cross, though it come to you by means of your neighbor; therefore even in these cases you must embrace the cross as coming from God. Nor let us seek to find out a reason for such treatment. St. Teresa said, "If you are willing to bear only those crosses for which you see a reason, perfection is not for you."

Fourth, we must be resigned in aridity of soul ; if, when we say our prayers, make our communions, visit the blessed sacrament, etc., all seems to weary and give us no comfort, let us be satisfied in knowing that we please God, and that the less satisfaction we feel ourselves in our devotions the more pleasure do we give Him. At no time can we know better our own insufficiency and misery than in the time of aridity ; and therefore let us humble ourselves in our prayers, and put ourselves with resignation into God's hands, and say, " Lord, I do not deserve consolations ; I desire nothing but that thou have pity on me ; keep me in thy grace, and do with me what thou wilt." And so doing, we shall gain more in one day of desolation than in a month of tears and sensible devotion. And, generally speaking, this should be the continual tenor of our prayers, offering ourselves to God that he may do with us as he pleases ; saying to Him in our prayers, our communions, and in the visit, " My God, make me do thy will." In doing the will of God we shall do everything. For this end let us accustom ourselves to have always on our lips the ejaculation, *Fiat voluntas tua* (Thy will be done), even in the least things we do ; for instance, if we snuff out a candle, break a glass, or stumble over something, let us always repeat, " God's will be done !" And when we lose any of our possessions, or when one of our relatives dies, or anything else of the same sort happens to us, let us say, " O Lord, it is thy will, it is my will also." And when we fear any temporal ill, let us say, " O Lord, I will whatever thou wilt." Thus we shall be very pleasing in the sight of God, and shall be always in peace.

6. THE PRACTICE OF PURITY OF INTENTION.

Purity of intention consists in doing everything with the sole view of pleasing God. The good or bad intention with which an action is performed renders it good or bad before God. St. Mary Magdalene of Pazzi said " God rewards actions according to the amount of purity of intention with which they are done." Let us examine the practice of it.

In the first place, in all our exercises (of devotion), let us seek God and not ourselves : if we seek our own satisfaction we cannot expect to receive any reward from God. And this holds good for all spiritual works. How many labor and exhaust themselves in preaching, hearing confessions, serving at the altar and in doing other pious works ; and because in these they seek themselves and not God, they lose all. When we seek neither approbation nor thanks from others for what we do, it is a sign that we work for God's sake : as also when we are not vexed at the good we undertake not succeeding ; or when we rejoice as much at any good that is done by others, as if it had been done by ourselves. Further, whenever we have done some good in order to please God, let us not tor-

ment ourselves in endeavoring to drive away vainglory ; if we are praised for it, it is enough to say, "To God be the honor and glory." And let us never omit doing any good action which may be edifying to our neighbor, through the fear of vainglory. Our Lord wishes us to do good even before others, that it may be profitable to them. "So let your light shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father who is in heaven." (St. Matt. v. 16.) Therefore when you do good, have, first, the intention of pleasing God ; and, second, that also of giving a good example to your neighbor.

In the second place, in our bodily actions : whether we work, or eat, or drink, or amuse ourselves with propriety, let us do all in order to please God. Purity of intention may be called the heavenly alchemy which changes iron into gold ; by which is meant, that the most trivial and ordinary actions, when done to please God, become acts of divine love. St. Mary Magdalene of Pazzi used to say, "A person who performs all his actions with a pure intention will go straight to paradise." A holy hermit, before putting his hand to any work, used to raise his eyes to heaven and keep them fixed there for a short time ; and when he was asked what he was doing, he replied, "I am taking my aim, so that I may not miss the mark." Let us also do in like manner : before beginning any action, let us make sure of our aim, and say, "Lord, I do this to please thee."

RULES FOR AVOIDING TEPIDITY.

Souls that make no account of venial sins, and give themselves up to tepidity, without a thought of freeing themselves from it, live in great danger. We do not here speak of those venial sins which are committed by mere frailty, such as useless or idle words, interior disquietudes, and negligence in small matters ; but we speak of venial sins committed with full deliberation, above all when they are habitual. St. Teresa writes thus, "From all deliberate sin, howsoever small it may be, O Lord, deliver us!" The Venerable Alvarez used to say, "These little backbitings, dislikes, culpable curiosity, acts of impatience and intemperance, do not indeed kill the soul, but they weaken it so that when any great temptation takes it unexpectedly it will not have strength enough to resist, and will consequently fall." So that as, on the one hand, deliberate venial sins weaken the soul, so, on the other, do they deprive us of the divine assistance ; for it is but just that God should be sparing with those who are sparing toward Him : "He who soweth sparingly, shall also reap sparingly." (2 Cor. ix. 6.) And that is what a soul that has received special graces from God has the most reason to fear. Still more ought it to fear lest such faults should be caused by some passionate attachment, as of

ambition or avarice, or of aversion or inordinate affection toward any person. It happens not unfrequently to souls that are in bondage to some passion as it does to gamblers, who, after losing many times, at the last throw say, "Let us risk everything," and so finish by losing all they have. In what a miserable state is that soul which is the slave of some passion; for passion blinds us, and lets us no longer see what we are doing. Let us now come to the practice of what we have to do in order to be able to deliver ourselves from the wretched state of tepidity.

It is necessary, in the first place, to have a firm desire to get out of this state. The good desire lightens our labor, and gives us strength to go forward. And let us rest assured that he who makes no progress in the way of God will always be going back; and he will go back so far that at last he will fall over some precipice. Second, let us try to find out our predominant faults to which we are most attached, whether it be anger, ambition, or inordinate affection to persons or things: a resolute will overcomes all with the help of God. Third, we must avoid the occasion, otherwise all our resolutions will fall to the ground. And, lastly, we must, above all, be diffident of our own strength, and pray continually with all confidence to God, begging Him to help us in the danger we are in, and to deliver us from those temptations by which we shall fall into sin; which is the meaning of the petition, *Ne nos inducas in tentationem* (Lead us not into temptation). He who prays obtains: "Ask, and you shall receive." (St. John xvi. 24.) This is a promise of God, and can never fail; therefore we must always pray, always pray; and let us never leave off repeating, "We must pray always, we must pray always; my God, help me, and that soon!"

8. THE PRACTICE OF DEVOTION TOWARD THE GREAT MOTHER OF GOD.

As regards this devotion, I hope that the reader is fully persuaded that, in order to insure eternal salvation, it is most important to be devout to the most holy Mary. And if he should wish to be still more convinced of it, I would beg him to read the book I have written, called *The Glories of Mary*. We shall here speak only of the practices you may observe that you may obtain the protection of this sovereign Lady. First, every morning and evening, when you get up and before you go to bed, say three "Hail Marys," adding this short prayer: "By thy pure and immaculate conception, O Mary, make me pure in body and holy in soul!" And put yourself beneath her mantle, that she may keep you that day or that night from sin. And every time you hear the clock strike, say a "Hail Mary;" do the same whenever you go in or out of the house, and when you pass by any picture or statue of the blessed Virgin. So, also, when you begin and finish any of your occupations; such as your study, work,

eating, or sleeping, never omit to say a "Hail Mary." Second, say the rosary, meditating on the mysteries, every day—at least five decades. Many devout people also say the Office of Our Lady; it would be well to say, at any rate, the Little Office of the Name of Mary, which is very short, and composed of five short psalms. Third, say an "Our Father" and "Hail Mary" every day to the ever blessed Trinity in thanksgiving for the graces that have been bestowed upon Mary. The blessed Virgin herself revealed to a person that this devotion was very pleasing to her. Fourth, fast on bread and water every Saturday in honor of Mary, or at least on the vigils of her seven feasts; or, at any rate, fast in the ordinary way, or eat only of one dish, or abstain from something you like. In short, make use of some kind of mortification on Saturdays, and on the above-named vigils, for the sake of this Queen, who, as St. Andrew of Crete says, repays these little things with great graces. Fifth, pay a visit every day to some image of your patroness, and ask her to give you holy perseverance and the love of Jesus Christ. Sixth, let no day pass without reading a little about our Lady, or else say some prayer to this blessed Virgin. For this purpose we have here put seven prayers to Mary for the seven days of the week. (See chap. ii. 7.*) Seventh, make the novenas for the seven principal feasts of Mary, and ask your confessor to tell you what devotions and mortifications you should practise during those nine days: say at least nine "Hail Marys" and "Glory be to the Father," and beg her each day of the novena to give you some special grace that you are in want of. Lastly, often recommend yourself to this divine Mother during the day, and particularly in time of temptation, saying at such times, and often repeating with great affection, "Mary, help me! help me, my Mother!" And if you love Mary, try to promote devotion to this great Mother of God among your relatives, friends and servants.

9. ON THE PRACTICE OF CERTAIN MEANS BY WHICH WE MAY ACQUIRE THE LOVE OF JESUS CHRIST.

Jesus Christ ought to be our whole love. He is worthy of it, both because He is a God of infinite goodness, and because He has loved us to such an excess, that He died for us. Oh, what a great obligation we are under to Jesus Christ! All the good we enjoy, all our inspirations, calls, pardons, helps, hopes, consolations, sweetnesses, and loving affections, come to us through Jesus Christ. Let us see by what means we are to acquire this love of Jesus Christ.

In the first place, we must desire to have this love of Jesus Christ, and we must, therefore, often ask Him to give it us, especially in our prayers,

* The seven prayers to which the saint refers are in the *Glories of Mary*, and have been indulgenced by Pius VII. Vid. *Raccolta d'Indulgenze*.

in our communions, and in the visit to the blessed sacrament. And this grace must also be sought for at the hands of the ever-blessed Mary, from our guardian angel and our holy patrons, that they may enable us to love Jesus Christ. St. Francis of Sales says that the grace of loving Jesus Christ contains all other graces in itself ; because he who truly loves Jesus Christ cannot be wanting in any virtue.

In the second place, if we wish to acquire the love of Jesus Christ, we must detach our hearts from all earthly affections ; divine love will find no place in a heart that is full of this world. St. Philip Neri used to say, "The love we give to creatures is all so much taken from God."

In the third place, we must often exercise ourselves, especially when we pray, in making acts of love to Jesus Christ. Acts of love are the fuel with which we keep alive the fire of holy charity. Let us make acts of love and complacency, saying, "My Jesus, I rejoice that thou art infinitely happy, and that thy eternal Father loves thee as much as Himself." Of benevolence, "I wish, my Jesus, that all could know and love thee." Of predilection, as "My Jesus, I love thee more than all things. I love thee more than myself." Let us also often make acts of contrition, which are called acts of sorrowful love.

In the fourth place, if any one wishes to make sure of being inflamed with love toward Jesus Christ, let him often try to meditate on His passion. It was revealed to a holy solitary, that no exercise was more efficacious in enkindling love than the consideration of the sufferings and ignominy which Jesus Christ endured for love of us. I say it is impossible that a soul, meditating often on the passion of Jesus Christ, should be able to resist His love. It was for this that, although He could have saved us by one drop of His blood, nay, even by a single prayer, He chose to suffer so much and to shed all His blood that He might attract all hearts to love Him ; therefore he who meditates on His passion does what is very agreeable to Him. Do you, then, often make your meditation on the passion of our Lord Jesus Christ. Do so at least every Friday, the day on which He died for the love of us. For this purpose I have written many meditations on the passion of our Lord Jesus Christ, especially the *Darts of Fire*, which speak of the love which Jesus Christ has borne us in the great work of our redemption.

Abridgment of the Rule of Life for a Christian.—I. On rising in the morning, make the following acts : 1. "My God, I adore thee ; I love thee with my whole heart, and I thank thee for all thy benefits, especially for having preserved me the night past." 2. "I offer thee all my actions and sufferings of this day, in union with the actions and sufferings of Jesus and Mary ; and I make the intention of gaining all the indulgences in my power during the present day." 3. "I purpose, O Lord, to avoid

offending thee this day ; but be thou pleased to support me constantly in thy hands, that I may not betray thee. O Mary most holy, shelter me under your mantle. My angel guardian and all my holy patrons, assist me." Then conclude with an "Our Father," "Hail Mary," and creed ; and say, finally, three "Hail Marys," in honor of the purity of Mary.

II. Take care to make half an hour's meditation as soon as possible in the day. For though meditation is not absolutely necessary, it is morally necessary, in order to obtain the grace of perseverance. Those who neglect it will find it very difficult to persevere in the grace of God. The reasons for this are twofold : the first is, because the eternal truths cannot be seen by the eyes of the flesh, but by the eye of the understanding, which is reflection. Hence he does not perceive them who does not meditate ; and for want of perceiving them he will hardly arrive at a due appreciation of the importance of salvation, of the means which secure it, and of the obstacles which hinder it ; so that his salvation will be placed in imminent risk. The second reason is, because the soul that does not practice meditation will also be backward to practice prayer. Now prayer is necessary, not merely as a precept, but as a means to observe the commandments, since, as a general rule, and speaking of adults, God only gives His grace to those who ask for it. But without meditation a person has a very faint notion of his own spiritual wants, and he is, moreover, but slightly impressed with the necessity of praying, in order to overcome temptations and to save his soul ; thus he is led to pray but little or not at all, and for want of prayer is eventually lost. The eminent Bishop Palafox said, "How will the Lord give us perseverance, unless we ask Him for it? And how shall we ask Him for it without prayer?" On the other hand, St. Teresa declares that it is hardly possible for a man that prays to remain long in sin ; he will either forsake prayer or forsake sin : prayer and sin are incompatible.

III. With regard to practice, meditation has three parts : preparation, consideration and conclusion. In the preparation must be made three acts : 1, of the presence of God ; 2, of humility ; 3, of petition for light. We say, 1. "My God, I believe thou art here present, and I adore thee" ; 2. "I deserve at this moment to be burning in hell. O my God, I am sorry for having offended thee." 3. "Eternal Father, for the love of Jesus and Mary, grant me light in this meditation, that I may profit by it." Then say a "Hail Mary" to the divine Mother, and a "Glory be to the Father," etc., in honor of our angel guardian. Then read the point of meditation, and be sure to meditate, at least occasionally, on the passion of Jesus Christ. It must also be understood that the fruit of prayer does not so much consist in meditating, but, rather, 1. In producing affections—for instance, of humility, confidence, love, sorrow, offering, resignation

and the like. 2. In making petitions, and especially imploring God to grant us perseverance and His holy love. 3. In making the resolution to avoid some particular sin, and of practicing some particular virtue.

Finally, the conclusion is made thus: 1. "I thank thee, O God, for the lights thou hast given me." 2. "I purpose to keep the resolutions I have made." 3. "And I beg thy grace to fulfill them." Neither must we ever forget to recommend to God the holy souls in purgatory, and all poor sinners. We must never omit our accustomed meditation, whatever coldness and weariness we may feel over it; for St. Teresa says, "To do so would be to cast ourselves into hell with our own hands." Moreover, let all bear in mind that Benedict XIV. granted a plenary indulgence to everyone who shall make a meditation of half an hour every day for a month, with confession and Communion; and partial indulgences are also granted every day to those who meditate.

IV. Do not omit to hear Mass daily. But what is of the greatest importance is, that those who hear Mass should make a special application to their own souls of the merits of the passion of Jesus Christ. Mass should be heard for the same ends for which it was instituted, namely: 1, to honor Almighty God; 2, to thank Him for His benefits; 3, to make atonement for the punishment due to our sins; 4, to obtain divine grace. So that we ought, then, to pray as follows: "Eternal Father, in this Mass I offer thee Jesus Christ, with all the merits of His passion: 1, to honor thy majesty; 2, to thank thee for all thy benefits toward me; 3, in satisfaction for my sins, and for those of all the living, and of those who died in thy grace; 4, to obtain all the graces necessary for salvation." At the elevation of the Host, we may say, "By the blood of Jesus Christ, grant me to love thee in this life and in the next." When the priest communicates, make the spiritual Communion thus: "My Jesus, I love thee, and I long for thee in my soul; I embrace thee, and wish nevermore to be separated from thee."

V. In addition to this, read some spiritual book for half an hour, or at least a quarter; and it will be best to make use of the lives of the saints.

VI. Moreover, do not fail to pay every day a visit to the most holy sacrament, when you should make at least the following acts: 1. "O Lord, I thank thee for thy love in leaving thyself to me in this holy sacrament." 2. "With my whole heart I love thee, O Good, above all other good; and because I love thee I am sorry for all my offences against thee, whether great or small." 3. "I beseech thee to grant me perseverance in thy grace and thy holy love." At the same time make a visit to our blessed Lady, before one of her images, and beg of her also the same graces of perseverance and the love of God.

VII. In the evening make the examination of conscience, and then add the Christian acts.

VIII. Frequent the holy sacraments of confession and Communion at least once a week, and oftener if possible. With regard to confession, say beforehand : "I thank thee, O my God, for having waited for me until now. I hope, through the merits of Jesus Christ, for the pardon of all my offences against thee. I am sorry for them, and repent of them with my whole heart, because by them I have lost heaven and have deserved hell ; but, above all, I am grieved to my inmost soul, and hate and detest my sins more than all evils, because they have offended thy infinite goodness. I purpose in future rather to die than offend thee any more."

After confession, thank Almighty God for the pardon which you hope you have received, and renew your good resolution nevermore to offend Him, and to avoid all occasions of sin ; and pray to Jesus and Mary for perseverance.

As to the holy Communion, we must know that it is the grand medicine, as the Council of Trent terms it, which purifies us from our daily venial faults, and preserves us from mortal ones. He who communicates most frequently will be freest from sin, and will make greatest progress in divine love ; only let him communicate with a good desire. But, in order to derive more abundant fruits from Communion, he should manage to spend half an hour after receiving in performing devout acts, or at least in praying out of some spiritual book ; however, let no one make this more frequent Communion without the counsel of his spiritual director, and, on this account,

IX. It is well to make choice of a good confessor, and to follow his direction in all spiritual matters, and even in temporal matters of importance ; nor should he be left without a good reason. St. Philip Neri spoke thus : " Let those who are desirous of advancing in the way of God put themselves under an enlightened confessor ; and let them obey him, as occupying the place of God. Whoever does this may feel assured that he will never have to render an account to God of what he does." And this is only conformable to the words of Jesus Christ, that whosoever hears His ministers, hears Himself : " He that heareth you heareth me." A general confession should be made, if it has not hitherto been made, for it is a most excellent means of bringing one's life into good order ; and it is advisable to make it to the director himself, that he may be the better able to guide us.

X. Avoid idleness, dissipated companions, immodest conversations, and, more than all, evil occasions, especially where there is danger of incontinency ; and for this reason one cannot be too cautious in keeping his

eyes from dwelling on any dangerous objects. For a person that does not avoid the voluntary occasions of sin, especially those which have frequently proved fatal to his innocence, it is morally impossible to persevere in the grace of God: "He that loves the danger shall perish in it."

XI. In temptations trust not to yourself, nor to all the good resolutions and promises which you have made, but rely solely on the divine assistance; and for this reason have immediate recourse to God and the blessed Virgin. Especially in temptations against purity, the greatest care must be taken not to remain to dispute with the temptation. In such moments some are accustomed to set their will to make acts of the contrary virtue; but they run considerable risk. The best plan to adopt on these occasions is to renew the firm purpose rather to die than to offend God, and forthwith to make the sign of the cross without remonstrance, and to call on God and the divine Mother, making frequent invocations of the most holy names of Jesus and Mary, which have a wonderful efficacy against filthy suggestions, and should therefore be invoked continually till the temptations are over. Of ourselves we have not strength to overcome the attacks of the flesh, our most cruel enemy; but God readily supplies the strength to all who ask Him; but he that fails to do so almost invariably falls a prey to the enemy. The same is to be observed in combating temptations against faith, protesting at such times, without remaining in dispute, that we are ready to die for the holy faith, and instead of then eliciting acts of faith, it is better to elicit other acts, as of love, contrition, and hope.

XII. If you commit a venial fault, make an act of the love of God and of contrition, purpose amendment, and forthwith resume your wonted tranquillity. To remain troubled after a fault is the greatest fault that a person can commit, for a troubled soul is incapable of doing the least good. If, by mischance, the fault has been grievous, then immediately make an act of contrition, which is sufficient to recover the divine grace, resolve never to be guilty of the same again, and take the first opportunity of going to confession.

XIII. Endeavor to hear all the sermons in your power. And it would be most advisable to make a spiritual retreat once a year in some religious house; or, if that be impracticable, at least in your own house, by applying yourself for eight days to prayer and spiritual reading; during this time all company and conversation on secular matters should be avoided. In like manner make a retreat of one day every month, with confession and Communion. If your state of life allow it, become a member of some confraternity in which the sacraments are frequented, and there make your eternal salvation the grand and sole aim. Whoever enters a confraternity for the sake of managing, directing, or out of party spirit, will

derive more harm than good from it. If a person would really profit by it, he must enter it solely with a view to his spiritual interests.

XIV. In all the vicissitudes of life, such as illnesses, losses, and persecutions, be ever mindful to bow with resignation to the will of God, and repose on these words: "God wills it so, and so I will it likewise." Or thus: "God will have it so; so be it done." He that behaves in this manner stores up immense rewards for heaven, and always lives in peace. On the contrary, he that refuses to bow to the will of God only redoubles his afflictions; for he must endure them whether he will or no; and moreover, by his impatience, he lays up for himself an additional punishment.

XV. Be especially careful to preserve a tender and marked devotion to most holy Mary, by performing daily in her honor some exercise of piety. Never omit—the first thing in the morning and the last at night—to say three times the "Hail Mary" in honor of her purity, imploring her to keep you from all sin. Read every day something, be it only a few lines, on the blessed Virgin. Say her litanies, and the rosary, meditating on the mysteries. When you leave or enter the house, ask her blessing with a "Hail Mary;" and on passing by any of her images, salute her in the same way. When the clock strikes, say the "Hail Mary;" and then, "Jesus and Mary, I love you. Do not permit me to offend you." With the advice of your confessor, fast on Saturdays, on the vigils of the seven festivals of our blessed Lady, and make the novenas for the said feasts; as also for Christmas, Pentecost, and for the feast of your patron saint.

Necessary advice for people of all states of life that they may secure their salvation.—God wishes us all to be saved: "Who will have all men saved." (1 Tim. ii. 4.) And He is ready to give to all the help necessary for salvation; but He grants it only to those that ask Him, as St. Augustine says, "He gives only to those who ask." Hence, it is a common opinion of theologians and of the holy fathers that prayer is necessary for adults as a means of salvation; that is to say, that a person who does not pray, and neglects to ask of God the help requisite for overcoming temptations, and for preserving grace already received, cannot be saved.

On the other hand, our Lord cannot refuse to give graces to those who ask for them, because He has promised to do so: "Cry to me, and I will hear thee." (Jer. xxxiii. 3.) Have recourse to me, and I will not fail to hear you. Ask of me all you desire, and you shall attain it: "Ask, and it shall be given to you." (St. Matt. vii. 7.) These promises, however, are not to be understood with reference to temporal goods, because God only gives these when they are for the good of the soul; but He has promised absolutely to give spiritual graces to anyone who asks Him;

and having promised it, He is obliged to give them to us: "By His promise, He has made Himself our debtor," says St. Augustine.

It should also be observed, that on God's part prayer is a promise, and on our part a binding precept: "Ask, and it shall be given you." "We ought always to pray." (St. Luke xviii. 1.) These words, "ask," "we ought," convey, as St. Thomas teaches, a grave precept, which is binding for our whole life; but especially when a man is in danger of death, or falling into sin; because if he does not then have recourse to God, he will certainly be overcome. And he who has already fallen under God's displeasure, commits a fresh sin when he does not turn to God for help to arise out of his miserable state. But will God hear him while he is yet His enemy? Yes, He does hear, if the sinner humbles himself, and prays for pardon from his heart; since it is written in the gospel, "For every one that asketh, receiveth." (St. Luke xi. 10.) It says that God has promised to hear all that pray to Him, whether they are just or sinners. In another place God says, "Call upon me. . . and I will deliver thee." (Ps. xlix. 15.) Call upon me, and I will deliver thee from hell, to which thou dost stand condemned.

No, there will be no excuse in the day of judgment for any one who dies in mortal sin. It will be of no use for him to say that he had not the strength to resist the temptation which troubled him; because Jesus Christ will answer: "If you had not the strength, why did you not ask it of me, and I should certainly have given it you? If you fell into sin, why did you not have recourse to me, that I might have delivered you from it?"

You see, then, that if you desire to be saved, and would keep yourself in the grace of God, you must often pray to Him that He would keep His hand over you. The Council of Trent declares that for a man to persevere in the grace of God, it is not enough that he should have only that general aid which He gives to all; but he must also have that special assistance which can only be obtained by prayer. For this reason all the doctors of the Church say, that each one is bound, under grievous sin, to recommend himself often to God, and to ask for the grace of holy perseverance at least once a month. And anyone who finds himself in the midst of many dangerous occasions is under the obligation of asking more frequently for the grace of perseverance.

It is, besides, most useful to keep up some particular devotion to the Mother of God, who is called the Mother of perseverance, in order to obtain this grace; and a person who has not this special devotion to the blessed Virgin, will find it very difficult to persevere; for as St. Bernard says, all divine graces, and especially this one of perseverance, which is the greatest of all, come to us by means of Mary.

Would to God that preachers were more mindful in putting before their hearers this great means of prayer! Some, even in the whole course of their Lenten sermons, scarcely mention it more than once or twice in passing: while they ought often to make it their chief subject, besides speaking of it in every discourse; if they omit to do so, they will have to render a heavy account for it to God. Thus, also, many confessors are particular merely about the resolution their penitents make not to offend God again; and few take the trouble to inculcate that they must pray when they are tempted again to fall; but we must be well persuaded that when a temptation is violent, if the penitent does not beg for God's assistance, all his resolutions will avail him little; prayer alone can save him. It is certain that he who prays is saved; he who prays not is damned.

Therefore, I repeat, if you wish to be saved, pray continually to the Lord that He would give you light and strength not to fall into sin. Thus we must be importunate with God in asking Him for His grace. "This importunity with God is our opportunity," says St. Jerome. Every morning we must beseech Him to keep us from sin during that day. And when any bad thought or occasion of sin presents itself to your mind, or you are tempted by some dangerous occasion, immediately have recourse to Jesus Christ and the blessed Virgin, and say, "My Jesus, help me! most blessed Virgin, come to my aid!" It is enough at such a time to pronounce the names of Jesus and Mary, and the temptation will vanish; but should the temptation continue, persevere in invoking the assistance of Jesus and Mary, and you will be victorious.

Rules for a good life.—I. In the morning, on rising from bed, to make the Christian acts. Every day to make mental prayer for half an hour; to read at least for a quarter of an hour some spiritual book. To hear Mass. To make the visit to the most blessed sacrament and to the divine Mother. To say the rosary. And in the evening to make the examination of conscience, with the acts of contrition, and the Christian acts, together with the litany of the ever-blessed Mary.

II. To go to confession and Communion at least every week, and oftener if possible, with the advice of your spiritual director.

III. To choose a good, learned and pious confessor, and to be directed always by him, as well in your exercises of devotion as in all affairs of importance, and not to leave him without a good reason.

IV. To avoid idleness, bad companions, immodest conversations, and, above all, occasions of sin, especially where there is danger of incontinency.

V. In temptations of impurity particularly, to sign yourself immediately with the sign of the holy cross, and to invoke the most holy names of Jesus and Mary, as long as the temptation lasts.

VI. When you commit any sin, to repent of it at once, and resolve to amend ; and if it is a grievous sin, to confess it as soon as possible.

VII. To hear sermons as often as you can, and to belong to some confraternity, with no other end than to attend to the affair of your eternal salvation.

VIII. To fast in honor of the ever-blessed Mary on Saturday, and on the vigils of her seven feasts, observing some other corporal mortification, according to the advice of your spiritual father, to make the novenas of the above-named feasts of Mary, as well as of the Nativity, Pentecost, and that of your holy patron. In adverse circumstances, as in sickness, losses, persecutions, you must unite yourself in all things to the will of God, and be resigned, saying always, "This is (or has been) the will of God; may His will be done."

IX. To make the spiritual exercises every year in some religious house, or in some place apart ; or at least to make them in your own house, applying yourself during those days as much as possible to prayer, spiritual reading, and to silence. And in the same way to make a day of retreat every month, by going to Communion, and by avoiding all conversation.

AN EPITOME OF THE VIRTUES IN WHICH A CHRISTIAN SOUL, THAT DESIRES TO LEAD A PERFECT LIFE AND BECOME A SAINT, SHOULD EXERCISE ITSELF.

It would be useful to read this epitome every time you make your day's retreat, that you may see in what virtues you are wanting.

To desire always to increase in love toward Jesus Christ. Holy desires are wings with which souls fly to God. St. Aloysius Gonzaga made himself a saint in a short time through the great desire he had of loving God ; and as he knew he should never be able to love Him as much as He was worthy of being loved, he consumed himself in ardent desires. On this account, St. Mary Magdalene of Pazzi called St. Aloysius a martyr of love.

To meditate often on the passion of Jesus Christ. St. Bonaventure said that the wounds of Jesus Christ are wounds which pierce every heart, and inflame them with holy love.

Often during the day to make acts of love toward Jesus Christ, beginning from the time you wake in the morning, and trying to make an act of love as you fall asleep. "Acts of love," says St. Teresa, "are the fuel with which the fire of divine love is kept burning in our hearts."

Always to ask Jesus Christ to give you His holy love. The grace of loving God, as wrote St. Francis of Sales, is the grace which contains and brings along with it all the other graces ; because he who truly loves God will endeavor to avoid anything that might be displeasing to Him, and

will study how to please Him in all things. It is therefore necessary, above all things, to ask of God the grace to love Him.

To frequent the holy Communion. A soul can do nothing that is more pleasing to God than to communicate in a state of grace. The reason of this is, that love tends to perfect union with the object beloved; as Jesus Christ loves a soul that is in grace with an immense love; He ardently desires to unite Himself with it. This is what holy Communion does; by it Jesus Christ is wholly united to the soul: "He that eats my flesh dwells in me, and I in him." Consequently the soul can perform no action that is dearer to Jesus Christ than that of receiving Him in the holy Eucharist. For this reason let spiritual souls endeavor to communicate many times in a week, and if possible every day, but always with the permission of their director; for Communions and mortifications, done out of a person's own head, lead to pride rather than spirituality. For the rest, the penitent should earnestly ask his director both for Communions and mortifications; because directors are induced to grant them, more or less frequently, according to the greater or less desire of them which they discover in their penitents.

To make during the day many spiritual Communions; at least three.

Often to visit the most holy sacrament of the altar, at least once or twice a day, and in the visit, after the acts of faith, of thanksgiving, of love and contrition, to ask fervently for perseverance and holy love.

When disturbances, losses, affronts, or other adverse things happen, to have recourse to the ever-blessed sacrament, at least in spirit, if you cannot go to the church.

Every morning, on getting up, to offer yourself to God to suffer in peace, and to accept from His hands all the crosses which shall befall you on that day; embracing also in peace all contradictions. *Fiat voluntas tua*, is the word which is constantly in the mouths of the saints: Lord, may thy will be always done!

To be glad, and to rejoice that God is infinitely happy and blessed. If we love God more than ourselves, as we are bound to love Him, we ought to rejoice more at God's happiness than at our own.

To desire heaven and death, that we may be delivered from the danger we are in of losing God, and to go and love Jesus Christ with all our strength and forever, without the fear of losing Him again.

Often to speak with others of the love which Jesus Christ has borne us, and of the love we owe to Him.

To go to God without reserve, not denying Him anything which we know to be pleasing to Him; but rather choosing such things as are most agreeable to Him.

To desire and endeavor to persuade all to love Jesus Christ

Always to pray for the souls in purgatory, and for poor sinners.

To drive away from your heart all affections that have not God for their object.

Often to have recourse to the saints, and especially to the ever-blessed Mary, that they may obtain for you the love of God.

To honor Mary in order to please God.

To do all your actions with the sole end of pleasing Jesus Christ ; saying at the commencement of each action : " O Lord, let it be all for thee."

To offer yourself many times during the day to God and to Jesus Christ, as willing to suffer any pain for His love, and say : " My Jesus, I give myself all to thee ; here I am : do with me what thou wilt."

To be resolved to die a thousand times rather than commit a deliberate sin, even though only a venial one.

To deny yourself even lawful satisfactions ; doing so at least once or twice a day.

When we hear people talk of riches, honors, and amusements of the world, let us remember that all things have an end ; and let us then say, " My God, I wish for thee alone, and nothing more."

To make two hours of mental prayer, or at least one hour during the day.

To make use of all those external mortifications which obedience permits ; but to pay particular attention to interior mortification, such as abstaining from gratifying our curiosity, from answering when we are reproached, from saying witty things, and the like, and never to do anything for your own satisfaction.

Whatever devout exercise you may perform, to do it as if it were the last time you had to do it. To this end, in your meditation you should often think of death ; and when you go to bed, think that you will one day there expire.

Not to leave off your usual devotions, or any other good work, on account of any aridity or weariness that you may experience. He who begins to leave them off for a slight cause is in danger of giving them up entirely.

Not to leave undone any good action out of human respect. Not to complain in sickness of any want of attention on the part of the doctors, servants, or assistants, and to try and conceal even our sufferings as much as we can. To love solitude and silence, in order to be able to discourse with God alone. And for this reason we must shun the conversations of this world.

To drive away sadness, preserving our tranquillity and a cheerful countenance in all events with a constant uniformity. One who wills what God wills should never be afflicted.

To recommend yourself often to spiritual persons.

Always to have recourse immediately to Jesus and Mary with great confidence in your temptations; continuing to pronounce the names of Jesus and Mary as long as the temptation lasts.

To have great confidence, first in the passion of Jesus Christ, and then in the intercession of Mary; and to ask God every day to give you this confidence.

After a fault, not to be disturbed and never to despair, even though you should know yourself to be wanting in fidelity, and should fall, over and over, again into the same fault; but to repent immediately, and to renew your promise of amendment, with confidence in God.

To render good to any one who does you evil, or at least to pray to the Lord for him.

To answer with meekness when any one says or does anything to injure you; and so you will gain him over to you. Moreover, when you feel yourself annoyed, it is well to be silent until you are composed, otherwise you will commit many faults without perceiving it.

When you have to correct any one, you should choose a time when neither you nor the person who is to be corrected are excited, otherwise the correction will prove more hurtful than useful.

To speak well of all; and to excuse the intention when you cannot justify the action.

To help your neighbor as much as you can, especially one who has been opposed to you.

Not to say or do anything that may be displeasing to anyone; and except it were necessary in order to please God rather than men.

And if sometimes you are wanting in charity toward anyone, to ask his pardon, or at least speak kindly to him.

To speak always with meekness, and in a low voice.

To offer to God the contempt you meet with, and not to complain of it afterward to others.

To observe carefully the rules given you by your director.

To consider and honor in your superiors the person of Jesus Christ Himself.

To love the most humble employments.

To choose the poorest things for yourself.

To obey without replying, and without showing repugnance; and, on the other hand, not to ask anything for your own satisfaction.

Not to speak of yourself, whether it be good or evil; sometimes to speak in disparagement of ourselves fosters pride.

To humble yourself even toward your inferiors.

Not to excuse yourself when you are reprov'd or calumniated, unless

it should be absolutely necessary for the common good, or to avoid giving scandal to others.

To visit and assist the sick as much as possible ; and especially the most abandoned.

Often to say to yourself : " If I wish to become a saint, I must suffer ; if I wish to please God, I must do His will, and not my own."

Always to renew your resolution of becoming a saint, and not to lose courage in whatever state of tepidity you may find yourself.

To renew each day the resolution you have taken of going on to perfection.

Let the religious endeavor every day to renew the vows of their profession. The doctors of the Church say that a person who renews his vows of religion gains a plenary indulgence, as he does the first time he makes them.

The exercise which is most essential to be practiced by a soul that desires to please God is to conform itself in all things to the divine will, and to embrace with peace all things which are contrary to the senses in pains, sicknesses, affronts, contradictions, loss of property, the death of relatives or of other persons who are dear to us ; and to receive them each day as we awake as coming from God. Tribulations are those blessed treasures where the saints find such stores of merits. We cannot give greater glory to God than by conforming ourselves in all things to His holy will. This is the continual practice of devout souls. And it is the end to be attained by mental prayer. St. Teresa says, " That all that a person who gives himself up to prayer ought to seek is conformity to the divine will ; and let him be sure that in this consists the highest perfection." This, then, must be our only intention in all our actions, in our meditations, and in our prayers ; we must always pray, " O Lord, teach me to do thy will." " Tell me, O Lord, what thou dost desire of me, and I will do it all." " Thy will be done." Such is the prayer continually on the lips of the saints. And this is all that God requires of us : " My son, give me thy heart."

But perfection consists in conforming ourselves to the will of God in those things which are disagreeable to us. The Venerable F. Avila said, " It is of more use to say once, ' Blessed be God ' in any contradiction, than to thank Him six thousand times when we are pleased." We must also be conformed to those crosses which come to us by means of others, as in calumniations, deceptions and contempt, because it all comes from God. Not that the Lord wills the fault of the person who offends us, but He does will that we should be humble and mortified : " Good things and evil are from God." (Ecclus. xi. 14.) We call tribulations evils and misfortunes ; and we make them so by suffering them with im-

patience ; but if we received them with resignation, they would become graces and jewels to enrich our crown in heaven. In a word, he who is always united to the will of God becomes a saint, and enjoys even here on earth a perpetual peace. "Whatever shall befall the just man it shall not make him sad." (Prov. xii. 21.)

To recommend ourselves to the prayers of devout people ; but still more to recommend ourselves to the saints in heaven, and especially to the ever-blessed Mary, setting great value on devotion toward this divine Mother ; and not omitting any opportunity of inducing others to practise it. Those who have a great confidence in the patronage of Mary ought to be very grateful to God for it, for it is a great pledge of their salvation ; and those who have it not, ought to pray that He would grant it to them.

SPIRITUAL MAXIMS FOR A CHRISTIAN.

Of what use will it be to gain the whole world, and to lose our soul ?
Everything has an end ; but eternity has no end.

All may be lost, provided God be not lost.

No sin, however small, is a light evil.

If we desire to please God, we must deny ourselves.

That which is done for our own satisfaction is all loss.

In order to save ourselves we must be in constant fear of falling.

Let me die so that I please God.

The only evil we ought to fear is sin. All that God wills is good, and therefore to be desired.

He who desires nothing but God is happy and contented at everything that happens.

I ought to imagine to myself that there are no others in the world but God and myself.

The whole world cannot satisfy our heart ; God alone can satisfy it.

All good consists in loving God. And loving God consists in doing His will.

All our riches are in prayer. He who prays obtains everything he can wish for.

Let us consider that day lost on which we omit our mental prayer. "He who leaves off praying," said St. Teresa, "casts himself into hell of his own accord."

Let us not pass a day without reading some spiritual book.

Points of honor are the plague of spirituality.

To be humble of heart, and not merely in word, it is not sufficient to say that we are deserving of all contempt, but we must also be glad when we are despised. And what has a Christian learned to do, if he cannot

suffer an affront for God's sake? When you are insulted, take it all cheerfully.

He who thinks on hell, which he has deserved, finds every trouble easy to bear.

He who loves poverty possesses all things. In the things of this world we must choose the worst ; in the things of God we must choose the best.

An obedient soul is the delight of God.

True charity consists in doing good to those who do us evil, and thus to gain them over.

Of what use are the riches and honors of this world at the hour of death?

It is a great grace of God to be called to His holy love.

God does not leave a single good desire unrewarded,

All attachment, even to good things, except to God is bad.

Let us be grateful, and first of all to God. Let us therefore resolve to deny Him nothing, making choice of those things which are most pleasing to Him.

The most beautiful prayer is when, in sickness, we unite ourselves to the will of God.

A holy life and sensual pleasures cannot agree together.

He who trusts in himself is lost ; he who trusts in God can do all things.

And what greater delight can a soul have than to know that it is pleasing God?

God is ready to give Himself to those who leave all for His love.

The only way by which we can become saints is the way of suffering.

It is by aridity and temptations that God tries those who love Him.

No one can be lost who loves God and trusts in Him.

Let us beg of God to give us a tender devotion to His divine Mother.

He who looks on Jesus crucified suffers everything in peace.

He who loves God most in this world is the happiest. All that is not done for God, turns to pain.

No kind of inquietude, although for a good end, comes from God.

It is enough that we do not stand still ; we shall arrive in the end.

He who desires God alone, is rich and happy : he is in want of nothing, and may laugh at all the world.

Nothing can satisfy one whom God does not satisfy.

God, God, and nothing more.

We must overcome all to gain all.

PIOUS REFLECTIONS TO EXCITE IN US THE HOLY LOVE OF GOD, AND DEVOTION
TO MARY.

God is a treasury of all grace, of all good, of all perfection.

God is infinite, God is eternal, God is immense, God is unchangeable.

God is powerful, God is wise, God is provident, God is just.

God is merciful, God is holy, God is beautiful, God is brightness itself, God is rich, God is all things, and He is therefore worthy of love ; and of how much love !

God is infinite ; He gives to all, and receives nothing from anyone. All that we have comes to us from God ; but God has nothing from us : "Thou art my God, for Thou hast no need of my goods." (Ps. xv. 1.) God is eternal ; He has ever been eternal, and always will be. We can count the years and the days of our existence ; but God knows no beginning, and will never have an end : "But thou art always the selfsame, and thy years shall not fail." (Ps. ci. 28.)

God is immense, and is essentially present in every place. We, when we are in one place, cannot be in another. But God is in all places, in heaven, on earth, in the sea, in the depths, without us, and within us. "Whither shall I go from thy spirit ? or whither shall I flee from thy face ? If I ascend into heaven, thou art there : if I descend into hell, thou art present." (Ps. cxxxviii. 7, 8.)

God is unchangeable ; and all that He has ordained by His holy will from eternity He wills now, and will do so for ever. "For I am the Lord, and I change not." (Mal. iii. 6.)

God is powerful ; and with respect to God all the power of creatures is but weakness.

God is wise ; and with respect to God all human wisdom is ignorance.

God is provident ; and with respect to God all human foresight is ridiculous.

God is just ; and with respect to God all human justice is defective : "And in His angels He found wickedness." (Job iv. 18.)

God is merciful ; and with respect to God all human clemency is imperfect.

God is holy ; in comparison with God all human sanctity, though it be heroic, falls short in an infinite degree : "None is good but God alone." (St. Luke xviii. 19.)

God is beauty itself ; yes, how beautiful is God ! and with respect to God all human beauty is deformity.

God is brightness itself ; and with respect to God all human brightness, even that of the sun, is darkness.

God is rich ; and with respect to God all human riches is poverty.

God is all things ; and with respect to God the highest, the most sublime, the most admirable of created things, and even if they were all united in one, are as nothing : "All men are as nothing before thee." (Ps. xxxviii. 6.) He is, therefore, worthy of love ; and oh, how much !

Ah, God is worthy of so much love that all the angels and all the saints of paradise do nothing but love God, and they will throughout all eternity be occupied only in loving Him ; and in this love of God, they are and will be always happy.

Ah, God is so worthy of love, that He is obliged to love Himself with an infinite love ; and in this same love, so necessary, but at the same time so delightful, which God bears to Himself, consists His beatitude ; and shall we not love Him ?

How did the saints love Him ?

St. Francis Xavier used to loosen his clothes and throw himself on the ground, not being able to stand against the impulse of holy love.

St. Stanislaus Kostka bared his breast, and used to run to fountains to refresh himself with the water.

The heart of St. Philip Neri became sensibly enlarged by the force of holy love.

St. Francis of Sales said, that if he had known that there was the smallest fibre in his heart that was not saturated with divine love, he would have wished to tear it out at once, and to cast it far from him.

And St. Catharine of Sienna, St. Teresa, St. Mary Magdalene of Pazzi, and other souls like them, were often in transports, and ravished, as it were, through the violence of the holy love of God ; and St. Mary Magdalene of Pazzi, not satisfied with loving Him so much herself, sometimes went about her convent, in order to give vent to her love, crying with a loud voice, "Love is not loved ; Love is not loved." And shall we not love Him ?

Do you know why we do not love Him ? It is because we know Him so little. The saints, who knew Him better than we do, loved Him so much. Let us also try to know Him a little more.

Let us meditate from time to time on His divine attributes, on His divine perfections ; let us at least, from time to time, raise our minds by a simple glance to Him, in the way I have here proposed, and our hearts will also become inflamed with this holy, divine love.

It is condescension in so great a God, that He should permit Himself to be loved by such vile creatures as we are ; and it is also His sweet commandment.

When God gave Moses His law on the top of Mount Sinai, before giving him any other precept He taught him this (Deut. vi. 5) : "Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with thy whole heart, and with thy whole soul, and with thy whole strength." And He enjoined him, first of all, to imprint well these words in his own heart : "And these words shall be in thy heart ;" and afterward to promulgate them with ardor among the children of Israel : "And thou shalt tell them to thy children." Let us

also love Him as He deserves; let us fulfill perfectly this His precept, which is at the same time so noble and so sweet; which is, in fine, the first and greatest precept of the law: "This is the greatest and the first commandment." (St. Matt. xxii. 38.) And let us live and die in the fulfillment of this precept.

SURE SIGNS BY WHICH WE MAY KNOW WHETHER WE HAVE THE DIVINE LOVE
IN US.

Divine love is compared in the Scriptures to fire.

Our Lord, in declaring to us in the gospel that He had come on earth to bring down the divine love, expresses Himself by saying that He had come on earth to bring fire. "I am come to cast fire on the earth." (St. Luke xii. 49.) And God Himself, in the Apocalypse, counsels a soul to provide itself with burnt gold: "I counsel thee, O soul, to buy of me gold fire-tried" (Apoc. iii. 18); that is, divine love.

Now fire has these two properties: it resists what is contrary to itself—I mean to say, that instead of being put out by winds and gusts, it is thereby augmented; and it is operative—if it is fire it will act. Here are, therefore, two sure signs, by which we may find out if we have ourselves the holy love of God—works and patience.

Do we always work for our God, at least by means of a pure, right intention of doing His divine will in all things, of finding His divine good pleasure in all things? Do we voluntarily suffer for His sake everything that is against our inclination: poverty, tribulations, sickness, and everything else? And instead of such things making us go far from Him, do they bring us nearer to Him? If they do, then we have the holy love of God. Our love is a fire which acts, which opposes what is contrary to itself, otherwise we have it not; our love toward God will be not true, but false; it will be a love of the lips, but not of the heart. St. John also warns us against this in his second epistle, chap. iii. 18: "My little children [see how he makes use of the very expressions of love], let us not love in word and in tongue, but in deed and in truth."

St. Gregory says, "If there is no work, there is no love." And Jesus Christ: "He that hath my commandments and keepeth them [he who keeps my commandments and observes them faithfully], he it is that loveth me." And St. Augustine adds: "The bitterest and most disagreeable things are rendered comparatively easy, and almost of no account, by love." So that if we always act in the manner laid down above—that is, for our God—if we keep His divine commandments, if we observe them faithfully (and with the divine commandments come also those of the holy Church, the obligations of our state, and each one's

own duty), if we overcome with generosity and even with cheerfulness, for our God, everything that is contrary to our nature, though it be most distasteful to us, we have in us the holy love of God. Our love is then a fire which acts, which resists what is contrary to itself; otherwise we have it not: our love toward God will certainly not be true, but false; it will be a love of the lips, not a love of the heart: "My little children, let us not love in word nor in tongue, but in deed and in truth."

Let us give some more practical examples. Suppose you have an opportunity of making such and such profit, but it is dishonest to do so; or an opportunity occurs for you to indulge yourself in some pleasure, but that pleasure is unlawful; the duties of your state trouble you, or the labors of your employment weary you; and for the sake of your God you do not care to make that profit, you renounce that pleasure, do your duty, and continue your work; then you have the holy love of God; your love is a fire which operates; otherwise you have it not; your love toward God will not be true love, but false; it will be a love of the lips, and not a love of the heart: "My little children, let us not love in word nor in tongue, but in deed and in truth."

Further, suppose some tribulation comes upon you suddenly; that an action is brought against you unexpectedly, on which all you have depends; that you suddenly lose some person in whom were all your hopes, and who was your whole support—do you with promptness offer it all to our Lord; do you even bear all with joy? If so, you have the holy love of God. Your love is a fire which resists what is contrary to itself; otherwise you have it not: your love will not be true, it will be false—a love of the lips, not a love of the heart: "My little children, let us not love in word nor in tongue, but in deed and in truth."

But it is a still surer sign of love to suffer than to act; because in acting a person employs himself in favor of the person beloved, and so far gives a sign of love; but in suffering a person has no care for himself, and thinks of nothing but the person beloved, and therefore gives a sign of greater love. And by this mark God was pleased singularly to try the great love of holy Job toward Him.

The holy man Job was certainly a great lover of God; but when did he show himself most truly to be so? Was it when he was surrounded by a numerous family? When he was in the enjoyment of an abundance of earthly goods? When he was in perfect health? Yes, even then, for even then he acknowledged that all came from God; he thanked Him for all these things, offered sacrifices, and fulfilled his duty; giving good advice to his sons, and continually praying for them that they might never sin and offend their Lord: "Lest, perhaps, my sons have sinned." (Job i. 5.) But his love of God showed itself really great, when God,

on purpose to try his great love for Him, despoiled him of all his possessions at once ; caused all his sons to die at the same time ; deprived him entirely, in one moment, of his health ; so that he was reduced to such a state, that, covered with ulcers from head to foot, he sat on a dung-hill, and scraped with a potsherd the corrupt matter from all his members ; with all these horrible misfortunes, and in the midst of all these unheard-of afflictions, he did nothing but repeat continually, with invincible and more than wonderful patience: "The Lord gave, and the Lord hath taken away ; as it hath pleased the Lord, so be it done ; blessed be the name of the Lord." (Job. i. 21.)

But why speak of the holy Job ? Jesus Christ Himself said to His Apostles, as He was going to His passion, "That the world may know that I love the Father," etc. "Arise, let us go hence." (St. John xiv. 31.) Here, then, we have the surest and most incontestable proof of the true love of God—patience, patience: the voluntary suffering anything for Him.

The sayings and doings of the saints on this matter are also known to all.

St. Teresa said, "either to suffer or to die ;" St. Mary Magdalene of Pazzi, "to suffer, and not to die ;" St. John of the Cross, "to suffer and be silent."

The holy martyrs invited their executioners to torment them, and the wild beasts to devour them.

St. Lidwina willingly suffered a painful illness for thirty-three years.

St. Frances of Rome willingly suffered the unjust banishment of her husband, and the confiscation of all their property ; and St. John of the Cross, already named, willingly endured a cruel imprisonment for nine months, with numberless other inconveniences and hardships.

See, see, the surest and most incontestable mark of the true love of God, patience, patience ; suffering, willingly suffering everything for Him.

And oh, happy and blessed is he who by these two sure marks of works and patience, of acting and suffering for our great God, shall discover in himself the holy love of God !

All the gold in the world, when compared to the smallest degree of the holy love of God, is nothing but a handful of sand : "All gold in comparison of her is as a little sand." (Wisd. vii. 9.) All the riches of the world, even compared to the least degree of the holy love of God, are as nought, as the wise man says in the Scripture : "I esteemed riches nothing, in comparison of her." (Wisd. vii. 8.)

But why talk about all the gold or all the riches of the world, while all the greatest of the supernatural gifts are worth nothing without the holy love of God ? This is the language of the holy Apostle Paul, who

THE PRACTICE OF THE CHRISTIAN VIRTUES.

possessed the holy love of God in such abundance, and who therefore so well knew its value. (1 Cor. xiii.)

If, said he, I had the gift of all tongues, and could speak not only in all the languages of men, but also in that wonderful language with which the angels speak to each other: "If I speak with the tongues of men and angels," and had not the holy love of God, "and have not charity," I should be no better than a cymbal that was out of tune: "I am become as sounding brass or as a tinkling cymbal."

If I had the highest gift of prophecy, so that I could penetrate the depths of the most abstruse mysteries: "And if I should have prophecy, and should know all mysteries;" if I had the gift of all sciences, and such a great faith that I could remove mountains from one place to another; "if I should have all knowledge, and all faith, so that I could remove mountains," and had not the holy love of God, "and have not charity," I am good for nothing: "I am nothing."

This beautiful virtue of charity, or holy love of God, is the queen of all the other virtues, and reigns, and will reign, for all eternity.

After death faith will have its reward, because it will see that in which it has believed; but the virtue of faith will have no place in paradise.

After death hope will have its reward, because it will possess that which it hoped in; but there will be no virtue of hope in heaven. After death, charity or love toward God will have its reward and will reign eternally, because with infinite beatitude it will continue to love, throughout all eternity, that same God which it loved here on earth.

Therefore, oh, how happy, oh, how blessed is he who, by these two most certain marks of works and patience, voluntarily acting and suffering for his God, is able to recognize in himself the holy and true love of God!

Let us, then, all love our God, and let us all love Him in the manner and according to the rule here given. In all our works let us have God before our eyes, in everything fulfilling always His divine will, his divine good pleasure; and let us bear not only patiently but also joyfully all that is contrary to our self-love and to our human sensibilities.

It is for this one only end, that of loving our God, that we have been created and put into this world by Him.

To the accomplishment of this one only end let us turn all our care, all our solicitude.

On His love alone let us set any value; let us often ask Him to give us His holy love alone: "Thy holy love alone [let all and each of us say constantly], give me thy holy love alone, O Lord, together with thy holy grace, and I am rich enough; nor will I ask anything else of thee;" as that great saint who was so filled with the love of God, the great St. Ignatius, continually prayed.

A short act of perfect love toward God, to be repeated very often.—My God, I love thee above all things, and in all things, with my whole soul, because thou art worthy of all love.

TWELVE SHORT EJACULATIONS FOR THE TWELVE GREATEST SOLEMNITIES IN THE YEAR—SEVEN OF OUR LORD AND FIVE OF THE BLESSED VIRGIN, WHICH MAY BE USED AT ANY OTHER TIME AND ON ANY DAY, ACCORDING TO EACH ONE'S DEVOTION.

For the holy Nativity of our Lord.—Come, my Jesus, and be born in my heart.

For the Circumcision of our Lord.—May thy name, O Jesus, be my joy.

For the Epiphany.—With the wise men, O Jesus, I adore thee and love thee.

For Easter.—My Jesus, let me first suffer, and then rejoice with thee.

For the Ascension of our Lord.—Take my heart also with thee into heaven.

For Pentecost.—Holy Spirit, Light, Fervor, and Perseverance !

For the Feast of Corpus Christi.—Jesus, our food ! Jesus, our sweetness ! Jesus, our joy !

For the Immaculate Conception.—Most holy Virgin, free from sin and full of grace at the first moment of thy existence, may I be free from sin and in the grace of God at the last moment of my life.

For the Nativity of the ever-blessed Virgin.—Thy birth, O blessed Virgin, was holy ; may my death be holy.

For the Annunciation.—O Virgin, ever blessed, thou art raised to the sublime dignity of Mother of God ; may I remain always faithful in His service.

For the Purification.—Most holy Virgin, purer than the angels after thou hadst brought forth thy Son, may I be purified at least after I have sinned.

For the Assumption.—Most holy Virgin, who didst die out of pure love, may I at least die with contrition.

Let all, all, be devout to the most blessed Virgin ; and after God, let us honor the most holy Virgin.

Happy is the Christian who has the most blessed Virgin for him and miserable is that Christian who has not the blessed Virgin on his side.

The most blessed Virgin can obtain everything from God, because she is His true Mother, and is so much beloved by Him ; and she will do everything for us, because she is our Mother also, and loves us so much.

Let us, therefore, always try to gain her friendship more and more ; let us ingratiate ourselves with her more and more, by continually fostering in ourselves devotion toward her.

Every day let us say her rosary.

Fast in her honor every Saturday.

Observe the novenas and the fast before all her principal feasts.

Practise some devotion also on all her smaller, even smallest, feasts.

And let us, besides, in all our necessities, in all our misfortunes, have recourse to her, have confidence in her, and, through her, security in life, security in death, security throughout all eternity.

It must be so ; for do you know what takes place in heaven ? The most blessed Virgin stands before her divine Son (*Mater stat ante Filium*), and she reminds Him of the womb, where He was enclosed for nine months, and the sacred breast, at which she so often gave Him suck ; the Son places Himself before His divine Father (*Filius stat ante Patrem*), and shows Him His pierced side and those sacred wounds which He received for our sake (*Et ostendit Patri latus et vulnera*) ; and at the sight of such sweet pledges of a Son's love, He can deny nothing to His divine Son—all is obtained for us : there can be no refusal where there are so many signs of love (*Ibi nulla poterit esse repulsio, ubi sunt tot amoris insignia*). It is thus that St. Bernard, himself so devout to the ever-blessed Virgin, encourages us.

But since the most blessed Virgin is also the Mother of fair love, as well as being true Mother of God (*mater pulchræ dilectionis*), she obtains for us holy love ; and through her means God Himself fills our hearts with His holy love (*Ignem sui amoris accendat Deus in cordibus nostris*).

Live, Jesus our love, and Mary our hope !

